









THE  
HISTORICAL  
AND CIVIL  
FROM THE  
CHRONOLOGICAL REMARKS

9006 cc 18.

By the Learned  
In five Volumes  
Drawn into English by  
The Fourth and Fifth Editions  
With large alphabetical  
Index of Names, Places, and Things  
VOL. III  
London Printed by W. Johnston at the Golden-Anchor in St. Dunstons Church-yard 1740

THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
WORLD,  
ECCLESIASTICAL and CIVIL:  
FROM THE  
*Creation to this present Time.*

WITH  
Chronological REMARKS.

---

By the Learned  
M. CHEVREAU.

---

In Five Volumes.

---

*Done into English by Several Hands from  
the Fourth and Best Edition.*

---

With a large Alphabetical INDEX of the prin-  
cipal Matters, Persons, and Places.

---

V O L. III.

---

L O N D O N :

Printed for D. Brown, at the Black Swan, without Temple-Bar ;  
T. Benskin, against Lincoln's-Inn Back-Gate ; J. Walthoe, in  
the Middle-Temple Cloysters ; J. Hartley, next the King's-  
Head Tavern, in Holbourn ; F. Coggan, in the Inner-Temple  
Lane. 1703.

THE  
FIRST  
OF THE  
WORLD  
Ecclesiastical and Civil:  
FROM THE



Chronological MARKS.

By the Learned

In five Volumes,

Done into English by  
the Fourth and Best Edition.

With a large Alphabetical  
Index of the prin-  
cipal Matters, Persons, and Places.

VOL. III.

Printed for D. Brown, at the Black Swan, without Temple-Bar;  
T. Baskin, against Lincoln's Inn Chancery; J. Walther, in  
the middle Temple; J. Hurd, near the King's  
Arms Tavern, in Holborn; E. Cogan, in the Inner Temple;  
Lane. 1703.



THE  
CONTENTS  
OF THIS  
VOLUME.

---

BOOK IV.

- Chap. I. **T**HE Succession of the Emperors from Domitian to Septimius Severus.
- II. Chronological Observations on Ecclesiastical and Prophan History.
- III. The Succession of the Emperors from Septimius Severus to Constantine the Pale, and Galerius Maximinus.
- IV. Chronological Remarks on Ecclesiastical and Prophan History.
- V. The Succession of the Emperors from Constantine the Pale, and Galerius Maximinus, unto Honorius.
- VI. Chronological Remarks on Ecclesiastical, and on Prophan History.
- VII. The Succession of the Emperors from Honorius unto Anastasius.
- VIII. Chronological Remarks on Ecclesiastical and Prophan History.
- IX. The Succession of the Emperors from Anastasius unto Phocas.

## The Contents.

X. *Chronological Remarks on Ecclesiastical and Prophane History.*

XI. *The Succession of the Emperors from Phocas unto Philippicus Bardanes.*

XII. *Chronological Remarks on Ecclesiastical and Prophane History.*

XIII. *The Succession of the Emperors from Philippicus Bardanes unto Nicephorus Logothetes.*

XIV. *Chronological Remarks on Ecclesiastical and Prophane History.*

XV. *The Succession of the Emperors from Nicephorus Logothetes or the Chancellor, to Constantine Paleologus, the last Emperor of Constantinople.*

---

## BOOK V.

Chap. I. **O**F the Reigns of the Emperors of the West.

II. *The most remarkable Occurrences of the World, during the Reigns of the Western Emperors.*

I AP 64

THE

# THE HISTORY OF THE WORLD.

## VOL. II.

### BOOK IV.

*The Succession of the Emperors from Domitian to Septimius Severus. Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastick and Prophane History. The Succession of the Emperors from Septimius Severus to Constantius the Pale, and to Galerius Maximinus. Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastick and Prophane History. The Succession of the Emperors from Constantius the Pale, and Galerius Maximinus to Honorius. Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastick and Prophane History. The Succession of the Emperors from Honorius to Anastasius. Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastick and Prophane History. The Succession of the*  
B *Emperors*

*Emperors from Anastasius to Phocas. Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastick and Prophane History. The Succession of the Emperors from Phocas to Philippicus Bardanes. Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastick and Prophane History. The Succession of the Emperors from Philippicus Bardanes to Nicephorus Logothetes. Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastick and Prophane History. The Succession of the Emperors from Nicephorus unto the Death of Constantine, the Fifteenth Emperor of Constantinople.*

---

## C H A P. I.

*The Succession of the Emperors from Domitian to Septimius Severus.*

(a) **N**ERVA was of Narni in Italy, of the Family of Cocceius Nerva, and his Ancestors probably were Originally of Crete. But it was a long time since this Family had settled at Rome, and there was a Cocceius Nerva, whose Collegue in his Consulship was L. Gellius Poplicola. There was another Consul of the same Name, whose Collegue was C. Vibius Rufinus; the former in the 717th Year, and the latter in the 775th Year of Rome.

Domitian was no sooner Assassinated, but Petronius Secundus, and Parthenius, (who were his Murderers) proclaimed M. Cocceius Nerva Emperor, a courteous, generous, modest, liberal, just and sincere Person. Martial calls

---

(a) In Numis Lat. Imp. Nerva. Cæs. Aug. vel Imp. Nerva. Cæs. Aug. Germanicus. In Numis Græc. ΑΓΓΟΡΡΑΤΩΡ. ΚΑΙΓΑΡ. ΝΕΡΩΓΑ. ΣΕΒΑΣΤΟΣ.



calls him *the sweetest of Princes*, and in the *Cæsars of Julian*, *Silemus* hath nothing to reproach him with. *Apollonius* who was one of his Friends, testifies in *Philostatus*, that he never saw him play nor laugh: And this Emperor said of himself, if we may believe *Xiphiline*, That he did not know that he was guilty of any thing that might make him uneasy or insecure, if he quitted the Empire. Altho' they paid great Honours to him, he prohibited them to erect any Statues of Gold or Silver to him; and of all the Goods which were in the Palace, and which had been taken from private Persons by *Domitian*, there was none which he did not restore to them, without being importuned to it. He gave Lands to the value of a Million of Crowns, to the *Roman* Citizens who were Poor, committed the Distribution thereof to the Senators; and at a Time when the necessity of Affairs required many Things, he sold his Moveables, his Robes, his Silver and Gold Plate, his Horses, and whatsoever he lookt upon as Superfluous, that he might not burden his People. When he understood that *Calpurnius Crassus*, of the Ancient Family of *Crassus*, and some others, had a Design to Assassinate him, he made them sit by him at a publick Spectacle; and giving them Swords, he asked them, whether they found their Points sharp enough; to let them see, that he feared them but little, or that he did not value Life much. But when he believed himself to be despised for his Old Age, he adopted *Marcus Ulpius Trajanus*, who was in *Germany* at that Time, finding none but him that deserv'd to succeed him. He died at the Age of 63 Years, according to *Aurelius Victor*; of 65 Years, 10 Months, and 10 Days, according to *Dio*; after he had Reigned one Year, four Months, and nine Days.

(b) *Trajan*, born at *Todi* in *Italy*, or (c) *Italica* in *Spain*, named *Ulpius* from his Grandfather; *Trajan* from

B 2

his

(b) In *Numis Lat.* Imp. Cæs. Divi. Nervæ. F. Trajanus vel Imp. Cæs. Nerva, Trojanus, Optimus, Aug. Germa. In Gr. ΑΥΤΟΚ. ΚΑΙΣ. ΝΕΡ. ΤΡΑΙΑΝΟΣ. ΑΡΙΣΤΟΣ ΣΕΒ. ΓΕΡΜ. ΔΑΡ. In quibusdam. Το ΠΑΡΘ, i. e. *Partholus* additum est.

(c) *Italica* urbs *Ilerie*. R. a



*gio vocabatur Italiceſto & Oenotria & Hesperia. Steph. Eam condidiſſe Scipionem tradit Mariana, de Rebus Hispaniæ, l. 2. c. 23. Ex Appiano, in Ibericis, Leovegildum Hispaniæ Regem inſtaurasse prodidit Joh. Abbas Biclariensis, &c. Verosimile est ex ejus ruinis creviſſe Hiſpalim quæ nunc vulgo Sevilla. Thomas de Pineda.*

his Father, had *Pompeia Plotina* for his Wife ; received the News of his Adoption at *Colen*, and was the first Emperor that was a Foreigner ; for before him there had been no Emperor but what was a Native of *Rome*, or *Italy*. He vigorously made War with the *Germans*, and was thence surnamed *Germanicus* ; subdued the *Transilvanians*, or *Daci*, and was thence surnamed *Dacicus* : and some are of Opinion that *Varbeli* in *Valachia*, is situated upon the Ruines of *Ulpia Trajana*, or *Zarmi-sophetusa*. The East had begun to revolt, and so fair an Occasion being offered him to shew his Merit, he failed not to make use of it. His Success was such, that he subdued *Armenia*, *Mesopotamia*, *Arabia*, *Parthia*, *Iberia*, the People of *Bosphorus*, and of *Colchis* ; was attended with Victory to the Shore of the *Red-Sea*, and passed the *Persian Gulph*. But when he would go farther, and the Provinces which he had conquered revolted ; he sent *Lucius* and *Maximus* against the Rebels. The latter was defeated and slain in a Battel, and the former retook *Nisibis*, and forced *Edeſſa*. Two other Lieutenants of *Trajan*, named *Erysius Clarus*, and *Julius Alexander*, took and burnt *Seleucia*, and fearing the *Parthians* might Revolt, he chose them a King named *Phartamaſphar*, or as others name him *Pſamatoffirû*, and crowned him. He went into *Arabia*, and gained not much Glory there. The Jews, who were about *Cyrene* slew all the *Grecians* and *Romans* which they met, or exposed them to Wild Beasts, and destroyed Two Hundred Thousand Men. They Massacred two hundred and forty Thousand in the Island of *Cyprus* ; and their Cruelty was not less in *Egypt*. Thus the Conquests of *Trajan* were of no great Advantage to the Empire, and as he fell Sick of a Dropsy, in the beginning of these Disorders as he was returning to *Rome*, he died of an Apoplexy, aged 64 Years, after he had reigned Seventeen Years, Six Months, and

Fifteen

Fifteen Days. He is accused by the two Victors, of Drunkenness; and it is observed in the *Cæsars of Julian*, that his Wit was dull'd with much Drinking. He hath been Reproached with a more hainous Vice, and *Dio, Zonaras, and Tzetzes* have made but an ill Defence for him, by saying; That he us'd it with Moderation, and without Violence. That which was Remarkable in this Emperor was, that he distributed a great deal of Money amongst the Orphans of all the Cities in *Italy*, that he would give no ear to false Reports, that he never touched the Estates of his Subjects, that he envied not another's Glory, that he religiously observed Justice, and that he was never seen in a Passion. He had a respect for the Senators, kindness for the People, an esteem for Good Men, an indifference for all the Honours that are paid to Sovereigns; and in a word, was so Beneficent, that the *Romans* were wont afterwards to wish their Emperors the good Fortune of Augustus, and the Goodness of Trajan.

(d) Hadrian the Son of *Ælius Hadrianus*, and of *Domitia Paulina*, a Native of the Isle, or of the City of *Gades*, (e) was born *Ann. Dom. 77*, and married *Julia Sabina*, the Daughter of *Marciana*, Trajan's Sister. *Plotina*, Trajan's Widow loved Hadrian, who was at that time in Syria with an Army; and thro' the Passion which she had for him, she conceal'd her Husband's Death; and in the mean time wrote Letters to the Senate, to inform them that the Emperor had adopted *Publius Ælius Hadrianus*. At the same time she required the Adoption to be confirmed, and the Senate failed not to do it.

B 3

In

(d) In *Numis Lat. Sepissime. Hadrianus Augustus. In Gr. ΑΤΤΟΚΡΑΤΩΡ. ΚΑΙΣΑΡ. ΤΡΑΙΑΝΟΣ. ΑΔΡΙΑΝΟΣ.*

(e) *Gadira urbs & Insula in Oceano Angusta & Oblonga velut fascia & τῆς γῆς στεγὰς, id est, terræ collum; Steph. Byzant, sed valde fallitur, Calis enim a Cadis: Cadis autem a Gades, vel Gader. Gader vero lingua Punica, significat, Clausuram, Murum, Sepem, Rufus Avienus.*

*Pænus* quippe *Gadir*, locum vocat undique septum *Schindler Lexico 283. Buxtorf Lex. Chald. & Syriaco, p. 80. Reinesius, p. 25. Lingue Punicæ, c. 8.*

In the beginning of his Reign he visited the best Provinces of the Empire, *France, Germany, England*, where he caused a Wall with Forts to be made Fourscore Miles in Length, against the Barbarous Northern People, the better to secure the Garrison against the Natives. He returned into *France*, went into *Spain*, passed from *Sicily* into *Africk, Arabia, Egypt, Greece*; and at length returned to *Rome*. But having caused *Jerusalem* to be Rebuilt, which then took the Name of *Ælia*; and dedicated to *Jupiter Olympius*, a Temple, which had been before Consecrated to God, and Peopled the City with Strangers; the *Jews* began to Revolt under the Conduct of *Barcochebab*, that is to say, the Son (f) of a Star, or *Barcoceba*, because he was of *Chocaba* in *Galilee*. The *Jews* afterwards called him *Bar-cosibba*, the Son of a Lye, because he gave out that he pretended that he was the *Messiah*, and that he would Recover all *Judea* out of the hands of the *Romans*. He was Slain in this Rebellion; and there were above Six hundred Thousand *Jews* who were Slain in this War. *Hadrian* to Revenge himself on those who Remained, banished them all from *New Jerusalem*, and prohibited them to come near it, only by way of consolation, he gave them Liberty to appear before the Walls of it once a Year, namely on the Day that it was destroyed by *Titus*. He caused a Hog to be cut in Marble, and to be set on the Gate which led to *Bethlehem*, because this Creature was an abomination to the *Jews*.

After this War *Pharasmanes* the King of *Iberia*, who was not well pleased with this Emperor, made some Inroads into *Armenia* with the *Alains* or *Massagetes*. But this first fire lasted not long, and *Pharasmanes* held it a great honour to go to *Rome* with his Wife and Children, to be Confirmed in his Kingdom by the Senate, and by *Hadrian*, who on several occasions gave instances of Cruelty,

---

(f) *Allust ad illud Num c. 14. v. 17. Orietur stella ex Jacob, & consurget De Bardochabo, Joh. Benedictus, Carp-zow ad Schickard, De Jure Regio, Ebraor. p. 310, 479, 480.*

elty, of Clemency and Justice. He was a great Painter, a good Carver, a good Physician, a great Geometrician, Astronomer, Architect, but so jealous of the Reputation and the Merit of Men who were Skill'd in those things on which he valued himself, that it was as much as any Man's life was worth to Excel him therein.

He extreamly dishonoured himself by the passion which he had for (g) *Antinous* of *Bithynia*, whose Statue is yet to be seen, which our Painters, thro their ignorance name *Lantinus*, and which was found in the Pontificate of *Leo X.* in this Emperor's Baths. He violently loved this beautiful boy, who was unfortunately drowned in the *Nile*, or who, as some say, devoted himself in a Sacrifice wherein this Emperor would use humane Blood. That which is certain, is, that after his death *Hadrian*, caused a City in *Thebais* to be called after his Name, that he Dedicated a Magnificent Temple to him, that to comfort him under this loss, the *Egyptians* placed this infamous Person among their (b) Gods, which were no better than himself; and that in *Arcadia*, the Inhabitants of *Mantineia* Celebrated his Festival every Year. The *Grecians*, who were never at any cost for *Metamorphoses*, added also, that his Soul was changed into a Star: and nothing was omitted that might alleviate *Hadrian's* great Grief. At last he was afflicted with a continual dysentery, which made life a burden to him, and of which he dyed the second of *July*, A M. 4109, A D. 131. He lived Sixty two Years, Five Months, and nineteen Days: Reign'd Twenty Years, ten Months, and Twenty nine Days, and just as he was Expiring, Rehearsed Five Verses, which shew that he was not over well satisfied about the State of the next Life.

Some have preferred him to *Trajan*; and there is no doubt but he had much the advantage of him, in regard of his understanding, which was capable of

B 4

every

(g) *De Antinoo. Agonistic. l. 3. c. 27.*

(b) *Insc. ANΤΙΝΟΩ ΣΤΗΘΡΟΝΩ ΤΩΝ ΕΝ ΑΙΓΥΠΤΩ ΘΕΩΝ Ν. ΟΥΛΑΠΙΟΣ ΑΠΟΛΛΟΝΙΟΣ. ΠΡΟΦΕΤΗΣ.*



every Thing; of his knowledge; of the Ease he gave the Provinces in remitting to them 22500000 Crowns; of some other bountiful actions of the like nature, and of the care which he took to visit all the Provinces of the Empire, which he secured against the incursions of the Barbarous Nations, and against the avarice of their Governours. But he came much behind him, if we consider him in his Easiness to give credit to false reports, and to condemn those on whom he had heap'd riches; in his inconstancy to his friendships; in the unevenness of his humour; in his dissimulation and his jealousies, in his cruelties, and the Mortal Envy which he had to all those, who were either more famous or more skillful than himself, in those Arts to which he pretended. It is observ'd in *Spartian*, that he wrote, dictated, heard, and conversed with his Friends at the same time, and that he repeated a Book by heart, after he had read it, altho' he never read it before. But what skill soever in some Arts and Sciences is attributed to him, we have reason to doubt of the delicacy of his taste, who prefer'd *Cato* to *Cicero*; *Ennius* to *Virgil*; and *Antimachus* of Colophon, to *Homer*.

*Florus* Lived in the Reign of *Trajan* and *Hadrian*. He made an Abridgment of the *Roman History*, and not of *Livy's*, as some Authors have written, for in many things, he is contrary in his opinion to the other. This Author hath divided his Abridgment into four Books, hath begun with *Romulus*, and come down to the time that *Augustus* shut the Temple of *Janus*, after he had suppress'd the Revolt of the *Spaniards*: which space according to *Lucius Florus* himself contains 700 Years. He was a Native of *Spain*; of the Family of the *Annei*, which was that of the *Seneca's*. His Stile is Entirely Poetick, and he sometimes falls into trifles thro' affectation, as *Grevius* hath observed.

(i) *Antoninus* the Son of *Aurelius Fulvius* the Consul, and of *Arria Fadilla*, Daughter to *Arrius Antoninus*,  
and

---

(i) *Spartianus in Hadriano. Numi ATT. K. TI AIA. AΔP. ANTΩNENOΣ.*



and to *Bovina Procilla*, was born in the Consulship of *Domitian* and of *Cornelius Dolabella*, A. M. 4058, or according to others, 57, A. D. 87. He was surnamed the *Pious*, for saving those whom *Hadrian* had condemned during his sicknesses, for preventing that Emperor's killing himself in despair; for Loving all his Relations with tenderness, or looking upon all his Subjects as his Children, and his Empire as his Family; or, as *Pausanias* saith, because there was no Religion which was not dear to him. (k) He had two Sons, and as many Daughters by *Faustina*, the Daughter of *Annius Verus*; and altho she had that criminal complaisance, to make him think of others, yet he kept her uot without murmuring. When *Hadrian* had declared *Lucius Casorius Commodus*, named afterwards *Lucius Aelius Verus*, for his successor, who dyed soon after this honour; he Adopted in his Stead *Titus Aurelius Antoninus*, on condition that he should himself Adopt *Annius Antoninus*, who was afterwards Named *Marcus Aurelius*; and *Lucius Antoninus* who Succeeded him. According to *Capitolinus's* Character of him, he was Handsome, Courteous, Sober, Complaisant and Liberal; had a majestick Air, a cleat Wit, noble Sentiments, and an even Temper. He Defeated the *Brittains* by his Lieutenants; Repelled the Moors as far as Mount *Atlas*; Reduced *Aegypt* and *Achaia* to their Duty; and died the 17th of March, A. M. 4132, A. D. 162, at the Age of 75 Years, after he had Reigned 23 or 24.

Some believe that under *Antoninus Pius*, *Justin* made his Historical Abridgment, taken out of the 40 Books that *Trogus Pompeius* had written under *Augustus* and *Tiberius*. He comprehends 2000 Years from *Ninus* the First Founder of the *Assyrian* Empire, to the Reign of the Emperour *Augustus*; and as he hath committed considerable Errors in Chronology, it is believed that these Errors were not in the Original. This Author was a long time confounded with *Justin* the Martyr; but besides

---

(k) *De Antonino & filiis* Thomas Reinesius Varius Lektion  
l. 2. c. 12.

sides that the latter wrote in *Greek*, and this in *Latin*, what he saith of *Moses* in his 26th Book, shews that he was neither Jew nor Christian.

*Antoninus* (to whom the Moderns have given the surname of the *Philosopher*, because he was thoroughly versed in Philosophy) the Son of *Annius Verus*, and of *Calvilla*, Daughter to *Calvisius Tullus*, who had been twice Consul, married *Faustina* the Daughter of *Antoninus Pius*, and Grand-daughter of *Hadrian*; gave his Daughter *Lucilla* in Marriage to *Lucius Antoninus Verus*: and by this means, the Copartner in the Government, became his Son-in-law. Notwithstanding *Faustina* was publick enough in her Adulteries, he would yet still dissemble it in Modesty and Policy; and carried himself so handsomely towards *Lucius Antoninus Verus*, that the latter took the Principal Measures of his Conduct by a just Gratitude, and a fear of displeasing him. This was the first time that there were two Emperors of Rome: and it is a Miracle, that the Government being in Common to them, and their Inclinations so contrary, Ambition and Jealousy did not break the good Understanding that was between them.

*Lucius Verus* went against *Vologeses*, the King of the *Parthians*, who had seized upon *Armenia*; and altho' instead of making War, he committed continual Debauchery in this great Journey, his Lieutenants put the King to flight, pursued him to *Seleucia*, *Ctesiphon*, and *Babylon*, and in the End took all their Provinces. *Calpurnius Agricola* was sent against the *Brittains*, who had Revolted; and as these two Emperors were going themselves against the *Marcomanni*, who were the Inhabitants of *Silesia*, *Moravia*, and *Bohemia*, *Lucius Antoninus Verus* died of an Apoplexy, A. M. 4140. A. D. 170. and the 9th of his Reign.

From this time *Marcus Antoninus* reign'd alone, and continued the War against these People, who were assisted by their Neighbours, and when the Army which had been oppressed with Thirst five whole Days, and also shut up in the Streights of the Mountains was reduc'd to Extremity A. D. 175. the *Præfect* of the *Prætorium* told the Emperor, that the Christians obtain'd of Heaven

Heaven whatsoever they desired, and that a Company of the 12th Legion were Christians. Upon this Assurance, *Marcus Antoninus* gave Order to all the Soldiers of that Company to pray to their God ; and they had no sooner prayed on their Knees, but a refreshing Rain fell on these Streights where the Troops were, wherewith their Thirst was quenched ; but their Enemies had nothing but Hail and Thunder. *Onuphrius Panuvinus* saith, that the Legion in which this Company was, for this reason was call'd the (1) Thundering Legion, but this is a Mistake, for it received that Name from the Thunderbolt which was painted on their Bucklers, and was known by this Name in *Trajan's* time, and this Author in another place owns, that it owed its Establishment to *Augustus*.

*Marcus Antoninus*, who by this means vanquished the *Quadi* and *Marcomanni*, suffered all the Christians to be quiet, for fear, least being exasperated by cruel Usage, they should with their Prayers draw the Thunderbolts of Heaven on the *Romans*. After the Benefit he had received from them, he permitted them the free Exercise of the Religion they profess'd : And indeed, this Emperor had Qualities for a Saint, had he himself embraced the same Religion. He died in *Pannonia* the 17th of *March*, Aged 59 according to some, or 61 Years, *A. M.* 4151. *A. D.* 181, after he had Reign'd 19 Years, and 11 Days. *Arrian* lived under the Emperors, *Antoninus* the Pious, and *Antoninus* the Philosopher. He is the same who wrote Commentaries on the little Abridgement of *Epictetus's* Philosophy, and was raised to the Dignity of a Consul. He was of *Nicomedia* in *Bythinia*, now call'd *Comidia* by the *Europeans* : and of all the History that he wrote, we have but the Seven Books of *Alexander's* Conquests, with the Eighth, which treat in particular of *India*. His Style is Concise and Intelligible ; and he hath so happily imitated that of *Xenophon*, that he was thence surnamed *Young Xenophon*.

(m) Au-

---

(1) *Dio Scaliger ad Euseb ad Num.* 2188. *Lipsius Analect. ad Militian Rom.* l. 2. *Dial.* 5. *Baronius ad an.* 676. *scilicet.* 18, 19.

(m) *Aurelius Commodus*, Son of *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus*, and of *Faustina*, was the handsomest and the cruellest of Mankind: and when *Antoninus* begot this Monster, he did all the Evil he could do. His Friends had no sooner presented him to the Soldiers, but they proclaimed him Emperor: and thro' Impatience to be at Rome, he was Coward enough to make Peace with the *Marcomanni*, and other Nations, whom he might have subdued. He out-did *Caligula*, *Nero*, and *Domitian*, and had he been contented with 300 Boys, and 300 Women, he had at least let the rest of the World have been quier. But he put to Death his Wife *Crispina*, his Sister *Lucilla*, who had been Wife first to *Lucius Verus*, and afterwards to *Pompeianus*, and was suspected to have made use of Physicians to Poyson his Father. The most faithful Ministers of the last Reign were Massacred, the most Venerable of the Senators were his Victims: and if he found any one who had a great Belly, he had him cut thro' the Middle at a stroke, and took Pleasure in seeing his Entrails. He condemned a Man to Death for reading the Life of *Caligula*, written by *Suetonius*; and at the Age of 12 Years, finding the Water of his Bath luke-warm, he ordered the Bath-keeper to be thrown into a Furnace of Fire. As he threw a Dart well, and was an Excellent Marksman with the Bow and Arrows, He sometimes kill'd a Hundred Wild Beasts in one Day, amongst which were Lyons, Tigers, Bears, and Elephants; and at last cast his Darts, or shot his Arrows at the People, to Crown so fine a shew. He eat sometimes in the Habit of a Woman in the *Amphitheatre*, where he dress'd himself after the manner that *Mercury* is painted, and went afterwards and acted the Gladiator, kill'd all who spared him, fought Seven Hundred Thirty Five Times; gain'd by his Combats a Thou-

---

(m) In Numis & Lapidib. modo, L. Aurelius Commodus. Modo, M. COMMODUS ANTONINUS. Modo, M. AELIUS AURELIUS. COMMODUS ANTONINUS. *Goltzius in Thesaur c. 4. p. 81. & 82. Alius item M. COMM. ANT. P. FEL. AUG. BRIT. Patinus in Thesaur. p. 74.*



Thousand Palmes; and boasted that he had slain Twelve Thousand Men with his Left-hand. For these great Exploits he chose Titles for himself, and used these when he wrote to the Senate, *The Emperor Cæsar, Lucius, Aelius, Aurelius, Commodus, Augustus, Pius, Felix, Sarmaticus, Germanicus, Maximus, Britannicus, Pacificator, Invincibilis, Romanus, Hercules, Pontifex Maximus, The Father of the Country*, and would give to every Month, whose Name he thought fit to change, some one of these Titles. But this Invincible one at the age of thirty one Years, and 4 Months, after he had Reigned Twelve Years, Nine Months and Fourteen Days, according to *Dio*, was poyson'd by (n) *Marcia* the most Considerable of his Mistresses, whom he had designed to put to Death; and when he vomited up the Poyson he had taken, he was Strangled by a Wrestler, named *Narcissus*, in the beginning of the Year 194. He had a Body well proportioned, an extraordinary fine Shape, a great Air, a handsome Countenance, thick and flaxen Hair, and fire and sweetness in his Eyes.

(o) *Publius Helvius Pertinax*, was the Son of *Helvius Successus*, (who was a Merchant as some say, or got his living by burning of Bricks, according to others) his Wife was *Flavia Titiana*, the Daughter of *Flavius Sulpicianus*; his Mistress was *Cornificia*, who was much more faithful to him then his Wife. He taught the first Elements of Grammar in *Liguria*; where he succeeded his Master *Apollinaris Sidonius* in this Employment, which he soon changed for Arms, and was gradually raised thro' all Offices to that of a General. What he did in the East, in *Brittany*, and in *Germany*, gave him Reputation with *Marcus Antoninus* the Philosopher, and *Commodus*; and his Virtue was so great, that *Electus*, and *Lætus* Colonel of the Guards, who had joined with *Marcia* in the Death of their Emperor, esteemed him the worthiest Person to command the World. These two Officers, having drawn some Persons of their Acquaintance to their Party,

(n) Vid ad Lamprid. Casaub. & Salmas. Baron. in an. 194. Scalig. ad Euseb. n. 2208.

(o) Num. IMP. CÆS. P. HELV. PERTIN. AUG. de Nomine Pertinax Salmas. & Casaub. ad Jul. Capitolin.



Party, went by Night to find *Pertinax*, who thought at first that they came thither to Assassinate him ; they owned to him to free him from all Jealousy, that they had at last got rid of the Tyrant, and presented *Pertinax* to the whole Army, who received him for their Emperor. This Election pleased the Senate, and all the People upon the News of it. returned thanks to the Gods in their Temples for it. But when he would immediately reform the State ; Ease the Provinces of the Imposts wherewith they had been burthen'd, expel the Common Accusers out of *Rome* ; keep the Troops to their Duty ; and too precipitately redress all the Abuses which had crept into the Militia, which he might have effected with time, the Souldiers in great Companies rush'd into his Palace, and Assassinated him. He died at the Age of Sixty Seven Years, and reigned not full Three Months. *Electus*, who was at that time near him, did his utmost to defend and save him ; wounded some of his Murderers, kill'd two of them, and was at last kill'd by the rest. But that which was more surprizing, was, that the Soldiers who had cut off the Head of so great a Prince, and who had carried it into the Camp, where they fortified themselves, caused some Insolent Fellows to mount the Rampart, and Proclaim, *That the Empire was to be sold*. *Sulpicianus* a Consular Person, and who was Prefect of *Rome*, and Father-in-law to *Pertinax*, would have bought it, but the Soldiers being Jealous of him upon the Account of that Allyance, and he not having Money enough, *Julian* who offered a great deal more, and who boasted that he was much richer than he, carried it from him. *Pertinax* had curled Hair, and wore a long Beard, good Features, and the Air of a Person of Quality. He was Learned, Eloquent, Brave, Covetous, and Severe, and would not suffer the Title of *Cesar* to be given to his Son, because he did not yet deserve it ; nor the Title of *Empress* to his Wife, because he knew that she was lewd.

(p) *Didius Julianus*, Son of *Petronius Didius Severus*,  
and

---

(p) *Didii Jul. Genus e lapidib. Thomas. Reinseus ostendit, l. 3. Variar. Lect. c. 2. p. 342, 343. C. Adam Rupert.*

*Observat. in Synopsis Besoldi Minor. c. 14. p. 336. Salmas. & Casaub. ad Spartiani Julian.*

and of *Æmia Clara*, or *Vibia Salvia Vars*, had for his Wife *Manlia Scantilla*, who was very Unhandsome, but by whom he had a Daughter who was a Beauty, named *Didia Clara*, who was married to *Cornelius Rentinus*, afterwards Governour of *Rome*. Before *Julian* came to the Empire, he had born the Offices of Treasurer, *Ædile*, *Prætor*, Collonel, Governour of *Dalmatia*, of the Lower Germany, of Consul with *Helvius Pertinax*, and succeeded him in that of Proconsul of *Africk*. Whilst he flattered the People with his Gifts, *Septimius Severus*, who commanded an Army in *Pannonia*, *Albinus*, who had one in the Isle of *Brittain*, *Pescennius Niger*, who commanded another in *Syria*, and whose Government extended it self also to the Places that bordered on the *Euphrates*, resolved to Dispossess him, and each of them proposed to himself to fill his Place. (q) *Pescennius Niger*, who was declared Emperor by his Army, and who assured himself that all the People, and the whole Senate would approve of this Election, took no farther care but to divert himself in *Antioch*, whilst *Severus* who had engaged the Army of *Illyria* to his own Interest, acquainted *Albinus*, that he would receive him for his Co-partner in the Empire, and consequently for his Successor. *Albinus* flattered with these Offers, rested satisfied with these Hopes, and would not leave *Brittain*.

In the mean while *Severus* marched with his Army into *Italy*, on the plausible Pretence of revenging the Death of *Pertinax*; heard nothing but publick Acclamations in his March; solicited the Punishment of the Murderers of this Prince, and the Death of *Julian*. As there was no room for farther Consideration, because *Severus* was by far the Strongest, the Senate gave Judgment against *Julian*, who being deserted by his Servants, his Friends, and his Soldiers, was slain by a Collonel after he had Reigned Sixty Six Days. *Severus* being

(q) *Namur Gr. ΑΤΤ. Γ. ΠΕΚ. ΝΙΡΡΟΣ. ΛΟΙΣΤΟΣ. ΣΕΒ.*

being informed that the Senate had dispatched *Julian*, and chosen him Emperor, gave Orders that they should send the Soldiers of the Guards to him without their Arms, that is to say, in the same Condition as they were wont to march before the Emperor in Sacrifices, and on Festivals. He no sooner saw them, but he reproached them with their Ingratitude, their Avarice, and their Cruelty; banished them all, and caused them to be stript with Infamy. After this he made his Entry into *Rome*, where he paid Divine Honours to *Pertinax*, esteemed it an Honour to bear his Name, which was given him by the Senate, and all the People, and he might bear it without shame, since the Memory of this Prince was dear to him, and he had contributed to make him a God. He was Cunning and Dissembling, Deceitful, and Revengeful, Indefatigable in Labour, daring to attempt every Thing, and had an extraordinary strength of Mind.

---

## CHAP II.

*Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastical History, and the Prophane.*

Under *Nerva*.

**ST. John** returned to *Ephesus*, A. D. 98. The Care of the Aquæducts was given to (a) *Julius Frontinus*, whose Works are well known to Men of Learning. *Cornelius Tacitus* was substituted Consul in *Nerva's* Reign; and some will have it, that he did not begin to write until *Trajan's*. His Annals treat of the last times of *Augustus*, and reach to the End of *Nero*, whose Twelve Years

---

(a) *Hieronymo Magio* l. 4. *Miscel.* c. 1. *Julius Frontinus*, *Maximus Geometra*. *Gaspari Barthio* l. 2. *Adversar.* c. 12. *Serius & minime verbosus autor.* *Æliano de instruendis aciebus*, præfat ad *Divum Hadrian*. *Vir Consularis. De Scrupulis.* *Godescalcus Stewechius Comm.* ad l. 2. *vegetij. De Re Militari in fine.*

Years are lost. We have but Five of the Books of his History, and *Lipſius* believes that there are Ten lost. Indeed since they extend from *Galba* unto *Nerva* and *Trajan*, which makes at least 21 Years, it is probable that the greater part of these Books are lost, for the Five which we have, scarce contain more than what passed in one Year. This Author is call'd by some *the most wicked of Writers*, and *Petavius* is of *Budæus's* opinion in this. He interprets every thing in an ill sense, wherein he hath been imitated by *Guichardin*; and what may have been most wicked in an affair, he doth not fail to publish. If he is a great Enemy to the *Christians*, he is not more favourable to the *Jews*. He penetrates into the Secrets of the Cabinet with wonderful dexterity; fills his Work with many Politick and dangerous maxims; is obscure, and no less Sententious than *Thucydides*. But his Sentences are taken from his Subject; and he describes things with such art, that a word can't be lost without losing the thing.

#### Under Trajan.

The Evangelist *St. John* being 89 Years old, or 91 according to others, dyed at *Ephesus* A. D. 100. *St. Ignatius* Bishop of *Antioch*, and the Disciple of *St. John*, was carried to *Rome*, and there exposed to Wild Beasts, in the Year of our Salvation 109: and in 115 was raised *Trajan's Pillar*, which is to be seen at *Rome*.

*Cerintus* and *Papius*, Bishop of *Hierapolis*, which is between *Phrygia* and *Lydia*, were First who gave occasion, by some passages of Scripture, to the Sect of the *Millenarius*, who attribute to our Saviour *Jesus Christ* a Temporal Kingdom of a 1000 Years, grounded upon the 4, 5, and 6th verses of the 20th ch. of the *Revelations*, viz. *And I saw the Souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, nor his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands, and they lived with, and reigned with Christ a 1000 years. But the rest of the dead lived not again until the 1000 years were finished. This is the first Resurrection. Blessed and*

C

boly



holy is he that hath part in the first Resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be Priests of God, and of Christ, and shall reign with him a 1000 years. You may consult the Ancients and Moderns who have wrote upon this Subject.

It was also under this Emperor, that *Anacletus* was Established Bishop of Rome. *Eusebius* saith, that *Cerdo* Bishop of *Alexandria*, dying about the 12th. Year of *Trajan's* Reigo, *Primus* the 4th. Pastor of the same Church after the Apostles, succeeded him: that *Evaristus* who had governed the Church of Rome 8 Years, dying also about the same Time, was succeeded by *Alexander*, who was the Fifth from *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*. The famous Rhetorician *Dion* (b) of *Prusias* in *Bithynia*, surnamed *Chrysostron* Son of *Paticrates*, was so much beloved by *Trajan*, that he made him Sit with him in the same Chariot in which the Emperors were wont to Triumph.

*Cornelius Celsus*, of whom we have Eight Books of *Medicine* in very fine Latine, born under *Augustus*, or under *Tiberius*, and according to others, under *Caligula*, lived also in this Emperor's Time.

#### Under *Hadrian*.

In the Year of our Lord 126. *Quadratus* Bishop of *Athens*, who was a Disciple of the Apostles, and *Aristides*, presented the Excellent Apologys which they had made in behalf of the Christian Religion and the Christians: and *Telesphorus* and *Hyginus* who were of Greece; *Pius* of *Aquileia*, and *Anicetus* of *Syria*, all Four Bishops of Rome, were according to *Onuphrius*, put to death.

The Lawyers *Neracius Priscus*, *Domitius Labeo*, and *Salvianus Julianus*, *Euphrates*, *Suetonius* Secretary to this Emperor, The Chronologist *Phelegon*, *Claudius Aelianus*,  
Justin

---

(b) De *Dione cognomento Chrysostron*; *Europ. in vitis Philosoph. ab initio*: *Synes. ex Philostr. Laurent. Rhodoman. Hypemnemal. In Troicam Dionis Chrysostr. expeditio nem.*

*Justin the Philosopher* ; ( c ) *Akilas*, or *Aquilas*, according to some *Hadrian's Wife's Brother*, *Rabbi Akifa*, acquired great reputation in these Times.

The Church which had been persecuted under this Emperor, was also troubled with dreadful Heresies, most of which sprang from those of *Simon the Magician*, who offered the Apostle's money for the gift of the Holy Ghost. He was of *Gitta in Samaria*, and was the first Heretick after our Saviour's Death, who boasted that he was the Messiah. He believed neither the Trinity, nor the Resurrection of the flesh, nor the Incarnation. He authorised all Marriages, and all Sins; affirmed that *Jesus Christ* had not suffered; that the World was Created by Angels, and that the Prophets had not the knowledge of the True God. Without aggravating his impieties, I shall only say, that *Basilides* who was *Menander's Disciple*, as well as *Saturninus*, and who Lived in *Hadrianus's* Reign, maintain'd, That the Faithful in Times of Persecution might lawfully deny God, that all manner of Pleasures were lawful, and that the Soul passed from one Body into another. *Carpocrates* who was a great Platonist, and Author of the Sect of the *Gnosticks*, ( d ) was much of the same opinion with *Basilides*, and yet more dangerous than he, by affirming that Sin is a thing necessary to Perfection; seeing the Soul which is without Crime cannot be purified. I may here by the way observe, that as to *Simon Magus*, *Justin the Martyr* hath made a gross mistake, when in his Apology for the Christians he saith, that *Simon of Samaria* was so highly Esteemed by the Romans; that in *Claudius's* Reign, they Erected a Statue to him betwixt

C 2

the

---

( c ) *De Aquila & Onkeloso Buxtorf de Abbreviatur. Heb. p. 120 & 107. Helvic. De Chaldaic Paraphr. c. 2. p. 6. Hottinger. lib. Thesaur. Philolog. c. 3. Sect. 1. p. 257. & Seqq. Leusden Philolog. Hebraeomixto Dissert. 6. p. 44. Pfeiffer. De Targumim. c. 4. Th. Vorstius Observat ad Chronol R. David Ganz. p. 290.*

( d ) *Gnosticos nonnulli Deum Sabaoth asini figura expresserunt. vid ad Minucium Fel. Ouzelius, p. 53. & 54.*

the two Bridges with this Inscription, To Simon (e) the Saint.

Under Antoninus Pius.

*Sixtus* Bishop of Rome, was put to death under his Reign anno 140, and some place the Martyrdom of *Telapborus* not till the year 152.

*Gellius Pausanias*, *Maximus of Tyre*, *Galen* the Physician, who lived also under *Aurelius Commodus*, and under *Pertinax*; *Hegesippus* the Jew, who was Converted, and who wrote what had passed from the *Maccabees* to his own time; *Appian of Alexandria*, were then in great Esteem.

*Valentine of Egypt*, and *Cerdon of Pontus*, made themselves known by their *Heresies*. The former believed that Jesus Christ had been Incarnate in Heaven: that he had passed thro' the Virgin as Water thro' a Channel. That God is the Author of Evil, because Evil is Natural to the Creature, which was afterwards the belief of the *Manichees*. That there were three sort of Men, the *Spiritual*, saved by Faith; the *Natural*, saved by Works; and the *Material*, who could never be saved. *Cerdon*(f) held, That there were two Gods, one of Mercy, whom he called *Good*, the Father of Jesus Christ, and the Author of the Gospel; the other of *Justice* whom he called *Cruel*, and Creator of the World. He received the Law of *Moses* and the *Old Testament*, as the Works of the Cruel God; denyed the Resurrection of the Body, and the Humanity of Jesus Christ: said, that he was not

born

---

(e) Male SIMONI SANCTO legerat pro Semoni Sanco, longo & videantur Livius l. 8. c. 19. ubi de vitraavis vacco: Gregor. Gyal. Syntagm. Histor. Deorum Gentilium p. 19. & 44. Martinus in Sancus & Sanqualis. Joseph. Castalic Observat. Decad. 3. c. 10. Dallæus de Usu patrum, l. 1. c. 3. Vossius Etimolog. L. L. in voce Homo & Semis, &c.

(f) Cerdonionis & Marcionitis orti sunt Docetæ qui Christi non vere sed doctores tantum habuisse corpus, & in eo passum esse docuerunt.

born of the Virgin, and that he suffered not but in appearance.

Under *Marcus Antoninus*.

It was under his Reign that *Polycarp* was put to death, aged 80 Years, Bishop of *Smyrna*, and the Disciple of *St. John* the Apostle, anno 162, 60 Years after *St. John's* death; *Justin* the Philosopher in the Year 168; *Anicetus* Bishop of *Rome* 173.

*Vetius*, *Epagatus*; *Sanctus* the Deacon born at *Vienne*; (g) *Maturus Attalus* of *Pergamus*, a Roman Citizen; *Photinus* Bishop of *Lyons*, who was above 80 Years Old; *Ponticus* who was but 15; *Alexander* of *Phrygia* a Physician, and the Blessed *Blandina* and *Biblias*, dyed for the Christian Religion in the *Gaules*.

In these Times Flourished in the Church, *Theophilus* Bishop of *Antioch*; *Melito* Bishop of *Sardis*; *Apollinarius* Bishop of *Hierapolis*; *Irenaeus* Bishop of *Lyons*, and Disciple of *Polycarp*; and *Athenagoras* who anno 165. presented to *Marcus Antoninus*, and to *Lucius Antonius Verus* his Apology for the Christian Religion.

The Church was extraordinarily troubled with the Heresies of *Marcion* of *Paphlagonia*, who was the Disciple either of *Valentine* or of *Cerdon*; and who thought his abilities such, as gave him a right to add something New to what he had learned of his Master. Their principal opinions blended together were these, That there are two Gods, One Good, and the other Evil; That *Jesus Christ* did not suffer really. That he took his Body in Heaven, That all the Creatures were wicked. That the World is a Work not worthy of God; That Resurrection is a Chimæra. That the Law is just; but not good. That *Cain*, the *Egyptians*, and the Wicked, were saved when *Christ* descended into Hell. That on the contrary, *Abel*, *Enoch*, *Noah*, *Abraham*, and all the Just were damned. That those who have not been Baptised during their life, might be after their death. That a person might be Baptised thrice, and in case of necessity by Women. That Generation is not Lawful, and that the Soul only is to be saved. The disciples of



Marcion were *Lucian, Apelles, Potit, Blasius Sincerus, Basilicus, Prempon, Pytho, Hermogenes, Phenion, Borborus, Stration*, whence came the *Apellians, the Borborions, or Barbolioes the Stratiotines, &c.*

*Hermogenes* the Rhetorician, and *Polienus* who wrote of *Stratagems*, lived under this Emperor. The former was not Eighteen years old when he composed a Rhetorick, which was the delight and the admiration of the World: and at Eighty Years he (g) doted to that degree, that he Remembered nothing.

### Under Commodus.

*Eleutherius* Bishop of Rome, to whom succeeded *Victor* of *Africk*; *Dio Cassius* the Historian, of *Nicea* in *Bythinia*; *Aristides* who wrote the Orations, *Julius Pollux*, and *Lucian* of *Samofata*, lived in his Reign.

*Apollonius*, who according to some was a Senator, was beheaded for the Christian Religion in the Year 188.

*Pantenus* Master to *Clemens Alexandrinus*, was in Esteem. There were many Synods of Bishops to Regulate the Observation of the Paschal Feast, or *Easter*, which by the *Eastern* Christians, was fixed on the 14th day of the Moon; and by the *Western*, on the Day of the Resurrection of our Saviour. *St. Victor* who seemed with too great Zeal to defend the Opinion of the latter, Excommunicated the others; and was reprehended for it by *St. Irenaeus* Bishop of *Lyons*; who represented to him, that they ought not to make a separation upon the account of certain Ceremonies, when they held the same Faith entire. This Schism which extended it self as far as the Isle of *Great-Brittain*, whose Inhabitants, as *Bede* saith, kept *Easter Day* in the 14th of *March*, continued in the Church till the first Council of *Nice*; where it was Decreed, That this Feast should for the future, be Celebrated Every where on the Sunday.

The same Church which had two Versions of the Bible,

(g) *Philostatus* in *Sophists*. Hinc *Ἐκφορῶντες ἐν παλαιῇ αἰνῇ γίγνον, ἐν δὲ γίγναι παλῆς.*

Bible, that of the *Septuagint*, and that of *Akilas*, (*b*) or *Onkelos*, had also one of *Theodotion's*, who had been Disciple of *Tatian*; and from the same *Tatian* who had Studied under *Justin* the Martyr, and who became a great Heretick, it was, that the *Tatiani* took their Name, who were also called *Encratite*, Sober or Continent, and *Hydroparestatæ* because they drank nothing but Water, and made use of it in the Lord's Supper. They condemned the Law of *Moses*; the use of Flesh, and of Wine; denied that God Created Man and Woman; and that Jesus Christ was of the Posterity of *David*; believed that begetting of Children was the work of Satan: However, they permitted People, altho' with scruple, to Marry once. They affirmed also that, *Adam* after his Fall, was not restored to God's Favour, and that, themselves excepted, the Children of *Adam* were generally damned without remedy. At this Time Lived (*i*) *Jebudab*, surnamed *Hakkadosch*, or the Saint, and *Al Naschi*, or the Prince, or Head of the School which was in *Palestine*. He was the Son of Rabbi *Simeon*, and was born the same Day that the Famous Rabbi *Akiba* died, whence it is a saying among the Jews, That the Sun rose and set the same Day. To prevent the Extinction of Oral Tradition, he carefully sought all the Writings of the Rabbins; out of which he afterwards composed the *Talmud*, which is nothing else

C 4

but

---

(*b*) Rabbi *Azarias* scribit: Qui *Babylonix* dialecto *Onkelos* dicitur, is *Hierosymitana* vocatur *Aquila*. Is *Vossius* in *Castigat. Georg. Hornii De ætate mundi*. Vidend. tamen *Hottinger. Dissert. Theologico-Philolog. fasciculo Dissertat. 3. Sect. 14. & seqq.* See others on the Paraphrase. *Bretewood* in his *Enquiries concerning Languages*. c. 9.

(*i*) De *Rabbenu Hakkadosch Rambam* in *Porta Mosis e Versione Pocockii* p. 35, 36. Rabbi *David Ganz* in *Tzemach David e Versione Gul. Henr. Vorstii* p. 106. & *Seqq.* De *Jochanane Joh. Buxtorf. Synagoga Judaica* p. 50, & 51. Jo. *Lausden. Dissert. de Talmude, &c.* *Genibrard* saith, that the *Jerusalem Talmud* was finished in 469, and the *Babylonian* in 497. See *Marsbam* in *Chronico Canone* p. 151. & *Seqq.* *Alting. De Hebræorum Repub. Scholastica, in Appendice, &c.*

but the Body of Doctrine ; and as I may say, the Civil and Canon Law of the *Jews* ; the Written Law, and the Explication of the same Law. They call this Latter the Law of *Oral Tradition* ; and say that it was delivered from God to *Moses*, to *Joshua*, to the 70 Elders ; from the 70 Elders to the Prophets ; from the Prophets to the Great Sanhedrim, from these to the most excellent Rabbins, by a continued Succession. This Law of *Oral Tradition* is so sacred with them, that they put no difference between it and the Written Law ; and they have much more regard to the decision of their Doctors, than to the Words of *Moses*,

There is a *Jerusalem Talmud*, Collected by *Johanan*, who finished it according to some, A. D. 300, or according to others 230, for the instruction and use of the *Jews* who were then in *Palestine*. As the Number of them was not very considerable, and this work did not clearly determine most matters, it hath not been in so great Esteem as the *Babylonish Talmud*, which was written for the sake of the *Jews* who were at *Babylon*, and also for those who were dispersed in other places. There are Two Parts of this Talmud ; the First *Misna*, which is the *Text*, or the *Second Law* ; the Second, the *Repetition* or *Interpretation* of the Written Law, which contains the *Oral Traditions* from *Moses* to Rabbi *Jebudah*, who had the care of Collecting it, and who lived under *Antoninus Pius*, whose favour he had got in the time of *Marcus Antoninus*, and under *Commodus*. It is divided into Six Parts, Each whereof, which is called *Order*, is divided into Treatises ; Each Treatise into Chapters ; and Each Chapter into *Misnas* or *Aphorisms*. The First Part treats of Seeds, Fruits, and Trees. The Second of Feasts. The Third of Women, of their Duties, their Diseases, of Marriages, of Divers Contracts, Espousals, and Divorces. The Fourth of Damages received by Beasts, or by Men ; of things found ; of things committed to Trust. Of Usury, of Rewards, of Farms, of Partnerships in Trade, of Inheritances, of Successions, of Purchases, of Sales, of Judgments, of Punishments, of Oaths, of Testimonies, of Decrees, of Idolatry, and of Those by whom the Law of *Oral Tradition* hath been received and

Book IV. of the WORLD. 25

and preserved. The Fifth part Treats of Sacrifices and Sacred Things: The Sixth of Purifications, of Vessels, of Moveables, of Habits, of Houses, of the Leprosy, of Baths, and so of the rest. *The Other Part* of the Talmud, which is called *Gemara*, that is to say, *Accomplishment* or *Perfection*, contains the Disputes and Opinions of the Doctors concerning *Oral Tradition* (k); and an absolute decision upon their Sentiments; and these two parts *Misna* and *Gemara* together, compose the *Babylonish Talmud*, which was finished (l) A. D. 400. or 500. according to some Authors, by Rabbi *Assè*, and which hath since served as the Rule to those who have, or who do yet profess Judaism. They have so great a Veneration for this Book, that they compare (m) the Scripture to Water, the Talmud to Wine; the Text of *Moses* to Pepper, the Talmud to Spices: and they affirm, that the Written Law cannot be understood but by That of *Oral Tradition*, upon which the former is founded. That of the twelve hours of which the days consist, God Employs Nine of them to Study in the Talmud, and only three in the Written Law.

---

(k) *De veritate legis Oralis Immanuel Aboab in Homol. Hisp.*

(l) *Traëtatu Sopherim* c. 15. Rabbi *Becchai* in locis communibus quibus præfixit titulum Kad. Hakkemah. Buxtorf in recensione Operis Talmudici & in *Synagoga Judaica*. c. 1.

(m) *Vid. Is. Vossius in Respont. ad object. Hulsi*, c. 20.

CHAP.



## CHAP. III.

*The Succession of Emperors unto Constantius the Pale, and to Galerius Maximus.*

(a) **SEVERUS** born at *Lepta*, which is the *Tripoli*, or *Napoli* of *Barbary*, Son of *Marcus Geta* a Roman Knight, and of *Fulvia*, had two Wives *Martia* and (b) *Julia* of *Syria*. By the First he had *Bassianus*; by the Second *Geta* (according to *Spartianus* and *Aurelius Victor*) and two Daughters. But these Two Historians are mistaken, as it is easy to shew from *Oppian*, *Xiphilin*, *Herodian* and *Philostratus*, who all affirm, that *Julia* was the Mother of these Two Princes. As for the Two Daughters, *Probus* Married the Eldest, and *Aerius* the Youngest.

After he had honour'd *Albinus* with the Title of *Cæsar*, and put his Effigies upon some pieces of Money which he had Coined, to take all jealousy from him, and to keep him in *England*, he Marched from *Rome* to make War upon *Pescennius Niger*. He defeated his Lieutenant General *Æmilianus* near *Cyzicum*, and the Inhabitants of *Nicomedia*. He drove *Niger* from the Mountain *Taurus* and gave him such a defeat in the plain of *Iffus*, that he was slain in his flight, and his head at the same time was carried to *Severus*. The City of *Byzantium* which had Endured a Siege of three Years, was forced to Surrender to him: and after he had subdued the *Parthians*, and some particular Nations of *Arabia*, and of *Assyria*, who had been in the interests of *Pescennius*, he considered that *Albinus* was the only Enemy he had to fear.

---

(a) *In Numis & Lapidib.* SEPTIMIUS SEVERUS PERTINAX. I. Gem. L. SEPT. SEV. AUG. IMP. V. PARAT. ARAB. COS. II. P. R.

(b) *In Num. Græc.* ΙΟΥΛΙΑ ΔΟΜΙΝΑ ΣΕΒΑΣΤΗ ΣΕΥΕΡΑ. Item *JULIA AUGUSTA* Videatur *salmas.* contra *Spartian & Tho. Reinesius* l. 2. *Voy. lect.* c. 12.

fear. Upon this consideration he undertook another expedition, and under some false pretence, he sent some persons to poyson him. But when *Albinus* perceived too late, that this Emperour had only flattered him with fair promises, to destroy him, he resolved to meet him and give him battel, and was defeated near *Lyons*. *Severus* having sent *Albinus's* Head to *Rome*, returned into the *East*, came back into *Europe*; passed into *England*, where he caused a Retrenchment to be made from one Sea to the other, of One hundred thirty two Thousand Paces; and dyed at *York* in the Year 212. These were his last Words, speaking to *Bassienus* and *Geta* who could never agree together, *Live friendly together, and be not much concerned about other things*. He had a great love for Philosophy, and also for polite Learning: and as he pardon'd not the least faults, by this Severity he made all his Officers diligent in their duty. But he used not this great severity to his Wife, whom he kept still, notwithstanding that he knew full well that she had disgraced herself by her debaucheries, and had been in a conspiracy against him. It cannot be denied, but that he had great Virtues and great Vices; and they said of him what was heretofore said of *Augustus*, *That it was pity that he was ever born, or that he ever dyed*.

*Antoninus Bassianus* was surnamed *Caracalla*, or *Caracalla*, from a long Garment after the Gaulish Fashion which he wore himself, or which he made the Soldiers wear according to *Dio*, or the People of *Rome* according to *Spartianus*, concerning which you may consult the interpreters. He first Married *Fulvia Plautilla* Daughter of *Plautianus*, Governour of *Rome*, and afterwards his own Mother *Julia*. She coming before him in a careless dress with a naked neck, and as he was struck with her beauty he only said, *I would willingly, were it Lawful for me, and she having no sooner answered, You may if you will, there is no Law for Emperors, but he made her his Wife*. His cruelty was such, that in *Great Britain* he drew his Sword to kill his Father: that he put to death all the Physicians, who would not hasten his Father's death by poyson: that he kill'd even in *Julia's* Arms, his Brother *Geta*, who was his Co-partner

in

in the Empire, and Reign'd but one Year and 22 Days: that *Julia* who was all over blood, and had her hand wounded, was forced to smile at it. He retired into the Camp in a fright, where he implored the Assistance of the Souldiers, as if *Geta* had had a design to Assassinate him: and he spared not the Daughter of *Marcus Antoninus*, who had lamented this Young Prince's Death; nor *Helvius Pertinax*, because he was an Emperor's Son. To divert himself after another manner, he caused to be interred alive, four Vestal Virgins, who were incomparably more worth than himself, altho' he would have Ravished one of them, named, *Claudia Leta*, or (as *Xiphiline* calls her) *Aquila Severa*, but was not able to do it, by reason of impotency; and this she intimated as she was carried to punishment, saying, *That there was no Person who knew better than himself, that she was a Virgin.* At this sight which struck horror into all, somebody having spoken something freely to another who drove his Chariot, the Barbarian was so transported with Rage at it, that he gave order to his Guards to fall upon all the People without distinction, and they made a horrible Slaughter among them. Being informed that the City of *Alexandria* called him *Oedipus*, and gave the Name of *Jocasta* to *Julia*, he dissembled this last Affront, and under pretence of seeing a City which had been founded by *Alexander*, whom he pretended to imitate, he Entred it, caused all the Youth to assemble in the Market-place, or in a great plain according to others, (having first given out that he design'd to form out of them a Phalanx or a Regiment, always to attend him) and after they were assembled, his Army cut them in pieces.

*Arduvan*, or *Artabanus*, found no better Treatment from him. This *Parthian* King who knew him, and who did not but thro' necessity grant him his Daughter whom he demanded in Marriage, as he said, having intelligence that he had already passed the *Euphrates*, resolved to go with all the the most honourable Persons of his Court, and his Kingdom, to meet him in a Plain. The perfidious Man who received them all with kindness, having perceived that they had laid aside their  
Bows

Bows and Arrows to rejoyce for this Alliance with the Romans, immediately gave the Signal, that they should fall upon them; and if Artabanus had not been thrown upon his Horse by his Guards, he had been Massacred with the rest. For this Action he would be Named *Parthicus*; and when Agbar, (c) or Acharus, who was an Ally of the Romans, went to receive him with Honour, he detain'd him, confin'd him to a Prison, and deprived him of his Kingdom.

The Memory of Alexander was so dear to him, that he Declared open War with all that were *Aristotle's* Sect, all whose books he would have burnt, because he had been suspected to have hastned that Conqueror's death. In imitation of him, he had *Elephants* always Led in his Train; and because a *Macedonian* Collonel was named *Antigonus*, and his Father was named *Philip*, he gave him the command of all the other Legions, made him a Senator, and raised him to the rank of *Prætorians*. Another named Alexander, being accused of several Crimes, *Bassianus* who heard the Accuser cry out, Alexander is a murderer, and a declared Enemy of the Gods, said in a rage, That if he went on to speak Ill of Alexander, he would command him to be put to Death. He compos'd a Phalanx of Sixteen thousand *Macedonians*, with Arms much like those which were in use in Alexander's time, that is to say, a Head-piece of Oxhide, a cast Buckler, a long Lance, a half-Pike and a Sword: and acquainted the Senate, that Alexander's Soul was Entred into his Body to finish therein what remained of his Life, because he had not before lived out his time. In another Letter, he highly extolled all his fatigues, reproached the Senators with their Laziness and Softness; and told them, that he knew well Enough, that what he did was not very agreeable

---

(c) *Male Casaub.* Agbar. *Regulorum etiam Edesse nomen.* Agbar h.e. Achar sive Magnus Pocock *Notis ad specimen Histor. Arab.* p. 76. Schickard in *Tarich Pers.* p. 163. Ezechiel Spanhemius de *Iresantia & usu Numism.* Dissert. 5 Sect. De *Cognominis Magni in variis nummis* p. 420. & seqq.



agreeable to them, but that he had Armies enough on Foot not to be concerned at those who did not praise his Conduct. When his Mother or Step-mother, who was his Wife, represented to him, that the State was not able to bear his profuse Expences, he answer'd her, putting his Hand upon the Hilt of his Sword, *My Mother fear nothing, we shall never want Money, as long as I have this Sword by my side.*

To describe him in few Words, it is sufficient to say, That after burthening all the Provinces with grievous Taxes, he declared that private Persons had no Money but what was his: That he put to Death to the Number of twenty Thousand Men: That he bought Poysons of all kinds, for prodigious Sums; and that *Martial*, when he kill'd him, saved the Lives of abundance of other People. In fine, when he was contriving New Murders, *Maternianus*, who was his Confident, advertis'd him from Rome, to be upon his Guard against *Opilius Macrinus*, to whom, being at that time very busy, he gave *Maternianus's* Letters to answer them if there was nothing considerable in them, or to report to him what was of greatest Importance; but he finding himself to be charged in them with a Crime of the highest Nature, concluded that he had not a Moment to lose, and thereupon spake to *Martial*, who was of *Caracalla's* Guards, and whose Brother he had caused to be put to Death, and engaged him so far by Promises, that *Martial* stab'd the Emperor thro' the Body as he was upon the Close-stool. *Bassianus* who had kill'd *Septimius Severus Antoninus Geta*, A.M. 4183, died, aged 29 Years A. D. 218. betwixt (d) *Edeffa* and *Carres*, two Cities of *Mesopotamia*; and *Martial*, who endeavoured to make his Escape, was run thro' by the Guards. *Macrinus*, who was well skill'd in Diffimulation, failed not to water with Tears, the Body of his Prince, which he caused to be burnt, and whose Ashes he took care to send to the Empress, who receiv'd them at *Antioch*, and thought that she ought not to Survive this dear Husband-son.

Bas-

(d) De Morte *Caracallæ*, *Dio*, *Eutrop*, *Cassanbon*, ad *Spartian Baron* in *Ann Chr.* 219. *Scaliger* ad *Euseb.* n. 2232.

## Book IV. of the WORLD. 31

*Bassianus* was little of Stature, almost bald; and of a Weak Constitution. He reigned Six Years and two Months.

(e) *Opilius Macrinus*, born at *Cæsarea*, heretofore call'd *Zol*, built by *Zuba* in *Mauritania*, had by his Wife, *Nonia Celsa*, a Son named *Diadumenus*, who was afterwards surnamed *Antoninus*. His Ancestors were very mean. All that can be said of him, is, that he was the Son of a Freed-man; was deformed both in Body and Mind; that he caused his Emperor to be murdered, and that the Accomplices of his Parricide got him chosen Emperor thro' the Necessity the Army was in of having some one to head them against *Ardwan*, who was wholly bent on revenging the Treachery of *Caracalla*. Three great Battels were fought betwixt them; but when *Opilius Macrinus* bought Peace of the *Parthians*, paid not his Soldiers the Mony which he owed them by Promise for Electing him, and bestowed upon infamous Pleasures in the City of *Antioch*, that time which the Affairs of the Empire required of him, he became Odious to his whole Army. At the same time *Julia Maesa* who had married *Julius Avitus*, a Consular Person, and who was Sister to the Empress *Julia Caracalla's* Mother, made a sudden Change in the State of Affairs. This Lady who had been banished by *Macrinus* to *Edeffa* the place of her Birth, who was grown excessively Rich, and was more over Magnificent, had two Daughters, one named (f) *Sobernis*, who was married to *Varius Marcellus*, and the other *Julia Mammea*. *Sobernis* was the Mother of *Bassianus*; the other of *Alexianus*, or *Alexander*, who was afterwards surnamed *Severus*. *Maesa* took extraordinary care of these two Children, whom she would herself choose to be Priests of the Temple which she had built and consecrated to the Sun: and whereas *Bassianus* was

---

(e) In *Numis*, IMP. CÆS. M. OPEL. SEV. MACRINUS. AUG. DIADUMENUS. M. OPI. ANT. ΔΙΑΔΟΥΜΕΝΙΑΝΟΣ. Item. M. OPEL. ANTONINUS, DIADUMENIANUS. CÆS.

(f) De *Julia* Aug. *Julia Maesa*, & *Soemias* vid. *Thomas Reinesius Epist.* 69.

was made Priest thereof at fourteen Years Old, his Beauty was so great, and his Habit so Rich (being dressed in a Gown glittering with Gold, and having a Crown set with precious Stones) that there was no *Phenician*, nor Foreigner, but who admired him. The *Romans* charmed with the good Mien, and the beauty of *Bassianus Elagabalus*, could not forbear going to see him, when *Maesa* published every where that he was the Son of *Caracalla* and *Sobemis*; and that *Macrinus* had Usurped the Empire which by right was his. The Soldiers were easily perswaded by her, because they already hated *Opilius Macrinus*, and the Memory of *Caracalla* was dear to them. She went farther, since she carried him by Night to the Camp where the Army lodged, and all received him for their Emperor. She liberally paid for this Election, and *Julian*, whom *Opilius Macrinus* had upon this News dispatched, with Forces to suppress this Revolt, was Assassinated. His Head which the Soldiers immediately caused to be carried to *Macrinus*, roused him out of his Drowsiness, and he was satisfied that he must quit *Antioch*, and resolve on a Battel. But he lost it, and was also pursued so close, that being met in *Bithynia*, he was slain there at the Age of 54 Years A. M. 4189. A. D. 219. with *Antoninus Diadumenus* his Son, after a Reign of one Year, two Months wanting three Days.

(g) *Marcus Antoninus Bassianus Varius Elagabalus*, born at *Emesa* of *Phenicia*, was the Son of *Bassianus Caracalla*, and of *Julia*; or according to others, of *Sobemis* (whom *Caracalla* had kept some time) the Daughter of *Maesa*, who had amassed incredible Wealth under his and *Severus's* Reign, and Sister of the Empress *Julia*. He had the Name of *Marcus Bassianus*, as 'tis believed, from *Marcus Bassianus Caracalla*, whose Son he boasted himself to be; that of *Antoninus*, because this Name was had in great Veneration with the *Romans*; of *Varius*, either from *Varius Marcellus* his Father, or from

Va.

---

(g) In Numis IMP. CÆS. M. AUR. ANTONINUS  
PIVS. AVG. Item. ATT. M. ATP. ANTONINOVS.

*Varia Maesa*, as *Capitolinus* observes, or as *Lampridius* saith, because *Sobemis* had divers Gallants, and that it was not improbable that he was her Son, which however I cannot easily believe. For my own part, I doubt not but that he had the Name of ( *b* ) *Bassianus* from his Grandfather *Bassianus*, a Native of *Phœnicia*, the Father of *Julia Domna*, and of *Maesa*. He was surnamed *Elagabal*, from *Elah*, or *Alah*, which signifies God, and from *Gabal* which signifies Bound, or Term: and as the *Phœnicians* named the Sun *Elagabal*, the God who Bounds or shuts in the Year, *Bassianus* had the Name of the God Sun, because he performed the Office of Priest in his Temple. There was a very Magnificent one in a City of *Phœnicia*, named *Gebal*, which was dedicated to the same God, whence they have called it the Place of *Gebal*, and the Curious may read the Authors ( *i* ) that have written upon this Subject. It is sufficient for me to say by the way, that this Emperour, called by the Greeks, *Eloigabalos*, *Elaigabalos*, *Eleagabalos*, and *Heliogabalos*, is called *Alyugali*, in the History of *Abulfaragius*, who adds, that the City of *Nicopolis*, which is the *Emmaus* of the Holy Scriptures, was built in his Reign, and that the Commission for it was given to *Julius Africanus* the Chronologer, but *Abulfaragius* is mistaken.

He had three Wives; *Cornelia Paula*, whom he divorced some time after, for *Aquilia Severa* a Vestal, because as he said, something of Divine must come from a Priest, and a Nun. He got rid of her to marry *Annia Faustina*, the Grand-daughter of *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus*, married to *Pomponius Bassus*, whom he put to Death upon a false Pretext, but in truth that he might freely possess his Widdow, to whom this Cruel Debauchee gave not time to wear Mourning, nor to la-

D ment

( *b* ) *Vid* *Valesius* ad *Excerpt. Pierefc.* p. 111, 112.

( *i* ) *Scaliger* ad *Euseb.* N. 2234 *Baron.* ad an. Ch. 220. *Fulherus* l. 1. *Miscel. Sacr.* c. 14. *Casaub.* & *Salmas.* ad *Lampridij, Heliogabal.* *Vossius* l. 2. de *Idololatria*, c. 5. *Bochart* in *Canaan.* *Höttinger* in *Epitome Ecclesiast.* parte prima, p. 112. *Selden* *Synag.* 2. de *D. is S, ris.*



ment him. To accustom the *Romans* to his Religion and his Habit, he caused his Statue to be made, and would have his own Picture drawn near the God whom he served, with a long Purple Robe, glittering with Gold and Jewels, with a Tiara upon his Head set with Diamonds, Rubies, and Emeralds. He sent this Picture to *Rome*, with an Express Command to the Senate, to place it in the highest place of the Court, even above that of Victory; to Sacrifice to him as often as they should meet, and to invoke *Elagabal*, who was a God the *Romans* had not known. When he was at *Rome* he built a Temple to the Sun, erected several Altars in it, upon which he Sacrificed every Morning Beasts in great Numbers; and a while after married this God to *Palas*. Being afterwards advised that the Sun possibly might not love a Goddess who was a Warriour, he caused the *Urania* which *Dido* had placed in a Magnificent Temple of *Carthage* to be brought thence, and gave out that he had married the Sun to the Moon. After this 'tis no wonder to find in a Medal of *Soemias* or *Sobemias Heliogabalus's* Mother, the Word *Cælestis*, seeing this Princess was a *Syrian*, and that this Goddess was adored in *Syria*. She was the Goddess of all Women, as *Abraham* testifies, who in his Commentary upon *Jeremiah*, styles her *Melecheth*, or the *Queen of Heaven*; and it was to the same, named also *Haschtoreth*, or *Astaroth*, *1 Kings* 11. 5. that *Solomon* Sacrificed to please his Concubines. She was in so great Veneration thro' the whole *East*, that the *Saracens*, who named her *Beeltesama*, or the *Queen of Heaven*, carry her on their Ensigns, and their in Arms in the form of a *Crescent*. For this is not done in Memory of the *Hegyra*, or the flight of *Mahomet*, as (\*) *Scaliger* hath supposed, seeing the *Saracens* worship-

---

(k) L. 2. De Emendat. Temp. 83 Canon. Isagog. vid. Kinchi ad Jud 21. 26. Joh. Frischmuth in מלכת השמים cap. 1. ad fin. Selden. de Dijs Syris Syntag. 2. c. 2. De Cabbar vid. etiam Catechesis Saracen. Euthymius Zygabenus in Panoplia, vel Elias Schedius de Dijs German. p. 140. Pocock Specim. Hist Arab. p. 111. & Seqq.

worshipped this Star long before his flight ; since they put little Moons upon their Camels ; and since this Custom passed from the *Ishmaelites* to the *Israelites*, who wore them up on their Heads and upon their Cloths, for an Ornament which the *Arabians* call *Cabar*, and which the Learned have Translated Moons.

Howsoever that be, *Elagabal*, who Sacrificed all the most Beautiful Children of *Italy* to his God, assigned Immense Sums to this *Urania* for her Dowry ; and required all the Cities of *Italy* to celebrate her Nuptials with great Solemnities. It is not easy to reckon up the Expences of this Emperor, since all his Moveables were of Silver or Gold ; and his Clothes, and even his Shoes, were set with precious Stones : since all the Waters wherein he bathed, were perfumed ; since he caused large and deep Trenches to be filled with Wine for Ships to fight on ; since his Tame Lyons were fed with Pheasants and Parrots ; and his Horses with the best Raisins of all *Asia*. (1) His cheapest Suppers stood him in Two Thousand Five Hundred Crowns ; and some cost him thrice as much. It is observed in *Lampridius*, that he never lay twice with the same Woman, except it were his Wife ; that he never wore the same Ring twice ; never the same Shoes twice, nor the same Cloaths : that he ordinarily made use of Vessels of Gold, or of Onyx, for certain natural Necessities, and caused Ships with their Lading to be sunk to the bottom, adding, *that this was to be truly Magnanimous to use them after this manner*. He was the first who thought of hatching Oysters, Lobsters and Fish : and he had a prodigious Number of Mullers and Barbels kill'd, to draw only their Milk from them. He had served up now and then sixscore Heads of *Ostriches*, whose Brains he liked ; an incredible Number of Birds which had been taught to Whistle ; and others which were Remarkable either for their Singing, or their Feathers. He would be sometimes ser-

D 2

ved

---

(1) *Ad hæc Lampridij, Nunquam minus C. H. S. cænavit, hoc est argento libris triginta. Vid Casaub. Salmas & Meurs. de Luxu Romanor. c. 13.*

ved in Imitation of *Geta*, according to the Order of the Alphabet, that is to say, that the first Service was of Creatures whose Name began with A, the second with B, and so on to the last Letter; and when he was near the Sea he would never eat Fish, and never other things when he was a great way from it.

When he was a Private Man, one asking him whether he was not afraid of being Poor? He answered, *That nothing could be more advantageous to him than to be his own and his Wives Heir.* In the midst of his Expences, which were beyond what can be well imagined, he said, *That he did not wish for Children, for fear one of them might prove a good Husband; or if he should have any, that he knew where to chuse a Tutor, that should force them to imitate him in all things which they saw him do.* His Prodigality was astonishing; but his other Vices created Horror, for he was the Mistress and the Gallant of every next Comer, prostituted himself to Freed-men, and married a Slave. This being his way, *Maesa*, who was a Woman of Judgment as well as Ambition, foreseeing that the Romans would not long endure an Emperor, who preferred the Ministers of his Infamous Pleasures to the greatest Offices of State, obliged him to adopt his Cousin *Alexianus*; which possibly was the only Commendable thing that he did in his Life. But this he soon repented of, and as he endeavoured with Invincible Obstinacy to destroy him by Sword or Poyson, or by any other way, he was Assassinated by his Soldiers at the Age of Eighteen Years, together with his Mother and some of his (m) Favourites; *A. M.* 4193. *A. D.* 223. He reigned three Years nine Months and four Days; and they threw his Body into the Tiber, because in truth he did not deserve a Burial.

(n) *Marcus Aurelius Severus Alexander* of *Arca* in Syria,

(m) *Vid. Baron. ad ann. Ch. 224.*

(n) *In Nunciis IMP. CÆS. M. AUREL. SEV. ALEXANDER. PIUS. FÆLIX. AUG. In Græcis. ΑΤΓ. Μ. ΑΤΡ ΣΕΥΗΡ ΑΛΕΞΑΝΔΡΟΣ. Arca, Arcene Ace. Hebr. Haco, Ptolom Acad, & Actipus, quem Joseph for-*

*navit ex Hebræo Kepitha quæ erat pars urbis Aco, &c. Tho. de Pinedo ad Steph Byzant. in Aca & Acre. Vid etiam Casaub. ad Lamprid. Seviram Alexand.*

ria, had the Name of *Alexianus* or *Alexander*, because *Mammea* was delivered of him in the Temple which was dedicated to *Alexander* the Great, whither she went with her Husband, for the Solemnity which was celebrated there. He was surnamed *Severus*, because he put a stop to the Insolence of the Soldiers; reduced all to their Duty, expelled out of the Senate and his Court, all that were of a Scandalous Life; punished with the utmost Severity, Thieves, False-witnesses, and the Magistrates who in the Exercise of their Offices had more regard to their Interest than to Conscience. This Emperor, who was very handsome, had a Noble Air, and had the Name of *Holy* and *Gracious* given him for his Piety and Clemency, Modesty and Sweetness; had two Wives *Salustia Barbia Orbiana* if we believe some Antiquaries; and *Memmia* the Daughter of *Sulpitius*, and Grand-daughter of *Catulus*, who is named *Memmia Sulpitia* in a Medal of *Goltzius*, True or Counterfeit.

When he had designed to live at Repose, he was obliged to make an Expedition into *Asia*, against *Ardaschir Babekan* King of *Persia*, to whom *Lampridius*, *Agathias*, *Herodian*, and *Zosimus*, have given the Common Name of *Artaxerxes*, who had dispossessed *Arduan* of the Kingdom of *Parthia*, and who design'd to recover from the *Romans* all the Provinces which they had conquered. *Alexander Severus* attacked this King, who had in his Army 500 Elephants, 1400 Chariots armed with Hooks, and 120000 Horse; he defeated him, put him to flight, and retook from him all that *Heliogabalus* had lost, and triumphed for this Victory. This is what *Lampridius*, *Eutropius*, and *Eusebius* have said. But others (o) affirm that he was defeated, that the greatest part of his Troops which remained, perished thro' Cold

D 3

or

(o) Schikard in *Taric Persico*, p. 109. Seqq. *Herodian*, l. 6 & 7. *Dio in Alexandro*. *Casaub. ad Lamprid.* p. 173. *Hettinger. Hist. Orient.* p. 161.



or of distempers ; that he surrendred *Susiana, Cælofria, Chaldea* and *Palestina* to the King of *Persia* ; concerning which you may consult *Herodian*.

He had no sooner received intelligence, that the *Germans*, who had passed the *Rhine* and the *Danube*, were resolved to carry the War into *Italy*, but he Marched from *Rome*, and assured himself that he should get the better of these People, either by force or fair means. Notwithstanding the *Germans* were at that time very barbarous and wild, he had vanquished or tamed them, had it not been for some Legions which could not endure discipline, were afraid of his severe Laws, exclaimed against the avarice of *Mammea*, and which were also pushed on to a Revolt by *Maximinus*, one of his Lieutenant Generals, who aspired to the Sovereignty. That cruel Man, whom this good natured Prince had advanced, seeing the Rebels disposed to Enterprize whatsoever he would have done, animated them in such a manner, that they Assassinated their Emperor, not sparing his Domesticks, nor *Mammea*, who according to *Eutychius*, had great kindness for the (p) Christians ; and whom *Origen* had instructed in our Mysterys, as *St. Jerom* and *Cædren* say. He dyed the 18th of March, at the age of 29 Years 11 months and 7 days ; A. M. 4206. A. D. 237. after he had Reign'd 13 Years and 9 Days.

(q) *C. Julius Maximinus* of *Thrace*, Son of *Micca* of *Pomerania*, or of *Gothland*, and of *Hababa*, of *Russia*, was above Eight foot tall ; so big that his Wife's Bracelet, was but fit for a Ring for his Thumb ; so Strong, that with a Stroke of his Fist he struck the teeth out of a Horse's mouth, and with a kick of his Foot could break the Bone of the Leg ; so nimble that there was no Horse that could Run swifter than he ; so great an Eater and Drinker, that he (r) Eat Sixty pounds of Flesh, and Drank

(p) *De Alexandro Sever. Lamprid. c. 43. and 51.*

(q) *In Numis IMP. MAXIMINUS. PIUS. AUG. & Γ. ΙΟΥΑ. ΜΑΞΙΜΙΝΟΣ.*

(r) *Comedisse & 40 libras carnis, ut etiam Cordua ducit etiam 60. Ful. Capitolin, in Maximinis.*

Drank Four and twenty Pottles of Wine in one Day. His Stature and his prodigious Strength, were not comparable to his Cruelty : and after *Septimius Severus* thought him worthy to bear Arms, because he did every day wonders at wrestling. he got a Company under *Caracalla*, his Friends made him a Tribune under *Heliogabalus*, *Alexander* gave him a Legion, and afterwards the Command of his whole Army. Having procured himself to be Elected after this Emperor's Death, he thought fit to put to death all Persons who had any knowledge of his birth, because he had been a Shepherd ; all those who had served him in his low condition, or who had considered him in the last Reign. Whilst he made War on the *Germans*, and sent Orders to *Rome*, to destroy all whom he suspected ; whilst he exposed the most Innocent Persons to Wild Beasts, punished the Old Officers, and condemned the best Men to death ; the Army in the *East* made an Insurrection. That in *Africa* which dreaded his Tyranny, forced (f) *Gordianus* Proconsul of the Province, who was 80 Years old, to take upon him the Title of *Emperour*, with his Son *Gordianus*, to whom the Senate had formerly given the Name of *Antoninus*, because *Fabia Orestilla*, whom Old *Gordianus* had Married, was that Emperor's Daughter. But *Capellianus*, the Friend of *Maximinus* and Governor of *Macedonia*, gave him Battel with such Success, that Young *Gordianus* lost his Life in it, his Father in despair Strangled himself, and both finished their Reigns in one month and six days.

This news extremely afflicted the People of *Rome*, and the Senate was so sensibly touched with it, that they resolved to chuse in their place (t) *Maximus Pupienus*

D 4

a Far-

(f) In Numis IMP. CÆS. M. ANT. GORDIANUS AFR. AUG.

(t) In Numis IMP. CÆS. PUPIENUS. MAX. AUG. Clodius Albinus. Vid. *Salmas. ad Capitolini Maximum* p. 269. qui tamen audiendus non est, nam in Numo Græc. ΑΥΓ. Κ. ΚΛΩΔ. ΠΟΤ. ΙΗΝ. ΜΑΞΕΙΜ. ΑΥΓ ΔΗΜΑΡΚ. ΕΞΟΥ ΤΗΑΤΟΣ ΤΟΥ. B. 15. Imp. Cæs. N. Clodius. Pupienus. Maximus. Augustus, Tribunitia potestate Cof. iterum. *Christoph. Ad. Rupert. in Synopsin Besoldi Minorem.*

a Farrier's Son, and *Claudius Albinus* of a noble Family. Altho' *Maximus's* mean birth, and his severe humour might have dissuaded them from this Election, his solid virtue and the Offices which he had always well discharged, carried them above all such considerations; and at worst, an honest Man and a Farrier's Son, was far better than a Cowherd Tyrant. It is certain however, that the Souldiers and the People at that time caused (u) *Marcus Antoninus Gordianus* (which name was become sacred at *Rome*) to be proclaimed at *Rome*, and that every body was well satisfied with so just a choice. In the mean time *Julius Maximinus*, who had received intelligence of the Victory gained in *Africk*, and of the last Election of these Two Emperors, passed into *Italy* by great Marches, with a resolution to revenge himself with Fire and Sword, for the injuries he had received. *Maximus* had advanced as far as *Ravenna*, and prepared for a Battel, when *Maximinus* was stopt at *Aquileia*, which he design'd to take. When he met with greater resistance there than he expected, the Women cutting off all their hair to supply the want of Bowstrings, and his Souldiers being beaten off in an Assault, he quarrell'd with his Officers, upon whom all his fury fell. The rest being weary of his Cruelty, the Effects of which they dreaded, thought of nothing but to prevent him, and going to his Tent where he reposed himself, with his Son, they Assassinated them in the Third Year of their Reign, A. M. 4208. A. D. 238. The Father was about 65 Years old, and the Son was but 21. Their heads which the Murtherers carried to *Rome*, were burnt there with publick joy, in the field of *Mars*, and their bodies had not burial.

The Death of the two *Maximinus's*, must in probability have put an end to all the disorders of the State, and the Methods which *Maximus Pupienus*, and *Claudius Balbinus* took to regulate affairs, had Established the

---

(u) In Num. IMP. CÆS. M. ANT. GORDIANUS. AUG. In numo Gr. in ANTONINOS ΓΟΡΔΙΑΝΟΣ. ART. K. M.

the publick tranquillity, if jealousies had not interrupted their good correspondence. *Balbinus* inwardly could not bear, that the *Romans* should have so great a respect for *Maximus*, who was indeed brave, but wanted other good qualirts: and *Maximus* who knew the other, despised him as a Man of no Courage. Altho' they carried it fair, and Concurred in promoting the welfare of the Empire, the Souldiers who set themselves strictly to observe them, perceived their secret jealousy, and remembered, that after the Murder of the *Maximines*, and *Maximus's* return to *Rome*, it had been published: *It is thus that Princes live who are chosen by the Wise, and it is thus that Princes dye who are chosen by the Blind.* To revenge themselves of so cutting a reproach, they took their opportunity, and assaulting these Emperors who had Reigned but one Year, they violently drew them out of their Palace, strip't them of their habits, called them in a jeer the *Senate's Emperors*; pull'd off their Beards, and their Eye-brows, and no sooner heard that the *German Guards* were coming to their Succour, but they killed them A. M. 4209. A. D. 239.

*Marcus Antoninus Gordianus*, Son of the Younger *Gordianus*, who was slain in *Africk*, or according to others, of *Junius Balbus*, and of *Metia Faustina*, Daughter of Old *Gordianus*, and Wife to this *Balbus*, married *Furia Sabina Tranquillina*, the Daughter of *Misitheus*, a great Statesman, whom this Young Prince at the same time made Colonel of the Guards. By the Counsel and Conduct of his Father in Law, he Defeated (w) *Schabur* King of *Persia*, the Son of *Ardschir*, who is the same, according to some Authors, who had beaten *Alexander Severus*. *Misitheus* fell sick some time after, and *Philip the Arabian* who feared him, and who by his courage and by favour, had raised himself to the chiefest Offices in the Army, and who aspired yet higher, by corrupting the Physicians  
of

---

(w) He is Named *Orschir*, i. e. *Ahasuerus* by the *Hebrews*, *Ardschir* by *Abulfaragius*: *Ardfir*, by *Texeira* and *Schickard*; *Xerxes* by *Eutropius* and *Iornandes*; *Artaxerxes* by *Agathias*, *Herodian* and *Zozimus*.



of *Mistheus*, procured his death. Having succeeded him in his Employment, he had afterwards the same credit, and to Effect the treachery which he designed, he gave secret orders, that all the Ships which were Employ'd to bring Provisions, should be turned another way, and marched the Forces where they could not be succoured, and by these means the Army was reduced to extremity. The Souldiers who were not clear sighted enough to see whence this calamity came upon them, attributed all their misery to *Gordianus*: and *Philip* in the mean time, caused a rumour to be spread, that this Young Prince was going to ruin all; and that the Army ought to chuse themselves an Emperor. When the Famine increased, he was chosen Guardian to *Gordianus*, and at length he grew so powerful, that the Title of Emperor was granted him. *Gordianus* complained, but they would not hear his complaints. He desired the Souldiers at least to divide the Empire, and they refused him. He pressed *Philip* to make him Colonel of the Guards, and he made a jest of his request. He conjured him to spare his life, but was slain at two and twenty Years old. He Reigned Six, and dyed A.M. 4215. A.D. 245. The Senate placed him amongst the Gods: and he was buried in the Frontiers of *Persia*. There was put an-(x) Inscription upon his Tomb in the *Egyptian*, *Hebrew*, *Persian*, *Greek* and *Latine* Languages, that all the World might be informed both of his Vertues, and his hard Fate.

The Senate being acquainted with the death of *Gordianus*, chose *Marcus Marcius* for their Emperor, who after he had Reigned one Year died suddenly in his Palace, and some believe that he was Massacred. *Lucius Aurelius Severus Hostilianus* succeeded him by the Election of the Senate, and Reigned but a very short time. There are Medals of these Emperors in *Goltzius* and in *Strada*.

*Mac'us*

---

(x) DIVO GORDIANO VICTORI PERSARUM, VICTORI GOTHORUM, VICTORI SARMATARUM, DEPULSORI SEDITIONUM ROMANARUM, VICTORI GERMANORUM, SED NON VICTORI PHILIPPORUM.

Marcus Julius Philippus, of Bessora, a City of Arabia Petraea, had Married Marcia Otacilla Severa; and he had no sooner destroyed the Emperour, but he had the impudence to write to the Senate, that this Young Prince dyed of a disease. He made his Son C. Julius Saturninus Philippus Caesar: and thro' impatience to get to Rome, he left Mesopotamia, and a part of Syria to the King of Persia. The joy of the Spectacles which he gave the People, was disturbed by the disorders which the Scythians made in all places which had been Conquered by the Romans on that side: and when he sent Cneius Messius Decius against them, the Army forced him to accept the Empire. Philip upon this news, gathered together his Forces, and is slain by the Souldiers at Verona, after he had Reigned five Years with his Son Julius Saturninus Philippus, whom he had left at Rome, and who had the same Fate which his Father had. (y) Eusebius, St. Jerom, and Orosius, say that this Julius Philippus was the first Christian Emperour, he who was no better than an Arabian Robber, an Idolater, and a Murderer of his Emperour. They have done an injury to the Christian Religion herein, according to Scaliger; and Baronius observes very well, that what (z) Eusebius saith, must be understood of Philip, who was Father of Saint Eugenius, and whom the Emperour Marcus Julius Philippus had sent Prefect into Egypt.

Jopatianus and Marinus were declared Emperors by their Armies, the Latter in Pannonia, and the Former in Syria. Their death presently followed their Election, and they gave them not time to Reign.

(a) Cneius Messius Decius, surnamed Trajanus, of Pannonia

(y) Euseb. in Chronic. & Histor. Eccles. Hieron. in Catal. Script. Eccles. Oros. l. 2.

(z) Scaliger ad Euseb. num. 2260. Baron. Tom. I. Annal. Eccles. in ann. Chr. 246. Vid. Casaub. De iis quis post Gordianus Tertium Principes fuerunt ad Valerianum usques. Ad Script. Historie Augustæ, Tom. II. Edit Ludg. Batav. 1671. p. 166. &c.

(a) In Numism. IMP. C. M. TRAJANUS DECIUS AVG. Decius Etruscus. Q. HER. ET. MES. DECIUS. NOBIL. CÆS.

*nonia*, had by his Wife *Triphonia*, *Decius Etruscus*, whom he joyned with himself in the Empire; and *Herennia Etruscilla*, who if we take the opinion of Antiquaries, was Married to *Volusianus*. He was Handsome, Modest and Valiant, and had it not been for *Trebonianus Gallus*, who betray'd him, he had utterly destroyed the Race of the *Goths* who had pass'd the *Don*, and daily made Inroads on the Frontiers of *Thrace*. 'Tis certain, that the *Goths* being reduced to the last extremity, knew not what to do; and *Decius* had sent *Trebonianus* to hinder their repassing the River; when this General, who cared for nothing but his own greatness, offered secretly to assist them, and advised them to divide their Army into three parts, and to March one part of it to the side of a great Morass, and lay an Ambuscade for *Decius*. This Emperor who knew nothing of the treachery, cut in pieces the greatest part of those who made resistance; and *Trebonianus* sent him word at the same time, that he should pursue them, and take no farther care. He believed him, and as he made a vigorous pursuit, he fell into the Ambuscade, which the Morass concealed from his sight and knowledge. In this Fight which was very bloody, his Son was killed with an Arrow, and to revenge his Death, or to put an end to his grief for this loss, he plunged with his Horse into the Morass, where he was (b) drown'd according to most Historians, at the Age of fifty Years, after he had Reigned two Years, or according to others, one Year and almost three months; and by their death *Trebonianus* became Emperor.

About this time *Lucius Priscus* Governor of *Macedonia*, was Emperor, and *M. Aufidius Perperna Licinianus* was honour'd with the same Title. But their Exaltation made little noise, and most Historians give them not a place among the Emperors.

(c) *Caius Vibius Trebonianus Gallus*, joyn'd his Son *Vibius*

---

(b) *Vid. Ann. Marcell. l. 31. p. 462. Victor. Jornandes. Cassiodor. Scaliger ad Euseb. p. 2267.*

(c) *Numi: IMP. C. VIB. TREB. GALLUS. P. F.*

AUG. IMP. C. VOLUSIANUS P. F. AUG. IM̃.  
CÆS. JUL. ÆMILIANUS P. F. AUG. Post Sex. Aur.  
*Victorem mire turbavit hæc nomina Casaubonus. Vide at. Rupertus  
Observat. in Synopsin Besoldi min. c. 14. p. 36. & seqq.*

*bius Volusianus* in the Empire with him ; in Policy he adopted *C. Valens Hostilianus Messius Quinctus*, the Son of *Decius* surnamed *Trajan*, and by a like Policy put him to Death. He was Coward enough to make Peace with the *Scythians*, and by the same Treaty, to oblige himself to pay a certain Tribute to this Barbarous People, who some time after violated this Treaty ; and who satisfied with what they conquered in *Europe*, passed into *Asia*, where the *Persians* had already carried their Conquests so far, that they had Ravaged to the Walls of *Antioch*. *C. Julius Æmilianus*, General of the Army of *Pannonia*, not being able any longer to endure the *Scythians* should triumph over the Negligence of these two Emperors, spoke to his Soldiers, who were struck into Consternation by the Success of the *Goths* ; he encouraged them, promised to enrich them, and animated them to that Degree, that he fought them, recovered from them what they had before taken away, and defeated them, even in their own Country. The Army being enriched with these Victories, proclaimed *Æmilian* Emperor, who Assembled all the Forces of the Neighbouring Countries, and marched towards *Italy* to dispute the Sovereignty there with *Trebonianus* and his Son. They taking the first Alarm, make their Troops march, who finding themselves far inferiour in Number to those of *Æmilian*, assassinate the Father and the Son, A. D. 250. They reigned but two entire Years, and the Father was forty six Years Old when he was slain.

After their Death *Æmilian* wrote to the Senate, and assured them, that he would recover from the *Persians* all they had taken from the *Romans* ; and the Senate with these Hopes, made no Difficulty to confirm his Election. But *Valerian*, the Lieutenant General of the two late Emperors, who was marching to their Assistance with the Armies of the *Gauls*, and of *Germany*, was made



made Emperor at the same time: and the Soldiers, who had by common Consent advanced *Æmilian*, murdered him, because they began to despise him for his Birth, which was obscure in *Mauritania*, and because they thought the *Roman* Blood too precious to be spilt in this Quarrel. He Reigned three Months, and his Army surrendered themselves to *Valerian*, who was at that time seventy years Old, and whose (d) *Virtue* answered his Illustrious Birth. The Emperor *Julian* in the *Cæsars*, and *Lampridius*, pass immediately from *Alexander Severus*, to *Valerian*, because the others reigned but a very short time.

(e) *Publius Licinius Valerianus*, Son of *Valerius Flaccus*, of the Family of the *Cornelij*, had by his first Wife, whose Name Historians know not, *P. Licinius Gallienus*; by *Mariniana*, *Pub. Cornelius Valerianus*, and joyn'd with him in the Empire *Gallienus*, who was unworthy of so great an Honour. As the *Scythians* had made their Advantage of all the Disorders of the late Times, had pillaged *Cappadocia* and *Bithynia*, made themselves Masters of *Trapezus*, or *Trebizonde*, or *Terbozan*; of *Calcedon*, of *Nicomedia*, and of *Nicea*: so in the East, *Schabur*, King of *Persia*, who had a prodigious Army, ravaged all the Provinces of the Empire. In so great an Extremity, *Gallienus* thought it best for him to go into *Germany*, and *Valerian* into *Asia*. The latter finding his Success did not answer his Hope, sent to offer Money to the King of *Persia*, and to desire him to enter into a Treaty. *Schabur*, who was grown Insolent with his Success, made no other answer to the Ambassadors, but that if their Master desired Peace, he might come himself to him, and they should see what would be most Honourable, and most for their Common Good. *Valerian* accepting this Offer, took but a few with him when he went to this Conference with *Schabur*, and the *Persians*, who waited for them, cut them in Pieces.

Va-

(d) Videat. *Casaubon. ad Trebell. p. 203.*

(e) *Numus. IMP. C. P. LICIN. VALERIANUS. P. F. AUG. sic explicandus. Imperator, Cæsar, Pnblius*<sup>s</sup>  
*Licinius Valerianus, Pius, Felix, Augustus.*

*Valerian*, who had reigned seven Years, became (f) *Schabur's* Prisoner, that regarded neither his Quality nor his Age, but obliging him to bend his Back, set his Foot upon his Head, as often as he mounted his Horse. *Agathias* adds farther, that he caused him to be flea'd alive. He was taken at *Edeffa*, A. M. 4231. A. D. 261, and reigned seven Years with his Son, who upon a false Report of his Death, omitted not to place him before-hand amongst the Gods.

(g) This *Schabur*, Son of *Ardschir Babekan*, according to some Authors, was surnamed *Dhul Alktaf*, or the Master of Shoulders, because he had large Shoulders, as *Schikard* saith, or as *Abul Feda* testifies, because he never vanquished the *Arabians*, but he brake his Shoulder afterwards. The Queen having lost the King her Husband during her being with Child, and the chief Ministers of State, who asked her whether she believed she had a Son or a Daughter, and having received no other Answer, but that she perceived the Child to stir on the Right Side, they put the Diadem upon her Belly; and thus *Schabur* was made King before he was Born. He is the same who is named *Abel Ketaf*, by *Texeira*, and *Chesroes* by *Nicephorus Callixtus*.

(h) *Publius Licinius Egnatius*, *Gallienus's* Mistress, named *Pipa* by *Aurelius Victor*; or *Pipana* by *Trebellius Pollio*, was the Daughter of *Attalus*, King of the *Germans*, or of the *Marcomanns*, according to others. His Wife was *Cornelia Salonina*, surnamed *Chrysogona*, or *Chrysogina*, which is justified by some Medals: and from her *Gallienus* was surnamed *Saloninus* from his Mother, or from *Salona*, a City of *Dalmatia*; for some say that

---

(f) Vid. *Salmas. ad Trebell. p. 276. Aurel. Victor. in Epit. Agathias. l. 4. p. 122. Schickard in Tarick Persico.*

(g) *Hottinger. Histor. Orient. l. 1. c. 3. p. 162 & 168. Pocock Notis ad Specim. Histor. Arab. p. 68.*

(h) *Inscriptio. p. 245. ΑΤΤΟΚΡΑΤ. ΚΑΙΣΑΡ. ΠΟΠ- ΔΙΟΣ. ΙΙΝΙΝΙΟΣ ΙΙΝΑΤΙΟΣ ΓΑΛΛΗΝΟΣ ΕΥΣΕ- ΒΗΣ. ΣΕΒΑΣΤΟΣ. Sic. in duobus Numis Gr. nomen Ig- natij additum.*

that he was born there. There are also some who have written that (i) *Pipa* is the same with *Cornelia Salonina*, which is true; and he had with this Princess whom he married, the *Upper Pannonia* in Dowry.

*Valerian's* Captivity did not at all, or did but very slightly affect his Son. He was in *Germany*, and was soon constrained to go thence, because the *Scythians*, who took advantage of the Emperor's Calamity, overflowed all like a Torrent, and besieged the City of *Rome*. But having Intelligence that *Gallienus* marched against them with a very considerable Army, they retired: and left behind them in *Italy*, horrible Marks of their Fury and Revenge. *Gallienus*, who believed that his Enemies left him all when they left him *Rome*, minded nothing but Diversions; and by his Negligence and Softness compleated the Ruine of the Empire, which the most valiant People of the Earth were not able to Effect by their Arms. He forgot even his Father's Captivity; and the Governors, who had an abhorrence of his Ingratitude, and could not endure his Debaucheries, fortified themselves in their Provinces. As they all got themselves to be chosen Emperors by the Legions which they commanded, there were thirty Tyrants in the Empire, of which these are the Names, which are necessary to the Knowledge of the History, and are taken from Inscriptions and Medals. I do not reckon *Flavius Cyriades*, who was slain when *Valerian* marched with his Army against the *Persians*, nor *Decius Lælius Ingenuus*, who rebelled in *Pannonia* against the same Emperor, and who after he was defeated in a Battel drowned himself, or (k) kill'd himself with a Ponyard.

The

---

(i) *Uxor ejus Pipa eadem cum Cornelia Salonina de qua Inscript. 12. p. 1022. & multi numi. Rupert Observat. in Synopsin Besoldi Minor. c. 14. p. 368.*

(k) *Ad illa Trebellij Pollionis, Fertur sane Ingenuus civitate capta intrasse domum in qua se pugio transfixit. Vid. Gruter. Casaub. & Salmas.*

*The Names of the Thirty Tyrants.*

- |                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Odenatus.                      | 18 Herennianus, Son of O-         |
| 2 Herodes or Herodian <i>his</i> | denatus.                          |
| Son.                             | 19 Timolaus, Son of Ode-          |
| 3 Manius Acilius Aurelius.       | natus.                            |
| 4 M. Fulvius Macrianus.          | 20 Vabalath, the Third Son        |
| 5 Q. Macrianus <i>his</i> Son.   | of Odenatus.                      |
| 6 Cn. Fulvius Quietus.           | 21 Mæonius, Cousin to O-          |
| 7 Servius Anicius Balista.       | denatus.                          |
| 8 P. Valerius Valens.            | 22 Spurius Servillianus Lol-      |
| 9 Calpurnius Piso.               | lianus.                           |
| 10 Ti. Cestius Alexander         | 23 Aul. or Lucius Pomp.           |
| Æmilianus.                       | Ælianus.                          |
| 11 M. Cassius Latienus Post-     | 24 M. Aurelius Victorinus.        |
| humus.                           | 25 L. Victorinus <i>his</i> Son.  |
| 12 C. Junius Cassius Post-       | 26 M. Aurelius Marius.            |
| humus <i>his</i> Son.            | 27 P. Pivesus Tetricus.           |
| 13 Q. Nonius Regillianus.        | 28 P. Pivesus Tetricus <i>his</i> |
| 14 Sex. Julius Saturninus,       | Son.                              |
| 15 C. Annius Trebellius.         | 29 Victoria, Victorina, or        |
| 16 T. Cornelius Celsus.          | Vitruvia.                         |
| 17 Ap. Claudius Censorinus.      | 30 Zenobia.                       |

*Macrianus*, whom the Army of the East which began to disperse, chose Emperor with his Sons, sent *Piso* with *Valens*, who was Proconsul in *Achaia*, and assumed the Title with the rest, which obliged *Valens* to retire into *Achaia*, where he was slain by the Soldiers of him, whom he thought he was able to destroy. When *Macrianus* had in some sort settled Affairs, he left his Son *Commetes* in the East, and went thence with an Army, in Hopes speedily to drive *Gallienus* from Rome. But as he entred into *Dalmatia*, *Aurelius*, or *Aureolus*, who had been chosen Emperor, and whose Troops were weak enough in comparison of *Macrianus's*, had the Courage to attack him, and with that Success, that *Macrianus* and his Eldest Son were slain in this Battel. *Odenatus*, Prince of *Syria Palmyrena*, who aspired to Tyranny, and had Intelligence of the two *Macrianus's*,



resolved to dispossess *Commetes* of the Authority which his Father had left him. *Balista*, who had been the chief Promoter of the Election of the *Macriani*, persuaded the Soldiers to kill *Commetes*, and at the same time to comply with *Odenatus* : and they did what he advised them to do. *Emilianus*, whom the *Egyptians* had recognized for their Sovereign, was made Prisoner by *Theodotus*, Lieutenant of *Gallienus*, who beginning to rouse himself, made Peace with *Aurelius*, went into the *Gauls* against *Posthumus*, and lost an Eye by an Arrow which was shot at him from a Town, as he advanced to view the Walls. Afterwards returning to *Rome*, he Relapsed into his former Course of Life, and *Lollianus*, who perceived that *Posthumus's* Authority declined, procured him to be killed by the *Gauls*, that he might fill his Place ; but *Victorinus* with whom *Posthumus* had before divided the Government, easily revenged this Murther. *Odenatus* who made War on the *Persians*, whom he had vanquished in divers Battels, pillaged their Cities, after he had recovered those which they had taken from the *Romans* ; and omitted not to send all the Prisoners of Quality to *Gallienus*, who triumphed for the Victories of this Prince, and lost amongst Infamous Women, in Spectacles and Feasts, that time which brave *Odenatus* employed to beat the *Persians*, and to deliver *Valerian* out of Slavery. It is certain however, that this Prince at last admitted him to govern the Empire with him ; by the Advice of his Brother *Valerian*. He would have received great Services from him, had it not been for the Treachery of *Maonius*, Cousin to *Odenatus*, who procured this generous Prince to be murdered with his Son *Herodian*, because he envied his Glory, and was himself murdered by his own Souldiers. *Ingenus* and *Trebellius* were defeated by *Gallienus's* Army. *Regillianus*, *Celsus*, *Censorinus*, *Balista*, *Quietus*, *Victorinus*, *Marius*, who was but a Locksmith's, or a Sword-cutler's Son, were Massacred, inso-much as it was at that time dangerous enough to be Emperor. The first Speech of *Marius*, who was slain the third Day after his Election, was in these Words ;

*I know my Friends, that the first Trade which I was bred*

to may be turned to my Reproach, and I am willing enough to be Reproached with it, provided that Iron always give me Exercise, that our Enemies may fear it; and be sensible that the Romans are an Iron-People under an Emperor who hath always handled Iron. Trebellius Pollio saith, that a Boy who had wrought in this Emperor's Shop, and saw himself slighted by him, slew him, adding, *Here is a Sword that you made your self.* Zenobia the Widow of Odenatus maintained her self after another manner, and as she had taken the Diadem for her self and her Children, so her Actions shewed that she was born rather to Command than Obey. She continued the War which her Husband had begun against the *Parthians*; beat them in several Battels, conquered *Egypt*, subdued *Asia*, even to the City of *Ancyra*, broke the Army of *Gallienus*, which was Commanded at that time by *Heracian*, and made her self equally admired and feared. In these Disorders *Heracian*, *Martian*, and *Cerontinus*, chose *Claudius* Emperor, and slew *Gallienus*, aged fifty Years, with his brother *Valerian*, and his Son *Gallienus Saloninus*. A. M. 4239. A. D. 269. He Reigned seven Years with his Father *Valerian*, eight alone, and you need only consult *Trebellius Pollio* for both their Lives.

(1) *Flavius Claudius* of *Dalmatia*, was a Person of extraordinary Merit, and on what side soever you consider the Emperor's Predecessors, you'll find none of them excel him in Moderation, Sweetness, and Courage. *Trebellius Pollio*, *Zosimus*, *Eutropius*, and *Zonaras* praise him for his Courage, his Modesty, and his Justice. He was no sooner Emperor, but upon a difficult Debate which arose in the Senate, whether it was best to send an Army against the *Goths*, or against the Tyrants who had Usurped Sovereign Authority, he answered, *That all these Tyrants were only Enemies to the Prince, and that they ought to attack the Goths who were Enemies to the State.* *Aureolus* sent him Overtures of Accommodation; but *Claudius*, after he had given him

E 2

to

---

(4) *Ad hæc Trebell. Poll. Possumus Dicere Flavium Claudium Unicum in terris Principem. Vid Salmas. qui Flavij Nomen Inscriptione confirmat.*

to understand, that he would not treat with the Enemies of the People of *Rome*, marched against him, and defeated him in a Battel, where *Aureolus* was slain. At the same time, there was News that the *Goths*, the *Sarmatians*, the *Scythians*, and all their Neighbours, had entered into an Alliance, that they had to the Number of Six Thousand Vessels, and an Army of three hundred and twenty thousand fighting Men. The best Archers of the *East* had then taken part with *Zenobia*; and *Tetricus*, who yet held *Spain* and the *Gauls*, had with him the best Forces of the Empire. Any one but *Claudius* would have reasoned upon these Conjunctions, and suffered himself to have been overborn with too much Prudence. But he attacked these People with wonderful Resolution, defeated them in two Battels, covered the Field with their Bodies; the Banks of the Rivers with their Spears, their Bucklers, and Swords; burnt or sunk the greatest part of their Vessels, of which the other part were lost by Tempest. He took several Kings, with their Wives; and there was so great a Number of Prisoners, that there was not a *Roman* Soldier, who had not two or three of the Women of these Barbarous People; nor any Province, which had not *Gothish* Slaves sent to it. But the Plague being at last got into his Army, he died of it at *Srimium*, which is *Scrinach* in *Hungary*, A. M. 4241. A. D. 271. after he had Reigned one Year and nine Months. *Quintillus* his Brother was chosen in *Italy*, by the Soldiers and the Senate. But as the Victorious Army which was in *Thrace* had chosen *Aurelian* for their Emperor, *Quintillus* who had not sufficient Forces to oppose him, caused his Veins to be cut, as (m) some say, after a Reign of seventeen or eighteen days; or was assassinated, as others relate, by his Soldiers, for putting on too severe a Countenance with them.

*L. Domitius Aurelianus*, Son of the *Sacristan* of a Temple of *Transilvania*, or of a Farmer of *Aureolus's*, a *Roman* Senator, had but one Daughter by his Wife, *Severina*:

---

(m) Ita *Zosimus* Vid. *Euseb.* n. 2286. *Trebellius Pollio* & *Victor*,

*Severina*: and altho' he was of an obscure birth, the diverse Employments which he had passed thro', and the great Actions which he had done, preferred him to the Empire of the World. To establish himself in it, he placed strong Garrisons in *Pannonia*, fought the *Scythians* who were come as far as *Placentia*, defeated them after he had been beaten by them; fortified the City of *Rome*, went into *Thrace*, into *Bithynia*, and into *Cappadocia*, where he was forced to besiege *Thyane*, whose inhabitants refused to open their Gates to him. Being incensed at their resistance he swore *That he would not leave a dog in it*: and when *Heraclamon* of the same City had shewn him a certain place, by which it was easy for him to mount the Rampart, and the Souldiers had put him in mind to keep his resolution, and they would have put it in execution, *Aurelian* who had changed his mind, and was willing to save *Thyane*, replied, that he had said indeed, that he would not leave a dog in it, and that they might kill all the dogs there, not one excepted. By this subtilty he saved the City, and put not one Man to death, except *Heraclamon*, adding, *That so wicked a man who had betrayed his Countrey, could not be faithful to him.*

As *Zenobia* was then in the City of *Antioch*, and had seventy Thousand Men to defend it, he marched directly that way, defeated her Army, pursued the Queen who had fresh Troops, gained another battel, besieged *Palmyra*, now named *Fayd*, which is the *Thadamor* of the Hebrews, the *Thadamor* of the Syrians; and hasten'd to meet the *Persians*, who were marching towards him to oblige him to raise the Siege. He cut them in pieces, beat the *Arabians*, the *Armenians*, and the People who were assembled to drive him out of *Syria Palmirena*; took the Capital, whence *Zenobia* had stolen by night to retire into *Persia* with her Children, sent some Squadron of Horse to pursue her, who overtook and stopt her, just as she was ready to pass the *Euphrates*, *Trebellius Pollio* hath left us a very fine Portraiture of this (n) Princess,

E 3

if

(n) *Equa familia oriunda sit, vide Petri Seguii conjecturam in selectis Numism. p. 63 & 64.*



if we leave out her Covetousness. She was chaste to that degree, as not to suffer the last caresses of her Husband *Odenatus* when she was with Child ; and she made her self to be adored by her Subjects, after the same manner that the *Persians* adore their Kings. This Historian saith, she understood the *Latine* and *Greek* Tongues, and the *Egyptian*, admirably well. That she made Speeches with her Arms naked, and a Helmet on her Head. That she had a charming Wit, was Sober, Magnificent in her Feasts, liberal, indulgent, severe, and good humour'd when occasion required. That she was brown, had black Eyes full of fire, and Teeth so very white, that they were ordinarily taken for Pearls. *Aurelian*, having it in his power to punish her, contented himself to reserve her for his Triumph, after which this great Queen passed the rest of her Life sometimes at *Rome*, and sometimes at her Countrey house near *Tivoli*.

The Emperour entred *Europe* to make War on some of the *Scythians*, who had taken up Arms against the Empire ; he returned into the *East* where *Syria Palmyrena* had revolted, he ruined *Palmyra*, and put all the inhabitants to the Sword. And after he had chastised all these Rebels, and the Enemies of the *Roman* People, who in the Provinces of *Europe*, raised every day new commotions, he saved *Egypt*, where *Firminus* of *Seleucia* had declared himself Emperour ; he made his Troops march against *Tetricus*, who by the assistance of *Victorinus* had possessed himself of the *Gaules* ; and pursued him with such vigour, that this Tyrant was forced to surrender himself to him. All his Victories gained him a magnificent Triumph at *Rome*, whence he re-passed into *Sclavonia*, with a resolution to go and conquer the *Persians*, whom he had beaten in several battels. But as he was upon his march, his Secretary *Mnesibius* whom he had openly threatned upon some suspicions, and who knew well enough that he was cruel, having counterfeited his hand-writing, went to some Officers who were his Friends, and shew'd them a forged Memoire, of the names of such Persons as *Aurelian* designed to put to death : and omitted not to put his own in it, to make the matter more probable. These Persons

Persons entring into a Conspiracy against his Life, to prevent him, without any further inquiry into the matter, took their opportunity, and Assassinated him betwixt *Byzantium* and *Heraclea* A. M. 4246, A. D. 276. *Aurelius Victor* and *Eutropius* give him the character of a Cruel and a Sanguinary Prince, and accuse him of observing no measure in punishments.

(o) *Marcus Aurelius*, or *Claudius Tacitus* the Son of *Annius* a Roman Knight, who had been Senator and Consul, was chosen by an universal consent, after the Souldiers and Senators had disputed six whole months, the civility as some will have it, who should chuse an Emperor. He was aged, sober, and modest, had an admirable sight, put to death *Aurelian's* murderers and dyed of a Feaver at *Tarsus*, or was slain, in the sixth month of his Regn. Before he was Emperor he had (p) six Millions in Gold, which he generously gave to the Publick, and with what he had saved, he pay'd all the Souldiers.

*M. Annius Florianus*, brother of *Tacitus*, made an inheritance of the Emperor, and succeeded without the consent of the Senate. He was slain at *Tarsus* by the Souldiers, according to *Vopiscus*; or he caused his veins to be cut, according to *Aurelius Victor*, after he was informed that *Probus* was chosen Emperor in the East. He Reigned but about two months.

*M. Aurelius Probus*, the Son of a Gardener, or a Labourer, was born at *Sirmium*, which some call *Sirmach*, and others *Schremnia*, in the Southern Provinces of Hungary; altho' *Sirmium* is not properly *Schremnia*, for it is only in the Province, or the County of the same name, *Probus* himself, as they say, planted Vines on the Mountain of *Alnius*, or *Apataro*; and having passed thro'

E 4

the

---

(o) *Numus IMP.C.M. CL. TACITUS. PIUS. FELIX AUG.* in quo videtur Imperator Equitans præunte Victoria, sequente exercitu. *De Hocce Numo Scaliger. ad Euseb. n. 2291.*

(p) *Adhæc Vopisci.* Patrimonium suum publicavit, quod habuit in redivibus. H. S. bis millies Octingentesies *Vid. Salmas.*

the mean Employments of the Army became Captain, was made a Colonel under *Valerian*, who gave him the command of the third Legion, afterwards of the tenth, and who believed him worthy to succeed him. *Tacitus* also made him Governor in the *East*, declared him his Colleague in the Consulship, for the Year following: and when he was chosen Emperor by the Souldiers, he cried out to them, *You know not what you do: As it is impossible for me to flatter you, we shall never agree long together*; after he had punished the Author and the Accomplices of *Aurelian's* and *Tacitus's* Death, he Led an Army into the *Gaules*, of which the *Germans* had begun to possess themselves; took above sixty Towns from them, defeated above four hundred Thousand of these rough People, drove the rest beyond the *Necker* and the *Elb*; and carried his Arms farther, when nine of their Kings came and threw themselves at his feet, desiring the Peace, which he granted them. He subdued *Sclavonia*, *Russia* and *Poland*, passed into *Thrace*, defeated *P. Sempronius Saturninus* the *Gaul*, who had signalized himself against the *Moors*; whom *Aurelian* had Established in the *East* to guard its Frontiers, and who had the Title of Emperor given him by the *Alexandrians*, *T.Ælius Proculus*, and *Quinctus Bonofus*, or *Bonofius*, who had usurped the same Title in the *Gaules*, and had Engaged in their quarrel, all their Neighbours except the *Germans*, had no better success than *Saturninus*, since they were beaten in several battels, and afterwards put to death by *Probus*, who had a magnificent Triumph at *Rome*, for the defeat of his own and all the Empire's Enemys.

After his Triumph, he resolved to make War on the King of *Persia*, and as he believed that he was able to subdue him, he unfortunately hapned to say, *That in a little time Rome might value his Armys*. The Souldiers resented this saying, and began to be weary of all the works which He undertook for the Safety, the Ornament, or the Conveniency of the Places where he came. They knew also he had said, *That they ought to Earn the bread which they Eat*: and they were Employed on dreining a great Marsh, about *Zirmach*, when all on a sudden,

den, they left their work, and pursued him into a Tower, where he was Assassinated, A.M. 4252, A.D. 282. He reign'd 6 Years, and 4 months according to *Eusebius*, and *Eutropius*; and we may judge of his Exploits and his Virtues, by a most glorious Inscription which was put on his Tomb. (q)

*Marcus Aurelius Carus* of *Narenta* (r) in *Dalmatia*, who had been Colonel of the Guards under *Probus*, and whom the Army had chosen Emperor for his Virtue and great Actions which he had done, had two Sons *Marcus Aurelius Numerianus*, who was every where in great Esteem, and *Marcus Aurelius Carinus*, who was generally hated by all the World. He made them both his Collegues in the Empire, when he undertook the *Persian War*; kept *Numerianus* with him, and sent *Carinus* into the *Gaules*. His expedition into the *East* was much to his Glory, for he conquered all *Mesopotamia*, and carried his Victories as far as *Ctesiphon*. But as he was going farther, he was seized with a (s) distemper of which he dyed, and some believe he was struck with a Thunderbolt, because there were terrible Thunders at the same time. He reigned two Years, and *Numerianus* almost lost his sight With much weeping for him. Being not able to bear the wind nor the Sun, by reason of the soreness of his Eyes, he was carried in a Litter; and *Arrius Aper* whole Daughter he had Married, and who was Colonel of his Guards Assassinated him, in hopes to succeed him. In the mean time, when they saw the Emperor no more, and the Army every day enquired about him, and *Aper* said that his illness did not permit him to be seen, the stink of his dead Body discovered the Traitor, whom the Souldiers apprehended and carried to *Dioclesian*, whom they Proclaimed Emperor; and

---

(q) *HIC. PROBUS. IMPERATOR VERE PROBUS. SITUS. EST. OMNIUM. GENTIUM. BARBARORUM. VICTOR. ETIAM. TYRANNORUM.*

(r) *Ad hec Vopisci Cari patria sic ambigue a plerisque proditur Vid. Salmas. de Narbona & Holstenii Annor. in Ortelium, p. 127.*

(s) *Vid. Scalig. ad Euseb. n. 2298.*



and who stabb'd this Parricide thro' the body. Upon this news *Carinus* left the *Gaules*, attacked *Sabinus Julianus*, who had a design to usurp the Empire, defeated his Army near *Verona*; and rallied his Forces to March against *Dioclesian*, who, on the other side was advancing to fight him. They met in *Dalmatia*, where they fought several battels. But in the last *Dioclesian* had entirely the advantage, and *Carinus* was slain in it.

*C. Aurelius Valerius Dioclesianus* of *Dalmatia*, the Son of a Freed-man, or of a Senator's Secretary, heretofore was called *Diocles*, from his Mother *Dioclea*, and from a City of the same name: and as he found the Empire in disorder, he made *Marcus Aurelius Valerius Maximianus*, born at *Sirmium*, his Collegue in the Empire. By common consent they made *C. Galerius Maximinus*, and *Flavius Valerius Constantius Chlorus*, or the *Pale, Cæsars*; and to confirm this Adoption by an Alliance, they enjoyn'd them to divorce their Wives. *Dioclesian* gave his Daughter *Galeria Valeria*, to *Maximian*; and *Maximian*, surnamed *Hercules*, gave his Daughter, or Daughter in Law, *Maximiana Theodora*, to *Constantius Chlorus*, who put away his Wife *Helena*, by whom he had had *Constantine*, afterwards surnamed the *Great*.

*Africk*, whose strongest Citys had revolted, was subdued by *Maximian*; *Egypt* by *Dioclesian*, who was Eight Years in reducing *L. Elpidius Achilleus*, who had got himself declared Emperor; whom he took by force in *Alexandria*; where he caused him to be thrown a Prey to the Lyons. In the mean time *Constantius* defeated above sixty Thousand *Germans* in the *Gaules*; and *Galerius Maximinus*, obtain'd so considerable a Victory over the *Persians*, that he took their King *Nors*, who is the *Noyse* of Historians, with his Children, his Sisters and his Wives: and he demolished his most considerable Fortresses: After these Victories and some others which they obtain'd over the *Alans*, and the *Sarmatians*, they resolved to go to *Rome*, and their return was honoured with a triumph, A. M. 4272. A. D. 302. Notwithstanding all these successes, *Dioclesian*, who was grown so insolent as to make those who were to pay him respect, kiss his Feet, and so impious, as to make himself every where

where adored as a God, grew out of conceit with his own glory, altho' *Constantius* and *Galerius* respected him as their Father; and *Maximian* esteemed him as his Master.

After he had Reigned twenty Years, he resigned the Empire of the World A. M. 4274, A. D. 304: and for fear of undergoing a shameful death, because he was suspected of holding secret correspondence with *Maxentius* and *Maximinus*, he poisoned himself A. D. 313, being 73, Years old, or 68, as some Authors say. The reason for which he quitted the Empire is not precisely known, altho' many say, that he parted with it because he could not extirpate the Christians by menaces, nor punishments, nor by death it self; that he feared least some calamity might befall him in his old age that was far advanced; or hoped to meet with that quiet in his retreat, which he was not able yet to find in publick Affairs. He often said, *That there was nothing more difficult than to Reign well. That the Ministers of a Prince agreed in nothing but in betraying him. That they conceal from him, or disguise to him, the truth; which is the principal thing that he ought to know. That upon their report, which is seldom faithful, he takes from men of merit and honour, what he gives to ignorant and perfidious fellows. That by these means they deceive and sell their Sovereign who keeps them, and pays them for their counsel.*

*Valerius Maximianus* who had Reigned 18 Years, and resign'd the Empire the same Year and the same Day that *Dioclesian* quitted it, repented some time after that he had followed his Counsel and Example; and came to know too late, that a retired Man, and a Philosopher, were always of less value than an Emperor. In hopes of re-establishing himself again in the Empire, he re-entred Rome, under colour of assisting his Son *Maxentius* with his Counsel, but not finding the People much disposed to suffer him to be there, he went into the *Gaules*, where his Son-in-Law *Constantius* was at that time. But having formed a Conspiracy there against the Life of the latter, and the matter being discovered by his own Daughter *Flavia Maxima*, or *Maximina Fausta*, who chose rather to save her Husband, than to conceal

conceal her Father's Treachery, he fled ; and having got to *Marseilles*, he was strangled there A. D. 308.

Besides *Epidius Achilleus* some Generals made insurrections, and got themselves to be nominated Emperors, as *A. or L. Ælianus* ; *C. Cn. Sal. Amandus* ; *Carausius* ; *Alectus* ; of whom you may consult the Historians and Antiquaries.

## CHAP IV.

### *Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastical and Profane History.*

*Under Septimius Severus, surnamed Pertinax.*

A. D. 194. the Dispute about the Day of celebrating Easter was renewed.

(a) A. D. 199. *Tertullian* went over to the *Montanists*, who had *Montanus*, the disciple of *Tatian*, the Author of their Sect, who from their Countrey were called *Cataphrygians*, and *Pepuzites*, because he was of *Prepuza* a City of *Phrygia*. They were also called *Quintilians*, from one *Quintilla* a Woman of an ill life, a companion of *Maximilla* and *Prisca*, whom this Heretick always carried about with him. Their Opinions were, That those who were fallen into Sin, were not capable afterwards of receiving Absolution from it. That the dead ought to be Baptized. That those who were joyned in Marriage might set themselves free when they pleased ; and that second Marriages were unlawful. *St. Epiphanius*, and some others have written, that this *Montanus* did not differ from the Orthodox in Doctrine, but only in Discipline, which he made more severe and rigid than all other Christians ; that *Tertullian* was caught

(a) *Philastrius de Hæres. Tomo IV. Biblioth. Patrum, p. 13. Idior. Pelus l. 1. Epist. 242. Cyrill. Hierosol. Cathec. 16. p. 178. August. De Hæres. 26. Euseb. Hist. l. 5. c. 18. Epiphani. Hæres. 48. Extr. Theodoret. Hæret. fab. lib. 1. c. 10.*

caught with this great severity ; which pleased him so much, that he call'd other Christians Carnal and Libertines.

A. D. 200. *Symmachus* translated the Old Testament (b) into Greek, and *Speratus* was beheaded at Carthage for the Christian Religion.

A. D. 201. Pope *Victor* Bishop of Rome, who had *Zephyrinus* for his Successor. In the Year 203. *Leonidas* the Father of *Origen*, *Philip* Governor of Egypt, *Ireneus* Bishop of Lyons, were condemned for the same Faith. He succeeded *Photinus* in the Bishoprick of Lyons ; and was Disciple of St. *Polycarp*, and of *Papias*.

A. D. 206. *Origen*, according to *Eusebius*, made himself an Eunuch, taking the 12th verse of the 9th. ch. of St. *Mat.* in a literal sense ; *There are some who are Eunuchs from their Mother's Womb ; there are some who are made Eunuchs by Men ; and there are some who have made themselves Eunuchs for the Kingdom of Heaven ;* St. *Epiphanius* hath not omitted this particular, but he adds, that he doth not firmly believe it.

A. D. 209. *Marcus Minutius Felix* a Roman Advocate was in great reputation ; and is the Author of the Dialogue which passed for the Eighth Book of *Arnobius*. *Baldwin* the Lawyer, first observed this mistake, and *Ursin*, *Voverus*, *Elmenhorst*, *Heraldus*, *Rigaltius* and *Ouzelius*, have followed his opinion.

*Solinus* who hath done little more than transcribed *Pliny*, and who thence got the name of the Ape, lived under this Emperor. It was by the Empress *Julia's* command, that *Philostratus* set upon writing the Life of *Apollonius* of Tyana, a City of *Cappadocia* in the Lesser Asia. *Apollonius* was not very remote from these Times, and his natural and acquired knowledge made many believe, that he was equal to *Pythagoras*, or to the most learned of ancient Greece. He had had much Conversation with the Priests of Egypt, the Brachmans of India, and

---

(b) There was before a Greek Version of the Old Testament, by *Aquila* of Pontus in 129, and another by *Theodotion* in 188.



and the Magi of *Chaldea*, which made him pass for a Magician in several places. After this it was not difficult for *Philostratus* to find wonders for the composition of his *Romance*, and to satisfy the Empreſſes curioſity in the Sixth Perſecution which the Church ſuffered under *Severus*; for the Heathens at that time employ'd all their Artifices and Power to ruine Chriſtianity. It was with this deſign that *Philoſtratus* wrote the Life of *Apollonius*; and that to diſparage the Chriſtian Religion, he thought fit to make this Philoſopher do ſome of the Miracles which our Saviour wrought. He oppoſed the Gholt of *Proteus*, which advertiſed *Apollonius's* Mother of her Son's birth, to the Myſtery of the Annunciation; the Singing of Swans in a Meadow, to that of the Angels; the Ambaſſadors which he received, to the Adoration of the Wiſe Men; the incredulity of the *Ephesians*, to that of the *Jews*; his diſputes with the Priests of *Greece*, to the diſputes of the Saviour of the World with the chief Doctors of the Law. He alſo oppoſed the Demon, which he caſt out of the Body of a young man of ſeventeen years old whom he loved, to the unclean Spirit which God caſt out of the Body of the *Gadaren*; the ſentence of condemnation of a Servant and of the Miſtreſs of a certain King which he ſuſpended, to that of the Woman taken in Adultery; the Girl which he raiſed at *Rome*, to that of *Fairus* chief Ruler of the Synagogue. What is the Apparition of *Apollonius* in *Pouzzolo* to his two Diſciples *Demetrius* and *Damis*, but to parallel that of the Son of God to his two Diſciples as they were going to *Emmaus*, 60 furlongs diſtant from *Jeruſalem*. When he wrote that this Philoſopher had cured a maimed perſon, a lame and a blind; had he not in view, the withered Hand of him who was healed on the Sabbath day; the paralytick who was let down from the roof of the houſe with his bed; the blind man who was in the way near *Jericho*? and what laſtly, could be the meaning that *Apollonius* diſappeared at *Lindus* a City of *Rhodes*, as he was going into *Pallas's* Temple, but the Aſcenſion of our Lord Jeſus Chriſt? Many who have read the *Apollonius* of *Philoſtratus*, who hath been the *Ape* of the Evangelists, have not poſſibly made

made these reflections ; nor observed that of all the Romances that have been, there was never a less probable, nor a more impious one than this.

Under *Caracalla*.

The Poet *Oppian* of *Cilicia*, from whom we have four Books of Hunting, four of Fishing, and five of Fishes : The Lawyers *Tarruntius*, *Paternus*, *Macer Terentius Clemens*, *Hermogenianus*, *Tryphoni*, *Iustus Callistratus*, and *Papyrius Fronton* lived in his Reign. *Oppian's* verses had the Epithet of *Golden*, because the Emperor *Caracalla* was so taken with them that he gave him a Crown of Gold for every one of them. He was the Son of *Agessilaus* and *Zenodotus*, and was but thirty Years old when he dyed.

Under *Marcus Aurelius Severus Alexander*.

*Ulpian*, from whom we have many Laws in the Pandects, was Assassinated by the Souldiers of the Guard ; and *St. Martina*, *St. Cecilia*, *Tiburtius*, *Valerian*, and *Urban* the first Bishop of *Rome* of that name, suffered death for the Christian Religion.

It was in the Reign of this Emperor ( who equally adored *Abraham*, *Iesus Christ*, *Apollonius*, *Orpheus* and those, whom he believed to have been of a holy life ) that *Origen* published the ( c ) Bible in six Columns, of which the first contained the *Hebrew Text* written in *Hebrew Characters*, the second the *Hebrew Text* in *Greek Characters* ; the third the *Greek Version* of the 70 ; the fourth, *Aquila's Version* ; the fifth *Theodotion's* ; the sixth *Symmachus's*, &c.

*Dio of Nicea*, the Historian, was much beloved by this Emperor, of whom the famous Chronologer *Julius Africanus* obtain'd the reparation of the City *Nicopolis*, or *Emmaus*, which was almost entirely ruin'd.

Under

---

( c ) *De Tetraptis Hexaptis & Octaptis, vide Disquisitiones Criticas P. Simonii disquis : 18, p. 150, &c.*

Under *Marcus Antoninus Gordianus*.

*Beryllus* Bishop of *Bostra* in *Arabia* had the confidence to affirm, that the Soul dyed with the Body; but that it should be raised again at the last day: and that the Divinity of Christ subsisted not before his Incarnation. From him his Sect were called *Beryllians* and *Thneutopsychites*, because they believed the Soul mortal. *Beryllus* returned from his Heresies upon a dispute he had with *Origen*.

The *Helcesaites* also affirmed at the same time, that there were two Christs, and that People might renounce the Faith with their mouths, provided they did not consent thereto in their hearts. They worshipped Water; and some Women who were a-kin to *Helcesæus* the Author of their Sect.

*Dion Cassius*, *Cocceianus*, or *Coccius*, was twice Consul after he had passed thro' several honourable Employments; for *Macrinus* had made him Governour of *Smyrna*; he commanded afterwards in *Africk*, and had after that the administration of the Affairs of *Austria* and *Hungary*, in those times call'd the *Pannonia's*. He was of *Nicæa* in *Bithynia*, the Son of *Apronianus* Governour of *Dalmatia*, afterwards Proconsul in *Cilicia*; and spent 22 Years on his History, which he wrote by the order of *Septimius Severus*, and published in the Reign of *Alexander Severus* Son of *Mammea*. It contain'd 80 Books, divided into 8 Decads. The 35th Book is the first of those which remain; and of the 34 preceding we have but very little. The following Books unto the 60th are entire enough; but of the last 20 we have nothing but an Abridgment by *Xiphiline* a Monk of *Constantinople*, or by his Nephew. He began his History not only from the foundation of *Rome*, but even from *Ænæa's* arrival in *Italy*; and had continued it to *Elagabalus*, with something of the Reign of *Alexander Severus* his Cousin and Successour. That which we have of him at this day, begins with the time that *Lucullus* was advanced to great employments, and ends with the death of the Emperour *Claudius*, and comprehends at least the space of 300 Years. We find in this Historian, things that are not to be met with elsewhere; and he is admirable

mirable in the discovery of Secrets of State. He is accused of being partial to *Cæsar* against *Pompey*, of favouring *Anthony* against *Cicero*, whom he disparages for his birth and his natural imperfections, and doth not spare even *Seneca*. He is credulous and superstitious, a friend of Tyranny, and an Enemy of the Commonwealth. His Style is sublime, according to *Photius*; his thoughts are lofty, and his manner of expression suitable to the greatness of the Subjects of which he treats, he is polite, and hath this advantage above *Thucydides*, that he is much more intelligible. The Body of *Coeffeteau's History* is *Dio's*; the rest *Tacitus's*, and *Suetonius's*, a little of *Appian*; and almost nothing of his own.

### Under *Gordian*, III.

*Herodian* the Son of *Apollonius*, a Grammarian of *Alexandria*, surnamed *Dyscolos*, or the *Difficult*, passed the best part of his Life at *Rome*, in the Emperor's Court, whence he had an opportunity to inform himself of many Curiosities which he hath left us in his History. It is divided into eight Books, and towards the end of the second, he saith himself, that it shall contain about 70 Years; and the Government of the Emperors successively from *Marcus Aurelius*, or *Antoninus* the Philosopher, unto the younger *Gordian*. His 8th Book, which is the last, ends with the death of *Clodius Balbinus*, and *Maximus Pupienus*, whom the *Prætorian* Soldiers Assassinated to advance Young *Gordian* to the Empire. His Style according to *Photius* is agreeable and intelligible, and altho' he is not Attick, he yet makes use of words that raise him above that which the Rhetoricians call the *Low* character. In the judgment of the same Author, he hath scrupulously observed all the virtues of History: and there are few Authors to whom this Historian is inferior.

### Under *Decius*, surnamed *Trajanus*.

In his Reign, *Fabian* Bishop of *Rome*; *St. Laurence* of *Spain* according to *Eusebius*; *Babylas*; *Asclepiades*  
F
Bishop



Bishop of *Antioch*; *Alexander* Bishop of *Jerusalem*, *Marcellinus*, *Julia Metranus*, *Dionysius*; *Quinta*; and *Apolonia*, suffered Martyrdom. The persecution was so dreadful that the greatest part of the Christians, deserted their Estates and Houses, to retire into solitudes.

*Suidas* and *Nicephorus* say, that *Origen* was dragg'd to the foot of an Altar, and constrained either to sacrifice, or to prostitute himself to an infamous *Æthiopian*: That he sacrificed to deliver himself from this horrible Monster, that he was excommunicated for this action, and for his errors; and that being not able to endure so shameful, and so severe a separation, he retired from *Alexandria* to *Jerusalem*, where he received Orders to Preach. He obeyed, and had no sooner begun with these words of the Psalmist, *My God hath said to the Sinner, why dost thou Preach my Law, and take my Covenant in thy mouth, whereas thou hatest to be reformed, and hast cast my words behind thee*: but he shut the Book without being able to utter any thing but Groans and Tears, which were followed with the Cryes and Weeping of the Assembly.

#### Under Gallus and Volusianus.

A Plague began in *Æthiopia*, and spread so universally, that as *Eusebius* and *Orosius* say, there was not a Province of the Roman Empire, a City, or House, that was free from it. It is the same that *Gregory of Nyssa*, in the life of *Gregory Thaumaturgus*, attributes to a *Demon*; and that gave occasion to *St. Cyprian*, to write the Book of *Mortality* when it was in *Africk*. It continued almost ten Years, which is contrary to the opinion of *Cardan*, who thinks that the Plague cannot continue above two or three Years, because of the Air which contains it, and the Winds which dissipate it by their continual agitation.

#### Under Valerian and Galiennus.

*Marinus* of *Jerusalem* was beheaded for the Christian Religion, and three hundred Persons of *Carthage*, chose rather

rather to be thrown into a burning Lime-kiln, than sacrifice to *Jupiter*.

*Origen of Alexandria* born A. D. 186, who was not above 17 Years old when his Father *Leonidas* suffered Martyrdom A. D. 203, according to *St. Jerom*, died at Tyre, at the age of 69 Years A. D. 254.

(d) *St. Cyprian* Bishop of *Carthage* was beheaded A. D. 258. He called for his Master when he would bid them give him *Tertullian's Works*.

A. D. 260. *Paul* retired into a Desert, and was thence surnamed the *Hermite*.

The Church which had been persecuted by the Tyranny of the Emperors, also suffered extremely by the Heresies of *Origen*, who amongst other Errors affirmed, That the punishment of the damned was limited to a Thousand Years; and by those of *Sabellius*, the disciple of *Noetius*, who said, that there was but one Person in the Trinity who had different names attributed to him: That *Jesus Christ*, who dyed for us, is the Father and the Holy Spirit, as well as the Son; that for this reason, the Holy Spirit, the Father and the Son, had suffered.

*Paul of Samosata*, who was glad the Christians reaped advantage from the Victories of *Zenobia*, and who looked upon this Princess as an obstacle to the persecutions of *Gallienus*, after he saw she had passed from the Pagan to the Jewish Religion, and so was half in her way to the Christian, endeavour'd to lead her on by a horrible impiety. For fear of startling her in the beginning, he dared to tell her, that *Jesus Christ* was not truly the Son of God. This Heresy which was afterwards maintain'd by *Lucian*, by *Arrius*, by *Marcellus*, by *Photinus*, by *Mahomet*, had long and dreadful consequences, and there are at this day but too many Socinians in Europe. Thus *Paul of Samosata*, from whom the *Samosatenians*, and the *Paulianists* had their name, either by a criminal ignorance, or out of a desire to observe measures towards,

F 2

*Zenobia*,

---

(d) *Castiodor* refert. *Cypriani martyrium ad Valerianum*, IV. & *Gallienum III.* *Coss. Cuspinianus ex ignoto Scriptore*, ad sequentis anni Consules: *Euseb. ad Ann. Ch.* 259.

*Zenobia*, or by a Charity for the Christians which was horrible, slighted the most important and most solid foundation of Christianity. He was deposed under *Aurelian*, about which you may consult the 30th chap. of the 8th B. of *Eusebius's Ecclesiastical History*.

### Under *Aurelian*.

(e) *Cubrick* a Persian, who took the name of *Manes*, *Mani*, and *Manicheus* the Heir of the Estate, Books, and Whimsies of *Scythianus*, and of *Buddas*, infected the Church with his Heresies, and had *Adam*, *Thomas*, and *Hermias* his disciples. The *Arabians* call him *Althanawi*, because he held two Principles, or two Gods; and his Heresies are nothing but a hotch-potch, or medley of all other Heresies. The *Manichees*, whose Head call'd himself the *Paraclete*, believed with *Marcion*, That there were two Gods, one Good, who was the Source and Author of Light; the other Evil, the Author of Darkness, grounding their Error on the 4th v. of the 4th c. of the 2 Ep. to the Cor. where it is said, That the God of this World hath blinded the minds of those who believe not. They also, as well as *Marcion* and *Cerdon*, rejected the Old Testament, condemned with *Tatian* the use of Wine, Flesh, Milk, Eggs, and Marriage. They said with the *Ophites*, that *Jesus Christ* was the Serpent who had seduced *Adam* and *Eve*; with *Simon Magus*, that he suffered only in appearance; with *Valentinus*, that the Soul only shall be saved; that God is the Author of Evil, because Evil is natural to the Creature. They attributed a human body to him with the *Tertullianists*, held that the Body of *Jesus Christ* is fixed to the Stars: denied his Incarnation with the *Marcionites*, his Divinity with *Ebion*; and the Resurrection of the Body, with *Menander* and *Carpocrates*. They taught with the last of these, and with *Pythagoras*, the transmigration of Souls; and gave to man two contrary Souls, the Concupiscible, and the Reasonable, which were in continual War. *Abul- faragius*.

---

(e) *De Menete Hæretico, nominum que ejus rationibus: Ful-  
terus Miscellan. sacr. lib. 2. c. 18.*

*faragius*, Rabbi *Abraham* cited in *Schikard's Persian Tarich*, and in *Buxtorf's Talmudick Dictionary* on the word *Man*; and *St. Epiphanius* testifie, that this *Manes*, or *Mani*, had undertaken to cure the Son of *Schabur* (who must be the *Dhul-Aktaf*, of whom I have made mention) and was dead alive for not making good his promise. *Eutychius*, *Elmacin*, and *Mubammed* the Son of *Isaac*, say, that he was punished for his imposture in the Reign of (f) *Babram*, the Son of *Babram*, or of *Hormoz*.

Under *Marcus Aurelius Carnus*,

*Babylas* Bishop of *Antioch* suffered Martyrdom with his three Children, for refusing to let *Numerianus* see the Ceremonies of the Christians, adding, *That a man polluted with Blood, and the sacrifices of Idols, might not enter into the Church*, or as *Suidas* saith, *That he would not suffer the Wolf to enter into the Lords Sheepfold*.

Under *Diocletian* and *Maximian*.

In this Age lived the Historians *Aelius Spartianus*, *Aelius Lampridius*, *Vulcatius Gallicanus*, *Flavius Vopiscus*, *Julius Capitolinus*, *Trebellius Pollio*, &c.

In the Reign of these Emperors the Christians suffered all the Cruelties imaginable; the Saints *Anastasia*, a Roman Lady, and *Susanna* who refused to marry *Maximian* because he was a Pagan; *Mauricius* with the Thebean Legion which he commanded; *Cassian* a School-master in *Friuli*, *Gorgonius* and *Pantaleon* were put to death for the Faith.

The Persecution was so terrible, that they massacred seventeen Thousand in one day, that in *Egypt* there was a Hundred forty four Thousand and seven hundred Martyrs: and it is from this time that the Epocha *El-Kuphri* of the *Copticks*, of the *Egyptians*, or of the Martyrs, the Epocha of the *Persecution*, or of *Diocletian*, begins.

F 3

I will

---

(f) Vid. *Hottinger, Hist. Oriental*, lib. 3. p. 166. & seqq.



I will only add here, that these Emperors believed they should reap no less glory from the murder of these Christians, than from their Victories over the *Germans, Africans, Persians, Scythians*, and other Nations whom they vanquished, as may be easily shewn from some inscriptions which concern *Diocletian*, and a Medal of *Maximian*, where he is represented as *Hercules* with a *Hydra*. But the number of the Christians (g) multiplied in proportion as the Emperors put them to death. By their constancy under the most frightful executions, they confirmed their Brethren in the Faith, and very often converted the Judges who condemned them. Those who had not been able to endure the Christian Religion, cried out to the Executioners, *that they were ready to dye for it*; and every day new Christians sprang from the blood of the Martyrs.

---

(g) *Plures efficitur quoties metimura vobis, semen est sanguis Christianorum.* Tertullian's Apolog.

---

## CHAP. V.

### The Succession of the Emperors unto Honorius.

**F**lavius Valerius Constantius, surnamed Chlorus, or the Pale, (the Son of (a) Eutropius, and of Claudia Daughter of Crispus, Brother to the Emperor Flavius Claudius of Dalmatia) married two Wives. By Julia Helena (who according to some Authors was the Daughter of Caelus, a King in the Isle of Britain) he had Constantine who was afterwards surnamed the Great. By Theodora Daughter to the Wife of Valerius Maximianus, who declared him Caesar A. D. 291, he had Annibalinus, the Father of Dalmatius; Constantius the

---

(a) Vid. *Julianus Orat.* 2. p. 95. l. 9. *Editionis Petaviana*: Trebell. p. 206. *Euseb.* n. 2304.

the Father of *Gallus* and *Julianus*; and *Constantia*, who married *C. Valerius Licinius*. *Galerius Maximinus*, who had been declared *Cesar*, or *Augustus*, at the same time by *Dioclesian*, and had married his Daughter, divided the Empire with *Constantius Chlorus*, who had *Britain*, *Illyria*, *Asia*, and all the rest of the East for his Share.

(b) *Constantius* loved Learned Men, was Liberal, and such an Enemy to Pride, in what concerned his own Person, that he ordinarily used Earthen Dishes for his Table; and when he was to make a Set-Feast, he sent to borrow silver ones of his Friends, which was however somewhat strange in an Emperor. That he might know his Courtiers, he published an Edict, requiring the Christians, either to sacrifice to Idols, or to quit the Court; and as many did sacrifice, for fear of losing their Employments; so the sincere Christians chose rather to banish themselves, and renounce all their Honours and Preferments, than their Consciences. These he re-called, and publicly declared, that they were his true Friends, and dismissed the Others, reproaching them, That he who was not Faithful to God, could not be so to his Emperor. He died at *York*, in *Britain*, the 25th of July, being 56 Years old, after he had reigned 15, A. D. 306.

Before his Death, he set the Crown upon the Head of *Constantine*, and declared, that he died with the Satisfaction of leaving a Son Emperor, who would Ease the Christians of their Oppressions, and take Vengeance of their Persecutors. *Zosimus*, who doth not always agree with the Ecclesiastical Writers, assures us, that *Helena* was never *Constantius's* Legitimate Wife; and adds, that *Constantine* was made Emperor by the *Prætorian* Soldiers, who had a better Opinion of him than of all his Brothers. *Constantius*, the Father of *Constantine*, as *Eutychius* saith in his *Annals*, being at a Village named *Caphar Phacar*, which signifies the Potters Town, near

F 4

Edeffa,

---

(b) *Eutrop. de Virtutibus Constantii* Baronius in *Ann. Ch.* 304. n. 13. v. 14. & *Ann. Chr.* 306. n. 10. & seqq.

*Edeffa*, or *Roha*, fell passionately in love with *Helena*, who was a great Beauty, and had been converted to Christianity by *Barficus* Bishop of *Edeffa*; he desired her Parents to give her to him in Marriage, obtain'd her, had *Constantine* by her, who was Educated at *Roha*, and who going to meet his Father at *Byzantium*, receiv'd from him the Ensigns of Empire.

*Galerius Maximinus*, of *Thrace*, being ordered to march against the *Persians* with the Troops, of which *Dioclesian* and *Maximian* had given him the Command, gained two Battels of them, and some time after lost one by his Imprudence: His Loss was such, that the most considerable Part of his Army was cut in pieces, and he himself with Difficulty escaped. After which, he went to *Dioclesian*, who had Intelligence of this News, and would not hear him, but made him walk before his Litter, altho' he was cloathed in Purple, having been before declared *Cesar*. After he had born the Displeasure and Menaces of *Dioclesian*, he obtain'd of him a numerous Army to revenge the last Affront: He march'd back directly against the *Persians*, beat them, plunder'd their Camp, took their King *Nors*, with his Family; recovered from him Five great Provinces, and extended the Frontiers of the Empire to the Banks of *Tigris*. He chose his two Nephews to succeed him, *C. Valerius Maximinus*, named *Daza*, altho' he was not yet *Cesar*, who had the East; and *Flavius Valerius Severus*, who had *Italy*, with *Africk*. But when *Marcus Aurelius Valerius Maxentius* knew that *Constantine* was declared Emperor, he made the Soldiers of the Guard give him the same Title, resenting it highly that *Maximian* had passed him by. *Severus*, upon this News, having armed, gave him Battel, which he lost; and was forced to shut himself up in *Ravenna*; but coming out of it, upon the Faith and Advice of *Maximian*, who betrayed him, he was slain at the Three (c) Taverns, that

---

(c) *De tribus Tabernis. Cluverius Ital. Antiq. c. 8. p. 1034. Hic non audiendus est Valesius qui ad Anonymum, illas intelligit de quibus in Actis Apostol. c. ult. vers. 14. and 15.*

that is to say, at *Ponte-Confino*, more commonly called *Ponte-Spoletino*, about a Mile's Distance from *Interamna*, or *Narni*, betwixt *Rome* and *Ravenna*. *Galerius Maximianus* advanced *Licinius* to his Place, A. D. 310, and died the Year following of a sad Ulcer, which bred a frightful Number of Worms.

*Marcus Aurelius Valerius Maxentius*, who had married *Magnia Urbica*, was the Son of *M. Aurelius Valerius Maximianus*, and of *Valeria Utopia* of *Syria*, as *Victor*, *Eutropius* and *Zosimus* testify: But *Cardinal Baronius* proves, by a very ancient Medal, that he was only his Son-in-law. Some have no better an Opinion of *Eutropia*, than to believe that he was Supposititious; and that he so much resembled *Maximian* in the Temper of his Mind, that he passed for Legitimate. When *Maximian* was at *Rome*, to try whether he could recover the Government of the State, under the Pretence of serving his Son in his Affairs; he was, for this very Reason, driven thence. He gave his Daughter *Fausta* to *Constantine*, in hopes to deceive him the better by this Marriage. But this Lady, who was acquainted with his Perfidiousness, made no Secret of it to her Husband, who pursued the other as far as *Marseilles*, and commanded him to be strangled after he was taken.

In the mean time *Maxentius* filled *Rome* with his Adulteries and Murders, when the *Romans* sent secretly Ambassadors to *Constantine*, to desire him to oppose the Tyranny of this Cruel Man; and as he was considering that this War, the Success whereof was also doubtful, would cost a great deal of Blood, and was for this Reason afraid to engage in it, it is related, that at Noon-day he perceiv'd a Burning (d) Cross in the Heavens, with  
three

---

(d) *Quod de hoc signo in aere viso retulere primus omnium Eusebius de Vita Constantini, lib. 1. c. 29. Nec non post eum Socrates Hist. Eccles. l. 1. c. 2. & Sozomenus, l. 1. c. 3. Ac denique Fabularum Architectus Nicephorus Callistus Hist. Eccles. l. 7. Cum omnes rem istam aliter atque aliter narrent, nec sibi invicem consent, parum a rei veritate aberraverit, qui totum hoc negotium ad pias veterum fraudes referendum censeat.*  
J. Oizelius Thesauro Numismatum Antiquorum.



three Greek Words, which signified that this should be a Sign of his Victory. Upon this Assurance, he caused the Figure of the Cross, just as he had seen it, to be set in Gold upon the Standard which was ordinarily carried before the Emperor, and which was the principal Standard of the whole Army; he passed the Alps; took by Force the Towns which opposed him; and in his Passage gained Three Battels. He gained a Fourth, within two Miles off *Rome*, near the Bridge *Milvio*, altho' he had not above 80000 Foot, and about 8000 Horse; and *Maxentius's* Infantry was 170000, and his Cavalry 18000. But that which is most remarkable, is, that *Maxentius*, who had ordered a Bridge to be made, which might be suddenly broken down at his Command, not doubting but he should draw his Enemy thither, fell into the Snare which himself had laid, being forced to fly, and to return to *Rome*, with Precipitation, lest the Gate should be shut against him, if they heard of his Defeat before he came. Some say, he was so closely pursued, that he must have been taken; and therefore he chose rather to throw himself into the *Tiber*, than to be delivered to *Constantine*. Howsoever that be, he was drowned in this River, *December 24. A. D. 312*; and his Head was carried to *Rome*, on the point of a Pole, as a grateful Spectacle to the whole Senate and People.

*P. Valerius Licinianus Licinius*, of *Transylvania*, was a Husbandman's (e) Son, who, after the Defeat of the younger *Maximinus*, having possessed himself of his part of the Empire, not permitting *Constantine* to have any share of it, altho' he had married his Sister *Flavia Valeria Constantia*; and withal, persecuting the Christians, contrary to his Agreement with *Constantine*. *Constantine* thought he had a just Cause of War against him; which he undertook so successfully, that he beat him in *Pannonia*,

---

(e) *Anonymus apud Valesium, p. 473. Author Eutrop. in Histor. Licinium literas & Literatos, virus & pestem publicam appellasse.*

nia, (f) made himself Master of his Camp near *Adriana*, where he cut in pieces 30000 Men, and suffered not above 30000 to escape of the 130000 that he brought into the Field against him, near *Chalcedon*. This put *Licinius* into such a Consternation, that he was forced to throw himself into *Nicomedia*, with *Martinian*, whom he had already declared *Cæsar*; where being closely besieged by *Constantine*, and not able any longer to defend the Place, he at last resolved to surrender himself. *Martinian* was put to Death there by the Command of *Constantine*, who, softened by the Prayers and Tears of his Sister *Constantia*, gave *Licinius* his Life; and contented himself to banish him to *Thessalonica* in *Macedonia*, A. D. 324.

*Marcus Flavius Valerius Constantinus*, surnamed the Great, from his great Actions, was the Son of *Constantius* the Pale, and of *Helena*. Without entering into the Controversie with those who have been of Opinion, that she was no more than *Constantius's* Mistress, (g) and also of an obscure Birth; I'll only say, that she is stiled in a Medal, *Flavia Julia Helena Augusta*, which sufficiently proves that she was truly his Wife; unless *Constantine*, for his Mother's Honour, as well as his own, honour'd her with the Title of *Augusta* in this Medal.

He had two Wives, according to the same Authors, *Minervia*, or *Minervina*, who was delivered of *Crispus* in the City of *Arles*. Others say, that she was only his Mistress; and that *Crispus* was never look'd upon as Legitimate. By *Flavia Maxima*, or *Maximina Fausta*, the Daughter of *Maximianus*, surnamed *Hercules*, he had three Sons, *Constantinus*, *Constans*, and *Constantius*; and two Daughters, *Flavia Julia Constantina*, and *Helena*. He had a noble Air, and a great Soul; he was Sincere, Valiant, Modest, understood Greek and Latin very well, was a good

---

(f) Scalig. ad Euseb. n. 2329. Conferatur Anonymus apud Valesium, p. 473.

(g) Sic etiam Bodin. Methodo ad facilem Historiarum cognitionem, c. 7. ubi de Constantino: Cum enim fuerit natione Britannus, tametsi Romano patre natus, genere notus, &c.

Good Horseman, Wary in undertaking, and Bold in executing, his Designs. He had a full Face, a fat Neck, and sparkling Eyes. His Hair was not thick, and he shaved off all his Beard; which was contrary to the Custom of the Emperors who had reign'd before him since *Hadrian*. Cardinal *Baronius* makes him a *Britain*, and others will have him of *Tarsus* in *Bythinia*. But it is certain that he was born at *Naise* in *Transilvania*, as the most Learned are now agreed.

After he had spent some time in *Dioclesian's* Court, and in this Emperor's Army, which was then in *Egypt*, he passed the remaining Years of his Youth with *Galarius Maximinus*, who sent him against the *Sarmatians* with an Army; in which Expedition he was so successful, that he vanquished them, and brought their General away in Irons. *Maximinus*, jealous of this Victory, and endeavouring to rid himself of this young Prince, advised him, in order to give Proofs of his Courage, to fight with a stout Lion in a full Theatre; which he did, and slew the Lion, contrary to all Expectation. But when he perceived that *Maximinus* reserved him for other Dangers, and had a Design to destroy him, he retired secretly, with some of his Friends, and went into *England*, to his Father *Constantius Chlorus*, who afterwards died, and left him *Spain* and the *Gauls* by Will.

A. D. 306. He was Emperor, and in 315 he nominated *Crispus* and *Constantine* Cæsars, and joined with them *Licinian* (who was not then 20 Months old) the Son of his Sister *Constantia*, and of *Licinius*, over whom he triumphed in 326. In 316 he made War on the *Sarmatians*, beat them, passed the *Danube*; and five Years after obtain'd another Victory over them, when he slew with his own Hand their King *Raufimond*, as he was flying after his Defeat. In 332, he had the same Success against the *Goths*, and would not grant them Peace, but on the Condition that they should furnish him with 40000 Men on Demand. Necessity forced them to consent to it; but these *Goths* having made their Slaves carry Arms, they turn'd them against their Masters, and expell'd them out of their own Territories: So that they

they were constrain'd to request *Constantine* to give them others, which he granted them in some Provinces of the Empire.

After the Death of *Dioclesian*, of *Maximian*, of *Galerius*, of *Maxentius*, of *Maximine*, and of *Licinius*, he was sole Emperor. In 330 he divided his Empire into two; into that of the East, which comprehended Hungary, Transilvania, Walachia, Moldavia, Thrace, Macedonia, Pontus, Asia, and Egypt; and into that of the West, which contain'd Germany, part of Dalmatia and Slavonia, Italy, the Gauls, England, Spain, and Africk. Some are of Opinion, that it is only since this Division of the Empire, that the Roman Eagle hath been represented with two Heads. He had the Fate of all great Men, whose Vertues have been commonly accompanied with many Vices: And how Modest and Equitable soever he was, he was blinded by his good Fortune, and corrupted by his Wife *Fausta*. *Zosimus*, who condemns almost all the Actions of this Prince, is too suspected, to have his Testimony allowed. But all the other Historians agree, that he put to Death his best Friends, *Licinius*, who was *Cesar*; and his Son *Flavius Julius Crispus*, who gave such great Hopes of himself, and who had *Lactantius Firmianus*, the Disciple of *Arnobius*, for his Preceptor. It cannot be denied, but that he was accused of making profuse Expences; of want of Judgment in the Choice of his Friends, and the Distribution of Offices; of Softness in his Dress, and of Cruelty in his Punishments.

*Fausta*, out of Resentment that she could not prevail with *Crispus* by her Caresses, and Offers, to answer her brutish Passion; or out of fear that the Reputation, and excellent Qualities of this young Prince, might prove an Obstacle to the Fortune of her Sons, whom she desired to see on the Throne, accused *Crispus* of a Design to Ravish her; and the too Credulous *Constantine* put him to Death on this false Report. But (*b*) *Helena*, who some time after discovered the Truth, failed not to  
acquaint

---

(*b*) Videatur *Valesius* in *Excerpt Peiresc.* p. 839. *Petau Ration. Temp.* P. 1. l. 6. c. 1. *Scalig. ad Euseb.* n. 2344.



acquaint her Son *Constantine* with it; who, to revenge this Perfidiousness, commanded her to be shut up in a Stove, where she was soon suffocated; altho' *Philostorgius* hath written, that she was thus punished for an Adultery which she had committed with a Broker.

Being penitent for all his Crimes, he desired to be Baptized, as some write; and he was so, according to *Card. Baronius*. But if we may follow *Eusebius*, *St. Jerom*, and the best Ecclesiastical Writers, he was not baptized till a very little time before his Death, in the Suburbs of *Nicomedia*, by *Eusebius*, who was Bishop of that City, and an *Arrian*; which hath brought his Faith into Suspicion with some Authors. To vindicate him herein, it is commonly said, that he had always a Desire to be baptized in *Jordan*; that the Disease whereof he died, prevented this; and that at that time he was baptized in his Extremity.

It was in the Year 330, that he dedicated New (i) *Rome*, call'd *Constantinople*, from his own Name, which was before called *Byzantium*. As he made it the Capital of his Empire, he took so great Care to fortifie and adorn it, that he gave Orders, that whatsoever was most rare in *Asia*, *Europe*, and *Africa*, should be brought thither; and, according to *St. Jerom*, he dispossest all the Cities of the Riches and Ornaments which had made them considerable, for that purpose: He built there the magnificent Church of the *Apostles*, that of *Peace*; demolished the Temple of *Venus*, which the Heathens had erected in *Jerusalem*, over the Sepulchre of our Saviour, to whom he consecrated a Church in the same Place, by the Counsel of his Mother *Helena*, who, according to *Ruffinus*, (k) found the Cross and the Nails with which they pierced our Saviour's Hands and Feet. For this happy Discovery, the Feast of the *Holy Cross* is celebrated the Third of *May*. *Eutychius* also saith, that *Helena*,

by

(i) Vid. *Idatius. Chronic. Alexandr. Euseb. n. 2346. Scallig. Petav. Baron. in Ann. Chr. 330. Laxius, l. 1. Reipub. Rom. c. 1. Valesius ad Ammian. l. 22. p. 224. Petav. ad Julian. Epist. 34. p. 325, 326.*

(k) *Ruffin. Eccles. Histor. l. 1. c. 8.*

by the means of a certain Jew, named *Judas*, found these Crosses in the 22d Year of *Constantine's* Reign: that *Macarius* Bishop of *Jerusalem* was present, and that by means of a sudden Miracle which he relates, they distinguished the Cross for which alone they were concerned, from those of the two Thieves. It is true, that *Eusebius* who hath strictly examined things, doth not acquaint us with this discovery: and in this, I only say what some Ecclesiastical Writers testifie, who add, that *Constantine* in hopes of success in all his Wars, made use of these Nails for his Horse-bit, and a Helmet, which looks very strange to me. Saint *Ambrose* in his Funeral Oration on *Theodosius*, accommodates to this subject by way of allegory (1) the words of the Prophet, *In that day shall there be on the Bridles of the Horses, Holiness to the Lord.*

Howsoever that be, as *Constantine* marched with an Army against *Schabur* King of *Persia*, (who was an Enemy to all Christians, and who in the Year 326, had put to death eighteen Thousand of them) he fell (m) sick, and would be carried to *Nicomedia*, where he died the 22d of May, A. D. 337, at the age of 65 Years, after he had Reigned 30 Years, 9 Months, and 27 Days. (n) His body was carried to the Church of the Apostles, which he had built at *Constantinople*, where they had laid *Helena*, who died in 329, at the Age of 80 Years, and who had built a magnificent Church of Marble, at *Bethlehem*, where the Saviour of the World was born.

*Flavius Claudius Constantinus* the II. had for his share *Spain*, the *Gauls*, a part of the *Alps*, *England*, *Ireland*, the *Orcades* and *Iseland*. *Flavius Julius Constans* had  
Italy,

---

(1) *Zacharias* c. 14. p. 20. *Ad Ea* vid. *Emanuel Sa*; *Dru-*  
*sius*, &c.

(m) *Euseb.* n. 2354. *Valesius* ad *Ammian.* l. 20. p. 181.  
*Petav.* in *Julia.* *Orat.* I. p. 25. *Cedren.* &c. *Joh. Ger.*  
*Vossius* *Harmonia Evangelica*, l. 2. c. 8. *Sest.* 33, 34.

(n) *Scal.* ad *Euseb.* n. 2353. *Anonymus Valesii*, p. 476.  
*Eutropius* l. 10. *Idatius* in *Chronico*.

*Italy, Africk and its Isles, Dalmatia, Macedonia, Peloponnesus, or the Morea, and Greece. Flavius Julius Constantius had Asia and Thrace, and Flavius Delmatius the Son of Delmatius the Censor, or of Hannibalianus, had Armenia, and the neighbouring Provinces. Delmatius was (o) slain sometimes after by his Soldiers, Constantius who had then the command of Asia, having neither encouraged them to, nor restrained them from this Assassination; altho' many are of opinion that the Soldiers had not Rebelled without some Encouragement from him. Constantine, who discovered that he was not satisfied with his share, or who desired to make War on his brother Constans, sent Ambassadors to him to Engage him to make a new division with him. As the latter was then in Transylvania, Engaged in a War against the Sarmatians and the Getes, and gave no answer to his unjust demands; Constantine seized on some part of his Territories, and marched with his Victorious Army near Aquileia, where the Troops which his brother Constans had sent, drew him into an Ambuscade. His horse which was wounded in this rencounter, threw him to the ground, where he was stab'd in several places, and was not known, having not his (p) Purple on, which would have Distinguished him from all other men. He was slain in 340. at the Age of 25 Years, of which he had Reign'd almost three. Constans who was yet but 20 Years old, passed the Alps, entred the Gauls, and in two Years made himself Master of all his Brother's Provinces. But as he neglected the affairs of the State, grew sower thro' ill health, and slighted his subjects, and his Soldiers; the principal Officers of the Army which was then in Rhetia, and which Magnentius commanded under Constans, chose him for their Emperor. Magnentius whom Constans had generously covered with his Breastplate to defend him from some Soulders who attempted to kill him, sent cer-*

tain

---

(o) Vid. Zosimus, l. 2. Eutrop. l. 12. Euseb. n. 2354. Baron. in An. Chr. 337. n. 60.

(p) Valef. ad Ammian. l. 21. p. 193, 194. Baron. in Ann. Chr. 337. n. 60.

tain Persons to (q) Assassinate his Sovereign an Benefactor, who murdered him, either in his Tent as he reposed himself, or in the Church where he thought himself secure, A. D. 350. He was 30 Years old and Reigned. 13.

Upon this News *Flavius Popilius Nepotianus* the Son of *Nepotianus* and of *Eutropia* Daughter of *Constantius Chlorus*, usurped the Empire at Rome; and the Senator *Heraclides*, who was in the interest of *Magnentius*, having desired to speak with *Nepotian* Assassinated him, caused his head to be carried thro' all the Streets, and by reason of this treachery, *Nepotianus* enjoy'd the Title of Emperor but 20 days. *Flavius Veteranion* assumed the same Title in *Pannonia*, that he might the better preserve for *Constantius*, what *Magnentius* designed to ravish from him: and indeed he made that good use of it, that *Constantius* call'd him his Father and sent him back into *Bithynia*, where he was treated with all manner of respect, to the day of his death. *Flavius Silvanus* whom *Constantius* had sent into the *Gauls*, A. D. 355, to oblige the *Germans* to quit that Country had neither the prudence nor the good fortune of (r) *Flavius Veteranion*, for after he had driven them thence, he had orders sent him to come before the Empercur, whom they had possessed with a groundless belief, that he had a design to usurp the Empire. As he knew well enough the humour of *Constantius*, in despair of any other way of securing himself from the Emperours cruelty; he got the whole Army to declare him Emperour. But *Constantius* by money gained some of the principal Officers thereof, so that *Silvanus* who had couragious, experienced, and well disciplined Troops, and might have given him great trouble, was slain at *Cologne*, after he had born the Title of Emperour about a month.

G

In

(q) Vid *Idatius*, *Euseb. Socrat. Baron ad Ann. Chr.* 350. n. 1. *Scalig. ad Euseb. n.* 2366. *Vales. ad Ammian. l.* 15. p. 80, & *ad libr. 18. p.* 156.

(r) Vid. *Athana. in Epist. Apolog. ad Constantium*, *Joh. Antioch. in Excerpt. Peiresc. p.* 841.



In the mean while *Constantius* who during the necessity of his affairs, had nominated his Cousin *Flavius Constantius Gallus, Caesar*, who had given him in marriage his Sister *Constantia*, whom *Ammianus Marcellinus* calls a deadly *Megara*; and left him an Army in the *East* to oppose the progress of the *Persians*, turn'd his whole thoughts to the revenging of his Brother *Constans's* death, as *Magnentius* did on the other side make his utmost Effort to ruin him. This latter having passed into *Italy* with an Army, had made *Decentius* and *Desiderius* (who some say, were his Brothers) *Caesars*, and had given orders to one of them to go and possess himself of *Spain*, and to the other to secure the *Gaules*: *Constantius* who did not desire a Civil War offered *Magnentius* the *Gaules* on condition that he would disarm: but he believed it would be more advantageous to him to decide their quarrel by a Battel. They fought it in *Pannonia* near *Mursa*; and altho' *Magnentius* had but thirty Thousand Men, and *Constantius* seventy Thousand, they fought on both sides with such fury that fifty four Thousand were slain in the field. *Magnentius* who had lost twenty four thousand Men, and had left behind him the Imperial Ensigns and his horse, to induce them to believe he was slain with the rest, made his Escape in a Trooper's habit, with the six thousand Men which he had left; Entred *Italy*, where he defeated *Constantius's* Generals near *Pavia*: and the Gates of *Rome* being shut against him, he passed into the *Gaules*, where with the assistance of his two Brothers he raised new Forces. At the same time he sent some Bishops to *Constantius* to assure him that he would Surrender all the Provinces to him, and that he desired nothing for himself but the Title of General of the Armies. But these Bishops returning without any answer, he saw it must be ended by the Sword. Before he hazarded the last Battel, he sent a Traitor into the *East* to Assassinate *Flavius Constantius Gallus*, and to oblige *Constantius* to go himself in Person to defend his Provinces against the *Persians*. This Traitor having been so unwary as to communicate his design to some Persons in the presence of a very aged woman whom he thought

thought there was no reason to suspect, he was discovered by this old woman, who immediately informed *Gallus* of his treacherous design, whereupon himself and his accomplices received their punishment. *Magnentius* whom *St. Ambrose* calls a Sorcerer, a *Judas*, a *Second Cain*, a *Fury*, a *Devil*, having missed this important Stroke, disposes his Army for a Battel, fights and looses it, flees to *Lyons*, is besieged there, puts to death most of those whom he suspected, wounds his Brother *Desiderius*, and runs a Sword through his own Body in the third Year of his Reign, A. D. 353. *Decentius* hanged himself when he heard this news, and *Desiderius* was no sooner cured of his wounds, but he went to *Constantius* who pardoned him: and who upon the continual complaints, which he received of the cruelties which *Gallus* and his Wife committed, sent the Prefect of the Pretorium, to perswade him by fair means, or if not to compel him by force, to come and give an account of his actions and conduct. Instead of obeying this Order *Gallus* caused the Prefect to be dragg'd thro' all the Streets and afterwards thrown into the River: and as he every day continued his crimes, some say that *Constantius* recalled him without any threats, and acquainted him that it was a pressing juncture, and that they ought to consult together, what Measures were most proper to be taken for their future Government. Others say, that he sent some to sieze him and that *Gallus* obliged his Wife *Constantia* to go and appease the Emperour her Brother. But this Princess, who was got as far as *Bithynia*, dyed there of a Feavor. When *Constantius* heard of her Death, He deprived *Gallus* by a Publick Edict of the Dignity, which He had before conferred on him, and Banished him; and they whom He had sent, apprehended him and cut off his Head (f) at *Pole* A. D. 354.

The Year following He made *Julian*, the Brother of *Gallus*, *Cesar*, and gave him His Sister *Helena* in Marriage

G 2

riage

---

(f) Vid. *Lindenbrogius* & *Valerius ad Ammian* l. 14 p. 29. *Scalig. ad Euseb. n.* 2370.

riage. *Julian* was commanded to go into the *Gaules* to oppose the *Germans* who under the Conduct of Seven of their Kings, had ruined a great many Citys; and was so Successful, that he re-established most of those which were deserted, took near *Strasburgh* *Chonodomarius* the most considerable of their Kings; defeated *Theodomir* the King of *Franconia*, and by his Victorys constrained his Enemy to sue for Peace. *Constantius* was about the same time obliged to go and defend his Frontier Provinces against the *Persians*; and sending into the *Gaules* to Cull out the Flower of the Officers and Soldiers that were in *Julian's* Army, both fearing so long an Expedition, Mutined and chose *Julian* Emperour. He acquainted *Constantius* with it, who commanded him to be contented with the quality of *Cesar*, forbade him to remove from the *Gaules*, sent Garrisons into *Africk*, and to prevent him going farther, Solicited underhand the *Gaules* to revolt. *Julian* after he had put his Affairs in the best posture that he could, deliberated no longer; and as the Death of his Brother *Gallus*, was an Example that he thought, ought to give him warning, he intended to observe Measures no longer, and Marched his Army against *Constantius* who was constrain'd to abandon the *Persian* War. The latter began his Journey in order to return to *Constantinople*, received Baptism at the Hands of *Euzoius* the *Arrian*; and continuing his journey (†) dyed of an Apoplexy or a Fever, at the Age of 45 Years, betwixt *Cilicia* and *Cappadocia*, A. D. 361: He reigned 12 Years with his Father, 24 and almost 6 Months alone.

*Flavius Claudianus Julianus* the Son of *Constantius*, Brother to *Constantine* surnamed *The Great*, and of *Basilina* was born at *Constantinople*, A. D. 301., Married *Flavia Julia Helena*, and was surnamed *The Apostate*, because he turned *Pagan* after he had been Educated in the Christian Religion, and had read the Holy Scriptures himself in the Church before the People. He had  
sparkling

---

(†) *Idatius*, *Socrates*, *Cedren. Chronic. Alexandrin. Vales. ad Ammian. Marcell. l. 21. p. 202.*

sparkling Eyes, a wild and unsteady Look, strait Nose, a pretty large Mouth, his under Lip cleft, an interruption in his Speech, a thick Beard which he wore piked, broad Shoulders; he hung down his Head, which he always turned on one side or other, he walked a great pace altho' he was but a Little Man, and Laughed loud. Altho' *Gregory Nazianzen* conceived a very ill opinion of him from these Marks, and was not indeed mistaken; yet he was Just, Chast, and Sober, according to *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who also saith that there was as much difference betwixt his Brother *Gallus* and him, as betwixt *Domitian* and his Brother *Titus*. He hath been highly praised by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Zosimus*, *Mamertinus Libanius*, and *Eunapius*, and altho' their Praises may be suspected, yet it must be allowed that he had a fine Wit. He had the Eunuch *Mardonius* of *Scythia*, for his Preceptor; and he learned Grammar of *Nicocles* of *Lacedemon*; Rhetorick of (u) *Ecebolius*; Philosophy of *Famblicus*; Judiciary Astrology of *Maximus* of *Ephesus*. The Philosophers *Aristomenes*, or *Aristoxenus*, *Eugenius*, and *Elpidius* were in great Esteem with him; and he had also a great value for the Physicians *Zeno*, and *Oribazes* of *Sardis* in *Lydia*. We may Judge of his Learning and his Wit, by his Orations and Epistles. We may also observe his Justice in his Answer to *Delpbidius* who accused before him *Numerius* or *Numerianus*, that had been sometime before Governour of the *Gallia Narbonensis*, of Robbing the Treasury. This keen and vehement Oratour, seeing at last that he had not sufficient proofs to Convict him, casting his Eyes on *Julian*, cryed out in a Rage. If it were Enough to Deny what Man would ever be found Guilty? And if it were Enough to Accuse replied *Julian*, what Innocent Man could ever be safe?

Norwithstanding this he could not Endure Christians; and if he had been favourable to them, and had not been an Apostate, we might possibly have assented to some Authors,

G 3

---

(u) *De Ecebolo, Famblico, Prophyrio, Maximo, Zenone, Oribazio, Libanio. Eunapius in Vita Philosoph. Vid. etiam Julian; Imper. in Epistolis.*



thors, who have raised him above *Constantine* who had without doubt many Vices; who made use of Religion as a pretext to make himself Master of the Empire, if we may believe *Scaliger*, who adds somewhere, contrary to the Opinion of all the World; that *He was no more a Christian than I am a Tartar*. Howsoever that be, all *Julian's* Vertues were extinguished by this implacable aversion that he shewed towards the Christians; which was such, that he shut up all their Schooles, deprived them Universally of all their Privileges and Offices; forbade them to Assemble, imposed unsupportable Taxes on them, and destroyed all their Churches. He forced them to contribute to the rebuilding of the Temples of the Gods which they had destroyed; banished most of the Bishops and Priests, and could not so much as endure a Souldier in his Army, that was suspected to be a Christian: and he composed, as some say, Seven Books against *Jesus Christ*.

After he had obtained great Advantages, over the *Germans*, he proposed as *St. Jerom*, *Theodoret*, and some others say, to sacrifice to his Gods the blood of the Christians, whom he always in derision call'd *Galileans*, if he should have Success in the War which he was Engaged in against *Schabur*. But after he had Marched out of *Antioch* with an Army of Sixty five Thousand Men, beaten the Enemy in some Rencontres, laid Siege to *Ctesiphon*, and constrained *Schabur* to desire Peace of him, which he would not grant; the *Persians* having possessed themselves of all the Passes reduced him to Extremity. In this desperate condition, he was forced to fight; and if *Eutropius* and *Ammianus Marcellinus* may be Credited, this Battel was very bloody. The last which was fought on the 26th of the same Month A. D. 363, was more fatal to him, when a *Persian*, a *Roman*, a *Saracen*, *Christian*, or a *Demon* (w) pierced his left Arm, his Sides and his Liver with

(w) *Ammian.* l. 25. p. 289. *Rufus, Victor Photius in Excerpt. Arabian.* Baronius in *An. Chr.* 363. n. 54, 55. *Sozomen*, l. 6. c. 2. *Socrates*, l. 3. c. 21. *Theodoret*, l. 3. c. 25. *Cassiodor.* in *Tripertit.* l. 6. c. 47. *Niceph.* l. 10. c. 25.

with a Javelin, and he himself cut all the Nerves of his Fingers in endeavouring to pull it out, the Iron having sharp Edges. He was presently carried into the Camp, where the night following he discoursed a long time of the Immortality of the Soul with *Maximus* and *Priscus*; and without shewing any fear of Death Expired at the Age of 32 or 33 Years, after he had Reign'd only one Year and 8 Months; and in him Ended the Race of *Constantius Chlorus*. Some say that he filled his hand with blood that issued from his wound and threw it up against Heaven with this dreadful Blasphemy, *Thou hast Conquered O Galilean!* His Death was foretold by two Persons whose Hearts were filled with the Spirit of God. When this Apostate promised himself to Conquer the *Persians*, and after his Victory to extirpate all the Christians, *Athanasius* Bishop of *Alexandria* seeing the Faithful of his Church in tears, said only to them by way of Consolation, *Fear nothing, This is but a (x) Cloud.* When the sophist *Libanius* who had instructed this wicked Prince in the Religion of the *Pagans*, had asked a School-Master of *Antioch*, who was a very good Man; *What is the Carpenter's Son now a doing?* He answered him: *This same God who made the World, and whom you in Contempt call the Carpenter's Son, is Preparing a Coffin for Julian;* and the Event verified the Prediction.

*Flavius Jovianus*, of *Pannonia*, the Son of Count *Varronian*, Married *Charity* the daughter of *Lucilian*, by whom he had a Son Named *Varronian*, whom he made Consul, altho' he was then but an Infant; he was Elected the 17th of *July*: and when he would not accept the Empire, declaring he was a Christian, the Souldiers told him, that they were also of the same Religion. He was at that time no more than a Colonel, and was not chosen till after *Sa'ust* the Prefect of the Pretorium, whom the Souldiers importuned to accept the Empire, had excused himself upon the account of his Infirmities and Old Age.

G 4

In

---

(x) *Alludit ad dictum Salomonis Proverb. 10. v. 25. Quasi tempestas transiens non erit impius.*

In the condition that he found the Army after the Defeat and Death of *Julian*, he was constrain'd to make (y) a Peace with *Schabur* for 30 Years, and to yield up to him the Cities of *Singaris* and *Nisibis*, with Five Provinces beyond the *Tigris*, which *Galerius Maximinus* recovered.

After this Peace, he Marched back with his Army towards *Constantinople* during the Winter : and as he was at *Dara*, betwixt *Galatia* and *Bithynia*, where he ordered the Chamber that was designed for him, to be Air'd with Coals, and which had been newly Plastered with Lime, he was found dead in the Morning, either from the vapour of the Lime, or of the Coals, Feb. 17. An. 364. He Lived 23 Years, or 33, according to some ; he Reign'd 7 Months and 22 Days. And altho' he appeared only as a Lightning, he forbid the *Jews* the publick Exercise of their Religion ; restor'd *St. Athanasius* and the Bishops who had been Banished by *Constantius*, and by *Julianus* ; annulled all the Edicts which this Apostate had given in favour of Paganism ; restored to the Christians and to their Churches, their Goods, their Honour, their Revenues, and their Priviledges.

*Flavius Valentinianus*, the son of *Gratian* a Ropefeller at *Cibale*, near *Belgrade*, Married *Valeria Severa*, and afterwards *Flavia Justina* : and made a Law which permitted any one that pleased, to Marry two Wives. *Zosimus* saith that this *Justina* had been before Married to *Magnentius* : and to Marry her, possibly *Valentinian* Divorced *Severa*. Indeed it is not very probable that a Christian made a Law to permit Men to Marry two Wives, and that himself set the first Example of it. However this is what *Socrates* hath said. He had by *Severa*, *Gratian* ; and by *Justina* whom he Married upon the Relation which *Severa* gave to him of this Lady's Beauty, *Valentinian*, *Justa*, *Gata*, and *Galla Placidia*, or *Placilla* who Married *Theodosius*.

His

---

(y) *Ruffin*. l. 3. c. 2. *Euseb*. n. 2380. *Chrysostom*. adversus Gentes *Gregor*. *Nazianzen*. Orat. 2. in *Julian*. *Euseb*. *Zozimus* : *Valesius* ad *Ammian*. l. 26. p. 312 & 313.

His Predecessor *Jovian* recalled him from the place whither *Julian* had banished him, because he was a Christian; and after the Death of *Jovian* who Restored him to the Cohort which he Commanded, the Army chose him Emperour, altho' he was absent. After he had seen that the *Gaules* and *Rhetians* were Every day pillaged by the *Germans*; and that the Upper and Lower *Hungary* were Invaded by the *Sarmatae* and the *Quadi*, the Isle of *Britain* by the *Picts*, the *Scots* and the *Saxons*; *Africk* by the *Moors*; *Armenia* by the *Persians*; and *Thrace* by the *Goths*, he assumed his Brother *Va'lens* into the Partnership of the Empire, and gave him the Government of the *East*. He reserv'd the *West* for him too; and in a dangerous sickness which he had *an.* 367, he declared *Gratian* his Son *Augustus* the 24th of *August*, notwithstanding *Gratian* was then Young. The Wars in which he was Engaged were troublesome enough, but they were also much to His Glory; for He defeated the (2) *Saxons* who were heretofore unknown; and Fought with such success against the *Bourguignons*, who possessed some Countrys of *Cassubia* and of *Poland*, that he left near fourscore Thousand of them dead on the place. He put a stop to the frequent incursions of the *Germans*, who lived in that part which is now called *Suabia*; and built Fortresses on the *Neker* to curb them. But as he Marched against the *Quadi*, who Ravaged the *Pannonians* without resistance; and as the former to prevent his Resentment, had sent Ambassadors to Excuse themselves, who met him at *Brigione* which some take for *Brieg* in *Silesia*, he fell into such an excessive Rage with them, to which he had always been very Subject, that he was Seized with an Apoplexy upon it. He dyed the 17th of *November* *An.* 375, at the age of 55 Years, after he had Reign'd 11 Years 8 Months and 22 Days. Altho' it hapned that he was not Baptized before his Death, yet he omitted not to give sufficient proofs of the Religion which he Professed, since he Commanded all the Idolatrous Temples to be  
 shut



shut up; refused to Assist His Brother *Valens*, because he was Engaged in the *Arrian* Heresy; and sent him word, That he could not give Aid to a Prince, who made War against the Son of God.

† *Flavius Valens* who had Married *Domitia Dominina* had by her *Gallus* who lived but a very short time; and two Daughters, *Anastasia* and *Carrosia*. Altho' after the Death of *Valentinian* the Army had declared his Son *Valentinian* who was but four Months Old *Augustus*, *Valens* did not condemn this Election, and *Gratian* was forced to acquiesce in it. *Valens* being desirous to know the Person that should Succeed him, learn'd from a Magician whom he consulted, that the Four first Letters of his Name were *Θ. Ε. Ο. Δ.* and to make void this prediction, he put to Death those who were Named *Theodorus Theodulus* and *Theodosius* without ever Reflecting on this Maxim, That never was yet a Prince who put to Death his Successor.

The War which he had with *Procopius* of *Cilicia* frightened him, for *Procopius* who was related to *Julian* who had wished that he might have been his Successor, coming from *Cappadocia*, where he had lain a very long time concealed, found Friends at *Chalcedon* who gave him Assistance; and managed Matters so well that he conducted to *Constantinople*, *Flavia Maxima Constantia Faustina*, the Posthumous Daughter of *Constantius* with *Flavia Maxima Faustina* who was this Princess's Mother. Having shewn them as the two only Remains of *Constantine's* Family; and protesting that he had no other Aims but their Interest, he made himself Master of *Constantinople*; dextrously gained to his Party, the Army which *Valens* had sent to oppose him, and with ten Thousand *Scythians*, whom he had sent for to Assist him, he possessed himself of *Bithynia*. The Emperour seeing his Affairs in an ill condition resolved to make Peace; and would infallibly have done it, had it not been for the Officers of his Army, who remonstrated to him, that he could make no Peace but a dishonourable one. After this advice, he Siezed *Nicomedia*, Besieged the City of *Chalcedon*, and was constrained to quit the Siege. But having been Re-inforced with fresh Troops from

from Germany, he drew over by the Word *Augustus*, which was the cry of the Battel, all *Procopius's* Army, who seeing himself basely Deserted fled into the Woods; and his most intimate Friends *Gomaras* and *Agellon* discovered him to the Emperor who put him to a cruel Death, as he afterwards did these two Perfidious Men.

*Schabur*, King of *Persia* had no great advantages over him; but it was otherwise with the *Goths*, who after they had Defeated *Valens's* Army would have Enter'd into a Treaty of Accommodation with him, but this being refused, they prepared themselves for Battel. Altho' *Gratian* was near enough, and on his March to Re-inforce him with considerable Troops; yet *Valens* would not stay for them, nor hearken to any thing but the Passion which he had to Revenge himself. The *Goths* who took advantage of his imprudence, Defeated his Cavalry in an Ambuscade, and Charged his Infantry in a narrow Pass, of whom the greatest part were slain, and the rest forced to fly. *Valens* who had been wounded with an Arrow, and who in his flight fell often from his Horse, by reason of the pain of that wound, was taken and carried into a House which the *Goths* Assaulted, not knowing that *Valens* and some of his Train were there. But when they found resistance they thought fit to set Fire to it on the 19th of *August* an. 378; and this Emperor was burnt there being fifty Years old, after he had Reigned 14 Years, 4 Months and 9 Days. He was Baptized by *Eusebius* according to *Socrates*, or according to others by (a) *Eudoxius* Bishop of *Constantinople*: and at the instigation of this *Arrian*, and the Empress his Wife, he made a troublesome War in all parts upon the Orthodox.

*Flavius Gratianus* Son of *Valentinian* the I. and of *Severa* had for his Preceptor the Poet (b) *Ausonius* of

---

(a) Non ab Eusebio ut vult Epiphanius, sed ab Eudoxio qui Constantinopolitanam Sedem occuparat, Baptizatus est Valens: *Dion. Petavius ad Epiphan.* p. 287.

(b) De *Ausonio. Symmach.* l. 1. Ep. 15, Ad *Auson.* Jul. C.

*Scalig. Poetices l. 6. Bellarm. de Script. Eccles. ad ann. 390. Vossius de Poetis Lat.*

of *Bordeaux*, whom he made Consul in 379; he Married *Flavia Maxima Constantia Faustina*, the Posthumous Daughter of *Constantius*, and of *Flavia Maxima Faustina*; he was Charitable, (c) Temperate, and Liberal. He divided the Empire, with the Young *Valentinian*, who had *Italy*, *Dalmatia*, and *Africk*; Defeated with a small Number of Soldiers, almost forty Thousand *Germans*; he called *Theodosius*, who was in great Reputation, out of *Spain*, and gave him the Command of an Army, against the *Alans*, against the *Huns*, and against the *Goths*. When this General had made War with all the Success that might be expected from his Conduct, he was declared *Augustus* by *Gratian*, who gave him the East, with *Thrace*; and then went himself from *Hungary* to the *Gauls*, where he neglected all Affairs of Importance; preferring Hunting, and Gaming, before them. *Magnus Maximus*, who Commanded an Army in *Britain*, had possessed himself of this Isle, and was willing to make his Advantage of the Negligence of *Gratian*, attacked the *Gauls*; and when *Gratian* was in a Condition to Repel them, the *Roman* Soldiers revolted, and took part with *Maximus*. This latter, the sooner to put an end to this War, ordered *Andragathus*, his Admiral, to go and meet *Gratian*, after he had spread a Report, that *Constantia Faustina* was coming to see the Emperour: and as he went to receive her, *Andragathus*, all on a sudden, sprang out of the Litter, where *Gratian* expected to have seen the Empress, and killed him the 25th of *August*, Ann. 383. He lived 24 Years, or 34 according to some, of which he Reigned 16, and six Days, that is to say, Eight Years and some Months with his Father *Valentinian*, Three with his Uncle *Valens*, and the Younger *Valentinian* his Brother, Four Years and almost Seven Months with *Theodosius*.

(d) *Va-*

(c) *Ammian. l. 31. p. 455. Victor. Paul. Diacon. Pompon. Latius; Egnatius; Ruffin, l. 2. p. 15.*

(d) *Valentinian* the II, or the Younger, was the Son of *Valentinian* the I, and of *Justina* the famous *Arrian*. He was declared Emperour by the Soldiers, *Ann.* 375: and as he had a great War with *Maximus*, who passed the *Alps*, and surprized him; he was forced to fly to *Theſſalonica*, to ſecure himſelf, and thence into the Eaſt, to deſire Succours of *Theodoſius*. He very kindly reaccompanied him back to *Milan*, ſought out *Maximus*, who had poſſeſſed himſelf of all the Paſſages of the *Alps*, and of the Rivers; and who, by an almoſt incredible Overſight, cauſed the Troops, which he had ſent thither, to retire, in hopes the ſooner to execute his Deſign upon their Fleet. *Theodoſius* having no more to fear on that ſide, marches his Troops before *Aquileia*, takes *Maximus*, (who ſurrenders to him the Garriſon, who were not much inclined to Endure the Siege) and puts him to Death: and *Andragathus*, at this News, looſes all hopes, and in Deſpair Drowns himſelf.

This War, which otherwiſe, had coſt a great deal of Blood, was ended by the Death of theſe two Men: and *Theodoſius*, after having triumphed at *Rome* with *Valentinian*, re-eſtabliſh'd him. And ſeeing no more Enemies to fear, he took his Journey for *Conſtantinople*, and *Valentinian* for the *Gauls*. But as the latter was at *Vienna*, (e) in *Dauphine*, *Eugenius*, a *Gaul*, his Intendant, or Controulor, *Arbogaſtus* a *Goth*, who commanded all his Armies, and who both deſign'd to uſurp the Empire, by Promiſes ſo entirely gained the Eunuchs of *Valentinian*, that entring by night the Chamber where he lay, they Strangled him, or cauſed him to be Strangled, the 15th Day of May, *Ann.* 392. He Reign'd 16 Years, Five Months, and Twenty four Days,

---

(d) *De loc Valentiano Valeſ. ad Ammian.* l. 31. p. 412, 413. *Rupert Obſervat in Synopſ. Beſoldi minor.* c. 15. p. 488. & ſeqq.

(e) *Zoſimus.* l. 4. p. 775. *Idatius in Faſtis.* Adde *Baron.* in *Ann. Chr.* 392. n. 6. *Hieron. Epist.* 3. *Socrates* l. 5. c. 11. *Sozomen.* l. 3. c. 13. *Ambroſ. Epist.* 27. *Philoftorg.* l. 2. c. 1. *Oroſ.* l. 5. c. 24. *Ambroſ. in Obitu. Valentiniani.*



Days, and these horrid Murderers who hanged him, that it might be believed that he had strangled himself in Despair, were a while afterwards punished for their Parricide.

*Flavius Theodosius*, surnamed *the Great*, from his Great Actions, Son of *Theodosius* and *Thermantia*, was a Spaniard, and also of the Family of *Trajan*. (f) He expelled the *Goths* out of *Thrace*; defeated the *Huns*, and *Alans* in several Battels, and recovered from *Maximus* and *Andragathus* what these Tyrants had Usurp'd. Whilst he enjoy'd a profound Peace in the East, *Eugenius* and *Arbogastus*, who had a prodigious Army, oblig'd him to undertake an Expedition into *Italy*: and altho' his was much less, and the Passages of the *Alps* were shut against him, yet he attack'd them, but without obtaining any Advantage over them. After he had passed the Night in Prayers, and ranged his Army the next Day in Battel; he was so fortunate that the (g) Air fought for him, and terrible Winds carried all the Darts and Arrows of his Soldiers on the Enemies with great Violence, and beat back on the Rebels, all those which they shot at *Theodosius's* Army, so that this Victory ought to be esteemed Miraculous. They took *Eugenius*, and beheaded him; and *Arbogastus* kill'd himself. *Theodosius* retired himself to *Milan*, where soon after he fell Sick of a Dropsy, (h) of which he died the 17th of *January*, Ann. 395; in the 60th of his Age; and in the 16th, or according to others the 17th of his Reign.

*Flavius Arcadius*, Son of *Theodosius*, and of *Ælia Placidia*, received of his Father the Title of *Augustus*, Ann. 383. Married *Julia Eudoxa*, the Daughter, or Niece of *Ruffinus*, by whom he had *Theodosius*, who was afterwards Emperor, *Placilla*, *Pulcheria*, *Arcadia*, *Martina*, or

(f) *Prosper Aquitan. in Supplemento Hieron, n. 2395.*

(g) *Oros. l. 7. c. 24. Sozom. Theodoret. l. 5. c. 24. August. l. 5. de Civ. Dei c. 26. Ambros. in obitu Theodosii. p. 117. Claudian de tertio Consulatu Honorii.*

(h) *Vid. Theodoret. l. 5. c. 29. Histor. Eccles.*

or *Marina*: and as he was yet Young, *Theodosius* who had left him the East, gave him *Ruffinus* for his chief Minister. He with time carried his Ambition farther, and in hopes of gaining the Empire for himself, or at least of Dividing it; he secretly called in (i) *Alarick*, who entring through *Macedon* into *Thessaly*, passed the *Streights* of *Thermopylae*, and easily took the most considerable Cities of *Peloponnesus*. *Stilico*, upon this News Embark'd, joyn'd his Army to that of the East, Marched towards the *Barbarians*, came up to them, and when he was ready to give Battel, he received Letters from *Arcadius*, commanding him to send his Army back to *Constantinople*. He presently perceived the Treachery of *Ruffinus*, who had obliged his Emperor to send him this Order; he charged *Gainas*, or *Caen* the *Goth*, who was in the Service of *Arcadius*, and who had the Conduct of the Army of the East in its Return to *Constantinople*, to revenge the Perfidiousness of *Ruffinus*, (k) who was slain by the Soldiers, in the presence of *Arcadius*, that came out to meet the Army. The Eunuch *Eutropius* who succeeded him, was not more faithful, since he procured a Publick Sentence to be given against *Stilico* in the West; set all Offices to Sale; and Banished all Men of Probity, and Virtue. By his Intrigues and Counsel, *Gildo*, whom he would draw over to his Party, usurp'd *Africk*, and this Tyrant caused the Children of his Brother *Mascelzer*, or *Macezel*, to be strangled, who had reproached him with his Treason. *Macezel* affected with the Death of his Children, desires an Army against *Gildo*, who had Seventy thousand Men in his: and altho' he had then but Five thousand Men to oppose him, he was so Fortunate, that this numerous Army surrendred themselves to him, and *Gildo*, after this Loss, was obliged to save himself in a Ship, which by a Storm was driven Back to *Africk*, where this Traitor was immediately taken, and Strangled. *Mascelzer* who had restored Peace to *Africk*, which

---

(i) *Hieron. in Epist. 5. ad Heliodor.*

(k) *Socrates Hister. Eccles. l. 6. c. 5.*

which he kept for himself, was killed by his Soldiers. The Eunuch *Eutropius*, the chief Author of all these Disorders, was at last beheaded by the Command of *Arcadius*, who had great Wars upon him, and died, *Ann.* 408. He lived 31 Years, and some Months, reigned 13 Years, Three Months; and 15 Days after the Death of his Father *Theodosius*; declared his Son *Theodosius* Emperor, being Eight Years old, and named *Fazdigard* for his Guardian; (1) or, as *Abulfaragius* calls him, *Vazdejird* the Son of *Schabur*, King of *Persia*.

To conclude; I shall call the Mother of *Arcadius*, and *Honorius Placilla*, whom most Authors name *Flaccilla*: and *Lambecius* observes in his History of the Library of *Vienna*, that she was before call'd *Placidia*; but that *Placilla* is a Diminutive of it, as if one should say, *Placidiola*, or *Placidilla*. I have also omitted *Theodosius's* second Marriage with *Galla Placidia*; the Daughter of *Valentinian* the I. and of *Justina*: that he had by her *Galla Placidia*, who married *Constantius*, and was the Mother of *Valentinian* the III. *Arcadius*, who according to *Procopius*, was a Weak Man, was born at *Sabaria*; now *Stain Hin Angern* situated at the meeting of the Rivers *Guntz* and *Regnitz*.

---

(1) *Vid. Tarich. Persic. p. 12. & seqq.*

---

## CHAP VI.

*Chronological Observations on the Ecclesiastical and  
Prophane History.*

*Under Galerius Maximinus.*

**P***amphilus* of *Laodicea*, was Presbyter of the Church of *Cæsarea*; *Eusebius* who dearly loved him, desired to Write his Life in three Books, and took his Name; He died a Martyr, *Ann.* 307.

*Quirinus*

*Quirinus* a Bishop, was thrown Headlong into a River, *Ann.* 309. and *Peter*, Bishop of *Alexandria*, had his Head cut off, *Ann.* 311.

A prodigious Number of the Faithful were put to Death under this Emperor, who was a great Enemy of Christianity.

The Saints *Agnes*, *Sopronia*, and *Dorothea*; *Lucian* Priest of the Church of *Antioch*, and *Sylvanus* of *Gaza*, were of the number of these Martyrs.

Under *Valerius Licinianus Licinius*.

His was a Reign of Blood to the Christians, amongst whom died Martyrs, the Saints *Theodorus* a General of an Army, *Blasius*, *Basil* Bishop of *Amasia*; and *Paul*, Bishop of *Neocæsarea* in *Cappadocia*.

Under *Constantine*.

*Lactantius Firmianus*, *Juvencus*, (a) who turned the Gospel into Heroick Verse, *Eusebius* of *Cæsarea* in *Palestine*, *Titus Calpurnius* the Poet, *Nazarius* the Rhetorician, *Eusebius* Bishop of *Nicomedia*, were in great Reputation at this time; *Hosius* Bishop of *Cordubá*, *Eustathius* Bishop of *Antioch*, *Paphnutius* a Bishop of *Egypt*, *Alexander* Bishop of *Alexandria*, *Arrius* an *African*, the Son of *Ammonius*, lived also at the same time.

It was principally against *Arrius* (b) who asserted, That the Son of God had neither the same Eternity, nor the same Essence with the Father, that in *Bithynia* was assembled the Council of *Nice*, formerly called *Antigonina*, from *Antigonus* the Son of *Philip*, and afterwards

H *Nicea*,

(a) *De Juvenco Hispano*, *Hieronym.* Non pertimuit Evangelii Majestatem sub metri leges mittere: & in *Catalogo Scriptor.* Pulcherrime munerum Sacramenta *Juvencus* Presbyter uno versiculo comprehendit: Thus, *Aurum*, *Myrrham*, *Regique*, *Hominique*, *Deoque* *Dona* ferunt.

(b) *De morte Arrii*, *Athanas.* *Epist. ad Serapion.* *Daniel Heinsius*, *Exercitation. Sacrar.* l. 5. p. 264.



*Nicæa*, from the Name of *Lyſimachus's* Wife, who was Daughter to *Antipater*.

This Council which was the first *Oecumenical*, or General, after the Death of our Blessed Saviour, was called with the consent of the Emperor, *Ann.* 315; according to *Æneas Sylvius*, in 335: according to *Ado* Bishop of *Vienna*, in 328: according to *Cassiodorus*, in 324, as *Hermannus Contractus* saith: according to the Centuriators of *Magdeburg*, in 320: and some say, in 311, and others, in 310. The most current Opinion is for the Year 325. It was composed of 318 Bishops, according to *Rufinus*, *Socrates*, and *Theodoret*, of 322 according to *Dorotheus*, of above 250, according to *Eusebius*, of 200 according to *Eustathius* Bishop of *Antioch*, and Disciple of *Marcellus*, and of a smaller Number; as may be seen in *Selden*, upon *Eutychius* Patriarch of *Alexandria*. This Author says, that Two Thousand forty eight Bishops of a different Faith, were then at *Constantinople*; that the President (c) of this Council was *Alexander* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, with *Eustathius* Patriarch of *Antioch*, and *Macarius* Bishop of *Jerusalem*: that *Sylvester* Patriarch of *Rome* sent two Presbyters in his Name, one named *Victor*, and the other *Vincent*; that the Heresy of *Arrius* was there condemned, with those of *Donatus*, and of *Meletius* an *Egyptian* Bishop, who would not have those admitted to Repentance who fell into Sin, what Contrition soever they shewed for it; and also that of *Paul* of *Samosata*, and his Disciples. *Novatus* was also condemned in the second Synod of *Africk*, in which *St. Cyprian* was President; in the second Synod of *Rome*; and in that of *Antioch*. *Meletius*, who only revived and dress'd up a new the Opinions of *Novatus*, separated from the Church: and the *Meletians*, who had also Churches separated from those of the Orthodox, sometime after joyn'd with the *Arrians*. The *Samosatensians*, or *Paulinists* maintain'd, That *Jesus Christ* was call'd the

---

(c) More probably *Osius*, whom *St. Athanasius* in his 2d *Apology* calls, the Father, and the president of all Councils.

Son of God for his Sanctity, that he was no more than a meer Man, and that he had no Existence before he was born of the Virgin Mary.

The celebration of Easter was fixed on the Sunday in this Council : of which those that desire to know more, may read Socrates, Sozomen, Eusebius, Theodoret; St. Athanasius, Sulpitius Severus, &c.

Arrius died a Year before Constantine.

### Under Constantine's Three Sons.

There passed considerable things under these Emperors, of which I'll content my self to relate some.

Athanasius, who had been banished to Treves, was recall'd to Alexandria, in 338, by Constantine ; and Eusebius died the Year following.

The same Year Constantius quitted the Orthodox Party, and espoused the Arrian : and St. Athanasius the most formidable Enemy which they had, was obliged after the Council of Antioch, by their Artifices and Factions, to go to Rome, in 341, to vindicate himself from the Calumnies which the Arrians had cast on him; and to implore the Assistance of the Western Bishops; against the Violences of the Bishops of the East.

After the Council of Sardica in Mæsia, St. Athanasius and the Bishops who were banished, were restored to their Churches, Ann. 347 : and at this time died St. Paul, the first Hermite, whose Life St. Jerom hath written; who must have lived a long time in Solitude, if it be true, that he was above a Hundred Years old when he died, and became a Hermite at sixteen.

St. Anthony died a Hundred and five Years old in 355 : And St. Austin was born the same Year, if it is true that he lived Seventy six Years, and died in 430.

In the same Year of 355, Pope Liberius, St. Hilary, and divers Bishops were Banished by Constantius : and in 356 St. Martin, who had bore Arms under Constantine, and under Constantius, and whose Life Sulpicius Severus hath written, quitted his Military Employment, that he might fight no more, as he said, but under the Banner of Christ.

In the Year 359, there was at *Rimini*, a Council of Four hundred Bishops, of which, fourscore were *Arrians*, and amongst the rest *Ursacius* and *Valens*: one at *Seleucia*, of a Hundred and sixty Bishops, in which the Word *Consubstantial* was rejected, with respect to the Son of God: a Council of Fifty Bishops at *Constantinople*, in which the *Arrians* banished the Terms of *Substance*, *Consubstantiality*, *Subsistence*, *Hypostasis*. You may consult *Sulpicius Severus*, *St. Athanasius*, *St. Hilary*, in their Books of Synods; *Socrates*, *Sozomen*, *St. Ambrose*, *Theodoret*, and those who have written of Councils.

*Victorinus* the Rhetorician, *Donatus* the Grammarian, *St. Jerome's* Master were in great Reputation at *Rome*.

#### Under *Julian*.

*Artemius* General of the *Egyptians*, *Gallicanus* Son-in-Law to *Constantine*, *Empsychius*, Bishop of *Cæsarea*, *Philip* Bishop of *Adrianople*, *Hilarion* Bishop of *Jerusalem*, *Donatus* Bishop of *Arezzo*, *Donatus* the Grammarian, and *Cyrill* Bishop of *Heliopolis*, signalized their Constancy in Martyrdom. There were also condemned to death for the same Faith, *John*, *Priseus*, *Hermes*, *Pigmenius*, and *Eusebius* Presbyters; *Macedonius*, *Theobulus*, *Tatian*, *Nestor*, *Elyphius*, a Citizen of *Thule*, *Eucarius* his Brother who was a Bishop, their Sisters *Libaria* and *Susanna*, *St. Benedictina*, and *St. Christina*.

#### Under *Jovian*, or *Jovinian*.

*Athanasius*, with the Permission, or Consent of this Emperor, convened at *Alexandria*, a Council of several Bishops, who confirmed the Decree of the Council of *Nice*, for the *Consubstantiality* of the Son and the Father, and condemned the Heresy of *Macedonius* Bishop of *Constantinople*, and of his Followers, who denied the Holy Ghost to be God, and were call'd *Pneumatomachi*, because they opposed his Divinity.

Under

Under *Valentinian*.

St. Hilary Bishop of Poitiers died in this Emperor's Reign, Ann. 366, or according to other 367.

St. Ambrose who was Governour of the Milanese, was Elected Bishop of Milan, about the Year 369; according to others, 375.

St. Athanasius (d) died the 2d of May, Ann. 371; and at this time flourished Basil the Great, of Casarea, Bishop of the same City in Cappadocia; Gregory (e) his Brother of Nyssa in the same Cappadocia, Gregory of Nazianzum; Didymus of Alexandria, and Apollinarius the Syrian, who composed the History of the Jews to the Reign of Saul in Heroick Verse, and made Poems and Tragedies, the Subjects whereof were taken out of the Bible.

Under *Valens*.

He removed Meletius from the Bishoprick of Antioch, Eusebius from that of Samosata, Pelagius from that of Laodicea, Barse from that of Edessa, and generally all the Bishops and Pastors from their Diocesses, who would have no Conference with Eusebius, an Arrian Bishop, except Athanasius Bishop of Alexandria, Paulinus Bishop of Antioch, and Epiphanius Bishop of Salamis.

Amongst so many Men as were Banished, some were torn with Whips, others Drown'd: And this Emperor ordered the Anchorites of Egypt should be drawn out of their Solitudes, to Enroll them in the Militia, and all without Exception to be slain, who refused to obey his Orders.

H 3

He

(d) Vitam Basilii M. Contextuit Abraham Scultetus quem vide in Medulla Patrum

(e) De Gregorio Nyssæ in Cappadocia Episcopo, Sixtus Senensis Biblioth. l. 4. Suidas; Gregor. Nazianzen. Epist. 43. Nicephor. l. 12. Histor. Eccles. cap 13.



He permitted the *Jews* and *Heathens* the Exercise of their Religion; and to shew how great his Rage was, it sufficeth to say, that there were deputed above Four score Ecclesiastical Persons to complain to him, with all the Respect imaginable, of the Persecution of the *Arrians*; and that *Modestus* too, whom he gave a Commission to Murder them, had not the Boldness to obey him, for fear lest the Blood of so many Martyrs might raise the People against him. Under this Fear, he commanded all these Deputies on Board, as if he intended to send them into Banishment, and then caused the Ship to be set on Fire, which was certainly a dreadful Spectacle. But by a just Judgment of God, when this was not thought of, the *Goths* punished this Emperor with the same Kind of Death, that he had made these Martyrs suffer. *Orosius* relates, that the *Goths* desired him to send them some Doctors to instruct them in the Christian Religion, and that *Valens* having chosen *Arrians* for his purpose, this Nation never after quitted their Heresies.

*Ammianus Marcellinus* ends his History with this Emperors Death.

### Under *Theodosius the Great*.

Altho *Philostorgius* and *Zosimus* have condemned his Delicate and Voluptuous (f) Life, he paid a great Submission to the Church. Having put to death, without observing any forms of Law, Seven thousand innocent Persons at *Theffalonica*, as may be seen in *Sozomen*, *Theodoret*, and *Ruffinus*, *St. Ambrose* would not permit him to Communicate, nor enter the Church of *Milan*, till after a Publick Pennance of eight Months: and the Emperor obey'd this Bishop. This Holy Prelate also easily obtained of him, that in all Criminal Causes, the Execution should be deferred full Thirty Days, that he might have Opportunity to see whether in his Passion he had done any thing that was not just. He

---

(f) *Socrates* l. 7. c. 25. *Ruffin*. l. 2. c. 18. *Theodoret*. l. 5. *Paulin. in Vita Sancti Ambrosii*.

He commanded that the Temples in which they Sacrificed to Idols should be rased to the Ground; and was Baptized in the Year 380, by *Acholius* the Orthodox Bishop of *Thessalonica*.

The Year following, in the Pontificat of *Damasus*, was held the General Council of *Constantinople*, composed of one Hundred and Fifty Bishops, who unanimously condemned *Macedonius* Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and *Eudoxus* Patriarch of *Antioch*, who denyed the Divinity of the Holy Spirit.

St. Basil died this Year:

In the Year 384, (g) *Paulinus* born at *Bourdeaux*, of noble Birth, Embraced the Christian Faith, and was afterwards made Bishop of *Nola*, viz. Ann. 409.

A. D. 388, St. *Austin* was Baptized by St. *Ambrose*; according to others, the Year preceding, or the following Year, or the Year 384: for Opinions are divided about the time: and *Gregory* of *Nazianzum* died Ann. 389.

St. *Jerom* (h) translated the Bible out of *Hebrew* into *Latin*, according to some, Ann. 395; or to speak more properly, corrected the Ancient *Vulgar*, or *Italick* Translation.

After the Death of the Emperor *Valens*, *Ammianus Marcellinus* resolved to retire to *Rome*, where according to some he wrote his History. Of One and Thirty Books, which he began from the end of *Domitian*, or the beginning of *Nerva's* Reign, and continued to the Death of *Valens*; the first thirteen are lost: and the Eighteen which follow, and which we have, are full of Faults either by the Injury of time, or the rashness of Transcribers. It is believed that those which we want, were written after a more summary Manner

H 4

than

(g) *De Paulino*, *Ambros.* l. 6. *Epist.* 1. ad *Sabinum* *Sixtus Senensis* l. 4. *Biblioth. Sacrae*. *Vossius* l. 2. de *Historicis Lat.* c. 12. In eo vero fallitur *Vossius*, quod illi quatuor libros *De vita Martini Episcopi Turonensis* tribuit. *Vid.* *Bellarmin.* in *Paulino*.

(h) *Hieron. Adversus Rufinum.* l. 2. *Baron.* ad An. Chr. 231. §. 47, 48. *Joh. Capellus Critica Sacra*, p. 371.

than those which remain, because in the thirteen former, he had compris'd the Reigns of all the *Cæsars* from *Nerva* to *Constantius*, with whom he begins the Fourteenth Book, whereas in all the rest that follow, he hath written only the Occurrences from this last Emperor to *Gratian*, comprehending only seven Reigns.

His History is so much the more considerable, in that we have no other which informs us of many Antiquities of the *Gauls* which this doth; nor which gives so good an Account of the Origine of the Old *French*, of the *Germans*, and of the *Burgundians* whereof he writes. His Stile is very Poetical. He had very considerable Military Employments, and passed the last Years of his Life under the Emperors *Gratian*, *Valentinian*, and *Theodosius the Great*.

#### Under *Arcadius*.

(i) *St. Martin of Pannonia*, Bishop of *Tours*, died *Ann.* 397, or according to others 394: and *St. Ambrose* Bishop of *Milan*, according to the common Opinion, *Ann.* 398, on the 4<sup>th</sup> of *August*.

On the 26<sup>th</sup> of *February* of the same Year, *John Chrysostome* of the City of *Antioch*, was received Bishop of *Constantinople*.

*Epiphanius* Bishop of *Salamis*, returning to the Isle of *Cyprus*, dyed by the way, *Ann.* 403: and the same Year (k) *John Chrysostome* being driven out of the Church by the Practices of *Julia Eudoxa*, was restored upon the Solicitation of the People.

He

---

(i) (*De Beato Martino cujus Sabaria Panmonia oppidum Patria fuit, Sulpitius Severus, Sozomen. l. 3. c. 13. Henricus Spondanus ad Ann. Chr. 402. n. 15, & 16.*

(k) *Primo Versatus est in foro Chrysostomus, postea factus Monachus, tum Presbyter Antiochenus. De Chrysostomo Sozomen. l. 8. c. 2. Justus Lipsius ad Aubertum Miræum, Centur. 3. ad Belgas Epist. 49. Gregor. Nyss lib. de S. Trinitate adversus Judæos Theodoret. Andr. Rivet. Specim. Critici. Sacr. l. 4. c. 1.*

He was Banished thence *Ann.* 404. for preaching with too much Liberty against this Empress, whom he called *Herodias*: and died in Exile, *Ann.* 407, the 4th of September, or November, according to some; being Fifty two Years Old. He was Bishop of *Constantinople* Five Years, and almost Six Months.

## CHAP. VII.

### *The Succession of the Emperors unto Anastasius.*

**FLAVIUS HONORIUS**, Son of *Theodosius*, and of *Elia Placilla*, was born the 4th of September, *Ann.* 384: was declared *Augustus*, *Ann.* 393; had the West for his Share: and as he was yet very Young, his Father by his last Will constituted *Stilico* (a) his Guardian. He was at different times betrothed to the two Daughters of *Stilico*, and of *Serena*, to *Mary* who died suddenly; afterwards to *Thermantia*, who died likewise after the same manner: and by these two sad Accidents, the Marriage was consummated with neither.

In the 8th of his Reign, the *Franks* who inhabited the Coasts of *Friseland*, and who had already made themselves known, took *Treves*, having been called in by a Senator, whose Wife had been taken from him by *Lucius*, the Governour of that City. They made themselves Masters of the Provinces which lay nearest to *Holland*; Entred *Brabant*, and carried on their Conquests farther. It was from the taking of this City, *Ann.* 418, or 419, that the Reign of the *Franks*, or *French* began, whose first King was *Waramond*, or *Pharamond* according to some; altho' according to others he was the (b) Seventh. He was chosen according

(a) *Zozimns* l. 4. p. 779.

(b) *Voyez Favin dans son Theatre d'Honneur, & de Chevalerie au T. Claude de Valles.*



according to most Historians, *Ann.* 420, and died, *Ann.* 428, or 429.

*Honorius* had greater Wars to maintain; for (c) *Radagæsus* King of the *Goths*, broke into *Italy* with Two hundred Thousand Men, or Four hundred Thousand according to some. But *Stilico* was so Fortunate, that with a small Number he shut up this great Army within the Mountains of *Fiezole*, which being reduced to Extremity by the Plague and Famine, *Stilico* attack'd them without hazard, cut in pieces above a Hundred thousand of these *Barbarians*, and made Slaves of all the rest. *Radagæsus* as he was attempting to save himself, was taken and Slain.

Some time after, the same *Alaric* who had served *Theodosius* against *Eugenius*, passed the *Alps* on *Trent* side; Forced and Plundered most of the Cities that lay in his way; and at last marched into the *Gauls*; where *Honorius* assigned him Lands for himself, and his People to inhabit, when *Stilico* who was a *Vandal*, and a declared Enemy of the *Goths*, sent some who fell upon them on *Easter* day. This People being surprized made at first but little Resistance, but all animating themselves in Despair, ran to their Arms vigorously, repulsed their Enemies, defeated them, and obliged the most obstinate of them to fly. To revenge themselves of such an unexpected Treachery, they were of Opinion to leave the *Gauls* to those that would have them; they re-entred farther into *Italy*, where they filled all the Cities and Places where they passed with Fire and Sword: and at last to secure their Conquests, intended to add that of *Rome* to them.

The same Year that *Honorius* died, *Stilico* was (d) killed with his Son *Eucherius*, at the command of *Honorius*, who suspected him, to have created all these Wars, to oblige him by his great Service, to declare him *Augustus*: and to make him more Criminal, it was added,

---

(c) *Orosius*, l. 7. c. 37. *Paul. Diacon.* §. 5. *Zosim. Schedius de Diis Germanorum.* Syngr. 3. c. 4.

(d) *Olympiodor. apud Photium cod.* 80. *De Dignitate & Auctoritate Stiliconis.* Vid. *Inscrip.* 414 p. 412.

added, that he would not have undertaken the Expedition into the East, but to gain the Empire for his Son by the Death of *Theodosius* the Younger. His Wife *Serena* was strangled by a Decree of the Senate: but some said, that *Honorius* in putting this great Captain to death, Cut off his Right Arm with his Left.

*Alaric* in the mean time continued the Siege of *Rome*, which he pressed with so much the more Vigour, because *Honorius* would not give Ear to Peace, which he had offer'd him on very advantageous Conditions: and when this Emperor was told that *Rome* was taken; he was sensibly rouch'd at it, believing they had taken a great Hen (e) of his, which he had named *Rome*. By this any one that pleases, may judge of the careless Humour of *Honorius*, who preferred Hens to Cities, and who signed all Petitions without reading any of them. His Sister *Placidia* not being able to endure his Negligence, caus'd a Writing to be presented to him, wherein he gave her in Marriage to one of his *Valets*; and he sign'd it without looking on it. This Princess who was ingenious, took this Petition; and having made her Complaint to *Honorius* of so great an Affront, which he could not believe, she shew'd it him; and made him sensible by this Artifice, how many Dangers he might run into by his Carelessness; and obtain'd of him, that for the future he would more strictly examine things.

The City of *Rome* being taken in the Year of the World 4380; in the Year of our Lord 410; from the Year of its Building 146, was Sacked: and *Galla Placidia* who was in it, fell into the Hands of *Alaric*, who had brought with him *Adolphus* his Sister's Son, to whom he gave this Princess in Marriage. The *Goths* laden with Plunder, followed King *Alaric* into *Campania di Roma*, who died suddenly in the City *Cosenza*; and *Adolphus* who succeeded him, had razed *Rome* to the very Foundation, and by the Name of *Gothia* had Built it in another place, if *Placidia* who had a great Influence upon him, had not by her Entreaties, dissuaded him from this barbarous Resolution. She did much more; for she prevailed with the King her  
Huf.

---

(e) *Vid. Egnatius, Oros. Paul. Diacon. §. 6, § 7. Agathias, &c.*

Husband, to leave all *Italy* to *Honorius*, and to go and settle himself at the same time in the *Gauls*, and in the Isle of *Brittain*.

*Attalus* who had been Governour of *Rome*, named Emperor by *Alaric*, when he saw himself Master of the City, and that *Adolphus* had carried his best Forces into the *Gauls*, resumed his Arms with the Ensigns of Royalty which he had quitted : and the *Goths* who were no longer able to continue idle ; considered nothing but how they might make their Advantage of these Disorders. *Honorius* finding himself reduced to extremity, sent *Constantius* into the *Gauls*, who destroyed all these Tyrants ; passed into *Spain*, where he deprived *Maximus* of the Empire, and of his Life ; expelled the *Gauls* ; and took *Attalus*. After he had reduced *Spain* and the *Gauls*, *Adolphus* being constrain'd to make Peace, was Assassinated at *Barcelona* with his Children, by the *Goths* ; and *Roderick* who succeeded him met with the same Fate, for entertaining the same Design. *Wallis*, or *Wallia*, the Successor of *Roderick*, opposing *Constantius*, and the Success being doubtful, it was concluded, that the King of the *Goths* should restore *Placidia* ; that they should joyn their Arms to free *Spain* of the *Vandals*, from whom *Andalusia* took its Name : and when *Constantius* had finished these Wars, *Honorius* gave him *Placidia* in Marriage, and granted him the Title of *Augustus*. His Reign was short, and *Honorius* lived not long after him, having been carried off by a Fever, accompany'd with a Dropsy, *A. D.* 423, after he had Reign'd Thirty Years, Seven Months, and Six days.

*Flavius Theodosius* the II, or the Younger, the Son of *Arcadius* and *Eudoxia*, had a Handsome and Agreeable Face, and a Body well proportioned, was an admirable Horseman, a dexterous Archer, excelled in Painting, understood the Mathematicks, Philosophy and Astronomy : and the Beauty of his Mind was equal to that of his Body. He (f) Married *Eudocia*, whose Name before was

---

(f) *Licinia Eudoxia in numo apud Oeconem, p. 571. sic apud Baron. in A. C. 395. n. 4. Apud Stradam. Elia Eudoxia.*

was *Athenais*, the Daughter of *Leontius*, a Philosopher of *Athens*: and which came to pass after this manner.

*Leontius* having observed by the Physiognomy, or the Horoscope of *Athenais*, that she would be infallibly Fortunate, left her by his Will, but about Two Hundred Crowns, having inserted in this Will; *That her good Fortune ought to suffice her*; and gave his whole Estate to his two Sons, who took possession of it, after his Death. *Athenais* who complained of this Injustice, demanded of them what was legally her Right: and they resolving to hold to their Father's last Will, put her out of the House, whereof they were Masters. Her Mother in law, who had a great Esteem for her, undertook her Cause, went with her to *Constantinople*, presented a Petition to *Pulcheria*, *Theodosius's* Sister, who at first sight, was charmed with the Air, Wit and Beauty of this Maid. And being informed that she was a Virgin, and had no other Fault, but that she was not a Christian, she took care to have her Baptized by *Atticus*, and so Effectually perswaded her Brother to take her for his Wife, that he Married her as soon as he was of Age to Marry. *Athenais*, who had the Name of *Eudocia* given her, had been instructed by her Father with a Wonderful Care, and according to some Authors composed Divine Poems, all the Verses whereof she took from *Homer*, and by her *Theodosius* had a Daughter named *Eudoxia*, who was afterwards Married to *Valentinian the III.*

However she made but ungrateful Returns to *Pulcheria* for the Favours which she had received from her; since by her Counsels, and her Intreaties, she perswaded the Emperor not to suffer her to meddle with any Affairs of State, and also to remove her from Court. But a while after he recalled her, Entrusted her as before with the Administration of the State, and Banished the Eunuch *Chrysaphius*, who had given the Empress Suspensions of the Conduct and Innocence of *Pulcheria*. This Ingratitude was followed with an Imprudence which ruin'd her in the Affections of *Theodosius*; and that which was but a Trifle, became a Crime by its Circumstances. Some Person had brought a Fruit of an



extraordinary Bigness to the Emperor, who sent it as a rarity to *Eudocia*; and she made a Present of it to *Paulinus*, whom she esteemed for his great Learning. He thinking to shew something that was New and Singular, carried it immediately to *Theodosius*; who concealed it, and asked in private of *Eudocia*, what was become of the Fruit. *Eudocia* fearing that *Theodosius* might take it ill, if he should know that she had given it to *Paulinus*, answered that she had eaten the Fruit: and as he pressed her to answer, she added an Oath to her Lie. This put him in such a Rage, that after he had shewn her the Fruit, he commanded *Paulinus* to be put to Death; and despised his Wife to that Degree, that she was reduced to desire leave of him to go to *Jerusalem*, where she Built some Churches; and returned not till she was assured of *Theodosius's* Death.

He had some War with *Babram Gbur* (g) King of *Persia*, Son of *Fadiberd*, Sirnamed *Al-Atim*, i. e. the Wicked, in the Annals of *Eutychius*. It appears also from the History of this Patriarch, that he made War with the Father; but it is sufficient to observe after the best known Authors, that this *Babram* who persecuted all the Christians of his Kingdom, was not prosperous; and that the Emperor sent to demand his Friendship, altho' *Ardeburius*, *Gratianus*, and *Ariobinda*, had already obtained great Advantages over that King. Amongst the *Persians* who had fallen in some Battel, there were slain ten Thousand of those who were commonly called *Immortals*: and *Theodosius* prefer'd the Peace which cost him but a Complement, to a Victory which he could not purchase without the Blood of his Enemies, and his Subjects.

Having intelligence of the Death of *Honorius*, he dispatched *Ardeburius* into *Italy*, with an Army to oppose one *John*, who had set up for Emperor: but as *Ardeburius* passed from *Aquileia* to *Ravenna*, and with contrary Winds in his Sailing, he was taken, and  
at

---

(g) *De Babram Gbur Hottinger. Hist. Orient. l. 3. p. 172, & seqq.*

at the same time put in Chains. *Theodosius* upon this News, sends *Arbarus* the Son of *Ardeburius*, who was more fortunate; for by a Miracle, or the Assistance of a Guide, he passed a Morass, Entred *Ravenna*, whose Gates he found open, deliver'd his Father, surprized *John*, cut off his Right Hand, and ordered him to be put to Death, after he had been carried a long time thro' the Streets on an Ass. *Italy* being delivered from this Tyrant, *Theodosius* sent *Valentinian*, whom he made *Cesar*, and afterwards *Augustus*, with an Universal Consent: And it was after this that *Boniface*, Governour of *Africk*, invited thither *Genferick* King of the *Vandals*, who went out of *Spain* with Fourscore thousand Fighting Men. This *Arrian* King, contrary to the League which he had made with the *Romans*, the 18th or 19th of October, *An. 439*; surpriz'd *Carthage*, ravaged *Africk*, drove thence most of the Bishops and Priests; entred *Sicily* the Year following; and the two Generals of *Theodosius*, *Ariobinda*, and *Anaxillus*, did him no great Services in this War. He was also forced to recall them with their Army, to make a League with *Genferick*, and to deliver himself by Money from the King of the *Huns*, who had taken the Strongest Places of *Hungary*, and of *Thrace*, except *Adrianople*, and *Heraclea*. *Attila* made new Efforts against *Valentinian*, when *Theodosius* at the Age of 30 Years, after a Reign of 42 Years, Two Months, and 28 Days, died of a Feaver, or a Fall from his Horse, according to some Authors, *Ann. 450*.

Altho' he was negligent enough in the Administration of State Affairs; his Piety may serve as an Example to the greatest Princes. It was so publick, that he employed the first Hours of the day in singing Psalms, and in Prayers with his Wife and his Sisters; had set times for the Reading of the Holy Bible; called all his Servants to the Exercises of Devotion, and People lived in his Pallace, as in a Cloyster.

*Flavius Constantius*, born at *Naisus* (b) in *Transylvania*,

---

(b) *Flavius Constantius Illyricus a Panæso urbe Cadix (ita Olympiodorum apud Photium Schottus vertit) an*

*in Græco legendum est? Κωνσταντῖος Ἰλλυρικὸς ἦν τὸ γένος τῆ Ναισσο πόλεως τῆς Δακίας. Constantius Illyrici generis ex Naïso Urbe Daciæ. Rupert. Observ. in Synops. Besoldi min.*

*nia*, had honourable Commands in the Army, under *Theodosius*, surnamed *the Great*; did considerable Services to *Honorius*; forced the *Goths* to quit *Narbon*, and to retire into *Spain*. He was at divers times Collegue to *Constantine*, to *Honorius*, and to *Theodosius*, in the Consulship: for whom the latter had without doubt a very Great Esteem, since he gave him his Sister *Galla Placidia* in Marriage. Before he Married this Princess, he had very noble Inclinations; and expressed so great a Contempt of Riches, that he could not believe that they deserved the Pains Men take to acquire them. But *Galla Placidia* entirely changed his Mind, and his Temper; and he deprived several Persons of their Estates, to Enrich himself by his injustice. Since he loved his Liberty very much, and his Affairs required all that time which he was more willing to bestow on things which were more agreeable to his Genius, and his Humour; and since *Theodosius* the Younger approved not of the Choice that *Honorius* had made of him, in associating him with him in the Empire; *Constantius* conceived such Grief at it that he died. He reigned not full Seven Months, and altho' he hath only the Title of *Most noble Caesar*, in a Medal of *Strada's*, he yet had that of Emperor; as may be seen in *Idacius's* Chronicle, in *Cassiodore*, in *Prosper*, and in *Baronius*, upon the Year of Christ 420.

*Flavius Placidius Valentinianus*, Son of *Constantius*, and of *Galla Placidia*, the Daughter of *Theodosius* surnamed *the Great* and of *Justina*, Married *Eudoxa*, Daughter of *Theodosius* the II, and of *Athenais*, or *Eudocia*, 437, he was betrothed Ann. 424, altho' he was then but about six Years Old, and this Princess but Two Months. He had by her Two Daughters, *Eudoxa* who Married *Honorick* King of the *Vandals*, and *Placidia* who became the Wife of *Olybrius*, the Successor of *Anthemius*.

I have said that *Attila* made fresh Efforts against the Emperor *Valentinian*; and to deceive him, sent Ambassadors to him, to desire him to joyn with him against the *Goths*, who were sworn Enemies to the Publick Repose. At the same time he Endeavoured to perswade *Theodoric* by other Ambassadors which he sent to him, that he espoused the Interest of the *Goths* against the *Romans*, and that to ruine them, they need only unite their Forces in common to oppose them. He doubted not but by this Artifice he should surprize both the *Goths* and the *Romans*, and that when he had defeated the one, he should easily Conquer the other. *Ætius* to whom *Valentinian* had given order to oppose the *Goths*, who daily made new Progress, knew the Artifice: and when the Emperor was informed of it, he entred into an Alliance with the *Alans*, with the *Goths*, with the *Franks*, and the *Burgundians*, who had possessed themselves of the better part of the *Gauls*. *Attila* continually fortified his Party, which already was but too strong, by the prodigious Number of Soldiers which he had drawn out of *Asia*, and all the Northern Parts, passing thro' *Poland* and *Germany*; and his Army consisted of Five, or according to others of 700000 Men.

The Plains of *Chalons*, was their Field of Battel: and we may believe it was very Bloody, seeing that there were slain One hundred and seventy two thousand Men on both sides, without reckoning the *Franks* and the *Transylvanians*, who charged with such Fury the Night before the Battel, that near Fourscore and ten thousand of them were killed. Thus Two hundred and seventy two thousand were Slain, amongst whom were found *Theodoric* (i) King of the *Visigoths*, whom the French Historians name *Thierry*: and most say that *Attila* lost there, a Hundred and fourscore thousand Men. *Merovick*, or *Meroveus* King of the *Franks*, had a great share in this Victory: and had *Ælius* followed the first Advice  
I of

---

(i) Duo hujus nominis (*Theodorici*) Visigothorum Reges fuerunt. Prior Valliæ Successor, qui in pugna Catalaunica occubuit. Alter ejus Filius post Thorismundi Fratris cædem, anno a pugna tertio, regnum adeptus. *Sirmondus ad Apollinarem Sidonium.*



of *Thorismond* Son of *Theodoric*, who was intent upon revenging his Father's Death, *Attila*, who durst not stir any more out of the Camp, and who had the Horse-saddles of his Army piled up in a place in order to be burnt, lest they should fall into the Enemies hands, had been irrecoverably ruined. But *Aetius* afterwards left him the Country Free; and the King of the *Huns*, who had time to retreat into *Pannonia*, which was named *Hungary* from these *Huns*, found Means also to raise fresh Forces, with which he marched against *Italy*: He took *Aquileia* after a three Years Siege; and it was at that time, as some Authors Write, that the most considerable of their Neighbours to avoid the King's Army, Escaped as they were able in Barks, and having found the bank high in the same place, which is now called *Rio alto*, they laid in Confusion, and without any such design, the Foundations of *Venice*, the most famous and most noble of Republicks.

After *Attila* had made himself Master of *Aquileia*, he took *Milan*, *Pavia*, and *Vicenza*, where he left the Marks of a most dreadful Rage: and Marched towards *Rome*, when Pope *Leo* being sent by *Valentinian* to meet him, *Ann.* 453, so sensibly touched his Heart, by his Eloquence, and Entreaties, or by the Spirit of God that accompanied him, that he turned him from his Enterprize. Some report that he marched with his Army towards the *Gauls*, where he lost in a Battle against *Thorismond*, as many Men, as he had lost in the Plain of *Chalons*. *Honorio* the Sister of *Valentinian*, sent privately the same Year, or according to others, *Ann.* 454, one of her Eunuchs to the King of the *Huns*, with an offer of her Bed and the Empire: and altho' he had sent Ambassadors to *Rome* to demand her, he was so charmed with the Beauty of *Hildico*, that before their return, he married this Princess, who was the King of *Bactriana*'s Daughter. But having been heated with Drinking at that Famous Marriage-Feast, there issued so great a Quantity of Blood out of his Nose and Mouth, that he was suffocated with it, in the 56th Year of his Age: and thus died this King of the *Huns*, who assumed this Title, *Attila* Son of *Bendeguz*, Grandson of *Nembros*

broth, Educated in Engadi, by the Grace of God, King of the Huns, Medes, Dacians, the Terror of the World, and the Scourge of God.

In this Year also *Flavius Maximus* a Roman Senator, who thought of nothing but of revenging the Injury he had received of the Emperor, who had ravished his Wife, found no surer way than by gaining some of *Valentinian's* Eunuchs to possess him with Jealousies of the Fidelity of *Ætius*, remonstrating to him that he assumed to himself the Glory of his Reign, and managed several Intrigues in the Gauls. *Valentinian* without ever examining this Imposture, recalls *Ætius* to Rome, kills him (k) with his own Hand. And *Maximus*, who afterwards by Presents and Promises, gained some of *Ætius's* Soldiers, so Effectually perswaded them to revenge this General's Death, that meeting with *Valentinian* in the Field of Mars, they killed him, Ann. 455. He lived 36 Years, reign'd 25 with *Theodosius* the II<sup>d</sup>, five with *Marcian*; and after him-fell the Empire of the West.

*Flavius Anicius Petronius Maximus*, the Author of *Valentinian's* Death, usurp'd the Empire; and as *Valentinian* had violated his Wife, he ravished this Emperor's Widow, and afterwards Married her. But being imprudent enough to tell *Eudoxa* his new Spouse, that he had loved her to that Degree, that it was he that destroyed the Emperor to possess her; she by Presents and Promises called in *Genferic*, King of the *Vándals*, to revenge her of this Parricide, who came out of *Africk* to Rome with a numerous Army. *Maximus* being put into a Consternation by his Arrival, and Endeavouring with some others to escape, was cut to pieces by the Romans, who threw all the Pieces of his Body into the River Tiber, Ann. 455.

\* *Genferic* found no Difficulty to Enter Rome, where there was no Garrison; and had it not been for the Earnest Intreaty of Pope *Leo*, and *Eudoxa*, he had ecertainly burnt

---

(k) *Protop. l. 1. Vándalic. Marcellin. P. Diacon. Evagrium lib. 2. c. 7.*

the City. But he plundered all the Houses, took out of the Churches all things that were of any Value, not sparing even the Golden Vessels, which *Titus* had taken in the Temple of *Jerusalem*. He carried away *Eudoxa*, *Valentinian's* Widow, with her two Daughters *Placidia*, and *Eudoxa*; he gave the first in Marriage to his Son *Huneric*, sent the other to *Olybrius*, who in the Confusion had made his Escape to *Constantinople*, and had before betrothed her at *Rome*; and kept the Empress for himself.

There appeared these Pretenders to the Empire. *Flavius Macilius Avitus*, Ann. 455. *Flavius Julius Majorinus*, Ann. 457. *Flavius Libius Severus*, Ann. 461. *Flavius Arbemius*, Ann. 467. *Anicius Olybrius* (1) the same Year. *Flavius Glycellus*, Ann. 473. *Flavius Julius Nepos*, Ann. 474. *Flavius Orestes* a Goth, Ann. 475: the same Year *Romulus Augustus*, surnamed *Augustulus* (from his Stature, or his Youth) had all of them the Title of Emperor, except it may be *Orestes*, who chose rather that his Son should have it, than to keep it himself. It is easy to judge hence, that one might in vain have sought for this Great Empire in the Empire it self. There was no more to be seen but its Ruines.

*Africk* was possessed by the *Vandals*: *Spain* by the *Visigoths*, and the *Servians*: The *Gaules* by the *Visigoths*, the *Burgundians*, and the *Franks*: *Italy* by the *Lombards*: Great *Brittain* by the *Picts*, the *English*, and the *Saxons*: *Switzerland* and *Suabia* by the *Allemans*: *Bavaria* as it is now called, by the *Boii*: *Hungary* by the *Huns*: and the Provinces of *Germany* by those who had Courage, and Arms to conquer them. But not to break the thread of this History which I have undertaken, I will pass from the bloody Remains of this Empire, to that of the East, which began to be much shaken; and I will here place some Tables, which may be useful to the Understanding, and clearing of what is to follow.

The

---

(1) Others give him the Name of *Q. Clodius Hermongestus Olybrius*, and say that he was the Brother of *Falconius Probus Alypius*.

*The Kings of the Vandals in Africk.*

I. *Genferic* ( *m* ) Son of *Godigifil*, and Suc. The Years of  
cessor of his Brother *Gunderic*, Son of *Wif*-their Reign.  
*mar.* 58

II. *Huneric*, or *Honoric*, Son in law of *Va-*  
*lentinian* the III. 8

III. *Gondebald*, or *Gombald*, whom some  
name *Gondagifus*, the Son, or Grandson, of  
*Huneric.* 11

IV. *Thrasimond* his Brother, Son-in-law of  
*Theodoric* of *Verona.* 26

V. *Hilderic* the Son of *Huneric*, and of *Eudoxia.* 8

VI. *Gilimer* defeated by *Belizarius*: some  
say that he was the Son of *Hilderic.* 4

*The Kings of the Ostrogoths in Italy.*

I. *Odoacer*, King of the *Rugians*, who in-  
habited both sides of the *Rega* in *Pomerania*,  
and near the City of *Regenwold*, whence they  
went into the Island of *Rugen*. This same 16 Years,  
*Odoacer* destroyed *Orestes*, and his Son *Ro-* 6 Months,  
*mulus*, and contented himself with the Title and  
of King in *Italy.* 11 days.

II. *Theodoric* the Son of *Theodomir*, Marry'd  
*Andelflede*, the Daughter of *Childeric* the I.  
and Sister of *Cloun* King of the *French*;  
gave his Daughters in Marriage, *Ostroswenda*,  
to *Sigismund* King of the *Burgundians*; *Ama-*  
*lasontba*, to *Eutharic* King of the *Ostrogoths*;  
and his Sister *Amalfreda* to *Thrasimond* King  
of the *Vandals.* 33

I have already said that the *Burgundians*  
inhabited some Parts of *Cassubia* and *Poland.*

I 3

III. *Athe-*

---

( *m* ) *Quid* significant hæc nomina *Appellativa* & *Propria*;  
*Grotius* *Historia* *Gothorum*; *Vandalorum*, & *Longobardorum*,  
P. 574. & seqq.



III. *Athelaric* Son of *Eutharic* and of *Amalasontha*, Sister of *Theodoric*.

IV. *Theodad* Son of *Amalfreda*, the Sister of King *Theodoric*, had Married *Amalasontha*, and by this Means obtain'd the Crown. But this ungrateful Man a little while after puts her to Death upon Suspicion of Adultery.

V. *Vitiges* the Nephew, or Son-in-law of *Athalaric*.

VI. *Hildebald*, or *Edebald*, *Hildebrand*, *Theutibald*, *Theobald*, *Thiebaud*, *Theobaud*, or *Thibaut*.

VII. *Araric*.

VIII. *Totilas*.

IX. *Teia* defeated by *Narses*.

The *Lombards* (n) who were Natives of *Scandinavia*, according to *Paul* the Deacon; of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, or *Futland*, according to *Pomponius Latius*; or according to others of *Livonia*, of *Pomerania*, or of *Saxony*, which comprehended all the Country of *Holstein*, to the Entrance of *Futland*, had dispersed themselves with all the other Northern Nations, where they met with their Advantages. *Narses* who had called them in against *Totilas*, having made a good Use of them, thought fit also to make them enter *Italy*, to revenge himself on the Empress *Sophia* the Wife of *Justin* the II. who had treated him ill. It was easy for them to become Masters of it, by these Means, and they established their Kingdom in that part which had been called *Bianora*, *Doria*, *Felsina*, *Aurelia*, *Emilia*, *The Hithermost*, *Cisalpine*, or *Italick Gaul*, and which was afterwards named *Lombardy*.

The

---

(n) *Langobardi*. Lang-barden, Long-beards. sic *Paulus*, *Longobardus ipse*, interpretatur.

*The Kings of the Lombards in Italy.*

I. *Aubouin*, or *Alboin*, the Son of *Andein*, and of *Rodelinda*, Married *Clodofvinda* the Daughter of *Clotarius* the I, by whom he had a Daughter *Albifinda*, or *Aubifinda*. His second Wife was *Rosimonda*, Daughter of *Cunimond* King of the *Gepide*, or *Transilvanians*, who Poison'd him, Ann 614, because he had forced her at a Feast to drink out of her Father's Skull. 3 Years, 6 Months.

II. *Clephis*, who Married *Anfana*, was Assassinated by some of his own People, after which there was an *Interregnum* of ten Years, during which the *Lombards* were governed by Thirty High Officers, as *Pavia*, by *Zababanes*; *Milan* by *Aubouin*; *Bergomo* by *Villar*; *Bresse* by *Alabis*; *Trent* by *Comus*; *Friuli* by *Gisulphus*; and so of the rest. *Clephis* reign'd, 6 Months.

III. *Flavius Autharis* the Son of *Clephis*, Married *Theodelinda*, Daughter of *Garibaud*, King or Duke of *Bavaria*, and became Tributary to the *French*. 6 Months.

IV. *Flavius Agilulphus*, or *Ago* Duke, that is to say, Governour of *Turin*, Married *Theodelinde*, after the Death of *Flavius Autharis*, had by her *Aldevand*; a Daughter Married to *Godescal*; and another Named *Gondeberga*, who Married *Rodoald*, or *Robaud*. 9 Years, 4 Months.

V. *Aldevand*, or *Adaload*, made King by his Father, Reign'd 19 Years, and Four Months: Nine Years and Four Months with his Father, and Ten Years alone. 19 Years, 4 Months.

VI. *Arloald* the Son of the Sister of *Aldevand* Duke of *Turin*. 12

VII. *Rotharis*. 15

VIII. *Rodoald* Son of *Rhotaris*, and Husband of *Gondeberga*. 4

IX. *Aribert*, or *Aripert*, Count, or Governor of *Aste*; Married a Daughter of *Grimaud*.

*maud Duke of Beneventum, and had by her Gundebert, and Berthier.*

9

X. Gundebert, who divided the Kingdom with Berthier, had *Pavia* for his Capital. He was kill'd by *Grimald*, whom he had call'd to his assistance against his Brother *Berthier*.

1 Year,

3 Months,

XI. *Berthier*.

1 Year,

XII. *Grimald* the Son of *Ariches* Duke, or Governor of *Beneventum*, and Father of *Romuald*, and of *Garibaud*, kill'd Gundebert, and expelled *Berthier*.

3 Months,

XIII. *Garibald*.

XIV. *Berthier* recovered his Kingdom, and Reign'd 18 Years, eight Years alone, and Ten Years with *Cunibert*.

XV. *Cunibert* the Son of *Berthier*, Husband of *Hermelinda*, the Daughter of the King of the *Angle-Saxons*, after he had been dispossest by *Machises* Duke of *Trent*, recovered his Kingdom, and reigned 22 Years; Ten with his Father, and Twelve alone.

22

XVI. *Luitbert*, or *Luitpert*, Grandson of *Cunibert*, and of *Hermelinda*.

8 Months,

XVII. *Ragumbert* Duke or Governour of *Turin*.

3 Months,

XVIII. *Aribert* the Younger, or the II, the Son of *Ragumbert*.

12

XIX. *Asprand* Married *Theodorata*, and had by her *Sigebrand*, *Auruna*, and *Luitprand*.

XX. *Luitprand* Married *Huntruda* Daughter of *Theodebert* Duke of *Bavaria*; He joyn'd in the War against the *Saracens*, with *Charles Martel*, who hindred him from taking Vengeance of Pope *Gregory* the III, who had given a Retreat to the Rebel *Thrasimond* Duke of *Spoleto*.

25 Years,

7 Months,

XXI. *Childebrand* the Grandson of *Luitprand*, was dethroned by his Subjects.

32

XXII. *Rachis*, or *Rachisus*, Duke of *Friuli* Married *Thesia*, by whom he had a Daughter named *Rotbruda*; he resign'd his Throne,

and

and became a Monk upon the Persuasion of 5 Years,  
Pope Zachary. 6 Months.

XXIII. *Asdulphus*, or *Astolph* his Brother who succeeded him, was compelled by *Pepin* to surrender to Pope Stephen, Romania, or the Patrimony of St. Peter.

XXIV. *Desiderius*, or *Didier* Duke of *Estruria*, Constable to *Asdulph*, was dispossessed by *Charlemaign*.

18 Years.

Of the Establishment of these Kings in Italy, you may consult *Procopius*, *Fornandes*, *Paul the Deacon*, *Sigomius*, *Henry du Puy*, &c.

(o) *Flavius Marcianus* of *Thrace*, who was of no Quality, had acquired so great a Reputation in the Armies, that *Pulcheria* who concealed the Death of her Brother *Theodosius* the II, offer'd him her Bed with the Empire, on Condition that he would let her continue a Virgin, as she was resolved to do. The Condition was not too severe, she being already above 51 (p) Years old, and he much older than her. He reigned Six Years, Six Months, and Ten Days; and died of a Disease, according to some; or of a slow Poyson that *Aspar* had procured to be given him, *Ann.* 457.

(q) *Flavius Léo* of *Thrace* gain'd the Empire by the Faction, and the Reputation of *Aspar*, on Condition that he should declare his Son *Ardaburus*, *Cæsar*; and in the Esteem that he was, he might have been Emperor himself, had he not been infected with *Arrianism*, which he Zealously maintained. He had by his Wife named *Verina* two Daughters, *Ariana* who was Marri'd to *Ardaburus*, afterwards to *Zeno*; and *Leontia* who Married *Flavius Marcianus* the Son of *Anthemius*. When he

---

(o) *Nummus apud Oconem*, p. 575. FLAVIUS MARCIANUS.

(p) *Vid. Baron*, in *A. C.* 450. n. 17.

(q) *Vid. Nicephor. Callist.* l. 15. c. 15. *Candidus apud Photium cod.* 79.



he did not declare *Ardaburus* *Cæsar*, *Aspar* pulling him by his Imperial Robe, and shewing it him to put him in Mind, that he held it of him; said, *It is shameful for an Emperor to Lie: And it yet more shameful, replied Leo, to be compelled, and dragg'd as a Slave.* Notwithstanding all this, he made good his Promise to him; but understanding that *Aspar* and *Ardaburus* had conspired against his Life, and said, *That they might not be the Lyons Prey, they must devour him:* He put them to Death, *Ann. 471.*

He had already sent *Majoranus*, or *Majorianus* into *Italy* to take possession of the Empire of the West; and *Majorianus* was so successful, that he chased out of *Italy*, the *Vandals* and *Africans*, who Ravaged it: and also recovered *Mauritania*, and all the Cities which *Theodoric* King of the *Visigoths* had usurped. But as he endeavoured to force the *Alans* to retire, and *Italy* being at that time unfurnished of Soldiers, the *Alans* turn'd that way, and therefore he call'd *Ricimer* a *Goth*, with his Army, to his Assistance, having made him his General. This Man who had a share in all his Counsels, and who design'd only to establish himself, chose his time, took *Majorianus*, and deprived him of his Life, and the Empire, *A. D. 465.* (r) *Flavius Libius Severus* was declared Emperor some time after: and *Ricimer* who had extirpated in his Reign all the *Alans* in *Italy*, poison'd him, according to some Authors, *Ann. 465.* being not able to endure that another should reign where he was. Altho he was then absolute enough, he sent however to *Leo*, to demand of him an Emperor, whom he would make his Son in Law: and *Anthemius* who had Married *Marcian's* Daughter, Married *Ricimer's* who not willing to depend any Longer on him, and regarding neither his Promise, nor the Alliance which he had made with him, sometime after conspired against his Person. The Conspiracy being discovered, he flies to *Milan*, where he animated his whole Army against *Anthemius*: and altho' *Epiphanius* Bishop

---

(r) *Ita in nummis; male quidam Vibium vocant.*

Bishop of *Pavia* had reconcil'd them, *Ricimer* took the Field the Year following, besieged him in *Rome*, took him, put him to Death, and pillaged the City. *Ricimer* died 34 days after; and *Olybrius* lived so short a time, that he could do nothing considerable. In the mean time, after the Death of *Flavius Severus*, the Army of the West had declared *Glycerius* Emperor at *Ravenna*, Ann. 473, notwithstanding the Senate could not consent to it: and *Leo* who at the same time had named *Julius Nepos*, and had Reigned 17 Years, dyed of a long and cruel Loosness, and Vomiting, Ann. 474.

*Leo* the II, the Son of *Zeno* and *Ariane*, Daughter of *Leo* the I; altho' very Young, was declared *Cæsar*, Ann. 473, and *Augustus* the Year following. Some say that to doceive him, his Mother said to him, that when he should see his Father *Zeno* near him with his great Officers of State, he should make him sit on the same Throne where he was, and Crown him; which he did: and by this Means declared him Emperor. This Young Prince reigned but one Year: and it was believed *Zeno* and *Ariane* poyson'd him, that they might more freely possess the Empire.

(s) *Zeno*, surnamed *Isauricus*, because he was born in *Isauria*, the Son of *Rufumbladeot*, had the Name of *Tarasidocisa*, in his own Country: and some Authors contrary to the Opinion of all others, have made him a Man of very great (t) Quality. His Face, Feet, and Body were covered over with Hair, his Physiognomy was ridiculous, his Shape deformed, and it might be said, that during his Reign, the East was governed by a Satyr. His Mind was of no better a make than his Body: and the worst was, his Inclinations made those Tremble, whom his Countenance made Laugh.

In the first Year of his Reign, 474. *Julius Nepos* came with a Fleet into *Italy*, where finding *Glycerius*, who was not in a Condition to resist him, he constrain-  
ed

---

(s) *Candidus apud Photium,*

(t) *Anonymus Valefii, &c,*

ed him to quit the Empire, and made him Bishop of *Salona* (u) in *Dalmatia*. To oppose his Enemies, he sends for Succours to *Orestes* the Goth, who betrayed, and expelled him, and then declared his Son *Romulus* Emperor, and made an Alliance with *Genferic* the King of the *Vandals*. But the Friends of *Julius Nepos*, to revenge the Treachery of *Orestes*, called in upon him *Odoacer* King of the *Rugii*, who having passed the *Danube* with his Army, Ann. 476, besieged *Pavia* where *Orestes* was, and slew him in the sight of all his Troops. *Romulus Augustulus* fled for safety into *Campania*, where he led, a private Life: and *Odoacer* forced *Ravenna*, entred *Rome*, made an Alliance with the *Goths*, to whom he gave a third part of the Lands of *Italy*. He stiled himself King thereof, 1227 Years after the Building of *Rome*; 982 Years after the Expulsion of their Kings; 862 after it had been taken by the *Gauls*, 518 Years after the Death of *Julius Caesar*; 550 after the Monarchy of *Augustus*, 100 Years after the Entrance of the *Goths* into *Italy* under *Valens*; 66 Years after *Rome* had been taken by *Alarie*, and 21 Years after *Genferic* had Pillaged it.

By the Establishments of *Odoacer*, and the other Kings who succeeded him, the *Interregnum* continued 384 Years, and 4 Months; and the West had no Emperors until *Charlemagne*.

In the mean time *Zeno* pressed *Theodoric* King of the *Ostrogoths* for Succours, Ann. 488, to drive *Odoacer* out of *Italy*: and *Theodoric* gained three Battels of him. But the Emperor could not see the Fruits thereof, because he died soon after: and this new King was much less to be feared than his Relations and Domesticks. *Verina* his Mother in law who hated him, had a Brother named *Basiliscus*, whom she had before advised to take Arms against *Zeno*. *Basiliscus*, whose Party was much strengthened, Marched out of *Thrace* with an Army; was declared Emperor, and had been so longer than he was, if at the Instance of his Wife *Zenonida* who was infected with the Heresy of *Eutyches*, he had

---

(u) *Marcellin in Chron. Paul. Diacon.*

not endeavoured by an Edict, to Abrogate the Authority of the Council of *Chalcedon*. The Senate who was not able to endure this Tyranny, gained the Troops that *Basiliscus* had sent against *Zeno*, who had hid himself in *Isauria* with *Ariane*, and the Army conducted them to *Constantinople*. *Verina* the Widow of *Leo* the I, was Banished, and (w) *Basiliscus* and *Zenonida* dispatched. But as *Zeno* did not grow better by his Misfortunes, and drank to that Excess as to lose all Sense for the time; *Ariane* who could not longer endure him, and who had some Affection for *Anastasius*, having found her Husband in this Condition, caused him to be laid in the burying Place of the Emperors, and in one of the Tombs with a Stone laid upon it for a Covering: and altho' he utter'd hideous Cries when he came to himself, and promised to live after another manner for the future, he was not taken out of the Sepulchre. Some say that being oppressed with great Pains in his Sickness, and supposed to be dead; they laid him in this Tomb; that coming to himself, and imploring the Assistance and Pity of his Servants, not one of them had the Courage to take away the Stone that covered it, because *Ariane* had strictly forbidden it; that he died of Hunger in this miserable place, where they found he had Eaten his Arm, and a part of his Garment. He reign'd 17 Years, and died after this manner, *Ann. 491.*

---

(w) *Evagrius*; *Procop. Cedren. Malchus apud Photium, cod. 78. Candidus*; & *Victor Tunnunensis.*



## C H A P VIII.

*Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastical and Profane History.**Under Honorius.*

**T**HE taking of Rome gave occasion to St. *Austin*, Ann. 410. to Write his Books *Of the City of God*, to oppose the Error and Malice of those Persons who charged the Christian Religion as the first Cause of this Calamity.

*Cyrl. Ann.* 412. succeeded in the Bishoprick of *Alexandria*, after the Death of his Uncle *Theophilus*.

*Ann.* 420. St. *Jerome* died at *Bethlehem*; and in the Reign of *Theodosius*, of *Arcadius* and *Honorius* flourished *Ruffinus* (a) Presbyter of *Aquileia*; *Sextus Aurelius Victor*; *Claudian*, *Orosius*, and (b) *Prudentius* of *Saragossa*, whose Hymns are yet extant, and the two Books that he wrote in Verse against *Symmachus*, who under the Emperor *Valentinian*, was Governour of Rome. *Rutilius Numatianus* Military Tribune, Prefect of the *Pretorium*, Governor of Rome, Consul and Author of the *Itinerary*, which bears his Name, lived under *Honorius*.

Some refer the *Salick Saw* to the Year 420; others to the Year 425, you may consult those who have Written on this Subject.

Un-

---

(a) *De Ruffino prænominē Tyranio, vel Toranio, Aquileiensis, Cassianus*, l. 7. *De Incarnat.* c. 27. *Hieronym.* Ep. 5. ad *Florentium*: *Gennadius de Scriptor. Eccles.* c. 17. *Aubert. Miræus Biblioth. Eccles.* p. 48, 103, 117. *Robert Cocq Censur. Scriptor. Vet. in Rufino.*

(b) *De Prudentio, Barthius* l. 6. *Adversar.* c. 1. & l. 8. c. 6. *Goldastus, Gernadius, David Chytraeus in regula Studiorum.* p. 194.

## Under Theodosius the Younger.

*Anno 423,* this Emperor Founded the University of *Bologne*: and *Theodorit*, or as vulgarly pronounced, *Theodoret*, born at *Antioch*, in the Year 386, was Bishop of *Cyr*, a City of *Syria*, in the Province of *Euphratesia*, *Ann. 420*, or 423, and some go as far as 424.

*Ann. 425,* The same Emperor Founded the University of *Constantinople*, where were maintained Three Orators, ten Grammarians, for the Latin and the Greek Tongues, five Sophists, two Doctors of Law, and one Philosopher.

*Ann. 428.* *Nestorius* of *Germanicia*, a City of *Syria*, was Bishop of *Constantinople*: and *St. Austin* Born at *Thagasta*, a City of *Numidia*, *Ann. 354*, the 13th of November; Ordained Bishop of *Hippo*, *Ann. 395*, by *Megalius* Bishop of *calama*, and Primate of *Numidia*, died the 20th of August, 430.

The same Year *Palladius* sent by Pope *Celestin* into *Scotland*, was the first Bishop of it: and in 431, was held the Council of *Ephesus*, which was the third Oecumenical Council, composed of above two Hundred Bishops, wherein according to some, *Cyril* Bishop of *Alexandria* presided. They condemned there *Nestorius*, who had been a Monk of the Monastery of *St. Euprepus*, and who of a Presbyter of *Antioch*, was made Bishop of *Constantinople*. He maintain'd, That there were two distinct Persons in *Jesus Christ*: That the Virgin *Mary* was indeed the Mother of *Jesus Christ*, but that she was not the Mother of God. This Council was also named, *The Symbol of Cyril*, because it was written in the name of the Council by this Bishop of *Alexandria*, who held his See 32 Years, and who dyed in 444.

*Ann. 435,* the 25th of February, was Published the *Theodosian Code*, so called from this Emperor, who had Employed the most Eminent Lawyers to take a review of all the Edicts of the Emperors, to Retrench those that were useless, and compose one Body of the rest, which might serve for a Rule, and a Law to the Judges.

*Ani.*

*Ann. 440, Leo the I, a Tuscan, or Roman, surnamed the Great, was chosen Pope, the 1st of April; and died, Ann. 661. He is reckoned amongst the Ecclesiastical Writers; and never did Pope maintain his Dignity with so great Splendor. It is easy to judge by his Letters, that in his time lived Donatus the Novatian Bishop; Maximus the Donatist Bishop; the Bishops Aggar and Tiberianus; Rusticus Bishop of Narbonne; Anastasius Bishop of Thessalonica; Septimius of Altino; Januarius Bishop of Aquileia; Hilary Bishop of Arles; Dioscorus Patriarch of Alexandria; Dorus Bishop of Beneventum; Ravennius Bishop of Arles; Ceresius, Salomius, and Veranius, Bishops of the Gaules. Amongst these also may be reckoned Eusebius Bishop of Milan; Anatolius Patriarch of Constantinople; Leontius and Theodorus Bishops of Frejus; Maximus, Bishop of Antioch; Juvenal Bishop of Jerusalem; Proterius Bishop of Alexandria; Euxitheus Bishop of Thessalonica; Niceas Bishop of Aquileia; Neonas Bishop of Ravenna, &c.*

*Ann. 447, Eutyches, an Archimandrite, or Head of an Order of Monks, whose Principal House was at Constantinople, maintain'd, That there were two Natures in Jesus Christ before his Incarnation: That after there remained but one, which was mingled, and confounded with the other: and as Nestorius asserted two Persons in Jesus Christ from his two Natures; Eutyches concluded by a contrary Reason, That he had but one Nature, because he had but one Person.*

*Ann 449, was held the bloody and deplorable Council of Ephesus, into which by the Means of Crisaphius, a Friend of Eutyches, and Favorite of Theodosius, the Soldiers entred Armed, and forced the Bishops to be of the Opinion of Eutyches, and to subscribe to his Heresy.*

*In this Emperors Reign flourished Peter of Immola, surnamed Chrysologus Bishop of Ravenna, the Monk John Cassian (c) of Scythia, Educated from his Infancy*

---

(c) Joh. Cassianus Scythia Caute legendus. Miræus in Scholiis ad Gennad. librum de Viris Illustribus. De Caio Cæ-

tio Sebulio Poeta Evangelico, Sixtus Senensis Antiquit Romanar. Limonum Urbs in Pictonibus, quam eandem esse putant cum Pictavia Christoph. Longolius, & Cluverius: Patria fuit Prosperi. Alii dicunt Burdegalensem, ut voluit Joh. Aventinus, Prosperum hunc non Rbegii Flaminia in Italia, ut voluit Sixtus Senensis; nec Rbegii Lepidi ut Voluit Joh. Antonius Flamenfis, sed Rbegii Oppidi in Gallia Provincia, Episcopum fuisse autumat Bellarm. De Scriptor Eccles. Sic & Andr. Rivetus li 7. Specim. Critici Sacri. §. c. 18. Omnes falsi.

in the Monastery of Bethlehem; who passed the last Years of his Life at Marseille; Caelius Sedulius an English-Man, or a Scotch-Man, a Christian Poet; Isidore a Monk, and Presbyter of Damietta; Prosper of Riez in Aquitain, a great Defender of the Doctrine of St. Austin.

Sozomen of Salamis, who hath Written the Ecclesiastick History from the Year 324, to the Year 439, Died about the Year 450.

The first of the Six Books of Zosimus, which comprehends the Succession of Emperors from Augustus to Probus, and which extended heretofore to Diocletian, is extremely abbreviated. The five other Books of his History are more large, Especially when he comes to the times of Theodosius the Great, and of his Children Arcadius and Honorius, because he speaks of things whereof he may have been himself a Witness. He goes but little beyond the second Siege which Alaric laid to Rome, and the Occasions of Division, which were raised betwixt Honorius and him. It may be said that he was a great Enemy of the Christians; that he hath forgot nothing that might disparage Constantine, and give Credit to Paganism. Notwithstanding this, there are abundance of fine Things in his History, and some that are to be met with nowhere else. His Style, according to Photius, is Pure, Sweet, and Agreeable, Intelligible, Concise and Close, because he Abridges all that Others have Written at large.



Under *Valentinian* the III.

*Merovee* who signalized his Valour in the Victory gained over *Attila* the Hun, is acknowledged the true Founder of the Hereditary French Monarchy. Some Authors say that he was the first that changed the Name of *Gaul* into that of *France*: that he was of the Race of *Clodion* the *Hairy*, his Predecessor; and if we may credit some others, he was his Son. But this is not well ascertain'd, and it is in this uncertainty, that our Kings of the first Race who reign'd successively, and in a right Line unto *Pepin* the *Short*, 331, or according to others 332 Years, are stiled *Merovingians*. *Merovee* reign'd in the 22d Year of the Empire of *Valentinian*, tho' according to some Authors, he began his Reign, ann. 448, in the 8th of the Pontificat of *Leo* the Great, the 25th of the Empire of *Theodosius* the Younger. He had armed against the *Romans*; and *Actius* was preparing to Fight against the *French*, and the *Goths*, who at that time possessed *Aquitain*, when to oppose *Attila* King of the *Huns*, they resolved to unite their Forces in Common against him, to make but one Body of their Three Armies: and *Sangiban* also, King of the *Alans*, joyn'd himself with them. The Kings not regarding their Dignity, put their Interest and their Fortune into the Hands of *Aetius*, whose Merit and Reputation was well known to them, and they were not disappointed in their Expectation. He gave the left Wing of the Army to King *Thierry* and his Son; *Thorismund* with the *Visigoths*, took the right Wing with *Merovee*, and *Childeric* this King's Son; and the *French*, to secure *Sangiban* in his Duty, of whom they had some Suspicion, placed him in the middle with his *Alans*. This Battle was not fought near *Thoulouse*, nor in the upper *Auvergne*, nor near *Orleans*, as *Idacius* hath written: but in a place called *St. Maurice*, in the spacious Plains near *Chalons*, as I have said, Ann. 451, in the third Year of the Reign of *Merovee*, who died Ann. 456.

Under *Marcian.*

(d) In his Reign, Ann. 451, was held *The Council of Chalcedon*, composed of Six Hundred and Thirty Bishops, which was the 4th Oecumenical Council, wherein *Nestorius* and *Eutyches* were condemned for their Heresies. From the Council of *Chalcedon*, to that of *Ephesus*, under *Theodosius the Younger*, passed 20 Years; to that of *Constantinople*, under *Theodosius the Great*, 70; to that of *Nice* under *Constantine the Great*, 126: and it is of these Four General, or Oecumenical Councils, that Pope *Gregory*, surnamed the *Great*, Speaks in his Letters, where he says, *That he received them, and rever'd them, as he rever'd the Four Gospels.*

*Mecilius Avitus* who Ann. 455, after the death of *Anicius Maximus*, had usurped the Empire of the West which he held 10 Months and 15 Days, but resigned it Ann. 456, being neither strong enough, nor beloved enough to keep it, and became Bishop of *Plaisance*.

Under *Leo the I.*

The *Alexandrians* having Intelligence of the Death of *Marcian*, killed *Proterius* their Bishop, Ann 457; put *Timotheus* an *Eutychian* in his place, who was expell'd, Ann. 460, and another of the same Name succeeded him.

Pope *Leo* who died, as I have already observed, Ann. 461, was the first that was buried in the Church of *St. Peter* in the *Vatican*.

(e) *Mamertus* Bishop of the *French Vienna*, instituted the Rogation, Ann. 462, to avert, as it is said the Wrath of Heaven from that City, shook at that time by a terrible Earthquake; and this Custom afterwards passed into

K 2

the

(d) You may read the 7th Chapter of the Faith and Customs of the Nestorians, in the Critical History of the Faith and Customs of the Eastern Christians, by P. Simon.

(e) *Ptolomæus Luccensis. Volaterranus Histor. Lombardia* c. 66. *Petrus de Natalibus*, 4. c. 14.

the Church of *Clermont*, and into all other Cities of the World.

*Claudianus Mamertus*, a great Metaphysician, a great Geometrician, Priest of the Church of *Vienna* in *France*, and Brother to the Bishop of the same City, confuted *Fauftus* Bishop of *Riez*, who asserted that God alone was Incorporeal, that all Creatures, not excepting the Soul of Man, were Corporeal. The Authorities and Reasons of the latter seemed to have some Weight. But *Claudianus Mamertus* answered them with far more solid, and more convincing ones; and proved the Immortality of the Soul, by the same Principle that *René des Cartes* used. The *Cartesians*, will without doubt be very much pleased, to see the solid Reasonings of this *Mamertus* in the 4th Vol. of the *Bibliothèque* of Ecclesiastical Authors by the Learned Mr. *du Pin*.

In the same Year 462, if we may believe *Zonaras* and *Cedren*, the Hand of a certain Painter at *Constantinople*, who was about to paint *Jesus Christ* under the Figure of *Jupiter*, withered: and when he had confessed his Crime, he was cured by the Prayers of *Gennadius*, who was Bishop of the same City.

Ann. 463, *Paul* who was in a Monastery of *Alexandria*, was cured of the Leprosy by touching the Bones of *Elisha*; and in 470 *St. Remy* was Bishop of *Rheims* in *Campagne*.

#### Under *Anthemius*.

*Caius Silius Apollinaris Sidonius* of *Lyon*, Husband of *Papinilla*, the Daughter of *Avitus*, and at last Bishop of *Clermont*, after the Death of *Eparchius*, was but about two and fifty Years old when he died on the 23d of August in the Year 482.

#### In *Zeno's* Reign.

*Genferick* King of the *Vandals* died in the Year four Hundred Seventy Eight; 39 Years after he had taken *Carthage*, 23 after he had made himself Master of the City of *Rome*: and *Hunerick*, or *Honorick*, who was

his Successor, being an *Arrian*, treated the Orthodox with all imaginable Severity.

In 479, A Bishop was sent for from *Constantinople* to succeed *Stephen* Bishop of *Antioch*, whom the *Eutychians* had Murder'd.

In 483, on the 12th of March, Pope *Simplicius* of the City of *Tivoli* ended his Days; whose vacant See was fill'd by *Felix* the III'd: though *Onuphrius* will have him stil'd the Second, as looking upon *Felix* the II'd, *Anastasiu's* Son to be a Schismatick.

In 485, upon the Death of *Childeric*, *Clovis* Mounted the Throne; who as the greatest part of the German Chronologists inform us, was the first that Chang'd his Arms, and took the Three Flower-de-Luces into his Escutcheon. Others suggest that razing out Three Toads, or rather, Three Crowns Gueules in a Field Argent, he took an endless Number of Golden Flower-de-Luces in a Field Azure, which *Charles* the VIth reduc'd to Three. It wou'd be easy to prove by a Silver Relique-Box, in the Repository of the Students of St. *Catherine-du-Vals* Church in *Paris*, that *Charles* the Vth, fir-named the Wise, the Father of *Charles* the VIth, had before that time taken the Three Flower-de-Luces.

In the absence of *Philip* the Bold, the Son of St. *Lewis*; *Matthew* of *Vendome*, Abbot of St. *Denis*, and *Simon* Earl of *Nele*, in the Month of July 1282, dispatched Letters under the Kings Seal in Yellow Wax, with Flower de Lucas.

As to the Original of those Flower 'tis uncertain.

In the Reign of *Basiliscus* a Fire destroy'd the whole Library at *Constantinople*, stor'd according to *Zonaras* with 120000 Volumes, and among those Books, and many Curiosities *Homer's* Poem, written in Letters of Gold upon the Guts of a † Serpent a Hundred and Twenty Foot long.

---

† *Titus Livius* had spoken of another Serpent of the same length, in the 2 Decad. of the Punick War, now lost.



## CHAP. IX.

*The Succession of the Emperors down to Phocas's time.*

**F**lavius Anastasius, a Native of Dyrrachium, or Durazzo in Macedonia, on the Coast of the Ionian Sea, was surnamed *Dicorus*, because the Pupils of his Eyes were of two Colours; that of his Right Eye Black, and that of his left blew. Having been Secretary, (a) or Silentiary, which was no very considerable Post, He was made Emperor by the powerful Suffrage of the Eunuch *Urbicius*, and by the Passion and good Graces of *Ariane*, the Relict of *Zeno*, the Daughter of *Leo the Ist*, whom he Married upon the Fortieth Day after the Interrment of her Husband. He was Crown'd by the Patriarch *Euphemius*, as *Leo the Great* had been by *Anatolius* Patriarch of *Constantinople*; who was the first Emperor that was crown'd by a Prelate. But the Heresies of *Arrius* and *Eutyches*, creeping into the Courts, and Private Families, the Emperors were fain publicly to give an Account of their Belief; and *Anastasius* who was an *Eutychian*, was not Crown'd 'till after he had given it under his Hand that he wou'd make no Alterations in the Church, and that he wou'd strictly observe all the Decrees in the Council of *Chalcedon*.

In the beginning of his Reign, *Theodorick* after Three great Victories gain'd over *Odoacer*, took him at *Ravenna*; He put him and his Children to death at an Entertainment, in the 4463 Year of the World, in the 493 Year of our Lord: In the Year 500, he entered *Rome*, and was received there with more than Ordinary Joy. He there treated the whole Senate with great Civility, and dealt out his Gifts to all the People: He repair'd the Cities which the late Wars had ruin'd; he adorn'd *Italy* with Magnificent Structures, he appointed

Laws

---

(a) The Silentiary, according to *Procopius*, was he who had the Charge of what belong'd to the Emperor's Sleep and Rest.

Laws worthy a Great Prince, and gain'd to himself an Universal Admiration. Beside the Palaces and Fortresses he order'd to be Built, he caus'd the *Pomptin Fens* to be drain'd which *Coeffeteau*, as if it had been the *Pontin Fens*, has by a great Mistake plac'd in the Kingdom of *Pontus*, which was a Country of *Asia Minor*, not considering that they were call'd *Pomptins*, and *Pometians* from *Suessa Pometia*, a City that was near them, and that they came from the two Rivers of *Ofante* and *Baudino*. They are in the way from *Rome* to *Naples* betwixt *Tarracina*, and *Sarmonetta*, and take up the Room of 24 Cities. These Marshes were dried by *Cethegus*, who was Authoris'd by the Senate to do it; and when the Trenches were fill'd up with Dirt, and Excrements by the Negligence of some Persons oblig'd to keep them open, *Julius Cæsar* had Commission to do what *Cethegus* had done before, and he was making Preparations for it when he was slain.

Whilst *Theodorick* accomplish'd all these Designs, *Anastasi* was necessitated to raise his Forces against *Longinus*, the Brother of *Zeno*, who was willing to dispute the Empire With him; and who could not endure upon the Throne a Secretary whom the Lust of a Woman, and the blind Complaisance of an Eunuch had advanced to it. *Longinus* was defeated in this War. He was taken and led through the Theatre at *Constantinople*, and was executed at *Nice*. Count *Vitalian* a *Thracian*, made the greatest Efforts against him, and by a Religious Zeal thought himself oblig'd to revolt from him. *Anastasi* who had Submissively received whatsoever had been Decreed in the Council of *Chalcedon*, and who had given it under his Hand that he would stand by it, repented of that his good Action; he urg'd *Euphemius* to give him back that Writing as a thing that injur'd his Honour; he Banish'd him because he refus'd to Surrender it; besides he design'd to be reveng'd of this Patriarch, who knew his Temper, and had Courage enough to threaten (b) him, if he were not stedfast in the Faith. The Emperor however, cou'd not possibly

K 4

be

(b) Vid. Baron. in An. C. 491. n. 7. Casaub. Prologom. in Exercit. Baronianis.

be ignorant that this Patriarch had conven'd a numerous Synod of Bishops to Condemn, or Anathematize in General all those who were willing to destroy this last Council; and he made use of this Pretence to have this Patriarch driven out by the other Bishops as a Violent Zealot, who by his abundant Indiscretion might stir up new Troubles in his Dominions.

*Macedonius* his Successor, with whom *Euphemius* had left in Charge that Paper of *Anastasius*, was courted by the Emperor to restore that sign'd Promise of his into his Hands, and for his Refusal to obey him, he was first Banished, and a little while after Murther'd. *Vitalian*, who could not brook this Tyranny, made War upon him, besieg'd *Constantinople*, and had taken that City, had it not been for *Proclus*, who was an admirable Engineer, who burnt his Fleeer, and who by the help of his Glasses, and his Machines, did that in this City which *Archimedes* had done of old at *Syracuse*. *Nicephorus* and *Pomponius Letus* differ from *Zonaras*, because they affirm that the Emperor bought a Peace, and did more with his Money than *Proclus* did with all his Art.

*Anastasius* also had War with *Kobad* King of *Persia*, the Son of *Balas's* Sister, the Nephew of *Firuz*, and Grandson of *Taxdigerd*: and this was not ended till the Reign of *Justin*. The *Bulgarians* in 499; The *Getae* in 505, Ravag'd *Thracia* and *Macedonia*: and though *Anastasius* had sent Embassadors to *Clovis*; *Theoderick*, or *Thierry*, who was jealous of this Alliance, furnished him with 80000 fighting Men, who made himself master of *Provence*, check'd *Clovis* in the career of his Victories, and defeated Thirty Thousand Men in one Battel. *Anastasius*, who had returned to his *Arrianism*, continually employ'd the remainder of his Life and Strength against the Orthodox, till the time of his Death, in the Year of the World 4088, in the 518th Year after our Redemption, being 88 Years Old after he had Reigned 27, three Months, three Days: and some are of Opinion that he was kill'd by a Stroke of Thunder.

◦ *Flavius Anicius Justinus*, according to the Author of the Chronicle of *Alexandria*, was Born at *Bederine*: and if some Historians have inform'd us that he was ei-

ther

ther of *Illyrium*, or *Thracia*; 'tis because the City of *Bilderine* was upon the Frontiers of the one or 'tother. He was of a nobler Extraction, if he descended of the *Anician Family*; and there is mention made of *Anicii* in the Inscriptions, and in the Records. Some say that he was the Son of a Shepherd, that after he had been for sometime a Herdsman, he list'd himself in the *Militia*, being Sixteen Years Old; and he was so fortunate, that having past through all Posts, he at last from a private Centinel arrived to be General of the Army, Prefect of the Pretorium. Count and Senator of *Constantinople*: His first Wife was *Lupicia*, or *Lupidicia*, whom he call'd *Euphemia*, and Crown'd her as soon as he ascended the Imperial Throne, and after the death of that Empress, he Married *Theodora* in 523.

The Emperor was not yet elected; when *Amantius* the 1st, the Richest and most powerful of *Anastasius's* Eunuchs, brought to *Justin* an immense Summ, begg'd him with this Money to gain all the Officers and Soldiers, that the Army might advance Colonel *Theocritian* to the Throne. *Justin* took the Money, and made such use of it for himself, that having just all that was necessary to make the Army his own, it was easy for him to procure the Sovereignty at the Expence of another. *Amantius* and *Theocritian* seeing themselves deceiv'd, with all possible Secrecy, engaged all their Friends in their Interests, and in the Revenge they designed; but the Conspiracy being discovered, they were all punished for their Crime. He foreseeing too that Count *Vitalian*, who had made *Anastasius*, and the *Constantinopolitans* tremble, was to be fear'd; endeavour'd to gain him by entrusting him with the Command of his Armies in 519; He chose him Consul for the following Year, and order'd his Head to be cut off in the 7th Month of his Consulship, after having once fancy'd that he made no use of all his Interest, but in order to take away the Crown from him.

He was at War with (c) *Kobad*, and to bring it to



a Happy Issue, he found no better Expedient than to call in *Zeliobes* King of the *Huns* to his Assistance, and to pay him as his Ally. But having understood that this King of the *Huns*, in hopes to get from the King of *Persia* either the same Sum of Money which he had receiv'd of him, or perhaps a greater, had put himself at the head of his own Troops, he sent Embassadors to *Kobad*; he let him know that he had treated with *Zeliobes* for his Army, that he ought not to rely upon his Overtures, nor his Promises, and begg'd him to consider by this last Instance of his Treachery, what he was to expect from such a Traytor. *Kobad* surpriz'd with this News, put to death the King of the *Huns*, after he had the Truth confirm'd from his own Lips; he commanded that all his Troops should be put to the Sword, and granted Peace to *Justin*. It lasted not long, inasmuch as *Zatus* a Man of the greatest Note among the *Lazians*, that had rebelled, being desirous to change his Religion, went to see *Justin*; who receiv'd him very well, brought him and his Son to Baptism, and gave him the Title of King, which he demanded, and dismiss'd them. Whilst *Kobad* sought ways of revenging himself upon the one and the other, the *Huns* lent their Assistance to the *Lazians*: (d) and *Kobad* being afterwards grown ill, gave the Guardianship of his Son to *Justin*, as *Arcadius* had made *Yazdigerd* Guardian to his Son *Flavius Theodosius*. The Emperor *Justin* deny'd him by the Advice of *Proclus* his Treasurer; and this Repulse which King *Kobad* lookt upon as an Affront, ministr'd an Occasion for another War. As he had offended *Kobad* by the Manner in which he receiv'd and dismiss'd *Zatus*, he provok'd *Theodorick* of *Verona*, because he openly persecuted all profess't *Arrians*. This King last named, to keep him from it, sent Pope *John*, with some Persons of consideration to *Constantinople* to tell *Justin*, that if he restor'd not to the *Arrians* all the Churches

---

(d) *Lazica Regio Occidua pars Iberiæ, seu pars Chalcidis Versus Phasim Fluvium, inter Pontum Euxinum, Moschicos Montes, & Caucasum.*

Churches and Estates which he detain'd from them, he wou'd drive out by Fire and Sword all the Catholicks that were in *Italy*. Though the Subject Matter of their Embassy was highly unreasonable, and though they own'd it to the Emperor, their Supplications and Tears were so prevalent, that they obtain'd what they desir'd of him; since this Pardon of the Hereticks was the only way to preserve the true Believers.

But this King whose kind Inclinations were alter'd, made an ill return for all the good Services of Pope *John*, whom he put to Death in the Prison of *Ravenna*, for having been too long upon his Journey, or because he had crown'd *Justin*.

In the Year 526, he order'd *Boetius* and *Symmachus* to be beheaded, upon false Accusations, and died of an Apoplexy, or a Loosness and Vomiting, the 2d of September of the same Year, having reign'd 33 Years 5 Months, and 28 Days. *Justin*, the 1st Day of August the next Year following, died of an old Wound which ooz'd afresh, after a Reign of nine Years, and 23 days according to *Zonaras*, or as others, of nine Years, one Month, and three Days. He was 77 Years and four Months old, at the time of his Death, having before that admitted *Justinian* his Sister's Son into a share of his Empire.

(e) *Flavius Anicius Justinian*, surnamed *the Great*, born at *Bederine*, was the Son of *Sabbatius*, and *Vigilantia* the Sister of *Justin*, whom *Theophilus* calls *Beglinisa*. *Acatius* was his Father in law, whose whole Employment was the command of some Men who were to feed the Bears, design'd for the Sports in the Amphitheatre at *Constantinople*. *Acatius* died in the Reign of *Anastasius*, and left three Daughters *Comiton*, or *Cariton*, *Theodora*, and *Anastasia*. All the Endeavours that *Vigilantia* could use to disswade *Justinian* from Marrying *Theodora*, who had by her first Husband an *Arabian*, a Son nam'd *John*; all her Reasons, all her Intreaties, and all her Tears were in vain

---

(e) *De Justiniano. Rupert. Observ. in Synops. Bes. minor, P. 514, &c.*

vain and to no purpose; the Passion he had for her having much more Influence over him then the Arguments of his Mother, who at last died with Grief for it.

There was nothing more admirable, if that be consider'd, then the Beauty of this Widow. How charming soever the Statue was which the *Constantinopolitans* erected for her, *Procopius* says it was not comparable to the Original; and that it was not in the Power of the Artist to describe in their full Strength those Graces of hers which must ever remain inexpressible. But this Master-piece of Nature was a Monster in it, if we view her in her brutish Inclinations: and there is no Imagination so corrupt, nor so great as to be able to comprehend the extent of this Woman's Debauches. Those who have read in the *Vatican* what *Procopius* says, and which is only in Manuscript, will be of my Opinion; and will commend me in that I have not made some particular Remarks of an Empress, who not thinking her own Vices burden enough, carried also upon her Shoulders a Bench for her Sister *Comiton* to sit on, who was a meer Prostitute in the Streets. *Ottavius de Strada* in his Account of *Justinian's* Coins, applauds the Wisdom of this *Theodora* who, as he says, in the Dotage of her Husband manag'd his Government to a Wonder; and 'tis easy to judge from thence that he inconsiderately took her for *Sophia* the Wife of *Justin*.

*Justinian*, if we may believe *Cedrenus*, and the Author of the *Alexandrian Chronicle*, had a round Face, and Eyes, a handsome Nose, a good Colour, a Bald Head, a Smiling Countenance, a full Chest: he was in as good Plight as was necessary for one of his Stature, which was neither too big, nor too little, and he wore no Hair upon his Chin. He was adorn'd with excellent Knowledge; if in this Matter we may refer our selves to *Gisfanius*, *Sabellicus*, *Platina*, *Procopius* and *Isidore*; and he was no more Learned then those that are least so, if we may give Credit to *Suidas*, *Laurentius Valla*, *Antony Le Fevre*, and *Alciat*. Since this is not a Question that ought to be determin'd here, I shall content my self in short to say, that we may judge of his Understanding and Genius, by the Care of the Publick Good,  
by

by his Command laid upon *Trebonianus*, *Dorotheus*, *Theophilus*, and seven other Civil-Lawyers, to make one Code only of the *Gregorian*, *Hermogenian*, *Theodosian*; and of the Decrees of the Emperors, from *Theodosius* the II<sup>d</sup> to his Reign, adding his own to them. It was his desire that they shou'd Examine and Methodize in one Volume all the ancient Law, which had lain undigested and perplexed near Fourteen hundred Years, and that they should extract it out of Two thousand Books, and Three hundred thousand Verses, Periods, or Paragraphs. These *Civilians* in the Year 529, finished the Code which was call'd *Justinian's*: and the 21<sup>st</sup> of November in the Year Five hundred thirty three the *Institutions* were published, or as they are commonly called, the *Institutes* of this Emperor, which are an *Abridgment of the Law*, a *Method to make it easily intelligible*; an *Abstract of the Expositions of many of the Antients*, and of several *Fragments of the Pandects*, or *Digests of the first Code*. The *Digests* were publish'd the 16<sup>th</sup> of December the same Year; his New Code in the Year 534; his *Novels*, or *Authenticks*, as far as to the 17<sup>th</sup> in 535, and it was since that time that all the other *Constitutions*, or *Novels* have been made. He had some *Domestick Wars*, and as he loaded his People with Taxes, which he often demanded upon new Pretences to exhaust them, and whereas the Avarice of *Theodora*, who govern'd him, was insatiable, Men grew weary of their Tyranny. *Hypatius*, *Pompey*, and *Probus* the Grandson of *Anastasius*, surnamed *Dicorus*, made use of the occasion: and the first was declar'd Emperor in *Constantinople*, where *Justinian* shut himself in the Palace, without daring to shew himself. His Enemies also ran to murder him there, when *Belisarius* having got together what Souldiers he found, attack'd all the Rebels in the Market-Place of the City, and there was above Thirty Thousand of 'em kill'd with *Hypatius*, and the Authors of this Rebellion. *Justinian* who had been very successfully serv'd by *Belisarius* upon many Occasions, commanded him to march into *Africa* against *Gilimer* King of the *Vandals* who had persuaded the *Africans* that *Hilderick*, who had already reign'd seven Years, was a Coward, and that he had a de-



design to deliver them up to *Justinian*, with all the Advantage of their Conquests: and thus by his Slanders he made himself King, and in the mean time detain'd *Hilderick* in Prison. Nay, He did much more, for upon the first Rumour of this War, he commanded the King should be put to death, with his Brother, and all his Relations, whose Liberty he never would grant to *Justinian*, who had deputed Embassadors to require them, and tell him that he needed only send them from *Constantinople*, where he wou'd take care of their Fortune. This unreasonable denial of *Gilimer*, who moreover infested the *Grecians* of *Africa* with a cruel Persecution, induc'd *Justinian* to send *Belisarius* with an Army thither, who defeated him, put him to flight, and took *Carthage*, 80 Years after the *Vandals* had been in possession of it, and pursu'd him into *Mauritania*. This King escaped to a Mountain of *Pappua*, where having been surrounded three Months, and being unable to get any Food, he made his Request to his Besieger *Pharas* to send him a Loaf of Bread, not having seen a Morsel since he retir'd into that Mountain, a Sponge to dry up his Years, and a Musical Instrument to entertain him in his Miseries. He was taken in the Year 534, and with his Queen and the whole Royal Family, put in Chains to be brought to *Justinian*, who was so mov'd with their Misfortune, that he gave them an Estate in *Galatia* to live at their Ease.

*Athalarick* King of the *Ostrogoths* in *Italy*, the Son of *Eutharick*, and *Amalasonta* being dead, after he had reign'd eight Years; *Amalasonta* plac'd upon the Throne one *Theodat*, whom *Cassiodorus* calls *Thibaut*; and this new King being ungrateful, beyond all Example, banish'd her into *Sicily*, and put her to death. *Justinian* in the Year 535, sends *Belisarius* against him to revenge the Death of this Princess, who made himself Master of *Sicily*, *Naples*, and *Rome*, where the following Year he was besieged by *Vitiges*, whom the *Ostrogoths* had made King, after they had murder'd *Thibaut*. The Siege was furious, together with a Famine, which was so raging, that there were Mothers who fed upon the Flesh of their own Children. But though a hundred  
and

and fifty Thousand had sat down before the City; *Belisarius*, by his Sallies put them all into despair, and in a single one killed no less than Thirty Thousand of 'em.

*Vitiges* having been constrain'd to raise the Siege, hastens to other Towns, Sacks and Burns them: and *Belisarius* being at Liberty pursues him, takes him and his Wife at *Ravenna*, and sends them to *Constantinople*. He was recall'd from *Italy* into the East, to oppose *Nuschirrawan* King of *Persia*. He is the same Person whom the Historians call *Cosroës*, (derived of *Chosraw*, a Name common to all the *Persian* Kings) who subdu'd the *Bactrians*, and carried his Conquests even to the Isle of *Ceylan*. *Belisarius*, Victory every where being his Attendant, triumph'd over the *Persians*, when the *Goths* who had kill'd their Kings *Idobald* and *Ararick*, bestow'd the Crown upon *Totilas*, whom *Jornandes* calls *Badiula*, or to speak more correctly, *Dadiula*; who took many Cities in *Italy*, enter'd *Rome* in the Year 546; beat down the third part of its Walls, and demolished its most beautiful Palaces, having fir'd even the Capitol it self. *Justinian* hearing this News, sends back *Belisarius* into *Italy*, who retook *Tarentum*, *Spoletto* and *Rome*, rebuilt what had been ruin'd by *Totilas*; and by the strict Injunction of his Master, pass'd into the East against *Chosraw Nuschirrawan*, who had rais'd very fine Troops, made Inrodes into *Syria*, and scarce met with any Opposition wheree're he pass'd. *Totilas* who made his Advantage of the Removal of *Belisarius*, besieges *Rome*, and takes it in the Year 549. *Justinian* who had to no purpose employ'd some Generals against him, at last sends *Narses* an *Armenian* by Birth, who being Governor of some Provinces of *Armenia*, had revolted from *Nuschirrawan*, to qualify himself for the Emperors Service. He defeated *Totilas's* Army, and as some say kill'd him too; and after he had pursu'd *Tejas* who succeeded him in the Year 552, he put an end to this War, which had been of eighteen Years standing. The Kingdom of the *Goths*, if we begin our Account from *Odoacer*, had continued above 77 Years; and upwards of fifty, if we reckon from *Theoderick* of *Verona*, to *Tejas's* defeat by *Narses*, who drove all the

*Goths*

Goths out of Italy, with the Government of which *Justinian* entrusted him.

*Belisarius* who was a Native of that part of Germany that is situated betwixt *Illyricum* and *Thracia*, was a most unfortunate Man: for after he had been suspected to aim at the Throne, *Justinian* stript him of his Estate, and all his Offices; yet in a Conspiracy which was discover'd, *Belisarius* forgot this Ingratitude, and kill'd the Senator *Florian*, to whom the Empire was given. He brought his Imperial Ensigns, and the Head of him also to *Justinian*, who restor'd him to his former Employments; however, upon some fresh Jealousies, he ordered him to be put into Prison, where he died at last with Grief. *Tzetzes* and others have assur'd us that *Justinian* put out the Eyes of this great Man, and that he was afterwards reduced to Alms. But I cannot be of the Opinion of those who believe it: and it suffices me to observe that this Emperor died the 13<sup>th</sup> of August, in the Year of the World 4535, and in the Year of our Lord 565, at the Age of 83, after he had reign'd 38 Years, seven Months, and 13 Days, and nominated his Nephew *Justin* to succeed him.

*Justinian* meanly comply'd with *Theodora*, who was an *Eutychian*; He depriv'd the profess'd *Arrians* of their Estates and Offices; He restor'd many Churches, he commanded others to be Built, he Founded many Hospitals: in the *Lent* he did eat nothing but boil'd Herbs with Salt and Vinegar, and was content to drink Water. Notwithstanding all this, 'twas believed that in his Old Age, he was infected with the Heresy of the *Aphthardocitæ*, who maintain'd, that our Lord *Jesus Christ* had not a Body subject to the natural Necessities of other Men. From this Heresy with which he was willing again to Poyson the Church, Men might conclude that there was but one Nature in our Saviour *Christ*, which was the Perswasion of the *Eutychians*; and that there was but one Will in him, which was the Assertion of the *Monothelites*, who destroy'd themselves whilst they attributed to him one Will and two Natures.

(f) *Justin* the II<sup>d</sup> of that Name, Sirnamed *Curo-palatus*, because he was Prefect of the *Pretorium*, before he was nominated Emperor by *Justinian*, Married *Sophia*, *Theodora's* Niece; and he with this Princess was solemnly crown'd by *Eutychius* the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. The first Actions of his Reign were very Honourable, and if he had preserv'd his Temper and Humour, he had deserved the Character of a Just, Religious, and Magnificent Prince. But his better Inclinations were spoil'd by his Covetousness; which in time grew so great, that his Thoughts were wholly taken up in pillaging his Subjects, in making Advantage of all the Favours they ask'd of him, in selling Offices, whether Ecclesiastical or Civil, and in turning his whole Empire into an Harvest of Gold.

He was guilty of a great Mistake at first, because he sent *Longinus* as an *Exarch* into *Italy*; and the *Exarchs* to the Emperors of the East, were what the Vice-Roys of *Sicily* and *Sardinia* are to the King of *Spain*; that is to say, *Longinus* was the Emperor's Representative in *Italy*, whilst *Narses*, who had deliver'd him from the *Goths*, was no more than a Cypher there. The *Romans* who had sent to *Constantinople*, great Complaints of the Government of *Narses*, oblig'd *Justin* to recal him with Passion, without examining the Matter closely, and the Empress also, according to the Freak and Indiscretion of a Woman, wrote to him that he should come to Spin with her Maids of Honour, because *Narses* was an Eunuch; which Expression provok'd him to that Degree, that instead of Obeying, he said in his Rage, that he would prepare her such a Spindle-ful, that she should have much ado to unravel.

To be reveng'd of them both, he Sollicits the *Lombards*, who were then in Possession of *Pannonia*, to leave their Country, to pass into *Italy* with considerable Troops, and with their Wives and Children to seize a Fruitful and Pleasant Country, which it wou'd cost

L

them

---

(f) *Patre Dulcissimo, matre Vigilantia Justiniani sorore natus. Corippus Grammatic. & Victor Tununensis, Sophia, Theodora neptis, sed non ex Justiniano.*



them nothing to Conquer. *Auboin* the Son of *Audoin*, or *Andobin*, who was employ'd by *Justinian* against the *Ostrogoths* in *Italy*, and for his great Achievements had got of the Emperor *Noricum*, situated betwixt the *Danube* and the *Alps*, with *Carnia*, *Croatia*, *Styria*, and one part of *Austria*: This *Aubin*, I say, who was then King of the *Lombards*, either secretly induc'd by *Narses*, or by the pleasantness of the Country, which he had seen when he attended his Father; discover'd neither Rashness nor Negligence upon this Occasion. But when he had taken all his Measures, he march'd into *Italy* with Two hundred thousand Men: and *Narses* immediately left *Rome*, and went to *Naples*. Pope *John* surpriz'd at the great Number and Cruelties of these *Barbarians*, who fir'd the Churches they had robb'd, kill'd the Priests, and hung upon Trees all the Religious they could find; follow'd *Narses*, and by his Intreaties prevail'd with him to return (g) to *Rome*, where he died some time after. These *Lombards* who came into *Italy* in the Year 568, enlarg'd their Conquests, and founded there under 24 of their Kings, a mighty Kingdom which lasted 206 Years, and which in *Didier's* Reign in 774, was brought into Subjection to *Charles the Great*.

Whilst these People got Victories, and took Cities; *Longinus* laid Siege to the Houses of Ladies whom he had a Mind to debauch; and those who did not yield were certainly ravish'd. *Justin* on the other side was to stand the Shock of the *Bulgarians*, who plunder'd *Thracia*, and were put to Flight by *Tiberius* of the *Jews* who were defeated by *Elesbas*, and of the *Persians* who were beaten by *Marcian* in many Skirmishes. But when the last nam'd Person besieg'd *Nisibis*, *Justin* having believ'd a false account that this Town was already taken, was so unwise as to give to *Acetius* the Command of the Troops which *Marcian* had: and the Army who cou'd not brook this Injustice, rais'd the Siege, left the Field, and disbanded themselves, whatsoever could be done to keep them from it. *Hormoz* who is the

---

(g) Sic. *Paulus Diacon. Anastas. Biblioth. & alii.*

the same whom the Historians call *Harmisda*, the Son of *Nuscbir-Rouvan* King of *Persia* making use of his Advantages, sends *Adramenes* against *Justin*, who was under an Alienation of Mind: And *Sophia* not knowing what to resolve upon, writes to the King, intreating that he wou'd grant him a Peace, and artfully insinuates that there was no great Glory in making War with a Sick Man, and a Woman. By this Letter she procur'd Peace, and *Justin* who had recover'd his Understanding, and nam'd *Tiberius* Emperor, dy'd in the Year of the World 4546, and in the Year of our Lord 576, after he had reign'd ten Years, ten Months, and twenty Days.

*Tiberius Constantine*, who was a *Thracian*, had a great Understanding, a noble Soul, a generous and free Temper, an admirable Shape, a lovely Countenance; and if Historians, who have left us the Description of him, have not flatter'd him, he was the handsomest Man in his whole Empire. He had Two Daughters by *Anastasia*; *Charitona* and *Constantina*; the former was Married to *Germanus*, whom he made *Cesar*, the latter to *Mauricius*, who was his Successor. His Charity to the Poor was so great, that *Sophia*, tho' a Generous and Magnificent Princess, was amazed at it, and could not forbear telling him, that *by giving to them at that rate, he would reduce all other Men to Poverty*. To this Reproof or Advice, he returned this Answer, *My Exchequer will never be empty, as long as the Poor shall be allow'd to take out of it*. This is the great Treasure, of which it is said in Scripture, *Make to your selves Treasures in Heaven, where the Moths and the Rust eat not, and where Thieves break not through and steal*. His Charity, indeed, was well rewarded, since Fortune, or to speak more like a Christian, Providence discover'd to him a vast Treasure hid under Ground, besides that of *Narses*. By the help of *Justinian* and *Mauricius*, he drove away the *Persians*, he took again from them what they had unjustly seiz'd in his Kingdoms; he appointed his Son-in-law *Mauricius* to be his Successor, and expir'd the tenth, or by *Cedren's* Account, the 14<sup>th</sup> Day of *August*, in the Year of the World 4553, in the Year of our

Lord 583, when he had Reigned Six Years, ten Months, and Eight Days.

(b) *Flavius Mauritius*, a *Cappadocian*, had a handsome Face, and was Magnificent and Generous: But he was so chang'd, that he woud hardly any more have been taken for the same Man, had it not been for his Beard which he wore very long, He had by *Constantina* the Daughter of *Tiberus, Constantinus Theodosius*, whom he made *Augustus* (to whom he afterwards gave to Wife the Daughter of *Germanus*) *Tiberius, Constantine, Justinian, Justin, Mauricius, Gordia* who Marry'd *Philippicus*, and *Mary* who was the Wife of *Hormoz* King of *Persia*.

In 584, and the Two following Years, *Philippicus* had three very considerable Victories over the *Persians*: When in the Year 588, *Mauricius* had given the command of the Army to *Priscus*, it drove this General, whose Pride was insupportable, even to *Edeffa*, it made choice of *Germanus*, who at first refus'd that Office, but having taken it, he gain'd over the *Persians* all the Advantages the Emperor could wish for. *Hormoz* affected with all these Losses fell out with *Bakram Chubi* his General, whom *Zonaras* calls *Bara*; who seeing himself ill us'd by the King, forges Letters full of Threats against the Army. Which March'd at the same time against *Hormoz*, took him, and committed him to Prison, and by an universal consent Crown'd *Chosroam Abarvuez*. This Wretch who order'd that his own Father shou'd be Murder'd, and who perceived that the Crown, which he thought he had secured, was in no wise fixed, escapes from *Persia*, begs the Assistance of *Mauricius*, who befriends him, and by the Help of *Comentiolus*, that defeated *Bakram Chuby*, enabled him to retrieve his whole Kingdom. *Elmacinorus* relates the Matter another way, and says, that the *Persians* to be freed from the Tyranny of *Hormoz*, Dispatch'd Embassadors to *Schab Kahan*, who is the *Chagan*, or the *Cagan* of the Historians; that this *Schab Kahan* went against him with an Army, that he was routed by *Bakram Vafir*, or as *Eutychius* calls him,

*Sumir*,

---

(b) *Ita Numi; vel, MAURITIUS. TIBERII.*

*Sunir*, and that after his Victory, he was made King. He adds that *Cofra* fearing lest *Babram* might serve him no better than he had serv'd his murther'd Father *Hormoz*, made his escape afterwards, and went to *Mauricius*; that having receiv'd a great Army of this Emperor, he cut in pieces that of *Babram*, who withdrew into the Country inhabited by the *Turks*, where he order'd him to be kill'd; that to pay his Acknowledgments for the Kindness of *Mauricius*, he desir'd an Affinity with him, by the Marriage of his Daughter *Mary*, and that to qualify himself for her, he became a Christian. The same Author says, that *Cofra* was an absolute Monarch in the seventh Year of *Mauricius's* Empire: and it is from the Persian Word *Cofraw*, which imports, as I think I have already observed, a Regnant Prince in a vast Dominion, that the *Arabians* have borrowed the word *Cofra*, *Casra*, and *Cesra*, to adapt it to their own Language. The *Greeks* also for the same Reason have deriv'd their Word *Chosroes* from it.

The *Scabz Kaban*, i. e. the *August Emperor*, and who was so called for his Conquests, was the first, as some say, that subdued the *Scythians*, or *Tartars*; and made War with the *Turks*, whose Name was not as yet much known. As he desir'd nothing but to become great, he could not live in Peace with *Mauricius*, or if there were some Truce between them, it lasted not long. *Mauricius* being oblig'd to oppose this Enemy, sent *Priscus* the Pretor of *Europe* to make head against him, and when he had understood that the Pretor was Besieg'd, he wrote to him that he shou'd fear nothing; that the Troops design'd against the *Schab Kaban*, were ready to March; that they were going to make Inroads into his Country, and that *Schab Kaban* wou'd be amaz'd to find nothing but Ashes there, instead of that which he had left. The Express who carried the Letter, and who was commanded to let himself be taken, was soon caught, and the *Schab Kaban* after the reading of this Letter made Peace, and was deceiv'd by this Artifice. Some time after the *Schab Kaban*, who cou'd not be unactive, took the Field, and in the Battles that were fought betwixt him and *Priscus*, Fortune whatever they cou'd do,



visibly favour'd neither the one nor the other. *Mauricius* having had an Account of all these things, sent out *Commendiolus* with a powerful Army; he gave him secret Instructions to leave some Regiments to the Mercy of the Enemy, which he hated because they had revolted from him: and *Commendiolus* in the Fight so well observed the Injunction of his Master, that he fail'd not both to escape himself with all those whom he had selected, and to devote Twelve Thousand Men to the Cruelty of these *Barbarians*. How haughty soever the *Schah Kahan* might have been upon a Success so great, he sent the Emperor word that he might ransom his Prisoners for Twenty four Thousand Crowns, which he absolutely refused; he asked him but Twelve Thousand, and he regarded him not; afterwards he offer'd them to him for Six Thousand, and his offer was rejected; and to be reveng'd of him for his Inhumanity, he order'd them to be kill'd. The other Troops amaz'd at this News, charge *Commendiolus* with Treason, and make their Complaints to the Emperor, who did but laugh at 'em: And *Phocas* the Commander of but a single Company, and one deputed by them, spoke so boldly for the Army, that *Mauricius* impatient of the Freedom he us'd, expressly commanded that he shou'd be roughly used, and that his Beard should be torn off. Then his whole Army revolted, lifting up *Phocas* upon their Shields, and marching towards *Constantinople*, whose Gates were open'd by the Rebels, and *Phocas* was there Crown'd by the Patriarch, *Cyriacus*. But that which was extraordinary, was that *Phocas* being told that the Emperor with the whole Royal Family, was fled by Night in disorder, sent some of his Attendants to seize them, that he order'd his Sons, his Daughters, his Brother *Peter*, *Germanus*, *Theodosius*, who had been stil'd *Augustus*, to be put to Death in the Year 591; and his Wife the Daughter of *Germanus*, *Commendiolus*, and the Emperor himself in the 600 and second Year of our Lord. *Mauricius* liv'd 63 Years of which he reign'd Nineteen, Three Months, and Eleven Days, and by his Covetousness, he lost both his Empire and his Life.

## C H A P X.

*Chronological Remarks upon Ecclesiastical and Prophane Story.**In Anastasius's time.*

IN 492, Pope *Felix* died the 25th of February; and *Gelasius* the first of that Name, was his Successor.

In 495, *Gondibert* King of the *Vandals*, upon the earnest request of *Eugenius* Bishop of *Carthage*, generously restored to the *Carthaginians* all the Churches which *Huneric*, or *Honorick* had shut against them Ten whole Years: and in 496, Pope *Gelasius* died upon the 21st of November.

The same Year, or in 499, according to the Account of some, *Clovis* was Baptized by Saint *Remi* Bishop of *Rhemes*.

In 498, Pope *Anastasius* died November the 19th, and there was a Schism in the Church, because *Symmachus* the first of that Name was Elected by one part of the Clergy, and *Laurentius* by the other. But *Theodorick* confirmed the Election of *Symmachus*, and preferr'd *Laurentius* to the Bishoprick of *Nocere*, formerly call'd *Terani*.

In 511, *Timotheus* who was a *Theopascite*, i.e. of the Opinion of those who thought that the Divinity had suffer'd in Jesus Christ, was made Bishop of *Constantinople*: And in 513, the Emperor *Anastasius* forc'd away *Flavian*, the Bishop from *Anoiob*, to settle the Monk *Severus* a famous Heretick, the Leader of the *Acephali*, i.e. of the People without Head, because they had neither Bishops, Priests, nor Sacraments: and they maintained that there were two Natures in Jesus Christ, but that his Humanity was lost in his Divinity, as a drop of Vinegar disappears in the Sea.

In 514, *Cassiodorus* was Consul at *Rome*. *Symmachus* dy'd the 19th of July, and *Hormisdas* was chosen Pope the next day of the same Year.

This latter Pope was us'd ill enough by the Emperor *Anastasius*, who shamefully drove away his Deputies, *Evodius* Bishop of *Padua*, *Fortunatus* Bishop of *Catana*, *Venantius* a Priest of *Rome*, and *Vitalis* a Deacon, because he had been solicited by them to renounce the *Eutychian* Heresy. He order'd them a shatter'd Vessel for their Passage into *Italy*, forbidding them to Land in *Greece*, and in his Letter to *Hormisdas*, he roundly told him that he would be obey'd, and would not be obedient to any Man.

Besides, the Synods held at *Rome* under *Gelasius*, *Symmachus* and *Hormisdas* in 494, 495, 501, 502, 512, and 515, there was that of *Agde*, 506, and of *Valencia* in *Spain*, in 508. There was another at *Sydon*, where *Aeneas* Bishop of *Hierapolis*, and *Sotericus* Bishop of *Cesarea*, both Hereticks, were Presidents in 510, one at *Orleans* in 512, one at *Hiraclea* in 515, one at *Terracina* in 516, one at *Girone*, in 517, and one may judge by so many Synods, what a Condition the Church was then in.

*In the Reign of Justin the 1st.*

In the Year 519, *Severus* (a) Bishop of *Antioch*, a noted Heretick, was banished from his Church, and his Tongue also, if we may be determin'd by *Evagrius's* Account of the Matter, was cut out by the Command of *Justinus*, lest he should be any longer in a condition to continue his Anathemas against the Council of *Chalcedon*. He was an *Eutychian*, and 'tis from his Pupil *Jacob* of *Syria*, that the *Jacobites* had their Name.

*Epiphanius* was made Bishop of *Constantinople*: and in 521, *Paul* Bishop of *Antioch* voluntarily quitted his Bishoprick, for fear he should be depos'd for the Irregularities of his Life.

In 523, Pope *Hormisdas* died the 17th Day of *August*, and his Successor *John* the 1st, died the 27th of *May*, 526.

*Felix*

---

(a) *Antiochenam Ecclesiam administravit Severus Eutychianus: hujus discipulus ut scribunt Berdavi, Batricides, & Elmacinus fuit Jacobus Syrus cognomento Baradaeus, & ab eo Jacobitas dictos volum Alii, &c. Sandius Enucleata Histor. l. 3. p. 58.*

*Felix* the IV<sup>th</sup>, according to *Platina*, or the III<sup>d</sup>, as says *Onufrius* the Son of *Castorius* of *Beneventum*, was chosen Pope the 25<sup>th</sup> of *July*, in the same Year: and 'tis in this time that *Evodius* Bishop of *Pavia*, *Fulgentius* Bishop of *Ruspa* in *Africa*, and *Germanus* Bishop of *Capua* flourished; as also did the *Egyptian* Poet *Nonnus*, (b) and *Cassiodorus* the Senator, who had been *Theodorick's* Tutor, Chancellor, Consul, and Patrician at *Rome*, and who abandoning all the Vanities of the World, turn'd Monk in the Abby of *Ravenna*.

*In the Reign of Justinian Surnamed the Great.*

In the Year 529, the second Synod was held at *Toledo* about the end of the Reign of *Amaris* the Son of *Alarick*, or about the beginning of that of *Thudas*, Predecessor to *Thudogifilas*: and in 530, on the 12<sup>th</sup> of *October* Pope *Felix* died. *Boniface* the II<sup>d</sup> fill'd his place the 16<sup>th</sup> of the same Month, and Year, and *Dioscorus*, who in the Schism had been chosen Pope after *Felix*, died the 12<sup>th</sup> of *November*.

In 531, *Boniface* died the 17<sup>th</sup> of *October*: and in that Pope's time there were three Synods at *Rome*.

*John* the II<sup>d</sup>, surnamed *Mercurius*, was in possession of that See the 22<sup>d</sup> of *January* in 532, and died the 27<sup>th</sup> of *May* in 534.

*Agapetus* the I<sup>st</sup>, the Son of *Gordianus*, chosen the 3<sup>d</sup> of *June*, died the 20<sup>th</sup> of *May* next following at *Constantinople*; and there was a Synod at *Orleans*.

*Silverius* the Son of Pope *Hormisdas* settled in 536, by the absolute Order of *Theodate* King of the *Ostrogoths* and

---

(b) *Nonnus* cui *Panos* *Aegypti* oppidum Patria fuit, inter *Græcos Christianorum Poetas præcipuus*, *Sixto Senensi* l. 4. *Biblioth.* p. 348. *Poeta Mirificus Angelo Politiano in Miscell. Libris*; *λογότατ.* *Suidæ*; alter *Homerus*, *Sylburgio*, &c. At *Petro Cundo Animadv.* in *Nonni Dionysiaca*, imprudens, ridiculus, *Stolidus*, luto lutulentior, egregie infelix, misere & intolerabiliter ambitiosus, miro apparatu nugator, incredibiliter imperitus, barbarus, quem *Magistelli* severe castigarent. *De Nonno*, *Daniel Heinsius in Aristarcho Sacro passim*.



and banish'd by the command of the Empress *Theodora*, died in Exile the 20th of *June*, in the Year 538. There was a Third Synod at *Orleans* in 539 : and Saint *Benedict* the Founder of the Order of the *Benedictines*, died as some Authors affirm, upon Mount *Cassan* in the Year 542.

Saint *Remi* Bishop of *Remes*, died the 3d of *January*, 544.

In 545, a Synod was assembled at *Clermont*, under *Theodebert* Son of *Theerry* King of *Austrasia* : and in 550, there was a fourth Synod at *Orleans*, and a fifth Two Years after in the same City.

In 543, the fifth Universal and Oecumenical Council was held at *Constantinople*, and in this Council made up of 165 Bishops, the Heresies of *Nestorius*, *Eutyches* and *Origen* (c) were condemn'd ; as also the Books of *Theodorus* Bishop of *Mopsvesta* in *Cilicia*, which *Eutychius* calls *Massisa* ; the Epistle of *Ibbas* Bishop of *Edeffa*, and the Writings of *Theodoret* against *Cyril* the Patriarch of *Alexandria*. The Works of these three Bishops were the chief occasion of this Council, and gave Subject Matter for three Sessions, and he that would be inform'd of its dismal Consequences should consult the Writers of Church-story.

*Childebert* the Son of *Clovis* and *Clotilda*, died in the Year 558 the 44th of his reign. This King to revenge the Death of his Brother *Clodomir*, got the Assistance of his other Brother *Clotaire*, and marched with an army into *Burgundy* against *Gondemer*, who after the taking of *Austin*, was so frighted that he fled into *Spain*, and thence into *Africk*, where he dyed. According to *Ado's* Account, he was slain by the *French*, who being incensed against him for the Death of *Cledomir*, pursued him, and made a terrible Slaughter of the *Burgundians*. The Two Brothers divided the lower *Burgundy* betwixt them ; for the upper was possessed by their

Bro-

---

(c) *Collatione* 8. can. ii. *Clarissimorum Ecclesie Patrum* collegit *Sixtus Senensis*. l. 4. *Biblioth. S.* p. 350. *De cavendis Origenis erroribus* *πρὸς ἀρχὴν* extat *Hierogyni Epistola Elegans ad Avitum* : *Ovid. de Origene* *Hoornbeck Miscel. Sacr.* l. 1. *de Theologia Patrum* : *Vir Cl. Petrus Daniel Huetius in Origenianis*.

Brother *Thierry*, King of *Austrasia*. The good Intelligence betwixt the Two former, which lasted not long, was renewed by *Clotilda*, and both of them resolved to carry their Arms into *Spain*, and did pass over the *Pyrenees*. When *Childebert* had laid Siege to *Sarragosa*, the Inhabitants of this City made a solemn Procession about the Walls in the Habits of Penitents, and carried the Coat of *St. Vincent* their Patron, for their Standard; at which sight he was so touch'd to the Heart, that he return'd thence with a considerable Booty, after he had made these People abjure *Arianism*. He brought back this Coat of *St. Vincent*, which was given him, and he founded some Years after an Abby to the Honour of this blessed Deacon and Martyr, which was afterwards call'd *St. Germain des Prez*, in memory of *St. Germain* Bishop of *Paris*, who had counselled the King to Found it. He had long before march'd with an Army into *Languedoc*, to make War on *Amalarick* King of the *Visigoths*, and an *Arrian*, who had treated *Clote*, or *Clotilde* his Sister ill, because she was firm in the Faith of the Church. He gave Battle to this King his Brother in law, kill'd him; and according to others, *Amaury* was kill'd by the *French*, or by *Theudis* who succeeded him, and this Queen who was very pious, returning thence with her Brother, died in 531. The *Goths*, fearing the like irruptions from the *French*, transferr'd the Royal Seat from *Narbonne* to *Toledo*. *Childebert* had by Queen *Ultragotha* his Wife a Native of *Spain*, as is believed, two Daughters, *Crothborge* and *Chrotosinda*, who never married. They had their Cousin *Charibert* for their Guardian, as *Fortunus* saith, or were banished according to *Gregory of Tours*, or according to others, imprison'd with *Ultragotha*, by *Clotaire*, who was afraid of being disturb'd in the Possession of the Kingdom.

At this time flourished *Procopius* of *Cesarea* in *Palestine*; *Agathias*; *Jornandes*; *Arator* a Christian Poet; *Anastasius* the Sinaite; *Primasius*; *Junilius*; *Priscian* the famous Grammarian; *Procopius* of *Gaza*; and *Dionysius* the Little, well known to Cronologers, for the Period that bears his Name.

*Procopius* of *Cæsarea* in *Palestine*, went very fortunately for himself to *Constantinople* in the reign of the Emperor *Anastasius* who loved him much, as well as *Justin* the 1st, and *Justinian*. He was Senator, had the Quality of *Illustrious*, which was given to very few persons: and *Justinian* made him Prefect of *New Rome*, which was the chief Office in it. His History is divided into Eight Books, of which the Two first contain the Wars against the *Persians*; the Two following against the *Vandals*: and the Wars of the *Goths* are related in the other Four. *Photius* hath abridged the Two first Books in his *Bibliothèque*, and all the rest are also Abridged in the Preface of *Agathias*, who begun where *Procopius* Ended his. As he was privy to the Secrets of *Belisarius*, in the Wars of *Persia*, *Africk*, and *Italy*, because he was his Secretary, this hath made his History considerable. But as it abounds with fine Things, and great Faults, it must be read with Caution, and he is accused of flattering his Master a little too much. His Style is diffused even to superfluity.

*Agathius* was of *Marine*, a City of *Asia*, which must not be confounded with another of the same Name in *Thrace*. His Father was a Lawyer, named *Memnonius*, and he himself followed the Bar at *Smyrna*, as an Advocate, which is the Reason that he was call'd *Scholasticus*, for at that time the place where the *Roman* Laws were taught, were call'd *Schools*. From his Youth he was inclined to Poetry, made several Poems in Hexameter Verse, which he entituled *Daphniacks*, and a Collection of Epigrams of several Authors, which we have in the *Anthology*. His love for Verse, is the Cause that his History is florid and pleasant, and he wrote it by the Counsel of *Euthychianus* chief Secretary of State. Some have blamed his Style as Rampant, and not very correct, but others are not of their Opinion. Amongst several considerable things which are in the first Five Books of this Author, it is not sufficient to remark what he says of the Succession of the Eastern Monarchies towards the end of the Second Book; the Reader ought also to observe what he adds in the Fourth of the Succession of the Kings of *Persia*, from that *Artaxerxes* who

restored to them the Empire which the *Parthians* had usurp'd from them, for he relates this matter with great care, and from the Memoirs which he had received from *Sergius*, who had taken them from the *Annalists* and Library-keepers of the Kings of *Persia*. It is by this help that *Agathias* often corrects and reprehends *Procopius*.

*Jornandes* Bishop of *Ravenna*, hath writ of the Original of the *Getes* or *Goths*. *Arator* Subdeacon of the *Roman* Church, put in Elegiack Verse the Acts of the Apostles, taken from *St. Luke*, which he would dedicate to Pope *Vigilius*. *Anastasius* was taken from Mount *Sinai* to be Patriarch of *Antioch*. *Primasius* a strict follower of *St. Austin's* Doctrine, and who desired to be call'd his Scholar, although there was near an Hundred Years betwixt them, was Bishop of *Adrumettum*, which the *Arabians* at this day call *Hadrummeba*. *Junisius* dedicated to him his Two Books of Divine Faith, and was himself a Bishop of *Africk*. *Priscian* of *Cesarea* was an excellent Grammarian. *Procopius* of *Gaza*, a Rethorician and Sophist, made Remarks on the first eight Books of the Scriptures. (a) *Dionysius* the Little, a *Scythian* by Birth, and a *Roman* Abbot is too well known, to say any thing of him here; and *Bellarmin* hath given him the Character of a Man of great Sanctity, both in his Life and in his Doctrine.

In 544, there was a dreadful Plague, which according to *Evagrius*, continued 52 Years. The description of it may be seen in *Procopius*: and it is said that the City of *Constantinople* was delivered from it, by the Prayers of the Blessed Virgin, that in acknowledgment of so great a Benefit, the Feast of the Purification was instituted by her, altho others will have it that Pope *Gelasius* substituted this Feast in the place of the *Lupercalia*.

*Clotaire* the first Son of *Clovis* and *Clotilda*, dyed in 562. In the War of *Thuringia* where he had joyn'd his Forces,

---

(a) *Periodus* Dionisiana, quam alii Victorianam, a *Victorio Aquitano*, appellant, est series annorum 52, & Cyclo solari, in Lunarem, hoc est in 19 multiplicato contexta, qua peracta idem Cyclo solis & Lunæ iisdem annis iterum concurrunt.



Forces, with *Tbierry's* King of *Austrasia*, with whom *Thuringia* remain'd, he took for his share *Amalafroy*, whom he put to death; and *Radegonde* his Sister whom he Married, both the Children of *Berthier* King of the Country. The Six Years that *Clotaire* and *Radegonde* lived together gave them no Children: and as she had too much Piety to love the World she renounced it with the consent of her Husband. After she had taken the Veil at *Noyon*, she went into *Touraine* in Devotion to *St. Martin*, from *Tours* to *Poitiers*, where she founded the Monastery of *St. Croffe*, and where were placed Nuns of the Order of *St. Bennett*, who altogether with her took the Rule of (b) *Casarius* Bishop of *Arles*. She dy'd there very aged; in 587, according to *P. Sirmond*; and her Body was buried near *St. Croffe*, in the Collegiat Church, which from her is call'd *St. Radegonde*. After her retreat, *Clotaire* Married *Gontbeugue*, or *Ingonde*, the Widow of his Brother *Clodomir* King of *Orleanes*; *Arigonde*, the Sister of *Gontbeugue*, even in the life-time of the latter; *Chunfene* named *Rodine* by some; *Valdrade* the Daughter of *Vachon*, King of the *Lombards*, and Widow of the King of *Austrasia*, the great Nephew of *Clotaire*. By Queen *Indegonde* he had *Gunthier* and *Childerick*, who died before him; *Chanbert* or *Aribert*, King of *Paris*; *Gontran* King of *Orleanes*; *Sigibert* King of *Austrasia*; *Glofwinde* Married to *Alboni* King of the *Lombards*. By *Arigonde* his Third Wife he had *Chilperic*, who was King of *France*, commonly call'd King of *Soissons*, who continued the Royal Race. By *Chunfene*, he had *Chramne*, *Blitilde*, and *Clotefinde*, of whom *Gregory* of *Tours* hath spoken. *Blitilde* Married *Ansbert* the Son of *Ferreol*, who was descended from the Prefects of the *Gauls*, Senators of *Rome*. *Ansbert* was the Father of *Arnaud*; the latter of *Arnous* Bishop of *Metz*; and from this *Arnou* and his Wife *Duda*, came *Ansegise* the Husband

---

(b) He had been Monk, Cellarist of the Abby of *Lerins*, afterwards Abbot of this Abby, and was raised to the Metropolitick See of *Arles* for his Sanctity, and his Merit in 501. You may see his Life written by his Disciple *Cyprian*, by the Priest *Messian*, and by the Deacon *Stephen*.

band of *Begghe*, assassinated by *Godouin* his Godson, in 679. After his Death, *Begghe* who took a Journey to *Rome*, put on a Nun's Veil, and died in 698. Of this Marriage was born *Pepin* Mayor of the Palace of *France*, and of *Austrasia*, surnamed the *Fat* from the Constitution of his Body; the *Elder*, to distinguish him from his Grandson of the same Name, the Father of *Charlemagne*; and *Heristal* from a Castle near *Liege*, where he ordinarily dwelt. As for the End of *Chramne*, it was almost impossible that it should be happy, if we consider his Inclinations, and the inflexible Humour of his Father. He had obtained of him the Government, or Dutchy of *Aquitane*, with no other Design but to reign there; But after he had behaved himself there as a Tyrant, and obstinately opposed the King's Orders, he retired to the Court of his Uncle *Childebert*, to whom he Engaged himself by Oath, never to reconcile himself to his Father; and as he was abandoned by his Uncle, he went into *Brittany* with his Wife *Chalde*, the Daughter of *Villicaire*; and put himself under the Protection of *Conobert*, Count of *Rennes*, who had Married the Sister of his Wife *Calde*. *Conobert* was so hardy as to Protect him against *Clotaire*, who marched against them with an Army, and defeated them. The Count was slain in the Battel, *Chramne* was taken, and the King his Father, commanded that after they had extended him upon a Bench, they should beat him for the space of an Hour without Mercy, and then burn him with his Wife and Children. The Order was rigorously executed, and they set the House on Fire, where they had been shut up.

There was a terrible Plague which lasted, if we believe *Evagrius* two and fifty Years. The Description of it may be seen in *Procopius*; and 'tis said that at that time the City of *Constantinople* was freed from it by the Prayers of the Blessed Virgin, and that in acknowledgment of so signal a Favour, the Festival of Purification was instituted, tho' others are Positive that Pope *Gelasius* appointed that Festival instead of the Roman *Lupercalia*.

*Under Justin the II<sup>d</sup>.*

This Emperor who had call'd Home all the Bishops very wrongfully persecuted in the late Reign, and who seem'd to be a supporter of the Church, became himself the Persecutor and Enemy of it, when he had alter'd his Religion, and preferred the Heresies of *Pelagius* before the Creed of all Orthodox Believers. This Monk who was either a Welchman, and who made a Figure in the Days of *Honorius* and *Theodosius*, asserted that "we are all justified by our good Works; that our Free-will is sufficient without Grace; that "there is neither Election nor Original Sin; that, tho "Adam had always persisted in innocence, he had nevertheless been Mortal; that Death is not the Punishment of his Crime, but the Condition of our Nature. Among his Followers, he had in *Africa* one *Celestius*, of whom the *Celestins* received their Denomination, who espoused the Sentiments of that Heretick. The *Semi Pelagians* also, were the shameful Remains of the *Pelagians* at *Marcelles*. (d) His Name was *Morgan*, and he thought *John* the III<sup>d</sup>, who had succeeded *Pope Pelagius*, fit to call himself *Pelagius*, according to *Onufrius's* Computation, in 561, dy'd 574 on the 3<sup>d</sup> of July: and *Benedict* a Roman fill'd up his See.

*Under Tiberius Constantinus.*

*Pope Benedict* died the 29<sup>th</sup> of July in 579, and *Pelagius* the II<sup>d</sup>, the Son of *Vinigildus* was his Successor.

*In the Reign of Mauricius.*

In the Year of our Lord 590, on the 8<sup>th</sup> of February *Pope Pelagius* died: and *Gregory* surnamed the Great, the Son

---

(d) Sed propterea quod, uti per manus traditum, Sc. qui prius *Morgan* diceretur, pro *Morgano* deinceps *Græca* appellatione *Pelagius* maluerit vocari: quia nempe *Morgan* veteri *Britannorum* lingua, quæ hodieq; apud *Cimbros* obtinet, *Pelagus* significet. *Vossius Inst. Græc.* l. 5. c. 4. Sect. 2.

Son of *Gordianus* a Senator of *Rome* fill'd his Vacant Throne. There was started betwixt him and *John* the *Faster*, the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, a very considerable Dispute concerning the Title of *Oecumenical* or *Universal* Bishop, which that Patriarch had assumed in 588, and the Popes Letter about the Controversy may at this day be seen. In 589 there were two Synods in *France*, the one at *Lyons*, the other at *Poitiers*: and *Gregory* born at *Auvergne*, Bishop of *Tours*, died very near that time.

In 596 *Cyriacus* was Patriarch of *Constantinople*. And *Gregory* (e) the Great, sent *Austin* the Monk into *England*, who Baptised *Ethelbert*, and advised him to found a Monastery at *Canterbury*.

The same or the following Year, *Fredegonde*, aged about 55 Years, dyed very well satisfied that she had put the Affairs of her Son *Clotaire* the II<sup>d</sup> in a good Posture. I shall say but little of her, because her History is well known. *Clotaire* the I<sup>st</sup> dying, his four Sons divided the Kingdom. *Cherebert*, as I have already said was King of *Paris*; *Gontran*. of *Orleance*, and a part of *Burgundy*; *Sigebert*, of *Austrasia*; *Chilperic* of *Soissons*; and each of them had something in *Aquitain*, in *Provence*, that all of them might employ their Forces in common to secure them. *Chilperic* after he had divorced the Queen *Audouerre*, by whom he had *Merouce*, *Theodebert*, and *Clovis*, gave up his whole Affection to *Fredegonde*, one of the Queen's Maids of Honour, and put her away sometime after to Marry *Galesuinte*, or *Gosuinthe*, the Daughter of *Athanachild* King of the *Goths*, and Elder Sister of *Bruncchilde*, or *Brunchaud*, whom King *Sigebert* had married. The Favourite in a little time carried away the Heart of *Chilperic*, who that he might possess with more Liberty, thought of Marrying her, and who preferring Murther to Scandal, caused *Galesuinte* to be strangled in her Bed. It cost *Chelperic* some Provinces, for *Bruncchilde* demanded Reparation for this Enormous Crime, and was not satisfied with

M

ob-

---

(e) *Gregorius Magnus missis in Angliam Monachis, magnam Angliæ partem a Paganissimo ad finem Christi convertit, unde a Bedæ, vocatur Apostolus Anglorum.*



obtaining *Bourdelois*, *Limosin*, *Quercy*, *Bern*, and *Bigorie*, which had been granted to *Galesuinte*; and as the War which *Chilperic* was engaged in against *Gontran*, who had accomodated Matters with *Sigebert*, had not the Success which he expected. *Fredegonde* procured the last named to be Assassinated by two Men, in the Forty fourth Year of his Age, and about the end of the Fourth of his Reign. She also obliged her Husband to put into a Monastery *Merouee* his eldest Son, whom he had had by Queen *Audouerre*; got him stabb'd when she heard that he had made his escape out of the Cloister; caused *Clouis* to be imprisoned, who was killed with the stab of a Knife, and his Body afterwards thrown into the River *Marne*. Her Cruelty extended farther to *Audouerre* who had taken the Nun's Habit, and who was strangled by her Order. The Fate of *Basine* the Daughter of *Audouerre* was no better, for *Fredegonde* had her confined in a Monastery of *Poitiers*, which she entred not till she had been dishonour'd. In 584 *Chilperic* being returned from Hunting, was killed with the stab of a Knife in his Palace of *Chelles*; and some say that *Fredegonde*, did this to prevent him, who had discovered her Adultery with *Landry* Mayor of the Palace. The History of *France* hath not omitted the Attempt which she had Plotted against the Life of *Childebert*; the manner after which she procured the Assassination of *Pretextatus* at the Altar, after he had been restored by King *Gontran* to the Bishoprick of *Reuen*; and we need only read her Life, to be satisfied that she was not Chast, but Revenge had far greater Charms for her than Voluptuousness.

*Evagrius Scholasticus*, or the *Antiochian* Advocate died in the Year 600, or thereabout: And 'tis the same Author whose Ecclesiastical History we have in *Greek*, which he begun where *Socrates* and *Theodoret* left off, that is, from the Year 450, at the end of *Theodosius* the Younger's Reign, to the Year 595, which is the Tenth of the Reign of *Mauritius*. *Deodatus* was Archbishop of *Milan*, and a Synod was assembled at *Metz*.

In the Reign of this Emperor *Theodosius* Bishop of *Alexandria* revived the Heresy of the *Agnoetæ*, or Ignorants, who believed that Jesus Christ as God knew not when the Day of Judgment shall come, and in what place *Lazarus* was put after his Death.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XI.

*A Succession of Emperors to Philip Bardanes.*

(a) *Flavius Phocas* had a wild Look, an ill-favoured Countenance, an offensive Physiognomy, an ugly Shape, his Hair and Beard of a bright Red: And by these Signs joyned together, one might pass a Judgment upon the inside of the Man. That Tyrant was of the Number of those of whom God has said; *I have given you a King in my Anger, and will take him away in my Rage*: and to prove it, I need only tell you, that he was a Drunken, Mistrustful, Perfidious, Cowardly, Bloody and Covetous Man.

He Married *Leontia*, and had by her *Dommentia*, whom he bestow'd upon *Priscus* a Nobleman of Rome, Five Months after *Phocas* had Murder'd *Maurice*, *Chosraw Abarwiz* sent against him *Charuciah*, nam'd *Chasruia* by *Elmacin*, who defeated the Troops under the Command of *Narses*, and *Germanus*: and notwithstanding the Authority of Cardinal (b) *Baronius* and some others, we must distinguish him from that *Narses* who invited the *Lombards* into Italy, and who dy'd with Grief for it at Rome. *Narses* who with *Germanus*, was conquer'd by the *Persians*, had beaten them under the Reign of *Mauritius*; and 'tis the very Man that was burned alive by the Commandment of *Phocas*, after he had revolted from him.

The *Persians* meeting with no Opposition Plunder'd *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, *Phenicia*, *Palestine*, and also the Ci-

M 2

ty

(a) Sic appellatur in Nummo apud Oeconem. p. 586. Αἰμώ-  
νους, i. e. cruentus & sanguinarius dicitur a Joh. Antiocheno  
in Excerpt Prirese, p. 853. Vid. Pomponius Lætus, Paul. Diacon.  
Egnatius, Zonaras.

(b) Baron. in A. C. 568. n. 13. & alibi. Vid. Cedren.  
Hister. Miscell. Corippus l. 3. ubi Armiger interea Domini,  
& Zonaras in Mauritio Niceph. l. 18. c. 20. Rupert Observ.  
in Synops. Besoldi Min. p. 584, &c.

ty of *Jerusalem*, whilst his Enemies on the other side advanc'd their Conquests into *Africa*, *Spain*, and *Germany*, among the *Gauls*, and in *Italy*, and whilst the *Schah Khan* made an Incurſion into *Macedonia* and *Thracia*. When things were in a very ill Poſture, *Prifcus*, and the moſt conſiderable Stateſmen, ſent to *Heracian* the Prefect in *Africk*, and to *Gregoras* to intreat them to rid them of that Tyrant; and *Heracius* at firſt word gave his Son *Heracius* a Fleet, and *Gregorias* committed a Land-Army to *Nicetas*, upon this Condition, that he who firſt ſhould get into *Conſtantinople*, ſhould be Emperor.

*Heracius* having had a fair Wind through his whole Voyage, appear'd firſt, and was ſo lucky, that after a ſucceſſful Battle, which coſt him not much, being aſſiſted by *Prifcus* and his Faction, he made a glorious Entrance into *Conſtantinople*, where all things were prepar'd to receive him. *Photius*, who waited only for an Opportunity to be revenged of *Phocas*, who had dar'd to debauch his Wife, gathers ſome Troops together; he makes himſelf Maſter of the Palace, ſeizes *Phocas* there, pulls him out of his Throne, tears off his Purple Robe, and drags him to *Heracius*; who preſently ſaid to him, *is it thus then unhappy Man, that you have govern'd the Empire?* *Phocas* who was no longer to manage it reply'd to him in his Deſpair, *and will you who ſpeak to me govern it better than I have done?* Which reply put *Heracius* into ſuch a rage, that he kickt him ſeveral times, and gave Order that thoſe parts of his ſhould be cut off, without which he had never been capable of being ſo notorious an Adulterer. Some have affirm'd that at the ſame time he was Murder'd: Others atteſt that his Feet, Hands, and Head were cut off, that his Body was burn'd, and the Aſhes of it were caſt into the Sea. He was kill'd with his Friends, and Brothers, in the Year of the World, 4581, in the Year of our Lord 611, after having reigned eight Years, four Months, and nine Days.

*Flavius Heracius* Married the Daughter of *Rogatus* of *Africa*, call'd *Fabia*, to whom he afterwards gave the Name of *Eudoxa*: and he had by her *Epiphania*, and *Heracius*, whom he made *Auguſtus*, in the Year 613, and

and whose Name he would change into that of *Constantine*. After the Death of the Empress, he took to Wife *Martinia* the Daughter of *Priscus*, who was a most accomplish'd Beauty; he had by this Marriage two Princes, *Fabius* whom he Nam'd *Heracleonas*, and the other *David*.

In the first Year of his Reign, the *Persians* embolden'd by their Victories carried on their Arms to the City of *Antioch*; they besieged *Chesarea* in *Cappadocia*, the next Year, and the Year after the *Saracens* made some Inroads into *Syria*. *Cosraw Abarwis* afterwards conquered *Damascus*, *Palestine*, and *Jerusalem*, where the *Jews* Massacred to the number of 86 Thousand Christians that had been sold to them by the *Persians*: And these last took *Zacharias* who was Bishop of the City, and carry'd away the Cross which *Helena* the Mother of *Constantine* had left there.

In the Sixth Year of the Reign of *Heraclius*, the *Persians* subdued all *Egypt*, and the next Year they took *Carthage*, which brought the Emperor to a Resolution of begging Peace of their King, who laugh'd at that Request, and solemnly declar'd, "That he would never let those Men rest, who would adore a Man that had been Hang'd by other Men; and who would not acknowledge the Sun to be a God. *Heraclius* depending wholly upon the Saviour of the World, whose Glory he was to assert; took the Gold and Silver he found in the Churches, raises Troops with it, leaves his Son at *Constantinople* to secure the City; goes out of it in the Year 622, which was the 12th of his Reign: and *Saez* the King's Lieutenant General Negotiates a Peace with the Emperor, tho' the same *Saez* had already advanc'd as far as *Chalcedon*. But *Heraclius*, who to conclude all the Articles of it, had sent him Seventy Men of Worth, and of the first Quality, was much amazed when he understood that *Saez* had order'd they should be put in Chains, and be brought to the King of *Persia*: who having call'd home *Saez*, caus'd him to be Flead, because he had not sent *Heraclius* to him with the rest. *Zurbar*, or *Scaribar*, had the Post which *Saez* had been in: and *Anastasi* who had got into the Lesser *Asia*, and who had Instructions to besiege *Chalcedon*, went the likeliest



way to break all the Measures of *Heraclius*, when by great Good luck he of a suddain went over to his side, and became a Christian. The Emperor seeing nothing more safe for him than to go in quest of *Abarwiz* in *Persia*, finds a Passage there; at the first Onset he defeats his Horse, then he so weakens the whole Army of his Enemy, that after having put his own into Winter Quarters, he return'd to *Constantinople*: He went thence in the Year 623: and since he could not prevail with the King, neither for the Peace for which he very much importuned him, nor for his Deputed Subjects whom he detained from him, he went again into *Persia* with an Army; pillaged some considerable Cities there, and made so great a Number of Prisoners, that he was forc'd, lest he should have too many of 'em, to give Liberty to fifty Thousand.

The succeeding Years were glorious to him, because he overcame *Sarrablaga*, which *Zarbahar* Built, and being entred by Night into the Camp of those Generals of the King whom *Sathis* had joyn'd, he surpriz'd them, and stript them of all their Wealth. After that he pass'd the River *Euphrates*; and gain'd many Victories over the *Persians* in *Syria Commagena*, and having had Intelligence that *Kosraw Abarwiz* had call'd in to his Assistance the *Huns* and *Slavonians*, he made a League with the King of the (c) *Gazars*, or *Turks*, who supplied him with Forty Thousand Men. With this Reinforcement he entred *Persia* again, where he met with little Opposition; and tho' the *Turks* the next day had deserted him, he was nevertheless Victorious without 'em; he won the strong Holds of *Kosraw Abarwiz*, subdu'd his Principal Cities, gain'd his very Palaces, and reduc'd him to a Shameful Necessity of running away. When *Abarwiz* was at *Seleusia*, and *Zarbahar* had not made very great Progress with his Troops, he wrote to another to commit the Government of them to him, with express Order to lead them as soon as possible into *Persia*, and

to

---

(c) *Arari vel potius cum aspiratione, Charari, quos Hebraei nuncupant חררין Haræos, i. e. Montanos. Schibard in Tarich. Persico, p. 157.*

to rid themselves of *Zarbabar*. But the Messenger having been caught with this Letter, was brought to *Heraclius Constantine*, who after he had read it, caus'd it to be read again to *Zarbabar*, who had come to him upon his Word, and who after having discover'd this Secret Intimation by a very strict Friendship, counterfeited Letters from *Abarwiz*, by which he gave Order that a very great Number of the Governours and Principal Officers of his Army should be put to death. *Zarbabar* call'd together the Colonels and Captains, and made the forged Letters be read to them, which gave them so great an Aversion to their King, that they were resolv'd to fight no more but for the Emperor.

At the same time *Heraclius* who was at the Head of his Army in *Persia*, propos'd a Peace; and *Abarwiz* would not hear a word to that Purpose, which made him the more odious. But that which compleated his utter Ruine, was that he wou'd give the Crown to his Son *Marsber*, begotten of the Body of a *Syrian* Woman, to the prejudice of *Schirujah* his Eldest Son, whom the *Greeks* and *Latines* call *Syroes*, who was attended by the *Grande*s of *Persia*, who made a Peace with the Emperor, and put to Death his Father *Abarwiz*, to revenge the Wrong he had done him. *Schirujah* kept his Word, and the Articles of the Treaty with all possible Exactness. *Heraclius* honestly restored what they had taken away from him, so that the *Tigris* was made a Frontier to both their Dominions. For all that he had not however what he aim'd at: for since he had in his Party engaged the *Arabians* against the *Persians*, when his Commissaries who were to pay his Army, refus'd them what was their due, and us'd them like Dogs; they withdrew and followed the Fortune of *Muhammed*, who was already famous for his Achievements, and who making use of his Advantages, conquer'd *Arabia*. History tells us that this was a Judgment upon *Heraclius*, who had call'd in these Infidels and the *Turks*, and that to punish him yet farther, the Plague swept away 50000 Men in his Army. He was very much troubled at it, and dy'd of a (d)

M 4

Drop.

(d) *De Morte Heraclii*, vid. *Thomas Reinesius variar. Lectionum*, l. 11. c. 18. p. 299.

Dropſy in the Year of the World 4611, in the Year of our Lord 641, after he had Reign'd 30 Years and Ten Months, by *Cedren's* Computation, and one Month more according to others. Foreigners upon the Account of his great Actions, looked upon him as another *Hercules*, and 'tis for this Reason he is called *Arkol* by the *Persians*, and *Harkal* by the *Arabians*.

*Constantine* the Son of *Heraclius* and *Fabia Eudoxa*, Marry'd *Gregoria* the Daughter of *Nicetas*, and had by her *Heraclius Constans*, and *Heraclius Theodofius*. He was but a Year old, when *Heraclius* who carry'd on the War with the *Persians*, and who had appointed him for his Successor, caus'd him to be crown'd. But he Reign'd but Four Months, because *Martinia* his Mother-in-law Poyſon'd him, that ſhe might place *Heracleonas* her own Son upon the Throne.

*Heracleonas*, the Son of *Heraclius*, was Emperor when he was but ten, and under the Reign of that Young Prince, the *Saracens* took *Cefarea*, where they Maſſacred 7000 Chriſtians. Now as he was not old enough to Govern, and ſince *Martinia* let all things go to ruine, there was a Decree of the Senate, that both Mother and Son ſhou'd be ſeized on: and they Banished them into *Cappadocia*, after they had cut off the Tongue of the former, who was awful to them by her Eloquence, and the Noiſe of the latter (whoſe whole Reign was but for ſix Months,) to deprive him of his Beauty, by which he might have engaged the Affection of his People.

*Conſtans* the Second, the Son of *Constantine* and *Gregoria*, the Daughter of *Nicetas*, had by his Wife, whoſe Name is unknown to the Hiſtorians, *Constantine the Bearded*, *Tiberius* and *Heraolius*: He was Emperor in the Year 642, and without doing Violence to himſelf, he did it to the moſt Beautiful, and moſt Conſiderable Ladies of his Empire. *Moauviab* or *Mauvias*, the *Saracens* General, under *Osman*, diverted his Thoughts another way, and having a Fleet of 1700 Veffels, he vigorously aſſaulted the Iſle of *Cyprus*; took the Town *Conſtantia*, which is the *Salams* of the Antients, and the *Famagouſta* of the Modern *Cyprians*. He made himſelf Maſter of all the Cities there, and conſtrain'd *Conſtans* at

at last to sue to him for a Truce. *Mauvias* granted him one for two Years, but broke it, and set out a powerful Fleet at *Tripoli*, design'd for the Siege of *Constantinople*. Though the Fleet had been burnt by Two Brothers who escap'd out of Prison, and preserved all the Christians, and with them unanimously fell upon the *Saracens*, and destroyed them; *Mauvias* ordered other Vessells to be built, and made up that great Loss. With this Army he defeated *Constans*, who that he might escape, was forced to shift both his Cloaths and Vessel: took the Isle of *Rhodes*, and laid Waste all *Sicily*.

But forasmuch as after the Death of *Osman*, the *Saracens* were divided into Factions, one of which sided with *Ali*, the Son-in-law of *Muhammed*, and the other with *Mauvias*; this latter made Peace with *Constans*, who after he had put to Death his Brother *Theodosius*, March'd into *Italy* against the *Lombards*. He had some Advantage of *Grimauld* the Duke of *Beneventum*; and when *Romualdus* came up to joyn *Grimauld*, and it was not in his Power to hinder him, he bent his Course towards *Naples*, and *Romualdus* pursuing him, routed his Army. After his Defeat he resolv'd to go to *Rome*, and to gain the Good Will of the People, he declared that he design'd to remove the Seat of the Empire from *Constantinople* thither, expressing himself thus, that it was fit to prefer the Mother before the Daughter. But when he was there he seiz'd what was most Magnificent, and took away the Roof of the *Pantheon*, which was made of Copper, set off with an infinite Number of Plates of Gold, tho' dedicated to the Honour of all Saints, by *Boniface* the IV<sup>th</sup>. That Church which is at this day the *Rotondo*, was not the only Church he plundered, since he laid his Sacrilegious Hands upon all the rest, and he stript the Finest Palaces of their Ornaments, and by his Avarice, in twelve days time, he got more Wealth out of this City than had been carried off by the *Barbarians* in many Years. He went from *Rome* to some Provinces of the Empire, where he rais'd such great Taxes, that he was hated and feared by all his Subjects, even to that Degree that being in a Bath in *Syracuse*, a certain *Andrian* broke his Head with a Vessel, out of which Water is poured out  
in



in the Bath. He died in the Year of the World 4639, in the 669<sup>th</sup> of our Lord ; he reign'd 27 Years : and though at first he was Orthodox, *Paul* the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, drew him into the Heresy of the *Monothelites*, which he maintained with such Obstinacy and Rigour, that he gave order to *Theodorus Calliopus*, who was Exarch in *Italy*, to seize Pope *Martin*, who had condemn'd him in a Council.

*Constantine* Surnamed *Pogonatus*, or the Bearded, the Son of *Constans*, who crown'd him in 663, when he went into *Italy* against the *Lombards* ; had by the Empress *Anastasia Tiberius*, *Heraclius*, who died before his Father was slain in *Sicily*, and *Justinian* who succeeded him. Though Pope *Leo* gave him a great Character, it is disputable whether he deserved it, and whether an Emperor, who that he might reign alone, put to Death *Tiberius* and *Heraclius* his Brothers, Was Crowned by the Hand of God. All that one can say to account for the Popes Opinion of him, is that he only considered in him the Peace he endeavoured to procure to the whole Church, and that he was Orthodox, and took Care to convene a General Council, in which the Heresy of the *Monothelites* was condemn'd.

He was no sooner Emperor, but a certain Man one *Mizius*, *Mezentius*, or *Metius*, whom all the Troops which were in *Sicily* had proclaimed their Sovereign, did what he could to be indeed so. But he did not long enjoy this Title, and his Ambition cost him his Life. In the Year 669, the *Saracens* carried their Arms into *Sicily*, possess'd themselves of *Syracuse*, and made about Fourscore Thousand Prisoners, plunder'd *Lycia* and *Cilicia* two Years after, went to *Thracia* with a Fleet, in the Year 672, and invested *Constantinople*. Their Attempt was not successful, for they were forc'd at last to Retreat, because the Emperour's Admirals who attackt them, defeated them, and after an Engineer call'd *Calimachus*, found out a way to burn their Fleet with Fire that burns in the Water, and which is call'd the *Fen Gregeois*. With extraordinary Tributes they purchas'd the Peace they ask'd which *Constantine*, for fear, in case they were beaten off, that they should not be able to secure their

their Conquests. After the signing of this Peace for 30 Years, the greatest part of the Western Princes, who fear'd lest he should think of declaring War against them, sent Embassadors to him to engage him in an Alliance with them, except the *Bulgarians*, who made their inrodes into all *Thrace*, and who forc'd him at last to give them *Mysia*, or *Moesia*, which they keep still to this day. This Emperor was in the 18<sup>th</sup> Year of his Reign, when he died, in the Year of the World, 4646, and in the 686<sup>th</sup> Year of our Lord.

*Justinian* the Second Son of *Constantine* the Bearded, and of *Anastasia*, was crown'd at Sixteen by *Callincius* the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; and he was no sooner placed on the Imperial Throne, but *Leontius* the Commander of his Army, drove all the *Saracens* of *Armenia*, and brought the *Iberians* and *Medes* into Subjection. *Abdoel Makek*, Sirnamed *Abumarwan*, who was at that time *Calif* of the *Saracens*, and who had Employment enough in *Persia* and *Arabia*, aim'd at nothing more than to make Peace with the Emperor: and it was concluded betwixt them, in 686 upon these Proviso's, that *Justinian* should clear the Hill *Libanus* of the *Mardaites*, the most obstinate Enemies of the *Arabians*; that the *Saracens* should every day give two thousand Crowns to the Emperour, with a Horse and a Slave, and that the Tributes which should be paid to the Isle of *Cyprus*, and by *Iberia*, should be shar'd between the Emperor and the *Calif*. This Treaty which seem'd to be made extremely for the Advantage of the Emperor, was for all that not in the least so. Indeed, He having driven from this and other Neighbouring Mountains 12000 *Mardaites*, who did most signal Services to the Christians, and liv'd only of the Booty they took from the *Arabians*, whom they never suffer'd to be at rest, he opened for these last the only Pass they were not able to break through, and gave them a free and uncontroll'd Range.

In the Year 687, he broke the Peace which *Constantine* had been forc'd to beg of the *Bulgarians*, who possess'd themselves of all the Passes; compell'd him to send back all the Prisoners he had made, all the Booty he had drawn from *Moesia*, and reduc'd him to so great an  
extremity

Extremity, that he had very good luck to make his escape to *Constantinople*. He thought it convenient however, to break the Peace with the *Arabians* upon this Pretence, that they paid him in Money that was not stamp'd with his own Image: and tho' these Men to maintain a good Understanding with him, had sent him Ingots of Gold, and intreated him to remember his Word; he neither respected their Massy Gold, nor hearkned to their Requests, nor remembred his Promise. As he had 30000 *Slavonians* in his Army, which was already strong of it self, he made it March against the *Arabians*, who spread out at the end of a Halbard, the Articles of the Treaty of Peace, which he broke, and call'd for Vengeance upon this Injustice to the God who punishes all perjur'd Men. They were not heart at first, seeing the Emperor got the better in the first Fight; but they succeeded when they perceived that, in order to their Success, they must bribe the *Slavonian* General, who having received the same Sum of Money of the *Saracens*, which he had before been paid by *Justinian*, basely went over to their side with 20000 Men, and by his Treachery made the Victory easy to them.

The Emperor who escaped with Difficulty, soon after put to death the *Slavonians* that were still in his Army, without considering whether it were just to revenge himself of the Guilty, by destroying the Innocent, whose Bodies were thrown into the Sea; and *Sabatus*, who was Pretor in *Armenia*, having notice of his overthrow, surrendred that Province to the *Arabians*, and by his perfidiousness spared them the Blood it would have cost them to gain it. In this sad Revolution *Justinian* who was sensible that he was universally Odious, that his Subjects were ready to rebel, and he who had already designed for Execution the most eminent Persons of *Constantinople* that were kept in a Prison, took *Leontius* thence, whom he had kept in hold upon some Jealousie about Two Years, and made choice of him, and sent him his Governour into *Greece*. This Man who only staid for a fair Wind to set Sail out of the Port, was advis'd by all his Friends to improve the Opportunity which Fortune seem'd to offer him; and they

they perswaded him so effectually, that he returned to *Constantinople*, where he opened the Prison-Doors to all that were obnoxious to the greatest Punishment: Being attended by these Prisoners, his Friends, and the Patriarch, whom *Justinian* had a Design to cut off, he entered the Palace without Hazard, and pull'd the Emperor out of the Throne after his ten Years Reign, cut off his Nose, and Banished him into the *Scythian Chersonese*.

*Leontius* who had recovered Great Provinces from the *Saracens*, gave a Fleet to *John*, a Nobleman, to drive them out of *Africa*, and indeed he did it. But when he had sent to the Emperor to know of him what he desir'd he shou'd attempt after the Victories he had won, he had let him understand that the *Saracens* whom he had conquered were in quest of him with a numerous Army, and that he cou'd not make Head against them, he resolv'd to go himself to *Constantinople*, and to bring back new Forces to fight them. The *Saracens* who met with no opposition, retrieved without Trouble what they had in vain contended with *John* for: and all *Leontius's* Troops, either through Shame for not having made a greater Progress, or for fear of Punishment for their Cowardise, made their General *Abfimar*us Emperor, who had as much reason to fear as any other. This Man who well understood that there was no time to be lost, presently hoist'd Sail for *Constantinople*, with his Fleet, and before *Leontius* had an Army, he entered the City, the Keys of whose Gates were committed to him upon Honour. (e) He surpriz'd *Leontius* who had reign'd three Years, cut off his Nose, and sent him into *Dalmatia*, where he was shut up in a Cloyster.

*Abfimar*us, whom the Soldiers call'd *Tiberius*, for fear *Philip Bardanes*, who was of noble Parentage, should succeed, or lest he should take even the Empire from him, sent him away into the *Peninsula*, or *Chersonese* of *Thracia*, and made considerable Preparations to suppress the *Saracens*, who thought of nothing but their Grandeur: He gave

(e) *Zonari Histor. Magdeburg. Centur. 7. fol. 668. Eusebius in Chronol. fol. 125.*



gave his Brother *Heraclius* a good Army, who killed no less than Two Hundred Thousand of these *Arabians* in *Syria*, retook *Armenia* from them, and meeting with them in *Cilicia*, cut them in Pieces.

In all this Success, *Justinian*, call'd *Rhinometus*, from his Cut-Nose, having understood that the People of the *Chersonese* desir'd to kill him, to revenge his Cruelties, found a way to escape, and to retreat near the *Schab Khan*, who marry'd him to his Sister *Theodora*, by whom he had a Son nam'd *Tiberius*. But this Alliance did not at all secure him in his Exile, since the *Schab Khan* importuned by *Absimarius Tiberius*, and perverted too by his Bribes, had already given order that he should be murder'd, though it was discover'd to him by *Theodora*; and it forc'd him to betake himself to the Court of *Terbelis*, or *Trebelius* in *Bulgaria*. There by his Promises he obtained of him a great Army, which he led to *Constantinople*, into which he found a way of Entrance by Night through a Canal, in the Year 706, and by good Management became Master of the whole City. The Patriarch *Callinicus* had his Eyes put out. *Heraclius* the Brother of *Tiberius Absimar* was hang'd: and when *Tiberius* and *Leontius* were brought already bound to *Justinian*, he commanded that they should be dragg'd in that Condition through the Theatres; he trod upon their Heads before the People, who cri'd out, *Thou shalt tread upon the Lion and Asp, the Young Lion and Dragon thou shalt trample under thy Feet*; then he put 'em to death. He call'd home *Theodora*, whom he had shamefully divorced, and ordered her with the Young *Tiberius* his Son to be Crown'd; and by an Ingratitude which cannot be too much blamed, he carried the War into the Country of the *Bulgarians*, who had restor'd him to his Government. But *Terbelis* routed his Army, and *Justinian* by his Flight prevented the Punishment of his Treachery, though he was hated for his Barbarities, and his Throne for that Reason was not well established: There never dropt any Moisture from his Nose, but he commanded some of those to be executed who had been Favourites of *Leontius*. Bearing it in mind that the People of the *Taurick Chersonese*, had design'd either to deliver him to his Enemy,

my, or to put an End to his Life themselves, he dispatch-  
ed an Army against them, and gave it in Charge that  
there should be an universal Massacre of 'em, without  
sparing either Sex or Age. They ran Spits through, and  
Roasted some Persons of the Highest Quality amongst  
them. Others were cast into the Sea. New Punish-  
ments were invented to prolong their dying Agonies,  
and a vast number of Families were reserved to satisfy  
the Eyes of that barbarous Man, who to complete his  
Delight and Happiness, desir'd to enjoy the sight of their  
Deaths at *Constantinople*. Those who carried all these  
unfortunate Wretches were dispers'd by a Storm, and  
there were no less than Seventy Thousand Shipwreck'd.  
That Calamity which wou'd have moved the Pity of  
another Man, did only exasperate him; so that in his  
Rage he dispatch'd fresh Troops into *Bulgaria*, to bring  
away all their Children, and to lay waist all the Cities  
there. Those that were left, having earnestly and ef-  
fectually begged the Assistance of the *Schah Khan*, beat  
his Fleet, which being tired with his Cruelties, sided  
with the *Bulgarians*, and chose *Philip Bardanes* their  
Emperor. *Philip Bardanes* made towards *Constantinople*,  
and took it: He cut the Throat of Young *Tiberius* in  
the presence of *Anastasia*; for *Theodora* was already dead:  
and he cut off *Justinian's* Head, the 13th of *August*, in  
the Year of the World 4682, and the 712 of our Lord.

## C H A P XII.

*Chronological Remarks upon Ecclesiastical and Pro-  
phane Story.*

*In Phocas's Reign.*

There was a Synod conven'd in *England* in the year  
602: and in 604 dyed *Gregory the Great*. There was  
when he was Pope, a dreadful Plague three Years after  
that, of which *Pelagius* died. It was so great that *Grego-  
ry* having injoyn'd Processions to remove it, those who  
were present at them, and were perfectly in good Health  
fell down dead, Sneezing. *Polydore Virgil*, *Sigonius*,  
and

and some other Writers have said, that 'tis from thence our Custom is derived of saying to all that Sneeze, God bless you, or of wishing some Happiness to them. But to discover that this Custom is of an (a) older Date, one need only read the Story of a certain Spark in the Ild Book of *Apuleius's Metamorphosis*; a Passage in *Petronius* upon *Giton's* Sneezing; that place in the 2d Chapter of the 28th Blook of *Pliny*, where he speaks of *Tiberius*; and *Aristotle* in his *Problems*. The same Custom is practised by the *Jews*, and is still a Fashion among the *Abyssines*. When the King of *Monomotapa* (b) Sneezes, those that are near him wish him all Happiness possible, with a very loud Voice; which is heard by those who are the farthest in the Presence from him, who likewise putting the same Prayers or Wishes, make them echo even in the Ears of those that are in the Street. These answer them, and the Acclamations being carried by this means on both Sides in the Houses, and publick Places, it happens that the whole City almost at the same time give their Benedictions to the King when he Sneezes.

*Sabinian* fill the Chair of *Pope Gregory*; and being dead, the 19th of *February* in 605. *Boniface* the III<sup>d</sup>, who was *Pope* but eight Months, and 23 Days, had *Boniface IV<sup>th</sup>* for his Successor.

In 609, there was a Synod at *San Lucar* of *Barameda*, and *Sergius* of *Syria* a (c) *Monophysite*, *Monothelite*, or *Euty-chian* was *Patriar* of *Constantinople*.

In

---

(a) *Aristot. Problem. 7, & 9. Sect. 33. Apulæius, l. 2. c. 25.*

(b) *Nicolaus Codignus in vita Sylverii, l. 2. c. 12.*

(c) *Monophysitæ, alias Scematici, Theopascitæ, & a loco Ægyptii docebant Christum quidem constare ex duabus naturis, non vero subsistere in duabus naturis, ita ut hæc controversia in duabus istis oculis consisteret &c. &c. In hoc errore defendendo occupatissimus fuit Joh. Philoponus, celebris Philosophus, qui etiam docuit tres Personas esse tres Deos, atq; in Errorem Tritheistarum introduxit. Tritheistæ, alias dicuntur Triformiani.*

*In Heraclius's Reign.*

In 612, there was a Synod at Macon: and *Theodorus* Bishop of *Anastasiople* in *Galatia*, near *Siceon*, which was the City where he was born, died in the Year 613, or in the Opinion of some in 614: if it be true, that he died in the Third Year of *Heraclius's* Reign, who was not Emperor till the Year 611.

*Brunibild*, who had married for her second Husband her Nephew *Merouee*, the Eldest Son of *Chilperic* King of *Soissons* and *Paris*, and of the Queen *Andouere*, died in the Year 613, or according to others 618. This Princess who had as great a relish of Revenge and Ambition as *Fredegonde*, was also more Covetous, and to have the Reputation of being Rich, was enough to make any one Criminal with her. All Spoils agreed with her and she never fail'd to take away the Places from the great Officers, to sell them, or give them to those she loved, for she had all the Power over her Grandchildren, *Theodobert* King of *Austrasia*, and *Thierry* King of *Burgundy*. She was according to some, the Author of the death of Ten Kings, or Princes. *Sigebert*, *Merouee*, *Chilperic*, *Theodobert*, *Clotaire*, another *Merouee* Son of this last, *Thierry*, and his Three Sons. As she fell into the Hands of *Clotaire*, this wretched Woman was put to the question for the space of Three days, was led to the Camp, in the sight of the whole Army, on a Camel; and tyed at last to the Tail of a high-mettled Horse, which dragg'd her over Stones and Precipices, and dash'd out her Brains: *Adon* saith her Body was burnt, and the Ashes thrown into the Air to be scattered; others affirm, that her Body was buried in the Abby (d) of *St. Martin* of *Autun*, which she had Founded, with a Hospital and Nunnery. There are also some Authors who reckon the cruel Death of this Princess, the Daughter, Wife, and Mother of so many Kings for a Fable;

N

it

---

(d) V. *Papirius Massonus Annalium*, l. i. in *Clotario* ii. Regis ad finem.



it being not probable that *Clotaire*, to whom they attribute the Qualities, of a Prudent, Valiant, Gracious, Wise, Liberal, Just and Pious Prince, which is false, could be carried to such Extremities. Some Historians have taken the part of this Queen, against *Aimoin* and *Fredegair*: and if they are believed, all that hath been said of the Murder of these Kings, is a manifest Calumny.

*Boniface* the IV<sup>th</sup> died the 8<sup>th</sup> of May, 613, and *Desdate* the Son of *Stephen* the Sub-deacon, his Successour, left the See Vacant by his Death, the 8<sup>th</sup> of November, in 616.

*Bonifate* the V<sup>th</sup>, a *Neopolitan* who succeeded him, died in the Year 622; and *Honorius* the 1<sup>st</sup>, the Son of *Petronius*, a Man that had been Consul, was Pope the 7<sup>th</sup> of November.

In the 627, *Edwin* King of *England* was Baptiz'd at *York* by Bishop of *Paulinus*, about 180 Years after the *Angles* came over to this Isle, which was before call'd *Britain*; and the *Angles*, or *English* possess'd a part of the Datchy of *Meckleburg*, as far as the City of *Lubeck*.

*Clotaire* the II<sup>d</sup> Son of *Chilperic* and *Fredegonde*, born in the Year 584, died in the 628. His first Wife was *Bertrude*, or *Bertrande*, whom *St. Fortunus* Bishop of *Poitiers*, calls *Bilichilde*, of the Race of *Atanagild* King of the *Visigoths*: and according to others, she was of *Saxony*, or of *Burgundy*. She died in 623, in the 36<sup>th</sup> of the Reign of *Clotaire*, who after her Death Married *Sichilde*, Named by others, *Nantilde*, and *Hildetrude* the Daughter of *Brunulphe*, who was as it is believed, Lord of *Hainault*, and of *Ardennes*. By *Bertrude*, he had *Dagobert* the 1<sup>st</sup>, King of *France*, of *Austrasia*, and of *Burgundy*; and by *Sichilde*, he had *Charibert*, or *Aribert*, who obtained *Aquitain*, i. e. *Languedoc* for his Appanage, and all that lies betwixt the *Loire* and the *Pyrenees*.

In 629, *Heraclius* who had made a Glorious end of the *Persian* War, took a Journey to *Jerusalem*, whither he brought the Wood of our Saviour's Cross, which he had recovered from *Kobad Sirujah* the *Persian* King, and which

which had been carried away in the Reign of *Kosraw Aberwitz* when he took that City,

At this time it was, that the Festival of the Exaltation of the Cross was appointed on the 14<sup>th</sup> of September. He re-establish'd the Patriarch (e) *Zachery* in the Church of *Jerusalem*, who had been carried Prisoner into *Persia*; he banish'd all the *Jews* from that City, and by an Edict prohibited them to come near than within Three Leagues of it. Having gone from *Jerusalem* to *Edeffa*, he had some Conversation with *Athanasius* the famous Protector of the *Jacobites*, so nam'd from *Jacob* of *Syria*, who maintain'd the Opinion of *Eusebius*, and was the great Enemy of those whom they call (f) *Melchites*, as though they had had no deference for the Council of *Chalcedon*, but out of respect to the Emperor. *Heraclius* made *Anastasius* Patriarch of *Antioch*, when he had undertaken to admit the Canons of that Council. But since after that, he propos'd that Question, Whether there were one or two Wills in *Jesus Christ*, God and Man; the Emperor to whom this Question was New, consulted *Cyrus* Bishop of *Alexandria*, and *Sergius* Bishop of *Constantinople*, who answered him, that he had but one Will; he believed them, and by this Means was infected with the Heresy of the *Monothelites*.

In 631 there was a fourth Synod at *Toledo*; and in 634 another at *Sevil*.

Pope *Honorius* dyed in 635, others 638, the 12<sup>th</sup> of October; and the Year following there was a 5<sup>th</sup> Synod at *Toledo*.

In this Year dyed *Sophronius* Patriarch of *Jerusalem*;

N 2

and

(e) He dyed in Prison according to *Elmacin*. See *Hottenger's Oriental History*, l. 3. p. 196.

(f) *Jacobitæ circumciduntur, & unam tantum in Christo naturam agnoscunt. Docent Melchitæ Christum esse servum Dei* *Hottenger. Hist. Or. l. 2. c. 2. ex Beldavio & Elmacino. Hoc* *tempore nomine veniebant Orthodoxi omnes qui Chalcedonensem Synodum contra Dioscorum receperunt, & quorum numero erat* *Marcianus Imper. idem, ibid.*

and *Isidore* Bishop of *Sevill*, both famous for their Piety, for their Doctrine, and for their Works.

*Severinus* who had succeeded *Honorius* the 1st, dying in 638, *John* the IVth, Son of *Venantius* of *Dalmatia* fill'd his place: And there was a Synod at *Jerusalem*. There was a Sixth at *Toledo*, in 639: and *John* the IVth who dyed in 640, October the 12th, had *Theodore* Bishop of *Jerusalem* for his Successor.

### Under *Constans* the II<sup>d</sup>.

This Emperor sent Pope *Martin* the 1st into Exile, caused the Tongue and Hand of Abbot *Maximus*, and of his two Disciples to be cut out, for being of the Opinion of the Pope and the Bishops, who had condemned him in a Council.

In 643, *Paul* the II<sup>d</sup>, the Successor of *Pyrrhus* the *Monothelite*, and of the same Belief, was Patriarch of *Constantinople*. *Dagobert* the 1st, King of *France*, *Austrasia* and *Burgundy*, surnamed the Great, Born in 602, Son of *Clotaire* and *Bertude*, dyed Jan. the 2d 644, in the 42d Year of his Age, and 16th or 17th of his Age. In 626 he married *Gomatrude*, Sister to Queen *Sichilde*, the last Wife of the King her Father, whom he put away, either thro' the distrust which he had of this Princess, whose Brother *Brunulf*, he had put to death, because he thought him too much in the Interests of *Aribert*; or because she was Barren. Some time before he came to the Crown, he married *Ragintrude*, according to some Writers; and he kept three or four Mistresses, amongst others *Nantilde* the Daughter, as is believed of *Sandregifil* Mayor of the Pallace, altho' there are others who have said, that this Favourite of his was another Woman of the same Name. He had Daughters by her, as *Wilfigonde* and *Berthilde*: and *Nanthilde*, who was his Second Wife, according to most Historians, dyed in 648. He had by her *Clovis* or *Lewis* the II<sup>d</sup>, who continued the Royal Line; and some Daughters who have no part in History.

In 645, there was a Synod at *Rome*, against *Paul* Patriarch of *Constantinople*; and three in *Africk* against the *Monothelites*. In

In 647, there was a Seventh Synod at Toledo: and Pope Theodore, Successor of John the IVth, of Dalmatia, died May the 14th, or according to others, in 649.

In 650, there was another Synod in Spain against the Monothelites: and Martin who had succeeded Theodore, died in Exile in 654. After his death Eugenius Son of Rufinus confirmed Pope, died June the 2d, 655: and there was an Eighth Synod at Toledo. Vitallian of Segnia, now Segni, an Episcopal City in the Ecclesiastical State in Campania di Roma, was Successor of Eugenius the Roman.

In 658, there was a Synod at Chalons; and a Ninth at Toledo; which in 659, was followed with another in the same City.

Clotaire the IIId died aged 27 Years, in 660, and the 17th of his Reign. In 655 he had marry'd Badecilde, Bathilde, or Bathilde, or Baudour, an English-woman, which Erchinoald Mayor of the Palace had bought of some Pirates who made frequent Descents on England. The Mayor had the Insolence to propose her in Marriage to the King his Master; and the King had the Meanness to make his Servant, and Captive, his Wife. He had by her Clotaire the IIIId, Childeric the IIId, who succeeded him, and Thierry the IIIId, who was King of France, after his two Brothers.

Clotaire the IIIId, King of France and Burgundy, placed on the Throne in 660, with the Queen his Mother, whose Regency was contested by Ebroin Mayor of the Palace, reign'd but about four Years, and died in 664.

St. Eloy Bishop of Noyon, died in 665, according to Sigibert; and Bede (g) Sirnamed the Venerable, was born in 666.

Childeric the IIId, was slain in 667, by a Gentleman named Bodeterre, or Boditte, whom this King had Caned; and as if he had but taken a half Revenge in

N 3

As.

(g) Bedæ ex vitæ Sanctitate morumq; gravitate, venerabilis cognominati; natale solum est Farrow & Girwipagus exigui nominis in Brigantium agro fere ad ipsum Tinæ ostium. De Beda Bernard. Sacchus. Ticinensis Historiar. l. 10. Guliel. Malmes. 6. apud Camdenum, p. 340.



Assassinating the King, he kill'd the Queen *Blicilde*, who was with Child, and a little Child which she had.

*Under Constantine the Bearded.*

Pope *Vitalian* died in 671; and *Deodate* Son of *Fovian* fill'd his See. In 673, there was a Synod in *England*, and two in *Spain*; one at *Toledo*, and the other at *Bracara*, which is *Brague*.

In 676, *Deodate* died *June* the 26th; and *Domnion* Son of *Maurice* who succeeded him, and died in 679, had *Agatho* for his Successor, under whom were assembled three Synods, in 680, one at *Rome*, the other in *France*, and the third in *England*.

This Year gave the Church the Consolation of the sixth General Council, and the third of *Constantinople*, consisting of 150, of 170, or of 280 Bishops. That which hath made this Difference, as to the Number, is that this Council lasted above a Year; that at the beginning of their Meeting, the Number was possibly less; that afterwards it increased, or *Constantine* called others to it. In the Council where the Emperor, the Legates of Pope *Agatho*, *George* Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and *Theophanes* Patriarch of *Alexandria* were present; it was defined, That there were two *Wills*, and two Operations in *Jesus Christ*, no Opposition to the *Monothelites*.

In 682, *Agatho* died *Jan.* the 10th, and *Leo* his Successor died in 683.

*Benedict* the 11d, who succeeded *Leo*, died in 685, and after the Death of *John*, who succeeded him, there was a Schism in the Church, because *Peter* and *Theodore* were both chosen Popes, of which you may consult *Palatina Onuphrius*, and other Ecclesiastical Writers.

*Under Justinian Son of Constantine the Bearded.*

*Under Leontius, and under Tiberius.*

*Conon* who was Pope in 686, died *September* the 21st, of the following Year: and there was a Ninth Schism in the Church, because *Theodore* a Priest, and *Paschal* Arch,

Archdeacon were chosen Popes, after the Death of *Conon* the 1st. But after some Contests, they yielded the Pope-dome to *Sergius*.

In 690, there were three Synods at *Toledo*. *Wilfred* (b) an Englishman, was the first Bishop of *Utrecht*: and others pretend that *Eligius* had already preach'd the Gospel to the *Frizons*, the *Flemmings*, the *Sueves*, and the *Zelanders*, in the time of *Clotaire* and *Dagobert*.

The same Year *Thierry* the 3<sup>d</sup>, King of *France* and *Burgundy*, died the 23<sup>d</sup> of his Reign. *Ebroin*, Mayor of the Palace, who was got out of the Monastery of *Luxeul*, where he had been shut up, assassinated *Landafile* the Son of *Archambaud*, establish'd Mayor by the Counsel, and Suffrages of *St. Leger*, whom he caused to be Beheaded upon a false Accusation: and as he was grown odious to all the great Men, and to the People; the Government of the State was put into the Hands of *Martin*, and *Pepin Heristel*, both come from the Sons of *St. Arnou*. These two gave Battel to *Ebroin*, and beat him; and *Martin* who went to his Camp, upon Faith given by him, and some Bishops, was knockt o'the head with all the Persons of his Train. This Murder made him still more infamous, and hastned his Ruine, and his Tyranny being grown insupportable, *Hermenfroy* a Man of Quality, whose Estate he had confiscated, and whom he had threatned with Death, way-laid him as he went to Church, and cut his Head asunder with Sword. The French chosen *Varaton* in his place, who made an Alliance with *Pepin*, and associated with him in the Administration of Affairs; his Son *Gilimer*, who being impatient that his Father had any share in the Government, Dispossessed him, but dyed himself in the second Year of his Mayoralty. After whose Death *Varaton* recovered his Office, but enjoy'd it not long. *Bertier* his Son in law being chosen into his Place, became insupportable by his Avarice and Pride, and drew upon himself the

N 4

Ha-

(b) Pipinus Rabodum Phritrorum ducem uicit, ad Christianissimam eos compulit, dato eis Wilibrodo Anglo Episcopo, qui eos summa diligentia in fidei verbo instituit. *Funerius Chronol.* P. 126. ad A. C. 696

Hatred of the *Neustrians*, who abandon'd him, and entered into an Alliance with *Pepin*; who declared open War against him, and also against King *Thierry*; gained the Battel which he fought with them, betwixt the City of *St. Quentin*, and *Peronne*; vigorously pursued them both, possessed himself of *Paris* and *Thierry*, who protected him, after which, by a general Conspiracy of the *Neustrians*, the Mayor was slain, and thereupon *Pepin* became Mayor of all *France*; and it may be said that the Reign of the *Merovignians* then ended, since they had no more than the Title of Kings, *Pepin* having usurped all the Power.

In 694, *Callinicus*, who had his Eyes put out, was Patriarch of *Constantinople*: and *Clovis* the III<sup>d</sup> King of *France*, Son of *Thierry* the III<sup>d</sup>, and of Queen *Doda* his Wife, died this Year. It was in his reign that *Pepin Heristel* subdued the *Saxons*, the *Suevi* and the *Frisons* who had revolted.

In 696, *Justinian* was banished into the *Hellespontick* (i) *Chersonese*, by *Leontius*, who in 699, was shut up in a Monastery.

In 700, there was a Synod at *Aquilea*, and *Sergius* who died the following Year, had *John* the VI<sup>th</sup> a Greek, the Son of *Petronius* his Successor. He died in 705, the 7<sup>th</sup>, or the 10<sup>th</sup> of *January*, according to *Riccioli*.

*Tiberius Absimar* was slain in 706; and *Justinian* recovered the Empire.

In 707, *John* the VII<sup>th</sup> died Octob. the 17<sup>th</sup>; and *Zosimus*, or *Sisimius* fill'd his place. *Constantine* of *Syria* succeeded him: and in 711 there was a Synod at *London*.

*Childebert* the II<sup>d</sup>, the 17<sup>th</sup> King of *France*, Son of *Thierry* the III<sup>d</sup>, and of *Doda*, dyed this Year. It was in his Reign that *Pepin* the *Gross*, or *Heristel*, finding himself no longer able to manage Affairs, as he was wont, by reason of his great Age, committed the Government

---

(i) Thus *Suidas* calls it, and it is at this day a part of *Romania*. This Peninsule of *Thrace* is betwixt the Seas of *Propontis* on the North; of the *Hellespont* on the East; of the *Ægean Sea* on the South; and of the Gulph of *Melas*, or of *Caridia*.

vernment of the State to his two Sons *Dreux*, and *Grimoald*, whom he had by *Plectrada* of *Bavaria*, his first Wife. *Drogo*, or *Dreux*, Count of *Champagne*, and Duke of *Burgundy*, had married *Anstruda*, or *Altetrude*, the Daughter of *Vareton* Mayor of the Palace of *Austrasia*, and died in 608, before his Father. *Grimoald* Mayor of the Palace of *France*, did not long enjoy his Dignity, for going to visit his Father *Pepin* at *Joinville*, a Place lying on the River *Meuse*, he was assassinated, in 714, in the Church of *St. Lambert* at *Liege*, by the Jealousy and the Intreagues of *Theofinda* his Wife, the Daughter of *Radbaud*, Duke of *Friezland*. *Pepin* obtained the Dignity of Mayor, in 687, governed *France* 27 or 28 Years, died at *Fupilles* on the *Meuse*, near the City of *Liege*, in 714 Dec. 16th, and was buried in the Abbey of *St. Arnon* at *Metz*. He married *Plectrude*, Daughter of *Grimaud* Duke of *Bavaria*; and altho' he had by her two Sons, whom I have mentioned, he divorced this Princess to marry *Alpaide*, by whom he had *Charles*, surnamed *Martel*, and *Childebrand* the Father of *Nilelung*, Count of *Mattie*, in the Diocess of *Eureux*: and Count *Nilelung* had a Son named *Theodebert*, Father of *Robert* the 1st, Count of *Mattie*, and Mayor of the Palace of *Guienne*. *Robert* the 1st, the Husband of *Agana*, was Father of *Robert* the 2d, Marquis of *France*, Count of *Anjou*, of *Orleanse*, of *Blais*, of *Auxerre*, of *Nevers*, surnamed the Strong, the Great, and the Maccabee of his time, made Duke and Marquis of the French, by his Brother in law, *Charles* the Bald, in the Assembly of the States held at *Compeigne*, in 861. This Prince, who assisted with *Ranulph* Duke of *Guienne*, Count of *Poitou*, had gained a considerable Victory over the Normans, in Conjunction with the Britains, in a place call'd *Briestere*, on the Frontiers of *Main* and *Anjou*, near the River of *Loire*, was Slain in 867, (according to *Sigibert*, and some other Historians) by that barbarous People at a Church Porch, whither they had retired with *Hasting*, who commanded them. In 863, he married *Adelaide*, Daughter of *Lewis* the Gracious, and *Hermenegarde* his first Wife; and had by her *Eudo* Count of *Paris*, afterwards chosen King of *France*; *Robert* the 3d, chosen King after him;

Ri-



*Richild Count of Troyes ; Hildegrante married to Herbert the II<sup>d</sup>, Count of Vermandois : and these Remarks may serve to clear some Passages of the fifth Book of this History.*

### CHAP. XIII.

*The Scession of the Emperor unto Nicephorus Logothetes, or the Chancellor.*

**P**hilippicus Bardanes, Son of Nicephorus, was Crown'd by John the VI<sup>th</sup>, Patriarch of Constantinople. He had a great Readiness to express himself, was esteem'd very Eloquent ; and had he had as much Judgment as Wit, he would have been admired by the whole World. But he was one of those fine Tatlers, who are blind in their Conduct, and by the manner after which he governed himself, and also Governed others, he did nothing but what was worthy of Pity. By his Extravagant and indiscreet Profusions, he wasted in a very short time the whole Riches of the Empire : and if he had Courage, he was unfortunate, for he was by no means counted brave.

The *Saracens*, who probably must know him, took from him the best Cities of *Cilicia*, and he quietly enough suffer'd the *Bulgarians*, who had pillaged *Thrace*, to take Booty and Prisoners, at the very Gates of Constantinople. Falling into contempt by his Negligence, his Eyes were put out by *Rufus* the Governor, according to *Cedren* ; by the Senators, according to *Zonaras* ; or by *Theodore* a Nobleman, according to *Paul* the Deacon, on the Eve of Pentecost, in 715, after he had reign'd two Years, and seven Days, or eighteen Months, as some others say.

*Artemas*, or *Anastasius* the II<sup>d</sup>, whom the People, and the Senate made Emperor, on *Whitsunday*, being inform'd that the *Saracens* were Equipping a great Fleet in *Phenicia*, to besiege Constantinople, by the Order of *Ulid*, or *Walid* of the Family of *Abubeker*, gave Command to the

the Citizens to provide themselves of Ammunitions for Three Years, and obliged those to remove out of it who had not wherewithal to furnish themselves with Provisions for that time. He gave the command of his Army to *John*, Deacon of the great Church, and Receiver General of the Taxes. But as *John* used his Power possibly, with a little too much Haughtiness, and would have the whole Army, which lay then Embarked before *Rhodes* weigh Anchor, the Officers who refused to obey slew him; and the Army that they might not be called to Account for their Violence, chose another named *Theodosius*, whom they met in *Adramyttium*, a City of Great *Mysia*, in the Lesser *Asia*. This Person who was a Commissioner of the Emperor's Imposts, and being now compelled to be Emperor himself, took *Constantinople*, after he had besieged it Six Months; and when *Artemas* who had reigned a Year, and three Months, and had made his Escape to *Nice* in *Bithynia*, was informed of the Success of Affairs, he surrender'd himself upon Faith given, that he should have his Life. This Promise was kept; and *Theodosius* who caused him to be Shaved, put him into a Monastery of *Thessalonica*.

*Theodosius* the III<sup>d</sup>, of the City of *Adramyttium* in *Anatolia* opposite to *Mitylene*, was a good Prince, and beloved of all the World for the sweetness of his Temper. He restored to the Churches, all the Images that *Bardanes* had taken thence, and reigned not a whole Year; altho *Zonaras* hath given him a little longer Reign. As he had been compelled to accept of the Empire, and was but an indifferent Soldier, and the Army of the East had saluted *Leo* of *Isauria*, who commanded, it Emperor, he voluntarily resign'd the Sovereignty, and only desired his Life might be saved; and *Leo* who caused him and his Son to be Shaved, shut them up in a Monastery in 717.

*Leo* of *Isauria*, surnamed *Iconomachus*, for the War which he made against Images, which were revered in the Churches, was the Son of a Taylor, or a Shoemaker, and had by *Marine*, or *Mary*, *Constantinus Copronymus*, whom he declared Emperor the 28<sup>th</sup> Day of April in 726, which was the third of his Reign. He had also by her a Daughter named *Anne*, Married to *Artabaldus*, who

who rebelled against his Brother in law *Corpronimus*, and was crown'd in 741 by *Anastasius*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*.

Notwithstanding, *Leo's* Birth was so mean, he deserved great Praises for his Courage: and it was in Consideration of this, that *Justinian Rhinometes*, sent him into *Albania*, and *Artemas* made him Governor of the East. It was then by the Favour of all the Soldiers, and of his Son in law *Artabastus* who was Pretor in *Armenia*, he was recognized Emperor, and he dextrously put a stop to the Fury of *Musalmas*, or *Musaldas*, and *Omar*, two *Arabian* Princes, under a specious pretext of Peace, with which he flatter'd them. When *Omar Calif* found he was deceived, he sent in 718, a Fleet of 40 Ships, followed with another of 360 some time after, vigorously to besiege *Constantinople*. In this Siege, which lasted near two Years, or almost three, according to some, a part of the Fleet was disabled by a great Mortality amongst the Men, who dyed of Cold, Hunger, or the Plague. The other was Burnt, or dispersed by Tempest, and the *Bulgarians* alone, whom *Leo* had call'd to his Assistance, kill'd twenty two Thousand *Saracens* who had Landed to Plunder the Neighbouring Countries.

*Sergius* who was at that time Pretor in *Asia*, and aspired to the Sovereignty, thought fit to declare one *Gregory*, to whom they gave the Name of *Tiberius*, Emperor, and who was slain the same Year. *Artemas* who had been shut up in a Monastery of *Theffalonica* by *Theodosius*, and who unfortunately came out of it, by the Counsel of *Nicetas* (who had been General of an Army, and loved Changes,) went and solicited the Assistance of the *Bulgarians*, who received him, and gave him Succours, wherewith he besieged *Constantinople*. But whereas he relied upon upon the good Inclinations of the Citizens, and they refused to espouse his Interest, the *Bulgarians* who were gained by the Emperor's Money, put *Artemas* into his Hands, and he with his Accomplices were put to death. In 727, the Naval Army made great Efforts under the conduct of *Agallian*, and *Stephen* who made a Revolt. But all the Vessels were Burnt or Sunk, and all the Rebels executed that could be taken,  
of

of *Agallian's* Faction, who having no Refuge, threw himself into the Sea. This Emperor dyed in 741, after a Reign of 24 Years, Two Months, and 25 Days, according to the Account of *Cedren*, and *Paul the Deacon*; or 20 Years, Two Months, according to some others, and I know not what Religion one must be of, to approve of his Violences.

*Constantine* the Vth, Sirnamed *Copronymus*, because he defiled with his Ordure the Water of the Font, when he was Baptized; and *Caballinus*, because the smell of Horledung was more agreeable to him than any Odour in the World; had three Wives, *Irene*, the Daughter of *Schab Khan*, by whom he had *Leo* the IVth; *Mary* of *Armenia*, who had no Children; and *Eudoxa*, by whom he had *Christopher*, *Nicephoras*, *Nicetas*, *Anthimus* and *Endocimus*.

He was no sooner come to the Throne, but he Equipped a great Fleet to take the City of *Alexandria* from the *Saracens*: and whilst he pursued the War with good Success, *Artabafda* re-established all the Images in the Churches, to gain the Favour and Affection of the People; seized upon the Children of *Constantine*, and caused himself to be Crown'd by *Anastasi*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*. *Constantine* upon the first News that he had of it, left the Enemy whom he had beaten; defeated the Army of *Artabafda's* Son: and as he disputed the Empire with his Brother-in-law, they separately begg'd the Assistance of the *Calif* of the *Saracens*, the mortal Enemy of both, and chose him for their Arbitrator. He meeting with this Opportunity to aggrandize himself, and make his Advantage of their Quarrel, ravaged the *Lesser Asia*, now *Anatolia*, which contains what lies betwixt the Black Sea, and the *Mediterranean*, which washes the Isle of *Cyprus*. In the mean time *Constantine*, after having besieged *Artabafda*, and beaten him in a Sally, reduced the Inhabitants to so great an Extremity by Famine, that they were constrained to chase away the Usurper, not knowing on what to resolve. He storm'd and sack'd the City, put out the Eyes of *Artabafda* and his two Sons, ordered the Patriarch *Anastasi* to be carried through all the Streets on an Ass, with his

Face



Face to the Tail, and dispossest him of his Dignity, which he restored to him sometime after, being sorry that he had used him so infamously.

In the Year 759, he made War on the *Bulgarians*, by whom he was beaten; and four Years afterwards he beat them near *Anchialos*, which put them into such Despair, that they kill'd their King *Tetefis*, either for having Correspondence with *Constantine*, or for having lost the Battel, which they had hoped to gain. He continued the same War the following Years, without making any considerable Progress, and in 766, the greatest part of the Fleet which he had Equipped against them, was dispersed and Destroyed by Tempest. In 774 he March'd against them with an Army, which obliged their King *Telerick* to sue for Peace, which he granted: and when this King, who was willing to break it, was sending secretly Troops to surprize him, some of those whom *Telerick* had made privy to his Design, gave *Constantine* Advice of it, who was not wanting to prevent it: for as soon as he could, he possessed himself without any Noise of all the difficult Passages, and laid Ambuscades on all sides: and when the *Bulgarians* who marched without Fear, and found no resistance, were far advanced; he surprized them, and killed ten Thousand of them, without losing a Man of his own. *Telerick* who knew that some of his Confidants must have discover'd his Design, assured him that he had Matters of the greatest Importance to tell him, that he would meet him upon his Word, and that *Constantine* himself should name the *Bulgarians* whom he thought fit to accompany him, and whose Fidelity he had no suspicion of. The Emperor not penetrating the King's Design, sent him the Names of his Friends, and *Telerick* knowing thereby that they were the same that had betrayed him, put them to death.

As he was making new Preparations to revenge the Artifice of *Frederick*, he was seized of a burning Fever, of which he died, in 775. He reigned 34 Years, Two Months, and 26 Days: He called the Habit of Hypocritical a Cover of Darkness. In *Suidas*, he is call'd the Instrument of the Devil, and of *Anti-Christ*; in the

Sup.

Supplement of Victor, the Slave of all sorts of Impiety: and Zonaras, Cedren, and Egnatius, give him no better Words. I do not know whether some Passion is not mixed with what they have said of this Emperor, as some affirm; but that which he did with regard to Religion, sufficiently shews that he was barbarous, and that one must have bad Faith to defend him.

Leo the IVth, the Son of Constantine Copronymus, and Irene, or Helena, Daughter of Scha Khan, Married Irene of Attica, an Athenian too, according to some Writers, and he had by her Constantine the VIth who succeeded him. He was surnamed *Porphyrogenetes*, because he was but a Child when he wore the Purple, after he was declared *Augustus*; or because he was born in a Palace of Constantinople, named *Porphyra*, and those who were born in this Palace, were surnamed *Porphyrogenetes*. The good Opinion that was entertained of him, made the most considerable Persons of the Empire Petition his Father, as a favour to them, to create him *Augustus*, which he willingly granted, after he had made them swear, that they would obey none but this Constantine, whom they desired, and his Children.

Nicephorus, Leo's Brother was induced sometime after to aspire to the Empire, and when the Design was discovered, Leo had him and his Accomplices shaved, and banished them into the *Chersonese* among the *Scythians*. The next Year *Telerick* King of *Bulgaria*, being shamefully expelled by his Subjects, retired, as well as he could, to Leo, who received him well, and gave him a Cousin of the Empress Irene in Marriage. In the Year 779, he sent an Army of 100000 Men against *Al-Mohdi*, the Calif of the *Saracens*, Son of *Abu-Faafar Al-Manfor*, and *Al-Mohdi*, who was in *Asia*, was driven thence. He lost also part of his Troops, and the Emperor who had not after that much Work from the *Arabians*, died a strange Death. Having observed a Crown set with Stones of a great Value, which *Maurice*, or *Heraclius* had dedicated God in the Church of *Sophia*, he put his Crown upon his head, and ordered it to be carried away, saying in rally, that Gold and precious Stones could not please him who was pleased with Poverty. God punish-

punisht him for his Rallery, for his Head which he had adorned with this Crown, was afterwards covered with Pustles, which brought a burning Fever whereof he died in 780. He was of his Father's Opinion concerning Images, and having found some in the Empreſſes Apartment, who assured him they had been brought thither, without her Knowledge, he put to death those whom he suspected of this Action, and never after would accompany with Irene.

*Constantine Porphyrogenetes* the VIth of the Name, was but ten Years old when *Leo* dyed, and *Irene* for this Reason, took upon him the Administration of Affairs. The first Year of their Reign, some Factionous Persons at *Constantinople* made an Insurrection there, and demanded *Nicephorus*, *Leo's* Brother for their Emperor. The Sedition grew so formidable that the Empreſs surprized at the demand, sent for the Senators who had solemnly sworn; That they would obey none but *Constantine*; and after she had laid the Storm, gave order, that without delay, *Nicephorus*, *Christopher*, and the rest of *Leo's* Brothers should be ordained Priests; which was done. In 781, understanding that *Helvidius* on whom she had conferred the Government of *Sicily*, was in the Interests of *Nicephorus*; she employed all her Credit and Power to dispossess him; who retired into *Africk* with *Nicephorus*, seeing none but the *Saracens* who were able to protect them.

To strengthen her Authority with the support of another, she sent Embassadors to *Charlemagne*, who had Instructions to treat of a Marriage betwixt his Daughter *Rotrude*, and her Son *Constantine*; and History tells us, that after she had made a serious Reflection on this Marriage, she found means to break it off, fearing her Authority might decline upon it. In 783, she sent a great Army against the *Slavonians*, who committed terrible disorders in *Thessaly*, and the *Morea*, forced them all to abandon what they had taken, but was not so fortunate against *Grimauld* Duke of *Beneventum*, who by the means of *Charlemagne*, defeated *Adelgisus* the Son of *Didier* in *Calabria*, whom she protected, and chased the Greeks out of *Italy*. In 788 she Married her Son *Constantine* to

*Mary*

Mary of *Armenia*, one of an obscure Birth, and whom he had never taken; if the Deterrence which he had for his Mother, had not prevailed over the Aversion which he had to this Young Woman.

Altho he was of Age to take the Administration of the Government upon himself, yet *Irene* kept from him the Knowledge of Publick Affairs: But as it was with reluctance that the great Men obey'd her, and that they were asham'd to receive Laws from a Woman; there were some of them who made *Constantine* understand that it concern'd his Reputation to take the Government into his Hands. The Empress, who perceiv'd it, had them shav'd, and banish'd them into *Sicily*, and constrain'd the People and the Army to swear an inviolable Fidelity to her, without any regard to *Constantine*. But the Army, which had been re-call'd out of *Armenia*, would acknowledge none but him; and all the rest having followed their Example, *Constantine*, who was glad to reign alone, remov'd her from all Publick Affairs. His Ambition was not successful, and the Event of his Wars against the *Bulgarians* and the *Saracens*, sufficiently shew'd that he was not born to govern alone, and that he wanted another to warrant his Conduct. It was possibly for this Reason that he re-established his Mother *Irene* in 792. and the Armies took a new Oath of Fidelity to this Princess. But the Army which was in *Armenia*, finding that all their Efforts against the *Bulgarians* had not been very advantageous, chose *Nicephorus*, whose Eyes *Constantine* put out, and proceeding farther, punished his two Uncles *Christopher* and *Nicephorus* with the same Punishment, and also cut out their Tongues. This Cruelty struck all People with Horror; and *Armenia*, which revolted, had all the Forces to resist that he made use of to reduce them to their Obedience. The *Armenians* were treated ill, and his Vengeance, which made them desperate, put them upon having recourse to the *Saracens*, and delivering to them some strong Places, which cost them nothing but Thanks and Promises.

*Constantine*, whose Aversion to his Wife Mary was so great, that he could not longer endure her, added another



ther Cruelty to all the rest; and in 795. having spread a Report that she had attempted to poison him, he divorced her upon this Pretence and shut her up in a Monastery. The same Year he marry'd *Theodora* or *Theodeste*, who ordinarily served in the Chamber, and had by her a Son named *Leo*, and a Daughter named *Euphrosyne*, who married *Michael the Lisper*. Some believe that he was not led to these Cruelties but by the Counsel of his Mother *Irene*, who desir'd to render his Government odious, that she might enjoy the Empire with full liberty; and it is very probable that it was with great uneasiness that she endured her Son, since that in 796. she caused his Eyes to be put out, of which he died the next Year; and that she might have no more fear, she banished *Nicephorus* and *Christopher* to *Athens*, where they were put to death by her Order. This cruel Woman found ways to cover her Crime, laid the death of *Constantine* upon her Enemies, and made those pass for Parricides, who had served him but too well. In the Year 802. she sent Embassadors to *Charlemagne* (who pretended to *Sicily*, and of whose Power she was jealous) to justify her Innocence, and to treat of Marriage, because *Fastrade*, whom others name *Hildegarde*, his third Wife, was now dead. They add to this Proposal *Irene's* Consent for the Empire of the West in favour of *Charlemagne*, and her Promise to join with it also the Empire of the East by this Marriage. But the chief Men of the Empire having discover'd her Policy, persuaded the Legions, that she was resolved to make *Nicephorus*, the Son of *Stauracius* a Patrician, Emperor, to break the Intreagues of the Eunuch *Actius*, who press'd her to marry his Brother *Leo*, who commanded in *Thrace* and *Macedonia*. The Army really believing what was told them, declared *Nicephorus* Emperor, who besieged *Irene* in her Palace, took her and shut her up in a Monastery, and banished her into the Isle of *Lesbos* near *Troas*, where she died in 803.

CHAP XIV.

*Chronological Remarks on the Ecclesiastical and Profane History.*

*Under Philip Bardanes.*

IN 713. there was a Synod at *Constantinople*, in which assisted several Bishops, who for fear of being depos'd by the Emperor, a *Monothelite*, condemn'd the sixth General Council, the Use and Worship of Images in Churches. There was another at *Rome*, where this Use and Worship was re-established by Pope *Constantine*, and *Bardanes* was there Excommunicated as a Heretick.

*Dagobert* the II<sup>d</sup>, the Son of *Childebert* the II<sup>d</sup>, died in 715.

*Under Artemas Anastasius.*

He thrust out *John* a *Monothelite* from the Patriarchate of *Constantinople*, to whom *Bardanes* had given it, and sent Ambassadors to Pope *Constantine* to testify to him that he held the true Faith of the Catholick Church, and that he would with all his Power defend the Canons of the sixth General Council.

This Pope died the 11th of February, 716. or as others the 19th of April, 614. had *Gregory* the II<sup>d</sup> of the Order of *St. Bennet* for his Successor: And there was a second Council held at *Rome* for the Worship of Images.

*Under Leo of Isauria.*

*Chilperick* the II<sup>d</sup>, King of *France*, died in 720.

In 722. the Montanists, whom *Leo* would compel to be baptized, chose rather to burn themselves in their Houses than obey him.

In 725. *Leo* published an Edict for removing all Images out of Churches, notwithstanding the Remonstran-

ces of *Germany*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and the Reasons of Pope *Gregory*, who wrote to him, that it did not belong to the Emperor to decide in Matters of Faith, nor to alter what was received in the Church.

The same Year *John Damascene* assembled a Synod in the East against the Destroyers of Images: And in 726. if we may believe *Zonaras* and some other Historians, the Pope dispensed with the City of *Rome*, and some other Cities of *Italy* from paying that Obedience and Tribute which they owed this Emperor, who made use of all Means to poison him, or to bring him to *Constantinople*; but all these Means proved ineffectual. He caused Fire to be set to the Cloysters of those Religious, who resolutely kept all the Images in their Churches, which occasioned an Insurrection of the People, who seeing these Religious and these Monasteries burning, broke down the Emperor's Statues; and it was then that *Agallian*, *Stephen* and *Cosmas* resolved to besiege *Constantinople* and to redress these Disorders.

In 731. *Gregory* the II<sup>d</sup>. had *Gregory* the III<sup>d</sup>. for his Successor, who held a Synod at *Rome* against *Leo*, and there was one at *Ausburg* call'd by *Boniface* the Ist, Archbishop of *Mentz*, which *Riccioli* after *Baronius* places in 740.

Norwithstanding all the Exhortations to Peace that were made to him, he put to death the Religious, and the Bishops that opposed him, after he had caused Fire to be set to their Beards rub'd with Pitch, or the Skin to be torn from their Heads, and condemned a considerable number of them to perpetual Imprisonment.

*Thierry* King of *France* died the 15<sup>th</sup> of his Reign.

In 736 *Leo* commanded a Professor and twelve of his Collegues to be burnt, because they were for Images.

The Year of the death of the venerable *Bede* seems to be uncertain, because some place it in 731. others in 736. but he died in 735. and this is also the most received Opinion.

## Under Constantine Copronymus.

*Charles*, surnamed *Martel*, born in 696. died the 20th of *October*, 741. the 55th of his Age. He gain'd so absolute an Authority, that he had alone the Administration of the Kingdom under *Dagobert* the II<sup>d</sup>, under *Chilperick*, under *Clotaire*, and under *Thierry*; and thro' Modesty or Policy he refused the Royal Dignity which was offered him. After he had escaped from *Cologne*, where *Plectrude*, who hated him, had kept him some Years, he was attacked by *Chilperick* and by *Rainfroy* Mayor of the Palace, who being much stronger found no great difficulty to defeat him. But in 712. he gain'd a Victory over them in *Cambresis*, pursued them to the Gates of *Paris*, and made himself Master of *Bologne*, and of the Treasures of his Father *Pepin*. He subdued *Austrasia*, proclaimed *Clotaire* King, to oppose *Chilperick*, who by the Counsel of *Rainfroy*, engaged *Eudes* Duke of *Aquitain* on his side, a powerful Prince, who had raised himself to the Dignity of a Duke, when the French were quarrelling about the Mayoralty of the Palace. *Eudes* was defeated, and also constrained to deliver up *Chilperick*, who lived not long after. Understanding that the Saxons, the Suedes, and the Bavarians had revolted, he passed the *Rhine*, subdued these Rebels; and at his return in the Year 725. caused himself to be declared Duke and Prince of the French. As *Eudes* had violated the Treaty he had made, he entred his Country with an Army, put twice to flight the Duke of *Aquitain*, who despairing of being able to resist him, called in the *Saracens* to his assistance against him, which I shall speak of elsewhere. He was married twice, first with *Geltrude* or *Chrotulde*, afterwards with *Suanichilde* Daughter of *Odilon* Duke of *Bavaria*. By this last he had *Carloman*, who after he had commanded in *Austrasia* and *Germany*, became a Religious at Mount *Cassin*, and died at *Vienna* in *Dauphiny* in 725. The other Children of *Charles Martel*. were *Pepin* the Short, King of France. *Grifon* Duke of the *Austrasians* and of *Andely*, betwixt the River *Seine* and the *Oise*, which



which contain'd two Counties. *Bernard*, Count and Abbot of *St. Quentin*; *Remy* Bishop of *Rouen*; *Ferom* Count of *Vermendois* and Abbot of *St. Quentin* after his Brother *Bernard*; and two Daughters, *Hiltrude* and *Landrade*. Some Authors say that he had no legitimate Sons but *Carloman*, *Pepin* the Short, and *Grifon*; that the two former were by *Chrotulde*, and the last by *Suanichilde*. *Adreval* in the first Book of the Miracles of *St. Bennet*, *Paulus Amilius*, *du Tillet*, make *Remy* a natural Son; and the Historian *Adelme* hath made *Grifon* the eldest of *Charles Martel's* Sons.

*Gregory* the III<sup>d</sup>, who died the 28<sup>th</sup> of *November*, 741. had *Zachary* the Son of *Polycrone* for his Successor, and in 724. there were held two Synods, one at *Rome*, and the other in *France* under *Carloman*.

In 744. there was one in *England*, and another at *Lerins* the Year following.

*Childeric* the III<sup>d</sup>, the Son or Brother of *Thierry*, after he had had the Title of King ten Years, was depos'd in 752. by the States General assembled at *Chalons*, for his mean Understanding.

Pope *Zachary* died the 15<sup>th</sup> of *March* the same Year, and had *Stephen* the III<sup>d</sup>, for his Successor.

In 754. *Constantine* who by an Edict commanded that all Images should be call'd Idols, permitted People to swear by the Cross; and in 755. he call'd a Council at *Constantinople* of 338 Bishops, who condemn'd all Images, and forbad them to be kept even in private Houses. This the Emperor caus'd to be observed, and there was no Cruelty which he did not exercise against such as obey'd not his Edicts. He also burnt the Relicks of Saints, forbid the Mother of God to be call'd Saint, or the Martyrs and Apostles to be stiled Saints, and compell'd the Monks of *Ephesus* to marry Nuns.

In 757. *Stephen* the III<sup>d</sup>, died the 26<sup>th</sup> of *April*, about three Years before *John* of *Damascus*, who had been Excommunicated in *Constantine's* Council, with *Germanus*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and *George* of *Cyprus* Archbishop of *Antioch* in *Pisidia*.

Pope *Paul* the Successor of *Stephen* died *June* the 21<sup>st</sup> in 767,

At this time *Didier* King of the *Lombards*, advised *Toton* Duke of *Nepi* in *Tuscany* to get his Brother, who was yet but a Layman, elected either by fair Means or Force : And as he march'd with an Army to *Rome*, he compassed his Design, and *Constantine* consecrated by *Gregory* Bishop of *Palestine*. But some others chose *Philip* a Roman for Pope, who was forced to quit his Pretensions five days after his Election : And *Constantine*, who was shamefully depos'd, as we may see in *Platina*, had *Stephen* the IVth, the Son of *Olybrius* for his Successor.

There was a Synod at *Worms* in 768. another at *Rome* for the Re-establishing of Images ; and the Members of it anathematized the Council of *Constantinople*.

The same Year *Pepin the Short* died on the 24th of September, in the 54th Year of his Age, after he had reigned 15 Years, 4 Months, and 20 Daies. He was ten Years Mayor of the Palace in the Reign of *Childeric* the last King of the Race of *Merouëe*, and was solemnly proclaimed King after the Deposition of this stupid Prince. His first Cares were employ'd in reducing the *Saxons* to their Obedience, in succouring *Stephen* the Third, who came into *France* to demand his Protection against *Astulph* King of *Lombardy*, and who also crown'd him with the Queen and his two Sons. After he had declared War against the King of *Lombardy*, he besieged him in *Pavia* his Capital City, obliged him at the same time to surrender the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, all that he had taken from the *Greeks*, and to give him Hostages for the performance of his Promise. *Astulph* having broke his Word, and also besieged the Pope in *Rome*, to make him his Tributary, *Pepin* forced him to keep to his former Treaties they had made ; and by a Liberality altogether new, he would transfer to *St. Peter*, to the Roman Church, and to the Pope, all his Conquests which consisted of the Exarchate, with the Territory of *Ravenna*, the Provinces of *Parma*, of *Plaisance*, and of *Modena*. He added to these *Ferrara*, *Comachio*, and some other Cities and Lordships extending from this side of *Faro* to *Sicily*, known since under the Name of the Kingdom of *Naples*. As *Gaifre*, Duke of *Aquitaine*,

was very severe to the Ecclesiasticks, and had little regard to the Royal Authority, *Pepin* marched an Army against him, took the Cities of *Toulouse*, *Cahors*, *Alby*, *Saintes*, *Bourges*, and *Clermont*, and reduced him to so great an Extremity, that he was constrained to commit the rest of his Fortune to a Battel in *Perigord*, where he lost his Life, and his Principality which was re-united to the Crown. By *Berthe* or *Bertrade*, the Daughter of *Garibert* Count of *Laon*, he had *Charles the Great* King of *France* and *Italy*, elected Emperor of the Romans, called vulgarly *Charlemagne*; *Carloman*, King of *Germany*, of *Burgundy* and of *Provence*; *Pepin* who died at the Age of three Years, *Rothaide* and *Adelaide* who died young, and *Gisde* who became a Religious.

In 769. there was a Synod at *Rome*, one at *Wormes* in 771. a third in the same City; and the See which became vacant the last day of *January*, 772. was fill'd by *Hadrian* the Son of *Theodore*, a Consular Person.

*In the Reign of Constantine and Irene.*

In 787. or 88 according to some there was a seventh General Council held at *Nice* in *Bithynia*, compos'd of 350 Bishops for the Re-establishment of Images in the Pontificat of *Hadrian*, whose Legats were Presidents with *Tarasius* Patriarch of *Constantinople*. *Onuphrius* places this Council in 789. in his Ecclesiastical History, and there is some probability it was not a Universal Council, because it was not every where acknowledged.

In 795. Pope *Hadrian* died, and *Leo* the III<sup>d</sup>, succeeded him. There was a Synod at *Aix la Chapelle*; whence they sent Deputies to *Leo* to desire him to permit that the Creed might be publickly sung in the Church with this Addition, *Who proceedeth from the Father and the Son*; which *Leo*, who was for keeping to the ancient Form, would never agree to, adding, *That we were not publickly to sing every thing that we believed to be of Faith.*

## C H A P. XV.

*The Succession of the Emperors to Constantine, of the Family of the Paleologi, the last Emperor of Constantinople.*

**N**icephorus Logothetes, or the Chancellor, after the Empress Irene was banished to *Mitylenæ*, or *Medille*, accommodated Matters as well as he could with *Charlemagne*, whom he was more willing to have for a Friend than for a Neighbour. He gain'd a considerable Battel against the *Bulgarians*, who being not able to obtain Peace, altho' they left the Conditions to his Choice, in despair, forced his Camp by Night, kill'd him in 811; and their King, *Crumus*, *Crumnus*, or *Cardamus*, after he had caused his Head to be cut off, and for some days expos'd to publick View, order'd the Skull to be set on a Silver Foot, and made use of it for his drinking Cup. This *Nicephorus* who protected the *Manichees*, was extraordinarily Covetous, Impious and Cruel. He reign'd nine Years.

*Stauracius* the Son of *Nicephorus* and *Mary* of *Constantinople*, born of a Patrician Family, was deform'd, and no wiser than his Father, who had made him his Partner in the Empire. When he was dangerously wounded in the Battel with the *Servians*, he was carry'd to *Constantinople*, where he was acknowledged for their Emperor, because he had been already Crown'd. He afterwards retir'd to *Leontari* because of his Wounds, where he resolv'd to give the Empire to his Wife *Theophania* an Athenian, and to destroy *Michael Rangabus*, who had marry'd his Sister *Procopia*. But the principal Persons of the Empire being inform'd of his Design, got the Army together, declar'd *Michael* for their Emperor, depos'd *Stauracius*, who was shaved and put into a Cloyster. He reign'd about two Years alone.

*Michael* the 1st, *Europalatus*, or if you will, *Mayor*, or Captain of the Palace, sent Ambassadors to *Charlemagne*, to confirm a lasting Peace betwixt them, call'd his



his Son *Theophylact* to the Empire, which he himself had possessed with *Stauracius*; was defeated by *Cardamus* King of *Bulgaria*, and obliged to retire into a Monastery in 813. after he had reigned almost two Years. *Leo* of *Armenia*, General of the Army of *Michael*, whom he had betray'd in the Battel with the *Servians*, to make an advantage of his Treachery, imputed the loss of this Battel to the Emperor, whom he accused of Negligence and Cowardize; got himself declared Emperor by the Officers of the Army, whom he had gained. He managed with great Reputation the Wars which he waged against the *Persians* and the *Bulgarians*, who besieged *Constantinople*, and condemned *Michael* surnamed the *Lisper* to be burnt, for plotting against his Life. The Sentence being pronounced on *Christmast* Eve, the Empress *Theodora*, Daughter of *Arsaber*, entreated *Leo* to defer the Execution of it only one day in consideration of the Festival, which he complied with. In the mean time *Michael* found means to write to the Accomplices of his Treason, and threatened to discover them, if they did not make hast and accomplish their Design. They consulted together; and coming to a Resolution, they go to the Church where *Leo* was singing, with the Musicians, fall upon him, stab him and cut off his Hands and his Head in 820. He reigned seven Years and five Months.

*Michael the Lisper* was carried from the Prison to the Throne, altho' his Birth was very mean, and his Wit as little as his Religion. He banished the Emperor *Leo's* Widow with her Sons, *Sabbatius*, *Basilus*, *Gregory*, and *Theodosius*, after he had made these four Princes Eunuchs. His first Wife was *Thecla*, Daughter of *Ælian*, by whom he had *Theophilus*, who succeeded him. He afterwards marry'd *Euphrosyne* who was a Nun, the Daughter of *Constantine*, whose Eyes the Empress *Irene* had caused to be put out: And by *Euphrosyne* he had a Daughter named *Helena*, whom *Theophilus* gave in Marriage to *Theophobus* a noble Armenian, who was nominated Emperor in the East, but refused the offer.

*Theophilus* put to death all those who had conspired with his Father against the Life of *Leo*, sent back *Euphrosyne*

*profoyne* to the Cloyster whence she had been taken, and died of a Diffentry in 842. after he had reigned twelve Years, three Months and twenty Days. By the Empress *Theodora* of *Paphlagonia*, his Wife, the Daughter of *Marinus* and *Florina* he had five Daughters, *Thecla*, *Anna*, *Anastasia*, *Mary*, whom *Alexis* an Armenian, marry'd, and was made *Cesar* by his Father-in-law. She died young; and when *Theophilus* had a Son named *Michael*, this *Alexis* resign'd his Dignity after the Birth of *Michael*, enter'd a Monastery and died there.

*Michael* govern'd in Conjunction with his Mother, who was a learned Princess, and whom the Greeks have reckon'd among the Saints. But he banished her some time after, by the Counsel even of *Bardas* who was Captain of the Palace, *Cesar*, and Brother to this vertuous Empress. He was the *Nero* and *Sardanapalus* of his Age: He put *Bardas* to death, who had betray'd him in a Battel which the *Saracens* gain'd against him, and was slain himself by *Basil* of *Macedonia*, after he had reign'd alone eleven Years, one Month, and nine Days.

*Basil* of *Macedonia* nominated for the Empire by *Michael*, left the same Empire to *Leo* his Son, according to *Zonaras*, or the Son of *Michael*, according to some others; and reign'd ten Years, ten Months, and seven Days. Altho' his Birth was was not great, he perform'd great Actions and shew'd great Vigour against the *Manichees* and the *Saracens*.

*Leo* the VIth, surnamed the *Philosopher*, for the great Passion that he had for Study, was first defeated by the *Servians*, but afterwards gain'd a very considerable Victory over them, and took from them the rich Spoils which they had made in *Greece*. But he was never able to hinder the *Saracens* from Pillaging *Sicily* and the *Cyclads*. He reign'd twenty two Years, three Months, and four Days; and we have excellent Works of this Emperor.

*Alexander*, the Brother of *Leo*, reign'd a little more than a Year with *Constantine Porphyrogenetes* his Nephew, whose Guardian he was: And as he loved Wine and Women very much, and was agitated mightily after drinking, he treated himself to that degree, that he died  
of

of it. Concerning his death you may see the Opinion of *Aretas* Archbishop of *Cesarea*, *Cedrenus*, *Zonaras*, *Glycas*, *Constantine*, *Manasses*, and *Spondanus*, on the Year 912.

*Constantine Porphyrogenetes*, Son of *Leo*, was but seven Years old when his Uncle *Alexander* died, and the Empire was govern'd by his Mother *Zoe*; and *Romanus Lecapenes*, who put this Empress into a Cloyster. He also declared his three Sons *Cæsars*, *Christopher*, *Stephen*, and *Constantine*, with *Romanus* the Son of *Christopher*. But this Guardian, who had govern'd all for above 30 Years, was confin'd to a Monastery by his Son *Stephen*, who as he disputed the Empire with his Brothers, they were at last all treated in the same manner as they had treated their Father *Romanus Lecapenes*. *Constantine* lived 60 Years, and reign'd above 54, viz. a Year and a Month with his Uncle *Alexander*, 12 Years with his Mother *Zoe*, 26 with *Romanus Lecapenes* and his Sons, 15 with his own Son *Romanus*.

(a) He very well understood Philosophy, Geometry, Astronomy, History, Musick, and made a very diligent Search after all good Books upon every Subject, of which he compiled a very magnificent Library in his Palace. And to ease those who were frighted at the reading of large Volumes, he made an Abridgment of some, and distributed them under 53 Titles or Common Places. There remains two of these Collections, One of *Embasies*; the other, Of *Vertues and Vices*, for which we are obliged to the famous *Peirese*, one of the most Illustrious Persons of this Age: We must not, with some Authors, confound this *Constantine Porphyrogenetes* the Son of *Leo* and *Zoe*, with *Constantine Porphyrogenetes*, the Son of *Leo* and *Irene* of *Attica*, and Grandson of *Constantine Copronymus*.

(b) *Romanus Porphyrogenetes* the III<sup>d</sup>, married *Bertha*, whom *Hugh* King of *Italy* had by a Whore named *Be-*  
sole,

---

(a) *Plura de Ejus peritia, Bonavent. Wlcanius notis in lujus ipsius Constantini, lib. 1. De Thematribus, p. 53.*

(b) *Scriptit ad Eum Constantinus Eruditissimus pater, li-*

*brum, De Administrando Imperio, valde commendatum Casaubano in Præfatione Polybiana, quæ primus Græco-lat. vulgavit Joh. Meurfius.*

sole; and the Greeks gave this *Bertha* the Name of *Eudoxia*. By *Anastasia* or *Theophanon* his second Wife, he had two Sons, *Basil* and *Constantine*, whom he Crown'd; and four Daughters, *Theodora* who married *John Zimisces*; *Luitgarda* who married *Arnold* Earl of *Holland*; *Theophania* sent by *Zimisces* to *Otho* the IIId, Son of *Otho* the Great, and of *Adelhaide* Queen of *Burgundy*; and *Ann* who was married to *Wolodomir* Duke of *Moscow*.

This *Wolodimir* who had had six Wives, and kept seven hundred Concubines, assumed the Title of *Czar*, which none of his Predecessors had before him; and having by the means of *Anne*, renounced his brutal Inclinations, he embraced the Christian Religion after the manner of the Greeks, and took the Name of *Basil*.

*Romanus*, who loved Women, Wine, and Feasting, died of Excess. He reign'd 2 Years alone, and 15 with his Father.

*Nicephorus Bardas Phocas* was very Covetous; but for the great Actions which he had done in the East, he was declared Emperor by the Souldiers. He re-took *Crete* and *Antioch* from the *Saracens*, defeated them in *Cilicia* and *Syria*; removed *Basil* and *Constantine* the Sons of *Romanus*, with their Mother *Theophanon*, whom this *Phocas* marry'd. The Empress, who could no longer endure his Caresses, call'd in *John Zimisces* against him, who by her assistance entred the Palace securely with some others, and *Phocas* was slain there at the Age of 37 Years, after a Reign of 6 Years and 6 Months.

*John Zimisces* or *Tsimisces* was no sooner declared Emperor, but he made *Basil* and *Constantine* the Sons of *Romanus* the IIId reign with him. He married *Theodora*, whom some will have to be the Sister of *Romanus*, and Daughter of *Constantine*, and was Crowned by *Polyeuctes* Patriarch of *Constantinople*. But he was first obliged to promise that he would send from Court *Theophanon*, who was guilty of the death of *Nicephorus Phocas*, and banish those who had lifted their sacrilegious Hands against the Emperor.

Altho



Altho' he had the *Bulgarians*, the *Scythians*, the *Turks* and their Allies, against him, and the number of all these People was of three Hundred thirty Thousand Men; he was Victorious. The Constantinopolitans prepared him a great Triumph for his Victories, in which he would only ride on Horseback; and having returned Thanks to God for all his Successes, he was the first according to *Petavius*, who had Medals made with the Image of *Jesus Christ* on one side, and on the reverse, (c) *Christ, King of Kings*, in which he was imitated by the Emperors who succeeded him. But this learned Jesuit is mistaken, as may be seen in *Strada*, and *Adam Rupert*.

As *Zimisces* returned out of the East, observing some magnificent Houses and large Countries, he askt to whom they belong'd, and it being told him, *That they belong'd to the Eunuch Basil*; he said, *Must an Eunuch enjoy the Fruits and Fatigues of Emperors and so many Armies?* *Basil*, who was inform'd of this Complaint, concluded that he must not expect but permit the Blow that threatned him; and thereupon corrupted the Emperor's Cup-bearer, who poyson'd him. He died in 975. after he had reign'd 6 Years and 6 Months.

*Basil* and *Constantine*, the Sons of *Romanus*, and Grandsons of *Constantine Porphyrogenetes*, reign'd together with *Zimisces*, altho' the former had the Administration of Affairs, and the latter devoted himself wholly to Pleasure. They re-call'd *Theophanon* from Exile; and *Basil* was so fortunate as to suppress, by the means of *Bardas Phocas*, the Revolt of *Bardas Sclerus*, General of the Armies in the East, who aspired to Sovereignty. *Bardas Phocas* after his Victory, had the same Ambition that *Bardas Sclerus* had been possessed with; and was slain after he had in Person charged upon *Basil* in the beginning of the Battel which was to decide their Difference; or, according to others, poyson'd by his Cup-bearer,

---

(c) *Vid. Ad. Rupert. Observat. in Synopsis Besoldi minor. p. 606. Strada, p. 272, 281, 293, 301, 305, 310, 312, 317, 325, 333, 338, &c.*

bearer, whom *Basil's* Money corrupted. After these Wars *Basil* marched against the *Bulgarians*, who ravaged *Thrace* and *Greece*, gained the Battel which he fought with them, and took 15000 Prisoners, all whose Eyes were put out by his Order, except an 150 of them, who had but one Eye put out, that each of these might be a Guide to every Hundred of the rest in their Return to *Samuel* King of *Bulgaria*, who had fled after his Defeat. This King died of Grief to see them in this miserable Condition; and *Gabriel* his Son who succeeded him, and who had the Courage of his Father, altho' he had not his Prudence, was not able to resist the Emperor, to whom at last *Servia* became subject.

He had a War with *Otho* the II<sup>d</sup> for *Apuglia* and *Calabria*, which had been given for Dowry to *Theophanias*, and recover'd them by the assistance of the *Saracens* who served him for Pay. But he had not the like Success against the other *Saracens*, from whom he was not able to recover *Sicily*, and he died in 1025, at the Age of 70 Years, after he had reigned 49 and four Months. *Constantine* reigned 3 Years after him; and when he was sensible he should die of the Disease he labour'd under, he sent for *Romanus Arguropolus* a Senator, and gave him his Choice, either to marry his Daughter *Zoe*, whom he offer'd with the Empire, or to resolve to lose his Eyes.

The Wife, who had a great Tendernefs for her Husband, out of dread of the Emperor's Cruelty, betook her self to a Monastery: And by this means *Romanus*, at the Age of 60 Years, married *Zoe* who was fifty.

*Romanus* the IV<sup>th</sup>, whose Age did not permit him to satisfy the Inclinations of *Zoe*, who was Voluptuous and Brutal, was unfortunate enough in his Marriage. She chose one *Michael*, Brother to an Eunuch, who was Servant to *Romanus* in his private Fortune; and liking the Constitution of this handsome young Man, advised him to watch his opportunity, and to suffocate her Husband *Romanus* in the Bath, after he had first poyson'd him. He reign'd 5 Years and 6 Months.

*Michael* of *Paphlagonia*, who had acquir'd the Empire and Empress by this Parricide, reign'd with her 6 Years and 6 Months; and with *Zoe's* Consent nominat-  
ed

ed his Nephew *Michael*, surnam'd *Calaphates*, the Son of *Stephen*, whose Parents heretofore got their Living by Caulking Ships. Notwithstanding *Zoe* had engaged him by Oath, to do nothing that did not answer the Obligations he had to her, he shut her up in a Monastery: And the Empress being taken thence in a Sedition of the People, this ungrateful Wretch had his Eyes put out after he had reign'd 4 Months and 5 Days.

*Zoe* being restored with her Sister *Theodora*, *Constantine Monomachus*, whom *Michael Calaphates* had banished to *Lesbos*, was re-call'd thence by *Zoe*, who had heretofore granted him him these Favours, which she was too liberal of. It was not therefore difficult for him to become her Husband, and he was Crown'd by *Alexis*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*. In his Reign, which was 12 Years and 8 Months, with *Zoe* and *Theodora*, *Apulia* was usurped by the *Normans*, and *Persia* by the *Turks*. After the death of *Constantine* and *Leo*, *Theodora* reign'd one Year and 9 Months; and by the Counsel of her Domesticks or the Senators, adopted *Michael the Warrior*, who being of a very great Age, left the Administration of Affairs to the Eunuchs. He was obliged to resign the Empire to *Isaac Comnenes*, and to retire into a Monastery, after he had reign'd ingloriously about a Year.

*Isaac* the first of the Illustrious Family of the *Comnenes*, having been lightly struck with a Thunder-bolt, took this Stroke for an Admonition from Heaven, and shut himself for his whole Life in a Monastery after he had reign'd 2 Years and 3 Months, and persecuted the Churchmen with his Covetousness. Before he put on the Monk's Habit, he chose for his Successor, *Constantine Ducas*, whose Merit he very well knew, and had no regard to his own Kindred and Family.

*Constantine Ducas* had excellent Qualities which were all eclipsed by his Covetousness. To free himself from the Charge of the Army which he had, he thought fit to disband them, imagining that the Presents he might make his Enemies, would cost him less than the Generals and Officers of the Army cost him. The *Turks*, who knew how to improve their Advantages, profited by

by the Negligence of this Emperor, and made inroads to the very Gates of *Constantinople* for Booty. He reign'd 7 Years and 6 Months; and to secure the Empire to his Family, he obliged his Wife *Eudoxia* by Oath, and by a Promise which she gave him in writing under her Hand, never to marry again.

She reign'd 7 Months and 9 Days with *John* the Brother of *Constantine Ducas*, and with the three Sons which she had by the Emperor her Husband, *Michael*, *Andronicus*, *Constantine*: And the *Turks* carried on their Conquests in *Cilicia* and *Cappadocia*. *Romanus Diogenes* who was setting up for the Empire, having at that time assembled some Souldiers in *Thrace*, plunder'd all Places where he pass'd: And as the Intestine Wars were more to be feared than the Foreign, they talk'd of nothing at *Constantinople* but of chusing an Emperor that might remedy their Disorders. *Romanus Diogenes* was afterwards apprehended and carry'd as a Rebel before *Eudoxia*, who was surpriz'd and charm'd with his Beauty. Instead of having him drag'd to Punishment, she thought of nothing but Crowning this handsom Criminal, and she found a way to do it.

A certain Eunuch by her Order went to *Xiphiline*, who was then Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and acquainted him, that were it not for her Promise, which was committed to his Trust, she would offer her Bed, the Empire, and all that she had to *Bardas*, who was this Patriarch's Brother. The good Prelate, who did not see through the Eunuch's Artifice, and had Ambition enough to see his Brother *Bardas* exalted to the Throne, so far gained all the Senators by his Presents and his Reasons, that after he had dispensed with her Oath, he sent her the Promise which she had written. *Eudoxia* seeing her self thus set at Liberty, without any regard to the Patriarch's Hopes, chose *Romanus Diogenes*, with the Consent of all the People, and taking him to her Bed, made him Emperor.

He was not unworthy of it, if we consider the great Actions which he performed in *Asia*, against the *Turks*, who took him in a Battel, wherein he was betray'd:



Their Sultan *Olub Arslan* treated him (d) not only with great Civility, but also sent him Home in the most generous manner that was possible, altho' *William*, (e) Archbishop of Tyre doth not agree to this. In the mean time as the News of his Defeat and his Prison had been carry'd to *Constantinople*, the *Greeks* declar'd *Michael* the Son of *Constantine Ducas* Emperor, shut up *Eudoxia* in a Monastery, and put out the Eyes of *Diogenes*, after he had reign'd with *Eudoxia*, with *John Michael*, *Andronicus* and *Constantine*, 3 Years, 8 Months, and 12 Days.

(f) *Michael Ducas*, who applied his Thoughts wholly to Study, under the Philosopher *Psellus*, to make Verses and to declaim against the Rhetoricians, left the Administration of Affairs to the Eunuchs, whilst *Olub Arslan* was employing his Arms to conquer his Provinces, and to revenge the Injury done to *Diogenes*, whom he loved. *Michael* seeing himself under a Necessity of thinking of something else besides the Muses, gave the command of an Army to *Isaac Comnenes* who lost the Battel, and was also made Prisoner. He sent against this Sultan, his Brother *Isaac*, who had been declared *Cesar*, and who had the same fate. In this deplorable Extremity, *Nicephorus Botomates*, of the Family of *Phocas*, takes *Nice*, and having possess'd himself of *Constantinople*, puts *Michael Ducas* into a Monastery, and confines the Empress in another, and their Son *Constantine Porphyrogenetes* in a third.

*Nicephorus* of *Breune*, who was very old, and thought of nothing but diverting and dressing himself, was possess'd and thrust into a Cloyster by *Alexis Comnenes*, the Son of *Isaac*; and it is with the Life of this last Emperor that *Zonaras* concludes his Annals.

The Turks in the Reign of this *Alexis*, who was 37 Years,

(d) *Zonar. Glycas, Manasses, Abul. Phraragius Histor. Dynast.* p. 228. Edit. Oxon. 1663.

(e) Lib. i. c. 9.

(f) *Michael Ducas, dictus Parapinacius propter famem quæ sub eo invaluit, a Medimni quadrante Pinacio ut Egnatius restatur.*

Years, 4 Months, and 15 Days old, took the Isles of *Scbio*, *Lesbos*, *Rhodes*, and *Samos*; and those who went to the *Holy Land* had too much reason to be satisfied, that their Enterprize was suspected by him.

*John Comnenes*, the Son of *Alexis* succeeded him in 1118. and was much superior to him both by his Wealth and his Victories. He defeated more than once the *Tartars*, the *Huns*, the *Servians*, and the *Turks*; bought the City of *Antioch* of *Raymund* who possess'd it; and after he had reign'd 24 Years, 8 Months and some Days, died of a poyson'd Arrow which a wild Boar that he had already wounded, struck out of his Quiver on his Hand.

*Emanuel Comnenes* the Son of *John*, married *Bertha*, whom others name *Irene*, Daughter of *Berengarius* Count of *Salzburg*, Sister of *Gertrude*, the Wife of the Emperor *Conrade III.* It was this perfidious *Manuel* who mingled Mortar or Lime with the Meal, which he distributed to *Conrade's* Army in their March to the Conquest of the *Holy Land*, and who held Correspondence with the *Turks* against the *Latins*, for this was the Name they gave our Adventurers; and who, after he had reign'd 37 Years and a little more than 5 Months, would die in a Monk's Habit, hoping thereby to expiate his Crimes, not doubting but the Habit made the Monk.

The famous *Eustathius* Bishop of *Theffalonica* lived in his Reign.

*Alexis* the Son of *Emanuel*, aged 13 Years, and betrothed to *Agnes* or *Anne*, Daughter of *Lewis VII.* King of *France*, was strangled about 3 Years after, by the Command of *Andronicus* his Cousin-German, who murdered the Empress Dowager of *Emanuel* in the same manner, that he might more securely establish his Usurpation. But it was of no long duration; for *Isaac Comnenes*, with the assistance of his Friends, seized him; and after they had pull'd off his Beard, his Hair, put out one Eye, cut off his left Hand, put Chains about his

P 2

Neck

---

(g) *Id est, Calojohannes qui primus in Historia Niceta Chronista.*

Neck and on his Feet, and twined a Rope about his Head in the fashion of a Crown; set him upon an old Camel, to expose him to the View and Fury of the People. Some threw Stones at him, squeez'd Sponges fill'd with Ordure on his Mouth and his Nose, or threw boyling Water in his Face; others ran Spits into his Sides, or drove Nails into his Head; and by the Cruelties which may be seen in *Nicetas*, they revenged on him those he had committed.

*Isaac*, of the Family of *Anges Comnenes*, because that of the other *Comnenes* was extinct, was raised to the Empire in 1185. and dispossessed of it 10 Years after by his Brother *Alexis*, whom he had generously ransom'd from the *Turks*. *Isaac*, to whom *Alexis* III. had left his Life and his Liberty in some sort, sent his Son *Alexis* the younger to *Philip* Emperor of *Germany*, who had married his Daughter *Irene*, to desire his Assistance against the Tyrant *Alexis Ducas*, surnamed *Murziphle*, who was his Uncle. As there was at that time an Army ready for *Palestine* against the *Turks*, it was employ'd to besiege *Constantinople*, under the Conduct of *Baldwin* VIII. Count of *Hainault* and *Namur*. The City was besieged by *Baldwin*, who had 8000 Horse, 20000 Foot, and 200 Ships. He defeated the *Greeks*, so that the Tyrant was forced to fly; and by these Means *Isaac* was restored, with his Son *Alexis* the younger.

Some time after these two Emperors exacting every where great Tributes, and taking away also what Gold and Silver there were in the Churches, to pay those who had restored them, and who were resolv'd not to depart till they had received what they demanded; the People being exasperated made an Insurrection, took *Alexis Ducas* for their Emperor, surnam'd *Myrtillus* or *Murziphle*, because his Eye-brows join'd, who put both Father and Son to death seven Months after their Restoration. The City was taken, and *Murziphle* who had made his Escape, was brought back to *Constantinople*, where, after his Eyes were put out, he was thrown down a Precipice headlong, and afterwards drag'd by the People, who tore him in pieces.

It was at this time that *Theodore Lascaris*, *Alexis*, and *Emanuel Comnenes*, retiring from *Constantinople*, laid the Foundations of the two Empires, one at *Andrinople*, the other at *Trebizonde*. *Theodore Lascaris*, who had married *Anne* Daughter of *Alexis III.* and of the Dutcheſs *Euphrosyne* Widow of *Isaac Comnenes*, reign'd at *Andrinople*. *John Ducas III.* *Batazes* or *Diglobatazes* the Husband of *Irene*, Daughter of *Theodore Lascaris* and of *Euphrosyne*, reign'd 33 Years. He had by this Marriage, *Theodore* ſirnam'd the younger, who married *Helena* the Siſter of *Azar* King of *Bulgaria*; and reign'd near 4 Years. After this Emperor's death, his two Sons, *John* the Fourth and *Theodore* the Third, who were proclaim'd Emperors, reign'd a Year and ſome Months. The Hiſtorians are not agreed about theſe Alliances. *Alexis Comnenes* had for Succeſſors in the Empire of *Trebizonde*, his Son *Alexis VII.* *John Lazus* the Son of the laſt *Alexis*, and Son-in-law of *Michael VII.* *Alexis VIII.* Son of *John Lazus*; *Baſil* his Son; *Eudoxia* or *Irene* the Daughter of *Baſil*; *Alexis IX.* *John* and *David*, from whom this Empire was taken by *Mahomet II.*

In the mean time *Baldwin*, who was but 32 Years old, having made himſelf Maſter of *Constantinople* in 1204. was choſen Emperor of it, three days after he had taken the City, and 22 days after that, was crown'd. As it was agreed that the *Venetians* who had furniſhed a conſiderable Quota in this Expedition, ſhould have part of the Conqueſt, they gave them *Candy* and almoſt all the other Iſlands that lye between *Greece* and *Anatolia*, and between *Calabria* and *Greece*; or if you will, moſt of the Iſles between the *Ogdan* and the *Ionian Sea*. However, ſome ſay that *Boniſace*, Marquis of *Montferat* held *Candy* of *Alexis*, and that *Baldwin* nominated him King of *Theſſaly*, that he might offer this Kingdom to the *Venetians*, if they were inclined to buy it.

*Thomas Morosini* was made Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and all others had Juſtice done them there. The Reign of *Baldwin*, who had married *Mary* the Daughter of *Henry* Count of *Champagne* was not prosperous, nor of long duration. Going as far as *Andrianople*, to meet *John* King of *Bulgaria*, of whom the Princes who quitted



*Constantinople* after the taking of this City, had desired some Succours, he fell into the Ambushes of the Enemy, and King *John* commanded his Legs and his Arms to be cut off, and his Body to be thrown into a Valley, where he was eaten up by the Ravens. He reign'd eleven Months.

*Henry* his Brother, Earl of *Flanders*, who had married *Martha*, the Daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Namur*, succeeded him, and reign'd about 10 Years. He died in 1216. without any Children by *Martha*; and after his death the *French*, the *Venetians*, and the other *Franks* who were in *Greece*, chose for Emperor of *Constantinople*, *Peter* of *Courtenay* Earl of *Auxerre*, and inform'd him of it by a solemn Embassy.

*Peter* of *Courtenay*, the Son of *Peter* of *Courtenay* V. Son of King *Lewis* surnam'd the Fat, and *Alice* of *Savoy*, left *France* in order to go to *Constantinople*. He was crown'd in *St. Laurence's* Church at *Rome*, in 1217. by Pope *Honorius* III. with *Folande* of *Flanders* his second Wife, the Daughter of *Baldwin* IX. Earl of *Flanders*, *Hainault*, and *Namur*, and of *Margaret* the Heiress of *Flanders*. But as he passed through *Theffaly*, under a Pass-port of *Theodore* *Lascaris*, this perfidious Prince order'd him to be seiz'd, and his Head to be cut off, after he had kept him two Years in Prison. This Prince, who knew not perhaps that the *Greek* Faith, was no more to be rely'd on than the *Punick*, had for his first Wife *Agnes* of *Nevers*, Daughter of *Guy* Count of *Nevers*, Heiress of this County; and of those of *Auxerre* and *Tonnerre*, and had by her *Mahaut*, who married *Herce* Baron of *Donzy*: *Folande*, who had escaped the Ambushes of *Theodore* *Lascaris*, with her two Sons, died after she had governed the Empire 2 Years.

*Robert* the Son of *Peter* and *Folande*, who succeeded them, chose a Grecian (b) for his Wife, and was kill'd by one of the chief Persons of his Court, to whom this Lady had been betrothed. He afterwards cut off the

Note

---

(b) See the Genealogical History of the House of France by Scivole and Louis de St. Marthe.

Nose of this Princess to revenge himself on her Inconstancy, and drown'd her Mother in the Sea, because she had consented to the Marriage.

*Baldwin* of *Courtenay*, the Brother and Successor of *Robert*, married *Martha* of *Luzignan*, Daughter of *John* of *Brienne*, who was King of *Jerusalem*, and was driven out of *Constantinople* by *Michael Paleologus* II. and Grandson of *John Ducas Diplobatazes*, and of *Irene* Daughter of the Emperor *Theodore Lascaris*.

*Michael* who destroy'd these two Pupils, reign'd about 22 Years, and *Andronicus* his Son 43; nay, 50 if we follow some Authors. He was crown'd by the Patriarch *Gregory*, with his two Brothers, *Michael* and *Constantine*: And in his Reign the Lesser *Asia* was divided by the *Turks* into 7 Provinces or Governments, which at last almost all became subject to *Othonian* or *Osman* who had *Bithynia* for his share. This *Andronicus* had great Contests with his Nephew of the same Name, the Son of *Michael*, and fearing some sad Fate might attend him, he took the Tonsure, and changing his Name for that of *Anthony*, went into a Monastery where he died in 1325.

*Andronicus* reign'd about 13 Years, and had two Sons, *John* and *Emanuel*, to whom *John Catacuzenus* was left Tutor or Guardian by *Andronicus Paleologus*. This Guardian who ought only to have govern'd in Conjunction with *Anne*, *Andronicus's* Widow and his two Children, made himself Master of it, and his Wife *Irene* had also the Title of Empress. Notwithstanding he got the Empire into his Hands, he was driven from *Constantinople*, by the Calumny of his Enemies; and not being able to endure this Affront, he made a vigorous War on *Calo-John* which lasted 5 Years, and at the end got Possession of the City. Instead of revenging, as he might, the Injury he had received, he behaved himself with great Clemency, and gave his Daughter *Helena* in Marriage to *Calo-John*, whom he esteem'd and lov'd for his Father's sake. But as it is not easie for two Empresses and two Emperors to agree in one Empire, *Calo-John*, with the assistance of the *Genouese* Fleet, commanded by *Francis Cataluze*, forced *Andronicus* his Father-in-law to quit

the Empire. He comply'd ; and divesting himself of all the Imperial Ensigns in the Palace in 1360. took a Religious Habit, and retired into a Monastery of the Order of *St. Basil*, where he chose the Name of *Joseph*. This is the *John Catacuzene*, who gave his Daughter *Theodora* in Marriage to *Orkan* the Son of *Othoman*, who under the Name of *Christodulus*, hath written in 4 Books, the History of *Andronicus* and his own, and who composed 8 Discourses against the Alchoran when he was a Monk.

*John*, to acquit himself of the Obligation which he had to *Cataluze*, gave him the Isles of *Mitylene* and his Sister. But he well perceived some time after, that by reigning alone, he was neither more secure, nor more prosperous, since he was forced to have recourse to *Amurath*, who then reign'd by the death of *Urchan*, and to become his Tributary. *Andronicus* the Son of *Calo-John* usurped the Empire of *Constantinople*, and put his Father in Prison, with his Brother *Emanuel* ; who making his Escape, became Emperor by the assistance of *Bajazet* the Son of *Amurath*, on condition that he should depend on the Sultan, and give him *Philadelpia*, 27 Miles South East from *Sardes*, at the Foot of the Mountain *Tmolus*, and the only place of *Asia* that remained in the Hands of the Emperors of *Constantinople*. It paid him 3 Millions of Gold a Year, and is the same City which the *Turks* call *Allah-Scheye*, or the City of God.

He had by the Empress *Helena* his Wife, *John*, *Andronicus*, *Emanuel*, *Theodorus*, *Demetrius*, *Thomas*, *Constantine*. *John* succeeded him and reign'd 24 Years. *Andronicus* died of the Leprosie. It was he who had *Thessalonica* for his Appannage, and who sold it to the *Venetians*, out of the Aversion that he had to his Brother *John*. *Theodorus* was sent to his Uncle of the same Name, who was Despot of the *Morea*, and Son-in-law to *Regnier Acciajoli* the Florentine, Prince of *Athens*. This Nephew who married an Italian of the House of *Mala Testa*, hoped to succeed his Brother *John* ; and in prospect of it, set out for *Constantinople*, leaving his Principality to his Brother *Constantine*, which fell to him by the other's Death.

*Constantinople* had great Wars to maintain against the *Turks*, whom he often beat, and also took from them some Places. But when *Amurath* had made himself Master of *Heraclea*, he despair'd of success, and thought it his best way to buy Peace of his Enemy, for some Tribute. Being call'd to the Empire, for fear he should make himself Master of it by Force, if they prefer'd *Demetrius* or *Thomas* before him, he divided the *Morea* between his two Brothers, of whom the first had *Sparta*, and the other *Corinth*. Out of mutual Jealousie, which grew to an invincible Aversion, each of these two Brothers had recourse to the Protection of the *Turk*, who dispossest them both of their Provinces. After the Death of *Thomas*, *Emanuel*, with the greatest Impudence retired to the Emperor *Mahomet*, who made him close Prisoner, and his Brother *Andrew* who was not very wise in his Marriage, married a Whore at *Rome*, by whom he had two Daughters, *Helena* and *Zoe*. The first married *Eleazar*, Prince of *Servia*, the Son of *George*; and for *Demetrius* you may consult *Chalcondylas*, *Crusius*, and *Sanfovin*.

*Mahomet* seeing the Empire of the *Greeks* in disorder, resolved to conquer it, and do more than *Bajazeth* and *Amurath*, who had unsuccessfully besieged *Constantinople*. After he had made his Preparations, he built the Fort of *Semocopia*, on the Coast of the *Propontis* on *Europe* side to prevent any Succours coming that way, and to have a free Passage into *Asia*. He employ'd an incredible number of Workmen to build or reit the Ships and Vessels which he had occasion of, and to cast Field-Pieces of so prodigious a size, that two hundred and fifty Oxen and two thousand Pioneers were necessary to draw one of them into the Field: *Mahomet* himself would be present at the Siege of this City, which began the 9th of *April*, 1453. which he attack'd by Land with four hundred thousand Men, and with above 30 Gallies, and 200 Ships by Sea. On this last side, the Walls were not very strong; but altho' the first was not very high, it was double, and defended also with two good Ramparts, lined with hewn Stone. Whilst the *Greek* Emperor vigorously defended the first, the *Turk* mounted two  
Field-



Field-Pieces which carried two hundred pound Balls, and because these shot side-ways to shake the Walls, they shot another in front to beat down what the two others had loosned. The *Fanizaries* covered with Gabions and Sheds of Wood, immediately shot so great a quantity of Arrows, that the besieged durst no more appear; and *Mahomet* on another had raised four great Towers on wooden Engines, whence they threw a great quantity of Lances and Fire-pots, to favour the work of those who were continually removing the Earth.

There was but one thing that gave *Mahomet* disquiet, which was that the *Greeks* had laid a very strong Chain from the Town of *Galata* to secure their Ships in this Port. But the Sultan, who found himself no other ways embarrassed but by this Obstacle, had sixty of his Ships haled, which with the strength of Arms were raised up to the top of the Hill with their Sails and Equipments, and drew them down into the Port, under the favour of Fire and Arrows. In this Posture he attack'd the City with such vigour, that the *Greeks* being persuaded by *Issmael*, the Brother of *Scender* or *Alexander* Prince of *Sinope*, a City of *Paphlagonia*, on the Black Sea, sent a Message for an Accommodation, He hearkned to the Envoy's Proposals, and demanded 10 Millions of Gold to raise the Siege. But when he understood that they valued their Money more than their Liberty, he made the Assault; and on the 9th of May, 1453. he made himself Master of *Constantinople*, the Siege whereof he had begun the 9th of April of the same Year. *Constantine* was slain in the Fight, according to some Accounts, or smothered as others say in the press of People, who thought of nothing but saving themselves. The *Turks* who slew 40,000 Men, had three Days to satisfy their Cruelty, their Avarice, and their brutal Passion. They found but too much matter for it in the private Houses, in the Palaces, in the Monasteries, and in the Churches; and they got so great a Booty, that it was a common saying afterwards, to express any Man to be very rich, That he was at the taking of *Constantinople*.

The

(i) The curious may have read that when *Constantine* built this City, a Fire seem'd to descend from Heaven; and that when *Mahomet* had no other Thoughts but of raising the Siege, after the Losses he had sustain'd, they saw in a clear Night, a Fire which went out of *Constantinople*; and that the Sultan cried out, *That God refused this City his Protection*. Another Author, who was present, saith, That this Light was seen by the besieged, who turn'd this new Prodigy to their advantage; that the Sultan frighted at such a sight resolved at last to retire; but on the Eve of his Departure, the same Light having appeared over the City, and departed from it, he concluded that it had God no longer for his Protector. He gave the Assault the next Day; and the Success sufficiently shews that the Consequence he drew was but too just. To this Sight, they add something that to me seems yet stranger; That *Mahomet* riding on Horseback in *Constantinople*, after the taking of it, and seeing a brass Serpent with three Heads upon a Stone Pillar, he broke the lower Jaw of it with a stroke of a Club, and that afterwards a great number of Serpents were seen in this City. (k) *Leunclavius*, who hath remarked this particular, says also that the Sultan having caused a Horse in Brass in, on which was the Statue of a Man, to be demolished, this City hath been since subject to the Plague, which was not known before; and may have ascribed this vertue to *Talismans*, which were put in this Jaw of the Serpent, and in the Statue.

They who have believed that there is a certain fatality in Names, have observed that the City of *Constantinople*, which had its Name from *Constantine* the Great, was taken in the Reign of *Constantine Paleologus*; and have reported some Examples of this Nature. The *Persian* Empire was first founded under *Darius* of *Media*,

---

(i) John Fillifacus *select.* l. 1. c. 9. fol. 140. George Phranzes, l. 3. *Histor.* c. 13.

(k) *Leunclavius Annal. Othman.* p. 29. It is also mentioned in the Voyage of Mr. de Breves. In that of Stochove. In the unheard of Curiosities of Gaffaret, &c.

*dia*, and was destroyed under *Darius Codomannus*. At *Rome* the Reign of the Kings ended under *Brutus*, and the true Empire began there under *Brutus* the Murtherer of *Julius Cæsar*. This same Empire which was established under *Augustus*, was ruin'd in the West under *Momillus*, or *Augustulus* the Son of *Orestes* a Goth by Nation. The Kingdom of *Macedon* grew famous and formidable under *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*, and had no legal Kings after *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*.

However that be, if *Constantinople* had fal'n into any other Hands but that of the *Turks*, there had been no great reason to have pity'd or regretted its Emperors, who were crown'd, dyed all over with the Blood of their Masters, or their nearest Relations, who made Profession of Christianity, and exceeded the most barbarous People in cruelty.

---

*The End of the Second Tome.*

---

---

THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
WORLD.

---



---

BOOK V.

---

*Of the Emperors of the West. The most considerable Actions in the World under the Western Emperors.*

CHAP. I.

Charles the Great, the Son of Pepin, surnam'd the Short or Little, and of Berthe or Bertrade, and Grandson of Charles Martel, was not born at Ingelheim, nor at Wormes in the Lower Palatinate, as the Generality of Historians have recorded it; but in a small Town of Thuringen, in the Year of the World, 4712. of our Lord, 742. He himself informs us where  
the



the Place of his Birth was: And \* they who will have better Memoirs for the proof of a Point of this Importance than that Emperor had, may make use of it, and charge this Record with falshood. He was Christen'd by St. Boniface Archbishop of Mayence or Mentz, who had Crown'd Pepin, when Chilperick the last King of the Family of Clovis was depos'd, and when the Estates assembled at Soissons, sent him into a Cloyster, as having but a small share of Understanding.

Charles was train'd up in the Latin and Greek Tongue, in Philosophy, in Astronomy, in the Mathematicks, and Musick: And he had for his Preceptors, Peter or Paul of Pisa, and Aimoin and Alcuinus. To the four Winds of the four Quarters of the World, he added eight more of 'em, which are collateral, and he gave them their Names. He compos'd a Grammar in his own Mother Tongue; and by some Verses which we have of his to this Day, one may conclude that Poetry was now and then his Diversion. He had a strong Constitution, and was of a high Stature, he had a cheerful Countenance, and a fresh Complexion; his Head was round, his Eyes large and sprightly; he had a Hawk's Nose, a thick and short Neck, a clear Voice, a full Belly, his Gait being rather steady than stately.

He had several Wives, Hermengarde whom some call Theodora, the Sister or Daughter of Didier the King of the

---

\* *Donamus & tradimus Domino nostro Salvatore, Sanctoque Bonifacio Martyri, qui in Fuldensi requiescet Monasterio, terram conceptionis nostræ, hoc est, totam comprovinciam circa flumen Unstrut; ipsamque cohortem nostram in Vergalana cum omnibus compertinentiis Sacris, & cum omnibus villis longe & prope positis quæ ad eam respiciunt.* Verba sunt ipsius Caroli Magni in donatione reperta inter Chartas Manuscriptas traditionum Abbatix Fuldensis factarum. Christoph. Bræwerus Soc. Jesu, i. e. *Antiquitatibus Fuldensibus*: Thomas Reinefius, lib. 11. *variar. Lction.* c. 16. p. 257. Christoph. Adam Rupertus *Observatione in synopsis Bæfoldi minorem*, c. 16. p. 597. & 598.

the Lombards, who was chosen for him by his Mother *Berthe*, and yet he lived not with her a whole Year : Some are of Opinion that he parted with her, because she could not relolve to become a Christian. His second Wife was *Hildegarde* the Daughter of *Hildebrande* Duke of *Suevia*, and of *Rutgarde* of *Bavaria*, by whom he had *Charles*, *Pepin*, and *Louis*, his Succesor. She died at *Thionville*, the last day of *April* in 783. and was interr'd in the Church of *St. Arnou* of *Metz*. He had also four Daughters, *Rothrude* or *Rothmonde* betroth'd to *Constantine* the Greek Emperor, the Son of *Leo* the Fourth : But the Espousals were null'd by the Empress *Irene*, *Constantine's* Mother. His other Daughters were *Berthe* Wife of Count *Anglebert*, afterwards Abbot of *St. Requier* ; *Gizele* or *Gillette* baptiz'd at *Milan* by the Archbishop of *Tours* in the Year 781 ; *Hildegarde* and *Adelaide* who died young. By *Fastrade* his third Wife, the Daughter of *Raoul* or *Rodolfe* Duke of *Frankenland*, He had *Theodora* or *Thetgrade* Abbess of *Argenteuill* near *St. Dennis* in *France* ; *Hiltrude*, or *Hiltetrade* ; and some add *Rothrude*. *Fastrade* died at *Francfort* and was buried at *St. Alban's* in *Maience*. *Lutgarde* his fourth Wife, if yet it be true that he was the fourth time married, brought him no Children, but he had some Mistresses more fruitful than she was. By *Geswinde* a Saxon he had *Alderude*, by *Reine*, *Dreux* Bishop of *Metz*, *Hugh* Duke of *Burgundy*, Father or Son-in-law to *Robert* the strong, a Marquis of *France*, Earl of *Anjou*, and Father of *Petronilla*, who was the Mother of *Inglebert* Earl of *Anjou* and *Gastinois*, and Lord of *Amboise*. He had by *Adeline* a Son call'd *Thierry* or *Theodoric* ; by *Himmeltrude*, *Pepin* being crooked and lame, but of a beautiful Face, who being immoderately ambitious of a Crown, often conspir'd against his Father ; and not being able to make the best use of his Goodness, his Admonitions, and his Threats, was at last thrown into the Abby of *St. Gal* to be a Monk there, and thence remov'd into the Abby of *Prum* in the Diocese of *Treves*. These Marriages and Amours are not prov'd by the clearest Evidence, because *Charles* the Great's Wives and Mistresses have often been placed together unidistinguish'd by the Germans

mans and \* French, and the Age of that Emperor is extremely obscure. France was divided between Charles, who had the western part of it, and his Brother Carloman that was King of *Austrasia, Burgundy, Provence*, and of a part of *Germany*. This Man grown jealous of his Brother's Glory, secretly stir'd up against him Hunaud of *Guienne*, or *Aquitain*, and King Didier in *Italy*. Charles having suddenly seized *Poitiers, Xainte, and Angouleme*, marches with speed against Hunaud, who refused the Allegiance he ow'd him, in hopes of being made Duke of *Guienne*. The Rebel falls into the Hands of his King, who pardon'd him, let him still live, and enjoy his Estate, and yet could not hinder his withdrawing into *Lombardy*. Carloman being dead in the Year 771. Charles reign'd alone, and carry'd the War into *Italy*. He routed Didier King of the *Lombards* at *Verceil*; and the Citizens of *Spoletto*, of *Reati*, of *Ancona*, open'd their Gates to the Conqueror. Didier, who had endured ten Months Siege, straitned by Famine and Pestilence, with which this City was afflicted, surrenders to Charles in 774. who fail'd not to give back to the Pope what the *Lombard* had taken from him; and the Pope banished him either to *Liege* or *Lions*, with his Wife and Children. By this means the Kingdom of *Italy*, which had been in the Possession of the *Lombards* 206 Years, fell under the Power of Charles, who to gratify the Pope confirm'd the Donations which his Father *Pepin* had made to the Church. He was afterwards, according to Custom, crown'd King of *Italy* at *Monza* upon the *Lambro* in the *Milanez*. The War that he made with the *Saxons*, which lasted 30 Years, being brought to an end; that People with the most eminent Persons of their Principality, and with *Wittekind* their Duke or King, renounced Paganism, and were willing to be baptized. He defeated in two Battels Rabbob King of the *Frisons*, an avow'd Enemy of all Christians, and drove him away: He beat  
the

---

\* Voyez Jean. Thurmair d'Aversberg connu sous le nom de Jean Aventin, Regnio Pantaleoni, Castrivius Pommerius, Parradin, Messieurs de St. Marthe, &c.

the Hungarians in 791 ; he went into Spain against the Saracens, took Pampelune, and Saragossa, and subdued Navarre, and Aragon. In the Year 804, he Captivated the Bohemians, and Sclavonians ; a while after he made War upon the Danes, and took Hamborough, which he gave up again to Hemming, Godefroy's Successor in the Kingdom of Denmark.

Over and above the extraordinary Actions by which he purchased the Sirname of Great, he instituted, or laid the Foundation of twelve Bishopricks in Germany, he Founded many Colleges and Universities : And in 770, he solemnly conven'd a Council at Wormes, and in 794, another at Frankfort, upon the Mein. In the former there was an Injunction laid upon those who had taken Holy Orders to forbear all Military Employments. In the latter, stiled a Plenary Council, because it was made up of no less than about Three Hundred French, Italian, and German Bishops, the Heresy of Felix Bishop of Orange was condemned, and that of Helipand Bishop of Toledo, who both of 'em asserted, That our Lord Jesus Christ is the Son of God, not by Nature, but only by Adoption.

Though he had not deserv'd the Empire by his Piety, and his Justice by his Courage and Understanding, yet his Right to it was unquestionable : since Irene the Empress made a Grant of it to him, which was confirmed by Nicephorus, and by Michael his Successor ; Since upon the Overthrow of Didier, Italy became subject to him : Since the Romans unanimously stiled him Cesar or Augustus, and since in this Character he was by Leo the III, Crowned at Rome, in the Year Eight Hundred. He died being 72 Years old, at Aix la Chapelle, in the Year of our Lord 814, having been a King Forty six Years, within four Months ; and Emperor Thirteen Years, one Month and four Days.

Lewis surnamed the Debonair, or Gracious, born in the Castle of Chassenuil in Agenois, was proclaimed Emperor in 813, whilst his Father was still living, and was the Heir of all his Dominions, except the Kingdom of Italy, which Charles had bestowed upon Bernard the Son of Pepin. He had two Wives, Hermengarde the Daughter of Ingram, or Ingelram, of the House of Saxony, and he



had by her *Lotharius*, *Pepin*, *Lewis*, and four Daughters. By *Judith* the Daughter of *Velpor* the First Earl of *Altorf* or *Ransberg*, he had *Charles* who was after named the *Bald*. He made *Lotharius* his First-born, King of *France*, and admitted him likewise to a Partnership in the Empire ; he declared *Pepin* King of *Aquitain*, but he kept *Lewis* near him, and gave him the Title of King of *Italy*.

He sent some Forces to *Harald*, or *Haroud* King of *Denmark*, against the Son of *Godfrey*, and after *Harald* had been driven out of his Kingdom, he put him in possession of *Friseland*. Having had notice given him that *Lewis* Duke of *Bosnia* and *Sclavonia*, of *Stiria* and of great part of *Austria*, rais'd new Commotions against him ; He set upon him vigorously, and forced him to retreat from *Dalmatia*. In 819, *Borna* the Emperor's General pursued the Duke : and the Victory a long time was dubious, and hung in an equal Balance between them. In 820, he sent Three Great Armies against him, and in 822, by another Army of his, this Rebel was put to Flight and Slain. In the Year 824, the Emperor went to *Rouen*, after having taken Hostages of the *Bretons*, whose Country his Sons *Pepin* and *Lewis* had laid Waste with Three Armies. In 825, the *Saracens* were driven out of *Italy*.

*Bernard* his Nephew, King of *Italy*, rebelling against him, the Emperor order'd two great Armies to March against him. *Bernard* not being in a Condition to oppose him, and seeing himself almost forsaken by those who had flatter'd him with fair Promises, thought wisely enough, that the best Course he could take would be to surrender himself and his Accomplices to the Discretion of their Enemy. However, his Case was never the better for it ; and *Lewis* after the rate he avenged himself, could not then be called *Meek* and *Merciful*. He put out his Eyes ; and forasmuch as upon that Usage he died three Days after, he was buried in the Church of *St. Ambrose* at *Milan*. The most eminent of his Courtiers were doom'd either to the severest Punishment, or banish'd ; and *Anselm* Bishop of *Milan*, and

\* *Theo-*

\* *Theodulfe* Bishop of *Orleans* were in the number of the latter. 'Tis true indeed, that by chance passing by the Prison he expressly commanded that *Theodulfe* should be discharged for a Hymn he had heard him sing, with which he was infinitely delighted.

*Lotharius*, *Pepin*, and *Lewis*, not being able to endure *Charles* the Son of *Judith* should be preferred before them, in 830, openly rebell'd, seiz'd the Emperor, and put *Judith* into a Monastery. The next Year *Lewis* was resettled in all his Rights; and in 833 by Reason of the Conspiracy of his Three Sons, and by the Determination of the States of the Empire, he was constrain'd to throw up the Authority with which he had been invested. In the Year 834, He was re-established, and after he had suffer'd much from the Jealousy, Ingratitude, and Ambition of his Sons, he died in 840, and was bury'd near his Mother *Hildegarde*, in the Church of *St. Arnou* of *Metz*, by his Natural Brother *Dreux*, the Bishop of that City. He reign'd 26 Years, four Months, and 24 days, and was sixty four when he died.

*Lotharius* the Ist, Married *Hermengarde* the Daughter of *Earl Hugh*; and he had by her *Lewis* who succeeded him, *Lotharius*, and *Charles*. Having been sent into *Italy* to have an Eye to what concerned the State of the *Lombards*, by *Lewis* the Gracious in 823, he resided at *Rome*, where *Pascal* the First of that Name, the Successor of *Stephen*, Crown'd him. He was left Emperor by his Father's Will: and as the Inheritance of his Brothers gave him Jealousie, and since he was willing to seize it; they joyn'd their Forces, and defeated him at *Fontenay* near *Auxerre*, the 25th of *June* in 841; and some Historians affirm that they fought with such Eagerness that more than a Hundred Thousand Men were killed in that Battle. Being grown nothing wiser by his Defeat, he went the following Year into *Germany*, and when he had got together New Forces, he was there beaten near *Strasburgh*, and found out an Expedient to bring Mat-

Q 2

ters

---

\* *Theodolphe* Abbe de *St. Benoist* sur la *Loire*, & depuis Eveque d' *Orleans*, mourut vers l'an huit cens vingt un.

ters to an Agreement. The Roman Empire, that is to say, *Rome*, all *Italy*, *Belgia*, which from his Name *Lotharius* was call'd *Lorraine*, shut up between the *Scheld* and the *Rhine*, with *Provence* and *Burgundy* fell to the Emperor's Share: *Lewis* had assign'd him all *Germany* quite up to the *Rhine*, with three Villages beyond it; and *Charles* got for his part all the Western Provinces of *France*, from the *Meuse*, even to the Ocean of *Bretagne*, formerly call'd *Armorica*. But repining that he was not able to be the Sovereign and Lord of his Two Brothers, or repenting that he had most unrighteously declared War against them, as well as against *Lewis* the Gracious, or out of the Disgust he had for Worldly things, of the uncertainty of which he could not but have a sufficient Knowledge, he made himself a Monk in the Abby of *Prum*; and there ended his Days, on the 29<sup>th</sup> of *September*, 855. He reign'd about 15 Years after the Death of his Father; and considering his different and inconsistent Inclinations, it would be hard to determine whether he were to be reckon'd in the Number of the Good, or the Bad Princes.

*Lewis* the Son and Successor of *Lotharius*, Born in 829, ascended the Imperial Throne in 855, upon the 29<sup>th</sup> Day of *September*. He too was declared Emperour whilst his Father was Living, and under that Character, and as King of *Italy*, was in 844, by *Sergius* the II<sup>d</sup>, Crown'd at *Rome*. *Lewis* Marry'd *Engelberge*, named by some *Hermengarde*, the Daughter of *Ethicon Velfe*, the Son of *Velfe* the First Earl, or Duke of *Altorf*, to whom the Emperor made a Grant of one part of *Bavaria*. By *Engelberge* he had *Hermengarde* betrothed to *Basilus* the Macedonian Emperor of *Constantinople*, and who in the Year 876, was forcibly conveyed away by *Boson* the Brother of *Richilda*, the Wife of *Charles* the Bald. *Eve-rard Berenger*, the Son of the Count of *Friuli*, was the Guardian of this Princess: and 'twas by the consent of *Berenger*, that she was carried off by *Boson* Earl of *Ardenne*, whom *Charles* created Duke of *Pavia*, and King of *Provence*. In 866, *Lewis* went into *Italy*, from whence he drove the *Saracens*: He took their Sultan, kill'd their other General, and recover'd the City *Benevent*, and  
other

other Places, which by the Influence of the *Greeks* had revolted from him. He stopped the Irruptions of the *Normans* into *France*, and at last forc'd *Ageldise* the Prince of *Salerno*, whom the *Greeks* had gain'd to their Side, to secure himself in the Isle *Corfica*. This Emperor, that was Just, Generous, Valiant, Learned and Religious, reigned 19 Years, Ten Months, and Eight Days, being mightily satisfied with what fell to his share. He died in 875, at *Milan*, and was interred in *St. Ambrose's Church*. *Engelberge* who had endowed a Monastery at *Placentia*, enter'd her self among the Nuns, after her Husband's Death, and was Abbess of *Pavia*,

*Charles* surnamed the Bald, Married *Hermentruda* the Daughter of *Vodon*, and *Ingeltrude*; and *Richilda*, or *Richenbenda*, *Boson's* Sister, of whose Body he begot *Lewis* surnamed the *Stammerer*, *Lotharius*, *Charles*, and *Carloman*. This last had his Eyes put out for conspiring against his Father, who had taken him to Court from among the Ecclesiasticks. *Charles*, designed for the Throne of *Aquitain*, was killed by *Alboin* a famous *Wrestler*, who having given him a Fall, as they were Wrestling, broke his Back, not knowing him. *Lotharius* died Young, and *Lewis* succeeded *Charles the Bald*. He had also a Daughter whose Name was *Judith*, who was at first Married to *Edelwolf* King of *England*: and who after the Death of the King her Husband, returned to *France*. *Baudouin* surnamed *Iron-Arm*, Earl of *Ardenne*, charm'd with the Beauty of this Princess, was bold enough to run away with her to *Senlis*; and Married her, not having gain'd the Consent of the King her Father. Having not the least prospect of Security, after so great a piece of Rashness, he presently withdrew into *Lorraine*, where *Lotharius* reigned; and being excommunicated by the Pope, he resolv'd to go to *Rome*, where his sincere Humiliation of himself, and the Tears of the Young and Beautiful Princess did so melt his Holiness, that he intreated *Charles* to pardon him.

*Lewis* the II'd being dead, without any Heir left behind him, *Charles* put himself in a Posture to March into *Italy* with an Army: which oblig'd *Lewis* stil'd *Germanicus* to send thither *Charles* and *Carloman*, to bar his En-



trance there. The Emperor met them, entertain'd them, kindly ; he wheedled them a great while with fair Promises, and assured them that he wou'd refer his Claims and Pretences to the Judgment of their Father Lewis. By this Artifice he deluded those Promises ; and in the mean time he made the *Italians* take the Oath of Allegiance to him, and was proclaim'd Emperor at *Rome* by *John* the VIII<sup>th</sup>, on *Christmas* Day, in the Year 875.

He was Close, Proud, Ambitious, Covetous, and Cruel ; and made less noise with his Courage than with his Menaces and Haughtiness. In 845, he purchas'd Peace of the *Normans*, who made Incurfions up to the Gates of *Paris* : who in 850, came into *France* ; and began to settle in *Neustria*, because *Lotharius's* Succour came too late, and because he had not of himself strength enough to oppose them. After they had long ravaged *France*, they went back again to *Denmark*, in 854 ; they return'd in 867 ; they laid waste the Frontier Towns of *Bretagne*, *Poitou* and *Touraine* ; and in 876 they made a New Incurfion, which reduc'd *Charles* to so great a Distress, that he was fain to give them *Neustria*, *Rouen*, and some other considerable Cities. At length after having brought some Trouble upon others, and a great deal of it upon himself, he was Poison'd by *Sedeckias* a Jewish Physician, whom he heartily lov'd and valued, dying on the 16<sup>th</sup> of *October*, in 877. He had a Regard and Friendship for Men of Learning ; he commanded them to translate Arabick Books into Latin : and in a Synod conven'd by him Duels were forbidden, which were commonly us'd by the *French* for the discovery of some Matters of Fact. The Heresy likewise of \* *Godescalcus* was there condemned, who maintain'd, That God died not for all Men, and that he was willing only to save those who are really sav'd.

Lewis firnam'd the *Stammerer*, had Two Wives, *Ansgarde*

---

\* Voyez l'epitre d' *Hincmar* dans l' *Histoire* de *Flodoart*. Liv. 3. Ch. 13. Ce *Flodoart*, qui estoit *Chanoine* de l' *Eglise* de *Rheims*, estoit encore *Cure* de *Cornice*, & Mourut le 28. de *Mars* l' an neuf cent *Soixante-six*.

garde the Daughter of Count *Hardouin*, whom he divorced upon the Injunction of his Father, though he had *Lewis* and *Carloman* by this Venter. His Second Wife was *Adelaide*, the Sister of *Vilfrid*, Abbot of *Flavigni* in *Burgundy*, and he had by her *Charles*, afterwards call'd the *Simple*, whom he never saw, because the Queen who was with Child was not delivered of him till after the death of *Lewis* his Father. This King who is not reckon'd to be an Emperor by the most accurate Historians, died at *Compiègne* the 16th day of *April*, which was *Good-Friday*, in the Year 879 : and 'tis believed too that he was Poison'd.

*Charles* surnamed the *Burly* or *Fat*, was the Son of *Lewis* King of *Germany*, and Grandson of *Lewis* the *Gracious* : his Mother's Name was *Hemma*, his Wife's *Richarda*, the Daughter, according to some Authors, of the King of *Scotland*, whom he divorced from him upon some Jealousy, though he had cohabited with her ten Years. When the first account of this Divorce was brought to her, and when she was told the King swore that he never knew her, she answered, *All this makes for me, since by the Oath of my Husband I am still a Maid.* After the Death of *Lewis*, the Empire fell by right to *Carloman*, *Lewis* the King of *Germany*'s Son ; but seeing he was afflicted with the Palsy, and that that Distemper had taken away the use of his Speech, he yielded it up to *Charles* his Brother, who presently went into *Italy*, from whence he by Force expell'd *Boson*, whom *Charles* the *Bald* had settled as his Vice-Roy there. *Boson* soon withdrew into *Provence*, and advanc'd his Ambition far, since he assum'd the Title of King of *France* to the Prejudice of *Lewis* the *Stammerer*. *Charles* under Colour of assisting them went into *France* ; he made the People there swear Allegiance to him, and returned into *Italy*, in 880, he was Crown'd at *Milan* King of *Lombardy*, and at *Rome* by Pope *John* the *VIIIth*, who put the Imperial Crown upon his Head.

When he had chas'd away the *Saracens* from *Italy*, he was call'd for in *France*, where all things were in Confusion : and in the Year 885, in the Minority of *Charles* the *Simple*, who was as yet but seven Years Old, he

had the Government of the Kingdom. He was chosen, because he was then a potent Prince, and because there appeared not any Signs that might forebode that he should at length lose his Understanding. All he did against the *Normans* was inconsiderable, and he agreed also by a Treaty in 887, that he would furnish them with seven Hundred Pound of Silver, that they might quit *France* in the Month of *March*. The thing being thus adjusted; though they stay'd Six Months in *Burgundy*, where they plunder'd all the Cities and Villages, he enter'd the road for *Germany*, being tortured with a fatal Headach, for which Incisions were necessary, and from that Day to his last he had a blunder'd Understanding. The Great Men of the Kingdom having found him unable to manage the Government; his Subjects of *Bavaria* and *Germany*, by the Advice even of *Hildegard* his Sister did all refuse to obey him: and in November 887, made choice of *Arnou* to fill up his Place. He made some attempt to hinder his Election; but the People of *Lorraine*, and his Domestick Servants forsook him; insomuch that there remained not with him one of the meanest of his Attendants to wait upon him. Whilst he sent *Bernard* his natural Son to the Emperor, whom his People had chosen, to prevail with him at least for a Subsistence; *Luitbert* Bishop of *Maience* having a compassionate Concern for *Charles's* Condition, took care of him, and gave him the Revenue of Three or Four Villages for his Maintenance. His Misery was not of long continuance, he dying on the 8th of *January* 888, six Weeks after he was depos'd; and some are of Opinion that he was strangled by his Enemies.

*Arnou* was the Natural Son of *Carloman* King of *Germany*, the Son of *Lewis* the Gracious; and the King his Father, before his Death gave him the Provinces *Carinthia* and *Stiria*. He had two Wives, *Agnes* the Emperor of *Constantinople's* Daughter, and *Lutgarda* or *Judith* the Daughter of *Ethicon Velfe*, Earl of *Bavaria*. By the first he had *Lewis* the IVth, his Successor, and *Lutgarda*, Married to *Otho*; who after the Death of his Brother-in-law *Lewis* refus'd the Empire. *Arnou* had other Children either Lawful or Natural, and among the latter, Hi-

History sufficiently speaks of *Zundibald*, or *Senebald*, King of *Lorraine*.

*Arnou* assisted his Uncle the Emperor *Charles* in his War which he waged against the *Normans*, and acquir'd so great a Reputation, that *Charles* being besotted and insensible, the Princes of the Empire assembled at *Frankfort*, unanimously agreed that the Nephew should have the Guardianship of his Uncle, and soon after they declared him Emperor.

The Young Prince *Charles* the Simple, being not at Age to Govern the *French*, they resolved to put another King in his Place; and *Arnou* from that time aim'd at the Monarchy. Indeed *Flodoart* says, that after he had refus'd the Crown offer'd to himself, he approv'd the Choice that was made of *Eudes* to be the Young Prince's Guardian. *Eudes* therefore took upon him the Government with the Title of King; he was chosen at *Compiègne*, where Twenty Years before *Robert* the Strong, his Father, had been honoured with the Dignity of a Duke and Marquess of *France*; and he was Crown'd by *Gautier* Archbishop of *Sens*, refusing to be so by *Foulk* Archbishop *Rheims*, who with *Baudouin* Earl of *Flanders*, vigorously oppos'd his Election.

The Victory which *Arnou* gain'd over the *Normans*, who had dispers'd themselves through all *Germany*, was so considerable and complete, that of a Hundred Thousand of those *Barbarians*, there was not one that could escape, and of the Christians there was not one that fell. But more of the same People coming again between the *Rhine*, the *Rhone*, the *Saone*, the *Marne*, the *Seine*, and the Ocean, defeated the Army which he had sent against them, because he was then taken up with the regret he had for the Ingratitude of *Zundebaud*, King of *Sclavonia* and *Moravia*, whom he had made King of *Bohemia* in the Year 890. He pursu'd him so Zealously and Successfully, that being assisted by the King of *Hungary*, he reduc'd him to the necessity of flying into the *Hercynian* Wood, or the Forest of *Bohemia*.

At that time *Berenger* Duke of *Friuli*, and *Guy* Duke of *Spoleto* fancied that, by the strict Alliance they had made betwixt them, they might be able to make themselves



selves Masters of *France*, and by that means to take each of them his share of it. *Guy* having some leading, and very considerable Men of his side in *France*, thought that to get its Crown, he had nothing else to do but to make haste thither. In this presumptuous Belief he gives up *Italy* to *Berenger*, and passes the *Alps* with a very numerous Army. But being inform'd that the *French* had already bestowed the Crown upon *Eudes*, he went back the same way he came, with a Resolution to turn his Forces upon *Berenger*, and to drive him out of *Italy*: being supported by the Pope, and the *Romans* in 889, he gets himself proclaim'd King by those that were in his Interests; he Marches against *Berenger*, who had procured a Coronation at *Pavia*; he beats him in two several Battles near *Plaisance*, and *Bresse*, and forces him to fly on this side the *Alps*. After these Victories he is owned King of *Italy*; he receives the Imperial Crown at *Rome*, and admits his Son *Lambert* as his Partner in the Empire.

*Berenger* who retir'd near *Arnou*, prevails for Succour with the Emperor, who intimating that he had a Design to restore him, marches an Army into *Italy*, and subdues *Lombardy* quite up to *Plaisance*. The War which *Raoul* Duke of *Burgundy* wag'd against him recalling him into *Germany*; about two Years after he returns into *Italy* to assist *Berenger* against *Lambert*, whose Father *Guy* was dead sometime before. Seeing he met with no Opposition, and since the Vigour of his Arms made way for him on all sides; he had no farther regard for *Berenger*, nor thought any more of his Restauration. On the contrary he resolv'd to be worse than his Word, and to keep all that the success of his Sword should give him. In this Prospect he advanc'd his Forces towards *Rome*, which by *Lambert's* Faction, and by the Ambition of *Sergius*, was reduc'd to a deplorable Condition; he invests the City, and takes it by an extraordinary Accident. The Soldiers, as they were working in the Trenches, having by chance started a Hare near *Rome*, follow it: and their Companions run after for the Pleasure of the Chace. Others still joyn them; at last they come to the Foot of the Walls, and make loud Shouts,

Shouts, the Hare being taken. The Besieged surpriz'd at this Noise, the cause of which they could not guess at, imagine themselves storm'd; they quit the Walls which they defended, and the Hunters making their advantage of this opportunity took Ladders, and enter'd the City; where Pope *Formosus*, who in the Schism had more than once begg'd the Emperor's help, crown'd him in *St. Peter's Church*. *Onuphrius* reckons this Coronation to be in 895; and he had need to do so, if it be true that *Formosus* died the 14th of *December* in the same Year; that *Boniface* the VI. who succeeded him the 17th of the same Month possess'd the See but 15 Days, and that *Stephen* the VIII. his Successor was Pope the 16th of *January* in 896.

When he had staid 15 Days at *Rome*, he order'd his Army to go out against *Lambert*, who happily escap'd; but in his Flight died of a great Quantity of Blood which he vomited, His Mother *Engeltrude* having taken Sanctuary at *Fermo*, and seeing her self unable to make head against so great a Power, found a way to engage a Domestick Servant of her Enemy's, and to rid her self of him by a lingring Poison, which made him sleep three days together as soon as he had taken it. Being after grown Paralytick, he retir'd into *Germany*, where he was eaten up of Worms by reason of the virulence of the Poison, which had putrify'd his Inwards, and all the other parts of his Body. He died in this lamentable Case at *Ostinghen* in 899. the 27th of *November*, if we compute from the death of *Charles* his Uncle.

*Lewis* the IV. married *Mathilde*, whom others call *Lutgarde* the Daughter of *Ludolphus* Duke of *Saxony*: She was married young and brought him no Heir. Though he was but seven Years old when *Arnou* died, the Noblemen assembled at *Forcheim* a little City of the Diocess of *Bamberg*, after they had proclaim'd him King order'd his Coronation. They appointed him for his Governours or Tutors, *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, and *Hatton* Archbishop of *Maience*, and for the General of his Forces *Luitpold* of *Bavaria*. *Italy* being in War, he was not crown'd at *Rome*, nor could he go thither by reason of his Domestick Troubles which hindred him from it, and

and which ministred to the Hungarians an opportunity of passing into *Italy* and *Germany*. *Zundebaud* King of *Lorain* bore the Punishment of all the Disorders of which he had been the chief Author, because his Subjects who could not habitually submit to his Oppressions revolted, and saw no readier way to be secur'd from his Tyranny. They resigning themselves to *Lewis*, his Governors conducted him to *Tbionville*: And the Earls, *Stephen*, *Gerard*, and *Matfroy*, mortal Enemies of *Zundebaud*, forced him to come to battel, in which he lost his Life the 3d of *August*, in the Year 900. By his death *Lewis* had peaceable possession of *Lorain*, whither he had been invited by the chief Men of the Kingdom.

During the Minority of *Lewis* there were great Confusions in *Italy* and *Germany*. *Adelbert* Earl of *Bamberg* in *Franconia* disputed about precedency with *Rodolphus*, Bishop of *Vibourg*: And the latter, who was countenanced by *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, and who desir'd to assert his Quality, called in his Brothers *Eberhard* and *Gebhard* to his Assistance, so that it was necessary to come to a Battel for it. *Adelbert* who lost his Brothers in this Fight, being resolv'd to revenge their Death by that of *Conrad*, treacherously kill'd him upon the 27th of *February*, 900. And *Adelbert* by the device of *Hatton* Bishop of *Maience*, fell into the Hands of *Lewis*, who commanded him to be beheaded.

The Hungarians knowing that the Princes of the Empire were divided, plunder'd all the Countries bordering upon *Bavaria*. *Lewis* attack'd, and defeated them, and kill'd also their King *Cusal*. After that, when they had rally'd their Forces they offer'd battel to *Lewis*, which lasted three days; and he was there over-thrown with the greatest, and most considerable part of the Nobility and Gentry. *Lewis* of the Family of *Charlemaign*, the Father of *Arnou* and *Berthold*, to whom some refer the original of the Dukes of *Bavaria*, and of the Palatines of the *Rhine*, was kill'd there by these Barbarians, who having pass'd farther got another Victory in 908. over *Burchard* Landgrave of *Thuringen*, who by his death made his Defeat the more signal. *Burchard*, not leaving Heirs that might succeed him, *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* was by

by *Lewis* invested in *Thuringen*. In the mean time the Hungarians still continu'd their Ravages: And the King, who to free himself from those Infidels, had purchas'd Peace of 'em, and who saw himself despis'd by them after he had vanquish'd them several times, was so melancholy upon it, that he fell sick, and died with Grief in 912. the 21st of *January*. He reign'd twelve Years as some say, and was not full twenty when he dy'd; and by his death the Empire pass'd from our Countrymen the *French* to the *Saxons*.

*Conrad* the first Emperor of the Name, the Son of *Conrad* that was assassinated by *Adelbert*, married *Plaisance* or *Placidia*, the Daughter of *Lewis* the IV. or according to others, the Daughter of *Ludolphus* the Great, Duke of *Saxony*. After the death of *Lewis* the Princes cast their Eye upon *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, the Brother of Queen *Mathilda*. But seeing himself somewhat in Years, and not finding in himself sufficient Vigour, successfully to oppose that mighty Army which the Hungarians had in *Germany*, he begg'd the Princes and Prelates to make Choice of *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*. This was true Greatness of Mind, never to be enough commended, that he should prefer the advantage of the Empire before his own Interest and Glory; and that for that end too he should be the occasion of putting a Crown upon a Prince's Head, who, as he was sensible, was by no means his Friend.

*Conrad* soon found himself engag'd for Action, because *Arnou* Duke of *Bavaria* made a League with the Hungarians against him. But the King drove him out of his Dukedom, and by his Prudence kept other Princes for some time in their Dury. A while after, *Giselbert* Duke of *Lorain*, *Burchard* Duke of *Schawben* or *Suevia*, attended with the Duke of *Bavaria*, invited, or pretended to invite *Charles* the Simple to the Imperial Throne; and the King assisted by *Renier* Earl of *Ardenne*, made such an advantage of this Juncture, that he took part of *Lorain*, of which he appointed the same *Renier* to be the Governor. In the mean time *Conrad* countermin'd and rendred useles all the Designs of his Enemies; and *Berthod* and *Eringer*, *Giselbert's* Brothers having been taken

Pri-



Prisoners, he order'd them to be beheaded. *Henry*, *Otho's* Son added to and strengthen'd the Number of the Seditious and Rebellious: And there was an open War betwixt him and the King. The latter, who had besieg'd him at *Mesburg* in *Schwaben*, was forc'd to raise the Siege; and his Brother *Everhard* the General of his Army was in a Battel utterly defeated.

In 914. the Hungarians, who were not content with the Tribute yearly to be paid them by their Treaty with *Lewis* the IV. made an Incurſion into *Bavaria*: And *Conrad*, who advanc'd an Army against them, vanquish'd them twice, and forc'd them to a Retreat. In 917. being return'd into *Germany*, they assaulted *Saxony*, *Thuringen*, *France*, *Lorain*, and *Alsatia*: And after they had laid waste the City of *Basil*, forced *Conrad* to buy a Peace upon certain Conditions, by which it appears they gave Laws to him. At last he felt sick, and foreseeing that he could not live long, he remembered the regard *Otho* had for him, and without reflecting upon the Revolt of his Son *Henry* from him, he sends *Everhard* his Brother, with some other Persons of Quality, to present him with the Ensigns of the Imperial Dignity. He died in 919, after he had reign'd about seven Years, and was bury'd in the Abby of *Fulden*, the richest of all *Europe*, built by *Pepin* the King of *France*.

*Henry* firnam'd the Fowler, from the delight he had in Fowling, was engag'd in that Sport when *Everhard* brought him the Imperial Habiliments; and one may say that he never pursu'd his Game more auspiciously than on that day. He had two Wives, *Hatburgal* the Daughter of the Earl of *Oldenburgh*, whom he took out of a Cloyſter whither she had retir'd after the Death of her first Husband; and he afterwards divorc'd her by the Advice of *Sigismond* Bishop of *Halberstadt*, who made it appear to him that she being consecrated to God, he could not detain her as his Wife. His second was *Mathilda* the Daughter of *Diderick*, or *Didier* Earl of *Ringelheim*, or as others say, the Daughter of *Lewis* King of *Germany*. By his first Wife he had *Tanquard*, by the second his Successor *Otho*, *Henry* the Contentious, and *Bruno* who was Archbishop of *Cologne*. His Daughters by the

the same Mother were *Mechtilda*, Abbess of *Quidlem-bourg* in Upper Saxony, *Gerberge* married to *Gilbert Duke of Lorain*, and after to King *Lewis Ultramarine*; *Hedwige* or *Avoye*, whom *Hugh the Great Earl of Paris* married; *Rixe* or *Elizabeth*, whom others call *Herpige*, the Wife of *Rodolphus Earl of Bavaria*, the Son of *Arnou* and a fifth married to the Earl of *Herberstein* in *Schwaben*.

His chief Designs were to secure Peace to Germany; and for this reason, *Burchard Duke of Schwaben* the Father-in-Law of *Raoul Duke of Burgundy*, having refus'd to submit to him, he went against him with an Army, which forced *Burchard* to take the Oath of Allegiance to him. *Arnou* after the death of *Conrad* being return'd to *Bavaria*, from whence he had been banish'd, raises Forces with a Resolution to drive away *Henry* from all his Dominions. The Armies were in sight of one another, and both ready to come to Blows, when *Henry* sent an Herald to *Arnou* to demand of him a private Conference. He goes to it, and *Henry* told him that he neither thought 'em barbarous to that degree, nor so little acquainted with the Religion they both profess'd, as not to be fully persuad'd that 'twas Chance nor Fortune, but God alone that establish'd Kings; that he that disobeyes his Commands, resists those of Heaven and Nature. After that he offers him, to live in a perfectly good Understanding with him, that he might keep those Provinces which he desir'd, and enjoy them with all their Rights; but yet at the same time he prohibited him the Stile and Name of King. The Duke, who thought he had been challeng'd to a single Combat, finding nothing but good-nature and Generosity in him from whom he expected only Reproaches, accepted his Overtures; he surrenders himself and his Army to him, he enjoy'd his ancient Rights and Privileges, and particularly, the Nomination of Prelates which in those Days was peculiar to crown'd Heads. Their Reconciliation was strengthen'd by a double Marriage, *Henry* giving his Daughter *Herpige* to *Rodolphus* the Son of *Arnou*, and *Judith Arnou's* Daughter being espous'd to *Henry* the Brother of *Otho* surnam'd the Great, who was the King's Uncle.

*Charles*

*Charles the Simple* having made his Peace at *Bonne* with *Henry*, yielded up the Provinces on this side the *Rhine*, which were intituled the Kingdom of *Lorraine*, at which *Heriberc* or *Hebert* Earl of *Vermandois*, and *Robert* Governor or Duke of *Anjou* by the Death of his Brother *Eudes*, were so incensed that they afterwards made War with *Charles* when they had got him at a Distance from *Henry*. The Armies met near *Soissons*, and *Robert* was presently kill'd in the Fight, which was most bloody. *Hebert* having recollected the Fragments of his Forces, and *Charles* without making use of the Advantage he had over him, having offer'd him Peace, the Earl intreats him to come to *St Quentin's* to settle Affairs betwixt them. *Charles* went thither taking no just Precaution, nor demanding any Hostage: the Earl of *Vermandois* makes him Prisoner, he tells him boldly, that the *French* required a King more Active and Prudent than he was, and convey'd him from the Castle of *Thierry* to *Soissons*, where by his Artifices the Great Persons of the Kingdom being conven'd, those who were of *Hebert's* Faction compell'd him to resign his Crown to the behoof of *Raoul*, the first Prince of the Blood, as being the Son of *Hermengarde* the Daughter of *Lewis*, and the Wife of *Boson* the Duke of *Burgundy*. *Charles* sometime after died with Discontent at this hard usage.

Whilst *Henry* fortified *Ratisbone*, the *Hungarians* made new inroads into *Germany*; and though in Strength he was much inferior to them, yet he got Ground of 'em, insomuch that he took some Commanders of those *Barbarians*, who to get them again, granted him a Truce for nine Years. They returning some time after with Auxiliary Forces from *Sclavonia*, struck a Consternation where they pass'd; they took away the Women and Children, and gave no Quarter to the Men. *Henry*, though indisposed, mounts his Horse, he Musters his Forces in Four Days, he marches to meet them, and besets them so close, that in one Battle near *Messpurg* in *Misnia*, fourscore Thousand of those *Barbarians* were slain. 'Twas for a Memorial of this so great an Expedition that he appointed Turnaments by the Advice of *Philip* his Secretary, and of Fifteen Lords

or Knights who drew the Plans and Designs of them. They were of Opinion by the Publick Laws absolutely to exclude from them all Gentlemen who were match'd with ignoble Women, and to deny all Blasphemers, Drunkards, Cowards, Robbers, and Adulterers admittance to them. *Volfius* says, that we are beholden to *Henry* for so rare an Invention. But it is certain that in the Year 870, *Charles*, and *Lewis* the Son of *Lewis* the Gracious, instituted a magnificent Turnament after they had agreed about their Partition, as *Nithard* has well observed, where he speaks of the Reconciliation of these two Princes, and that the French, German, Saxon, Lombard, and English Knights made that shew Glorious by their Habits, their Emulation, and Skill.

In 925, *Henry* led an Army against the *Vandals* towards the *Oder* and the *Haver* in the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*; and reduc'd them to so great Extremity, that they were fain to retreat to the City of *Schorlis*, which as some say, is the present City of *Brandenburg*, where they fancy'd that they should be strong enough to deal with him. But he forc'd them to surrender; and to prevent their Incurfions for the future, he settled there for Governor *Sifroy* Earl of *Ringelheim*, who was afterwards the first Marquess of *Brandenburg*. They who are ever so little Bookish, know, that *Marquess* comes Originally from the Word *March*, which in the German Language signifies *Frontiere*, *Bound*, or *Limit*, and that those Persons whose Business it was, to secure the Frontiers, were call'd Governors, Earls and Marquesses of Cities.

The *Vandals* being neither able to live in Peace themselves, nor to let others do so; *Henry* in 927, March'd against them, and overthrew them. When they returned some time after, he sent *Bernard* Duke of *Lunenburgh* against them; and there were kill'd of them to the number of a Hundred and Twenty Thousand. Besides these Wars, he undertook another against the *Danes*, and subdued their King *Gormon*; he settled the Marquisate of *Sleswick*; he subjected the *Sclavonians*; he made the *Dalmatians* his Tributaries; he seiz'd *Prague*; he forc'd *Boleslaus* King of *Bohemia* to dismiss the Christi-



ans whom he detained Prisoners, and to take to himself him the Oath of Allegiance, which all the Princes of Germany take to their Emperors. After he had restored Peace to his Dominions, he resolved to travel beyond the Alps; but being seiz'd with an Apoplectical Fit, which turned to a Palsy, he nam'd his Son *Otho* for his Successor: He died the 22<sup>d</sup> of July, in 936, which was his Sixtieth Year. He reign'd 17 Years and Six Months; and was interred at *Quedlinbourg*, in a Monastery which he was Founder of, and of which he had made his Daughter *Mathilda* the Lady Abbess.

*Otho*, whom we should call *Hatton*, according to the Old † Inscriptions, surnamed from his Great Actions the Great, had two Wives; *Edithe* the Daughter of *Edmond* King of England, who died in 947, and *Adelais* the Daughter of *Raoul* Duke of Burgundy, the Widow of *Lotharius* King of Italy. By the first he had two Sons *Ludolphus* Duke of *Schwaben*, *William* Bishop of *Maienne*; and two Daughters, *Lutgarde* married to *Conrad* of *Francia*, and *Mathilda* who was Abbess of *Quedlinbourg*. By *Adelais* he had Three Sons, *Henry*, *Bruno*, and *Otho* his Successor, and *Adelais* or *Avoye* the Wife of *Hugh* the Great, the Earl of *Paris*, and Mayor of the Palace.

*Sigefroy*, or *Sifroy* Marquess of *Brandenburg* dying without an Heir in 937, *Tanquard* whom the Germans call *Dankwerd*, the Son of *Arnou*, and *Hatburge*, was willing to succeed him in the Marquisate, and the King preferred Earl *Geron* before him. There was no need of more to exasperate *Tanquard*, who having enter'd a strict League with *Eberhard*, laid Siege to *Bardewick*, where *Henry*, *Otho's* Brother was, whom *Eberhard* imprison'd. The King enraged, at this Revolt pursues *Tanquard*, and by Force takes *Euresburg*, or *Brandenburg*, if we refer our selves to some Authors about it. *Tanquard* who had shut himself up there, seeing things desperate, fled into a Church, as a place which should have been Inviolable, and truly a Sanctuary: but the Soldiers not knowing him, made an end of him in the general Slaughter, and the Rebels were severely punish'd. *Eberhard* not being able

---

† *Hatto*, post *Hatto*; regnavit tertius *Hatto*.

able to carry things further, sent back *Henry*, and by the Intercession of the Archbishop of *Maienne* was reconciled to *Otho*, who after he had kept him a while a Prisoner, restor'd to him his former Dignity. In the Year 939, having forgot the Favour which he had received, he made a League with *Henry* the Emperor's Brother; and they firmly engag'd in their Party *Giselbert* King of *Lorraine*, *Frederick* Archbishop of *Maience*, and *Rhotard* Bishop of *Strasburg*. While they were gathering their Army together, *Otho* prevented them: and when he had observed that they charged upon about Two Hundred Soldiers who had just past the *Rhine*, he landed; and having set upon them both in the Front and Rear, forc'd 'em to run away. *Henry* having escap'd was besieg'd at *Merspurg*, and found a way to secure himself tho' the City was taken. In 941, the Rebels carried the War into *Lorain*; and they call'd thither *Lewis Ultramarine*, the Son of *Charles the Simple*, who in hopes of retrieving the Kingdom, had already seized of *Alsatia*. *Otho* being told this News, leads his Forces thither, besieges *Brizac*; and the Bishops of *Maience*, and *Strasburgh*, who were in open Rebellion corrupted one part of his Army, and went to *Metz* to meet with others of their Faction, who tarried for them there. Moreover *Eberhard* and *Giselbert* who plunder'd some Countries of *Germany*, and took booty up almost to *Otho's* Camp, were defeated by his General *Udon*, and *Conrad*. *Eberhard* was kill'd in the Fight; and *Giselbert* being willing to make his escape in a Boat, was drown'd in the *Rhine*, with many others. *Lewis Ultramarine* seeing *Lorraine* subjected to *Otho*, and finding himself unable to cope with a King who had got of his Side *Hugh the Great*, *Hebert* Earl of *Vermandois*, *Arnou* Earl of *Flanders*, and the Duke of *Normandy*; was glad enough to accept a Peace, and for the Ratification of his Alliance with *Otho*, to Marry *Gerberge* the Widow of *Gilbert*, who was drown'd in the *Rhine*.

Whilst he was taken up with these Intestine Wars, *Boleslaus* Duke of *Bohemia* who had murder'd *Vencelaus* for embracing Christianity, took up Arms against the Emperor, and made use of Fire and Sword against his Neighbours. *Otho* upon their Request for Assistance

sent Count *Esichon* with an Army, who had at first some Advantage over 'em, but who was afterwards defeated, which made *Otho* go in Person to fall upon 'em, and having destroyed one part of 'em, and forc'd the rest to pay him Tribute, he returned into *Germany* crown'd with Praise and Glory. *Boleslaus* being insolent and haughty upon the Victory he got over *Esichon*, continued the War till 942, and seeing himself at last reduc'd to Extremity, he begg'd the Emperor's Pardon, and had experience of his Mercy. The same Year the Hungarians having divided their Troops, enter'd into *Saxony*, from whence they were beaten back ingloriously; and in 955, they marched into *Germany* with an Army much more numerous than any of those they brought before. *Otho*, who had an Army made up of the Inhabitants of *Bavaria*, *Schwaben*, *Saxony*, *Franconia*, and *Bohemia*, beat them near *Ausburgh*, and the Victory which he obtained was so great, that there was neither King nor Emperor before him who had gain'd one so absolute and complete for Two Hundred Years. *Conrad*, *Otho's* Son-in-law, and *Burchard* Duke of *Schwaben*, were kill'd in this Battle; and three little Kings of *Hungary* were sent to *Henry*, who order'd them to be hang'd. After he had twice forc'd *Hugh* to set at Liberty *Lewis Ultramarine*, after he had rescu'd the Dutch, or Low-country-men, and the Burgundians from under the Power of *France*, after he had compell'd *Harald* King of *Denmark* to become his Homager, and own him for his Lord, he made some Journeys into *Italy*, being invited thither by the greatest part of the Prelates, and the Pope himself.

In 950, *Lotharius* being dead, and *Berenger* the III'd of that Name having been proclaim'd King of *Italy* and *Lombardy* at *Verona*, imagin'd that in order to be absolute, there remain'd no more to do but to possess himself of *Pavia*, which *Adelais* the Widow of *Lotharius* had settled upon her. To make himself Master of it, he design'd to Marry his Son *Adelbert* to the Queen, who much slighted this Match by reason of the Resentment she had for the Outrages done to the King her Husband, and to her Father-in-law *Berenger*; enraged at this Repulie besieges *Pavia*, and soon takes it; he seized *Adelais*,

*laid*, and shut her up in a Castle, from whence she found a way to make her escape, by the Conduct and Fidelity of a Priest that was her Chaplain. *Berenger* being informed that upon the Recommendation of *Adelard* Bishop of *Reggio*, she was retir'd to, and receiv'd by Count *Atbo*, led an Army against the Count, who wrote to the Emperor, importuning him to assist the Queen, and to consider seriously, that when he shall have driven away *Berenger*, and chosen *Adelais* for his Wife, he may soon be the Sovereign of *Italy*. He had sent thither *Ludolphus* his Son, who made no great Progress; but he entering *Italy* the next Year with Fifty Thousand Men, took *Verona*, rescu'd and married the Queen, and in 952, return'd to *Germany* with her. He left in *Italy*, *Conrad* his Son-in-law, who forc'd *Berenger* to go into *Saxony* to beg Peace of *Otho*, who reinstated him in *Italy* upon Condition of paying him a certain yearly Tribute, and of quitting all Pretences to the Marquisate of *Verona* and *Aquileia*. *Conrad* and *Ludolphus* being stark mad that he had given back *Italy* to *Berenger*, plotted against the Emperor, who when he had brought them to Reason, had the Goodness to forgive them.

*Berenger* having rais'd fresh Troubles in *Italy*, *Otho* thought himself oblig'd to pass the *Alps* with an Army. He made *Berenger's* Wife a Prisoner, whom he besieged Two Months in an Island, and the next Year he took *Berenger*, whom he banish'd with his Wife into *Germany*. The Husband died in the Third Year of his Exile, and his Widow ended her Days in a Monastery. The Emperor was at *Rome*, when *Nicephorus Phocas* aw'd by the Arms of *Otho*, deputed Embassadors to perswade him to an Alliance; *Otho* designing to confirm it by a Marriage, orders a Motion to be made that his Fair Daughter *Theophania* might be given to his Son *Otho*; and *Nicephorus* pitches upon *Calabria* to be the place of her Reception. The Emperor to do honour to this Princess, sends a part of his Army, and a Body of Gentlemen that customarily had paid Attendance at his Court, to wait upon her; and when both Soldiers and Courtiers were in expectation of her, and express'd all possible Joy at her Arrival, the *Greeks* and *Saracens*, who had associated,



came upon them and kill'd them. *Otho* not being able to bear this Treachery, gives an Army to two Brothers, *Earl Gautier*, and *Earl Sifroy*, who lay waste all *Calabria* and *Apulia*, drive out the *Greeks*, and having cut off the Noses of many of 'em, send them back to *Constantinople*. This Disgrace and Defeat being imputed to the Perfidiousness of *Nicephorus*, and he well knowing how odious he was to his Subjects, fortifies himself in his Palace: and *John Zimisces* in the mean time gets upon the Wall by the help of the Empress, hunts for the Emperor even to his Chamber, and causes him to be kill'd. *Zimisces*, who by this Means acquired the Empire, to demonstrate his Detestation of *Nicephorus's* Treachery, restores Liberty to all the German Prisoners in *Constantinople*, and sends *Theophania* to *Otho*, who after the Solemnity of the Wedding went from *Italy* to *Germany* with his Son and Daughter. In 962, he was Crown'd at *Rome* by *John the XIIth*; he reig'd 36 Years, Ten Months, and Six Days; he died in 973, the seventh of May; he was buried at *Magdeburg*, and was call'd the Beloved of the World, as *Titus* formerly was the Delight of Mankind.

*Otho the IIId*, born in the Year 955, was within seven Years declared Successor to his Father *Otho* in 961, at *Aix la Chapelle*, and crown'd Emperor in 968, by *John the XIIIth*, Successor to *Beniot the Vth*. He had by *Anne* or *Theophania*, *Otho*, *Hugh*, and some Daughters. *Bisetislaus* or *Predislaus*, the Son of *Udalrick* Duke of *Bohemia*, having stole away *Futhe* or *Judith* from a Monastery at *Ratisbone*, where she had her Education; *Otho* to revenge so great an Affront made War upon him: and as the Armies were ready to come to a close Fight, *Judith* not fearing the Arrows that fled all round her, breaks through the First Ranks, and begs that she may be admitted to speak with the Emperor. She is conducted to him; and by her Prayers and Tears she procures of *Otho* her Father Pardon for *Bisetislaus*; who falling at his Feet with profound Submission, made an Apology for the Crime he had committed, pleading the Great and Invincible Passion he had for that Princess.

After the Death of *Otho* surnamed the Great, *Henry Duke of Bavaria* envying the Empire to *Otho the IIId*,  
dis-

disputed it with him, and had of his side the Bishops of *Maience* and *Magdeburgh*, and three other Princes. *Henry* being summon'd to declare his Reasons in a Diet, appeals to the Goodness of the Emperor: and seeing he persisted in his first Obstinacy, this Duke was defeated in a Battle, and driven away from his Dukedome, in which *Otbo* the Brother of *Ludolphus* was invested. The Duke withdrew into *Bohemia*, and having taken with him the Bishop of *Friesingen*, made himself Master of the City of *Passaw*, where he had not leisure to take all just Measures, because the Emperor having besieged him, he was soon forc'd to surrender, and to appear before the Diet; where he was banished with his Son by the consent of all the States. In 974, *Otbo* march'd his Troops against *Haroud King of Denmark*, who had countenanced *Henry's* Rebellion, and Plunder'd *Saxony*. The King was subdu'd, and forc'd at last to give his own Son for an Hostage, as a Security for the Tribute imposed upon him, and which was to be yearly paid. In 978, *Lotharius* the Son of *Lewis Ultramarine*, being very angry that *Otbo* had put his Brother *Charles* in Possession of *Lorraine*, resolved himself to be invested in that Dutchy, being a Fee that belonged not to the Empire, but to *France*. Indeed, after he had subdued almost the whole Country, and had had the Oath of Allegiance sworn to him at *Metz* by the Prelates and Barons, he made such haste to surprize *Otbo* in his Palace at *Aix la Chapelle*, that the Emperor scarce having notice of his Arrival when he was going to sit down at his Table, had but just time enough to make his escape, and cross the *Rhine* with *Theophania* his Empress. In the same Year, *Otbo* made an Inroad into *France* with an Army of Sixty Thousand Men: and he went up even to *Paris* after he had desolated all *Champagne*; His Nephew having been rash enough to stick his Lance in one of the Gates of the City, was killed by *Geofrey Grise-Gonnelle* Earl of *Anjou*: and since the Winter came upon him, and that he made no farther Advances, he resolved to return thence to *Germany*. Which nevertheless he did not do without losing a great Part of his Army, because *Hugh Capet* and *Lotharius* having reassembled theirs, pursued him, and charged the *German's*

at the Passage of the River *Aine* with such fierceness and success, that it was ting'd with the Blood of the Slain. Afterwards a Peace was concluded by them at *Rheims*, and by the Treaty, as some Authors say, *Lorain* was given in Fee to the Emperor, or to *Charles* the King's Brother; provided it would do Homage to the Empire. After this Peace *Otho* went from *Bavaria* into *Italy*: And the occasion of the Journey is as follows.

Though the *Saracens* of *Asia* had been defeated in many Battels which they had lost in the Isle *Candia*; tho' *Kamad's* Army had been hewn in Pieces, and one of their Fleets had been destroy'd, they recover'd all their Losses; and yet they could have done nothing, if the Emperors of *Constantinople* had had Courage to make use of their advantage, or judgment to understand it. But their private Ambition stifled in them all the Sense of publick Good: And they thought of nothing but of destroying one another, when they had still Strength to manage the most irreconcilable Enemies of their Religion and Empire. They employ'd also these common Enemies against the Western Christians, and hir'd them to support their Treachery, and assist their Tyranny. After the decease of *Zimisces*, *Basil* and *Constantine* desir'd Aid of these Infidels, and made them enter with the *Greeks* into *Apulia* and *Calabria*, which *Zimisces* had settled upon *Theophania* for her Joynture. 'Twas this, that prevail'd with *Otho* to go into *Italy* in 980, attended with *Theophania*, and with most of the Grandees of the Empire. He re-establish'd his Power in some Cities that had revolted, and went to *Rome* to keep his *Christmass*, where he was receiv'd with the most sensible Expressions of Joy that can be conceiv'd. But *Otho* remembering that his Father could not reduce the Rebels but by his exemplary Punishment of 'em, was willing to imitate him; yet imitated him amiss. To revenge himself he invited the principal Persons of *Rome*, the Magistrates, and the Lieutenants of Cities to a magnificent Banquet prepar'd for them in the Vatican: And when they were at the Table, and began to be merry, some Companies of Soldiers enter'd, who all with Sword in Hand surrounded the Guests. Upon the first Signal given by *Otho*, those  
armed

armed Men seiz'd the most considerable of 'em, (whose Names were written in a Paper and read with a loud Voice) then dragg'd them into a Hall and kill'd them. This horrid Action render'd him generally odious to all Men, and he was thereupon call'd the *Bloody*.

Supposing that he had securely compos'd his Affairs, he goes into the Country with the Forces he had rais'd in *Rome*, *Tuscany*, and *Lombardy*, together with others which the Citizens of *Capua*, *Benevent*, *Salerno*, and *Naples* had furnish'd him with, and with those he brought from *Germany*. With this prodigious Army he made some pretty valuable Advances; he took *Tarentum*, and some Cities of *Apulia* and *Calabria*. The Greeks and Saracens, to hinder his farther Progress, got together their Forces; and the two Armies met in the Year 982, near a little Village by the Sea-side. The Italians, especially those of *Rome* and *Benevent*, who had begg'd leave to fight in the first Ranks, were the readiest of any to quit their Station; and the Germans who fought with much more Heat and Courage, being beset by their Enemies, were almost all cut in pieces with the greatest part of the Noblemen that follow'd their Master. In this Slaughter *Otho*, who had his Horse wounded, runs away in disorder, changes his Cloaths; meets with a great Boat, passes the Water, and speaking Greek escapes by that means. In that very place he is carry'd off by Pirates, being unknown: And *Theophania* who had notice of it at *Rossano*, a City not far distant from him, ransom'd him for a small Sum. The next Year he reveng'd himself of the Beneventines, took their City by force, gave it for a Booty to his Soldiers, and burnt it. Then he went into *Lombardy*, and after he had got a powerful Army he marched directly towards *Rome*, being resolv'd to cut off all the Greeks and Saracens that were in *Calabria*. But this Resolution was ineffectual, because he died in 983. by the Wound of a poison'd Arrow which he had receiv'd in the Fight, and not well cur'd; To say nothing of the Vexation of his Defeat, and a violent Flux that hasten'd his death. He reign'd ten Years and seven Months, and died being 29 Years old, being bury'd in *St. Peter's Church at Rome*,

*Otho*



*Otho* the III, firnam'd the *Wondrous*, either for his Beauty, or his Wisdom, learnt the Greek Tongue of the Empress *Theophania* whilst he was but a little Child, and was educated by *Villigise* who had the Bishoprick of *Maience* confer'd on him by *Otho* the II<sup>d</sup>. He marry'd *Mary Garcia* the Daughter of the King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, and order'd her to be burnt for her Adulteries. His Father *Otho* the II<sup>d</sup>. having nam'd him for his Successor, he met with great Opposition in his Settlement, since the Italians desir'd *Crescentius* the Roman Consul for their Emperor; since *Lotharius* made War in *Lorain*, and since in *Germany* *Henry* Earl of *Bavaria* being return'd from his Exile, and labouring with all his might to be Emperor, detain'd *Otho* under the specious Pretence of being his Guardian. But that Pupil was taken out of his Hands; and *Lotharius* who had entred *Lorain* in 983, who had taken *Verdun* and its Earl *Godefroy*, being inform'd that *Otho* had been crown'd at *Aken*, gave back *Verdun* and set the Earl at Liberty in 985, and died in the Year following. The same Year he gain'd a considerable Victory over the Duke of *Bohemia*; and in 987, he admitted to his Presence and Favour *Miesco* the Duke's Brother, who presented him with a Camel in *Germany*, where there was never one seen before. In the mean time he had secret Intimation from the Pope, that *Crescentius*, who was a Man of Interest, was intriguing and had engag'd into his Party some of the chief Men of *Rome* to remove the Empire from the Germans, and to transfer it to the Italians; Upon this Intimation, *Otho* who had been crown'd at *Milan*, went directly to *Rome*, where he prevailed for the Election of *Bruno* of *Schwaben* the Son of *Ludolphus* his near Kinsman. This *Bruno*, who was *Gregory* the Fifth, crown'd him; and when the Emperor's Back was turn'd, *Crescentius* brought into the See *John* the Seventeenth, and drove away *Gregory*, who was not wanting to beg the assistance of his Patron *Otho*, who when he had late down before *Rome*, the Consul presently, who was intrench'd with the Pope he had made, and who was forced into the Quarter he was willing to defend, was drawn from it; and *Otho* commanded that he should be

he walk'd upon an Ass through all the Streets, that his Ears and Nose should be cut off, and that he with the Men of his Faction should be hang'd; and this his Order was put in Execution. The Counterfeit Pope *John*, whose Eyes were put out, was banish'd into *Germany*, and died there after ten Months exile. *Gregory* was restor'd: And some think, but falsely, that in concert with this Pope, the Emperor form'd the Model of the Creation of the Electors of the Empire, to the end that the Princes being Masters of this Choice, it might be made for the future without any Disorder; and they are of opinion too, that after this all Difficulties were taken away. Being return'd to *Rome* he was besieg'd in the Capitol, and had not *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, and *Hugh* of *Brandenburg*, made by him Governor of *Tuscany*, stood by him, the Conspiracy of his Enemies had had its effect. To be aveng'd for this Attempt, he resolv'd to go raise Men in *Germany*; when *Jane* the Widow of *Crescentius*, a beautiful Woman, who expected to be his Wife, having granted him mighty Favours, and who by this Voyage lost all the Hope she had conceiv'd, presented him with a pair of poison'd Gloves which made an end of him in 1002, on the 28th of *January*. He reign'd 19 Years, and lived thirty.

*Henry* the II. surnam'd the *Lame*, and the *Saint*, the Son of *Henry* *Hezelon* Duke of *Bavaria*, the Grandson of *Henry* the *Seditious* or *Contentious*, Brother to *Otho* the Great, was born of *Berthe*, whom others call *Gizele* the Daughter of the Duke of *Lorain*. He was marry'd to *Cunegonda* the Daughter of *Sifroy* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*; and their Marriage hindred them not from preserving their Virginity. He having caus'd the Imperial Ornaments to be deliver'd to him, *i. e.* the Crown, the Cross, the Scepter and the Globe, which *Otho* the III. upon his Death-bed had put in the Hands of the Archbishop of *Maience*, he found it no hard matter to get himself elected. This Election of his kept not his Competitors and envious Rivals from declaring open War against him: And *Henry*, to whom *Otho* had given *Bavaria*, and *Theodorick* Bishop of *Metz*, both of them being the Empress's Brothers, observing that *Henry* had bestow-

ed on the Clergy their Sisters Fortune which they thought they had a Right to by Inheritance, had a speedy recourse to Arms. *Guelfe* a Duke of a part of *Schwaben*, and these Conspirators, as well as *Theodorick* Duke of *Lorain*, *Herman* a Duke of *Suevia* and *Alsatia*, *Eccard* Marquess of *Thuringen*, *Baudouin* Earl of *Flanders*, were all brought in subjection at different times, and forced to acknowledge *Henry* for their Sovereign. *Hezelon* of *Franconia*, *Ernest* the Son of the Marquess *Thibaud* or *Theobald*, *Geseler* Archbishop of *Saltsbourg*, and *Bruno* likewise *Henry's* Brother, who stirr'd up all these great Troubles, met with a Fate as disagreeable as theirs.

As the Italians continu'd willing to regain the Empire, *Ardouin* Marquess of *Tory* persuaded the Lombards to proclaim him King of *Italy*, to the end he might afterwards get the Imperial Crown. *Orbo* Duke of *Carinthia* and *Verona*, who went against *Ardouin* with an Army of the Emperor's, was overthrown at the Foot of the *Alps* in 1303, by the Marquess's Forces: And the Emperor, who the next Year marched against him, vanquish'd the Rebels; he generously pardon'd them according to their Request, and was crown'd at *Pavia* with an universal Applause and Approbation. Upon the ill News he had that the Polonians had made new inroads into *Germany*, he return'd thither; who were so well beaten, that he forc'd them humbly to beg Mercy of him; and the Rebels in *Bohemia* and *Moravia* were reduced to the same Extremity. Having no prospect of an Heir, he with all his Might restor'd the Bishopricks of *Misnia*, of *Magdeburgh*, of *Hidelsheim*, of *Strasburgh*, of *Basil*, which had been undone by the Barbarians; and after the death of Count *Essick*, he gave the greatest share of his Wealth to the Bishoprick of *Mersburgh*. *Reinold* the Son of *Henry* Earl of *Bamberg* having left no Son to succeed him, devoted his Earldom to be annex'd to the Bishoprick of that very place; he left a Grant of great Privileges; especially this, that the Princes of the Empire should pay Homage there, and that the Electors, who in that Quality should hold Mannors of the same Empire, should for the future take them from that Bishop.

The Bishop of *Porto*, call'd by the Name of *Benet* the VIIIth, having been elected Pope in 1012. after *Peter* Bishop of *Alba*, who was *Sergius* the Fourth, the factious Part of *Rome* nominated Pope *Gregory*, and most shamefully turn'd out *Benet*, who withdrew into *Germany* in hopes the Emperor would not fail to countenance him. *Henry*, who promis'd to restore him, went away in order to do it: And his Army had so good success, that those who had nominated *Gregory* were the first to drive him away, and to re-call Pope *Benet*. Having near *Verona* defeated *Ardouin*, who then had twice rebell'd, he went directly towards *Rome*: And *Benet* who came in all Ceremony to meet him with the People, Senate, and Clergy, presented him with a Globe of Gold beset with rich Jewels, with a Cross upon it, which he sent to the Monastery of *Cluni*. He after enter'd into *Rome* and was crown'd with *Cunegonda* in *St. Peter's* Church. This solemn Ceremony being over, he soon after march'd into *Lombardy*, where he restor'd Order as well as he could; then he return'd to *Germany*, and left in *Italy*, *Arnou* already consecrated Arch-bishop of *Ravenna*. This *Arnou*, and another of the same Name, Arch-bishop of *Milan*, compleated the Defeat of *Ardouin* who had lately broke into *Lombardy*; and forced him to renounce his Passion of Ambition which destroy'd him, and to spend the remaining part of his Days in a Monastery.

He made a third Journey into *Italy* to fight the Greeks and Saracens who had seiz'd *Benevent*, and reckon'd the Destruction of *Rome* in the number of their Designs. This Journey was fortunate enough in that he vanquish'd them, in that he laid wast *Troy* in *Champagne* which had been fortify'd by the Greeks, in that he again conquer'd the greatest part of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, and in that he gave the Normans Lands and Ports to defend themselves against both these Nations.

In 1023. *Henry*, and *Robert* Kings of *France*, the Son of *Hugh Capit*, who died in 998. had a Conference upon the Frontiers of their Dominions below *Mouzen*, where the *Cher* runs into the *Meuse*. The Ministers of these two Monarchs jealous of the Glory of their Masters, were



were somewhat nice and scrupulous about the first Steps each of 'em did make towards a Conversation. But *Henry* who minded substantial Business more than these little Formalities, which often interrupt great Affairs, and in which the present Age finds Points of Honour, cross'd the *Meuse* with a small Retinue, and enter'd *Robert's* Chamber, who did not look for this Visit, which yet he repaid the next day. Having embraced one another, with mutual Confidence and Sincerity, they put an end to their Pretences in two Meetings, and made up between *France* and the Empire a firm Peace, and an Alliance which lasted afterward above 300 Years. *Robert* having treated the Emperor, and all his Court, in so magnificent a manner as exceeds Belief, at their rising from the Table order'd Presents to be brought out to them of all sorts, and which Historians venture to compare with the most amazing Wealth of the Persians. Tho' he had produced a 100 stately Horses, with their Harnesses, which were of an invaluable price: Tho' in the other Presents there was nothing but Jewels, but Gold and Pearls, such was the Moderation of *Henry*, that he would accept only of a Book of the Gospels with a rich Cover; and *Cunegonda* was satisfy'd with a pair of Pendants for her Ears. The next day when *Robert* had pass'd the River to see the Emperor, he was received by him magnificently, and would take nothing of him though he offered him rich Gifts, and above an hundred pound weight of pure Gold. The Consequence of this famous Conference was, That they should both resort to *Pavia* where Pope *Benet* was, and that they should leave to his Judgment what they believed they ought to resolve upon for the Advantage, Peace, and Glory of all Christians. But the death of the Pope spoil'd that Design: And the Emperor stopping at *Magdeburgh* to keep his Easter there, fell sick. He was entreated to appoint a Successor; and he propos'd *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*; he recommended him also to all the Great Men of his Court, though his own Rebellion, as well as that of others which he had supported, made him in some measure unworthy of the Emperor's Election and Friendship. Before his death he call'd for *Cunegonda*, with the Count Palatines of the *Rhine* his near

near Kinsmen, and in the Presence of some Prelates, pointing to the Empress, said to them ; *Take again this Woman whom you gave me, and whom I restore to you in the same condition I received her.* He died of the Stone, in 1024, the 13th of July, or according to *Baronius*, in the Month of June ; he lived 52 Years, reign'd 23 of 'em, and six Months ; he was interr'd at *Bamberg*, and afterwards Canoniz'd by Pope *Innocent the IIIrd*, as was likewise his Wife *Cunegonda*.

*Conrad* the Second of that name was Sirnamed the *Salique*, either because he was a Native of *Franconia*, some of the Inhabitants of which place were called *Saliques*, or *Saliens* from the River *Sale* ; or because the Law which forbids Females to inherit the Crown was contrived by *Pharamond*, who likewise was called *Salique*. The Pedigree of *Conrad* is as obscure as his Sirname. But the most probable Opinion is that his lineal Descent is from *Conrad the Wise*, Duke of *Franconia*, the Husband of *Lutgarde*, the Daughter of *Otho* stiled the Great : that *Cuno* Count of *Franconia*, who came by this Marriage had Three Children *Sifroy*, *Eberhard*, and *Herman* ; and that this last had by his Wife *Adelais* *Conrad* the *Salique*. He married *Gisele* Queen of *Burgundy*, the Daughter of *Lotharius* King of *France*, married the first time to *Buno*, Earl of *Saxony*, and the second to *Ernest*, Duke of *Schwaben* ; She brought *Buno* *Ludolphus*, and two Twins, *Ernest* the Seditious and *Herman* : *Conrad* had only *Henry* by her, and she out-liv'd her Three Husbands, not being dead till the Year 1044. He was Crown'd thrice, first at *Milan* in 1026 ; next at *Monza* ; the third time at *Rome* upon *Easter Day*, in 1027, by *John* the XXth, the Brother and Successor of *Benet*, in the sight of *Canute* King of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *England*, and of *Raoul* Duke of *Burgundy*, who attended him in his Progress.

In the Year 1028, at a Meeting of the States called together at *Aken*, he declared his Son *Henry* his Partner in the Empire, who was not then ten Years old ; and *Pilegrin* Archbishop of *Cologne* performed the Ceremony of his Inauguration upon *Easter-Day*. Having been call'd into *Italy* to suppress the Faction of *Heibert* Archbishop

bishop of *Milan*, he besieged and became Master of the City, and took the Archbishop, and put him in Prison at *Placentia*. He humbled and reduc'd the Citizens of *Pavia*, who after the Death of *Henry the Saint*, had demolish'd the stately Palace which *Theodorick of Verona* had built, and which was very much beautify'd by *Otho the Third*.

In the Year 1032 *Miecislav* or *Miesko*, who had succeeded his Father *Ladislav*, and who not finding himself strong enough to make Good the Authority he had assumed against the Interests of the Empire, went into *Bohemia* to intreat *Udalrick's* assistance. This Man regardlessly transgress'd the Laws of Hospitality, and let *Conrad* know that if he would please to enter Alliance with him, he was ready to deliver up *Miecislav* being at that time when his Dominions came into his Hands. The Emperour who had a horror for this Baseness, advertis'd *Miecislav* of his Danger, and told him, *That the Germans did no harm to their Enemies whilst they were unarmed, and that they us'd not to avenge themselves save of the Perfidious and Faithless*. *Miecislav* being sensibly affected with the Generosity of *Conrad*, went to visit him in *Germany*, begg'd a Peace of him, and regain'd his Favour.

As *Conrad* was always in Action during his Reign, and as he went one while one way, another while another to oppose the Turbulent, and to give an undisturb'd Peace to the Empire, he fell Sick and died almost suddenly at *Utrecht*, in the Year 1039, on *Whitsunday*. He reign'd Fourteen Years, Ten Months, and 22 Days, and was bury'd at *Spire* in *St. Marie's Church*, which he built.

*Henry the II<sup>d</sup>*, surnamed the *Black*, had two Wives, *Cunilda* the Daughter of *Canute*, King of *Norway*, *Denmark*, and *England*, betroth'd to him in 1026, but their Marriage was not accomplish'd till ten Years after, and in the Year 1038, this Empress having no Child died in *Italy* of the Plague, which took off *Herman Duke of Schwaben*, and *Conon Duke of Franconia*. His second Wife was *Agnes*, the Daughter or Sister of *William Earl of Poitiers*, whom he went to receive at *Besancon*, and whom

whom he conducted in a pompous manner to *Ingelheim*. He had by this Princess two Sons, *Henry* who made the Bavarians take the Oath of Allegiance to him though he was not then Baptized, and who when he was four Years old was named his Successor; and *Conrad* who lived not long after him; and three Daughters, *Judith* the Wife of *Solomon*, the Son of *Andrew* King of *Hungary*, *Mabaud*, or *Mathilda*, married to *Rodolphus* Earl of *Rhinfelden*, Duke of *Schwaben*, and a third Wedded to *Leopold* the Fourth Marquess of *Austria*. In the Year 1046, he was crown'd at *Rome* with *Agnes* by *Clement* the II<sup>d</sup>, who had been Bishop of *Bamberg*, and to whom *John Gratian*, who was *Gregory* the VI<sup>th</sup>, was forc'd to resign up the Popedom. After the Death of *Clement*, who rul'd nine Months and Fourteen Days, he chose *Poppon* of *Bavaria* Bishop *Brixen*, or of *Aquileia*, who held the See but 23 Days, whose name was *Damasus*, and who was Poison'd, as some think, by *Benet* the ninth. In 1049 he advanc'd to the Papacy Count *Bruno* who was *Leo* the IX<sup>th</sup>, and he govern'd five Years, Two Months and Seven Days. After his Death *Henry* being in *Germany*, receiv'd Embassadors, who intreated him to Elect a Pope. He appointed *Gebhard* Bishop of *Eichstade*, and gave him the stile of *Victor* the II<sup>d</sup>: now 'tis easy to judge by that, that the Authority of the Emperor must needs then be great, and that his Successours have voluntarily parted with a Glorious Privilege.

He was no sooner Emperor, but in the Year 1040, *Uratisslaus*, *Udalrick's* Successor in *Bohemia*, refus'd to pay him sixscore Beeves, and fifty Marks of Silver, which he was engaged to supply him with, as being his Homager and Vassal. Upon this refusal he order'd an Army to march against this Rebel, and had at first no great Advantage of him. But the next Year after he had surmounted the main Obstacles that thwarted his Understanding, he compell'd *Uratisslaus* to beg Peace of him, and to accept of it too, upon such Conditions as he thought fit to offer him. As haughty as he was, he appeared at *Ratisbone*; where in the Presence of the States with bare Feet, and an uncovered Head, he prostrated himself before the Throne of the Emperor, who



upon the Intercession of the Princes rais'd him up, took him into his Favour, and restor'd him.

Stephen King of Hungary, after he had reigned Forty and one Years, dying, Peter surnamed the German, succeeded him in the Year 1038; and was banished from his Dominions for his Cruelties, in 1041, and went into Germany to Sollicit there for the Emperor's Assistance. The Hungarians in the mean time chose *Aba*, or *Ova*, who being grown haughty upon the great Honour he had received, deputed some Embassadors to *Henry*, to enquire of him whether he desired Peace or War. He was pleas'd to answer them thus, *That he made War only when he was forc'd to it.* But the Hungarians having violated the Law of Nations in their Treatment of *Henry's* Envoys, he dispatcht away an Army against *Aba*; and having routed him in two Battles, forc'd him to Swear that he would perform whatever the Emperor should require of him. *Aba* was no sincere Man, because he broke the Treaty a while after; and he was reduc'd humbly to Sue for his Pardon to *Henry*, who gave it him. When he was guilty again of the same Falseness, the Emperor, whom so frequent Relapses could not please, March'd against him at the head of Six Thousand choice Fighting Men, though he had above a Hundred Thousand to break through, and tho the Majority of his few Followers endeavour'd to dissuade him from the visible Danger to which he expos'd himself. The Confidence he had in so good a Cause, and the Assistance he promis'd himself from the Lord of Hosts, made him deaf to all Advice they could offer; and his Hope did not fail him. For indeed, upon the first Approaches of the Armies near *Javarin*, the Skie was overcast with Thick Clouds, which kept the Hungarians from knowing one another, and they kill'd their own Soldiers, when they meant only to destroy their Enemies. Besides this great Darkness, which seem'd no less than Miraculous, a dreadful Wind blew, which drove Storms of Dust into their Eyes, insomuch that it is no strange thing, that the Emperor who had but 6000 Men, and who lost but 3000 of 'em, should find Twenty Six Thousand dead upon the Spot. Whilst he stayed in *Italy* the Hungarians who took up Arms, having thrust out the

Eyes

Eyes of King *Peter*, dragg'd him to a Prison, where he dy'd: they kill'd all those who had promoted his Election, and pitched upon *Andrew* to be their Governor. *Henry* being returned to *Germany*, thought of nothing more than to chastise them for their Treachery: and before he came to their Frontiers, *Andrew* who sent Embassadors to him, Apologiz'd for himself, and engaged to pay him his customary Tribute, if he would please to take him into his Protection. He was as False and Faithless as *Aba*: and since he waited but for an opportunity of Rebelling, since he plunder'd some Corners of *Bavaria*, *Henry*, in 1052, compell'd him to pay him a Sum in Gold yearly, to give up to him a part of *Hungary*, and be bound to send him at his own Expence a stated Number of Troops, whensaever he should think fit to employ them in his Service.

In 1056, the Army which he sent against the *Sclavonians* was overthrown, at which he was so extreamly afflicted, that he died on the 5th of *October* the same Year, at *Burfeld* in *Saxony*, being 39 Years old; after a Reign of 17, and Nine Months. Some have affirm'd that he died of a Surfeit he took at an over-hearty Meal he made of the Liver of a Stag.

*Henry* the IVth had two Wives, *Berthe*, *Otho* the Marquis of *Italy's* Daughter, whom he Married in 1066, and whom under the pretence of Impotence, he was willing to divorce after he had lived with her Three Years. But besides that, *Otho* might express his Resentment for so great an Affront, and deprive him of all *Italy*, the States of the Empire could not bear with this unrighteous Separation: so that he settled with her again, for fear of too great Differences with *Otho*, and the Ruin of all his Concerns in *Germany*. He had two Sons by this Princess, *Conrad*, and *Henry* his Successor, and three Daughters, *Agnes*, *Bertha*, and *Sophia*. *Agnes* was married to *Frederick* Earl of *Hoenssauffen*, who was possess'd of *Schwaben* when *Rodolphus* died: and after *Frederick's* Death, *Henry* the Vth gave her in Marriage to *Leopold* Marquis of *Austria*. She had by *Fredrick* the Emperor *Conrad* the IIIrd, and by *Leopold* Eighteen Children, among whom were Count *Henry*, *Conrad* Archbishop of

*Saltzburg*, and *Otho* Bishop of *Frisingen*, as famous for the History he hath left us, as for his Birth. *Bertha* having expir'd in 1088, *Henry* the following Year married *Praxede*, *Udo* the Marquess of *Brandenburg's* Widow: and 'tis uncertain whether he had any Children by her or no.

He was six Years Old at the Death of the Emperor his Father; and *Agnes* had the Guardianship of this Young Prince, and the whole Administration in her; when *Annon* the Archbishop of *Cologne*, and *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, weary no less than many others of the Government of a Woman, carried away this young Prince who was in one of the Isles of the *Rhine* with her. As soon as he saw himself in the Hands of these Ravishers in a Boat, he expected nothing but Death: and in his Fear he rashly leap'd into the River, where he would have been infallibly drown'd, had it not been for his Uncle *Egbert*, who threw himself into the Water after him, and took him out. *Agnes* bore with great Constancy the injury done her, and being willing to employ her Thoughts wholly upon Heavenly Things, she retir'd into a Monastery at *Rome*, by the Perswasion of Cardinal *Damianus*, and was buryed in the Church of Saint *Petronilla*. This Young Prince who had been very well educated under the Conduct of the Archbishops of *Maience* and *Cologne*, lost all the good Tinctures he had received, when under the Tuition of *Albert* Bishop of *Bremen*: and after he had been declared to be of Age, he follow'd his natural Inclinations, which certainly were not over-good. *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria* at his return from *Italy*, whither he had been attended by *Hannon*, and *Henry* Bishop of *Trent* to confer about the Affairs of the Empire with *Alexander* the II, was inform'd against as one guilty of Robbing the Publick Treasure, and of Sacrilege, by *Eginon* a Man notorious for his Crimes: and forasmuch as he was denied safe Conduct, he put himself in a posture of Defence, Whilst the King's Army plunder'd *Bavaria*, *Otho's* made Reprisals in *Thuringen*; and he also kept *Henry* besieged in *Goslar* all Winter long. But this War having been unsuccessful to *Otho*, he was most unjustly turned out of *Bavaria*, of which the King gave

gave *Guelfe* the Possession, from whom those of the Name in *Schwaben* descended, who after the *Agilonfinges* and the *Saxons* became Lords of that State. This *Guelfe* who had married *Otho's* Daughter, after his Disgrace sent her back to him in the Mountains, where he had fortified himself with some of his Friends, nor was he so Low and Unfortunate, but that he had wherewithal vigorously to oppose the Emperor. But as they were ready to begin the Fight, Count *Eberhard* brought the King to some Temper: and upon his Word given, *Otho* went to *Halberstadt*, where he was arrested with some other Persons who had taken Arms against *Henry*: and though he had his Liberty, yet the following Year he was stript of his Possessions and Honours, and spent the remainder of his Days like a private Man.

*Annon* who after the Death of the Archbishop of *Bremen* had been removed from the Government, was recalled to the Court: and though he had put all Affairs in a better posture, as being a Person free from Ambition and Self-interest; yet *Henry* who took no Delight in his Vertue, and who gratified his Passion and Pleasure in all things, could not endure an honest Man near him. At the same time he turn'd out all those who having quick sight enough to discover his Wicked Inclinations, were not Courtiers enough to condemn them: and *Sifroy* who had been four Years in the Monastery of *Cluni*, went again to take Possession of the Archbishoprick of *Mayence*. He seeing well that to fill the King's Coffers, they must necessarily have recourse to new Taxes, mov'd a Question about the *Tenths* of the Clergy in an Assembly of Bishops conven'd by him at *Francfort*. Though *Henry* by his Threats and Promises had brought them to what he desir'd; *Buccon* Bishop of *Halberstadt*, *Otho* turn'd out of *Bavaria*, *Egbert* Marquels of *Thuringen*, the Bishops of *Hildersheim*, and *Merspurgh*, and many Earls joyned with the Saxons took up Arms upon this News, and thrust out the Garrisons which the King had put into strong Places. Then they were got in a Condition to choose a King and their Eyes were fixed upon *Rodolphus* Duke of *Schwaben*, who refus'd the Crown they offer'd him; and as they persisted in their offer,



Henry goes out of *Ratisbonne*, appears before the Princes of the Empire, who satisfied themselves in taking away from him some of his Revenues in order to oblige him to lessen his Luxury and Expence. After this he left *Wormes* to march against the Saxons, who imposed upon him somewhat hard Terms, which he submitted to for peace sake; but with a Resolution to break with them upon the First Opportunity offer'd. In these Disorders he was, when the Pope, who had excommunicated him for his Simonies, of which he made no Scruple, sent four Bishops to him: and he agreed to have a Council call'd beyond the *Alps*. On the other hand *Solomon* King of *Hungary* outed by his Uncles *Josias* and *Ladislaw*, went to *Germany* to engage Henry to assist him, and he promis'd him, in case he should be restor'd by his means, six good Cities. In this Prospect he does what he can to serve him; but his Army not having been able to stand against the *Poles*, the Plague, and a Famine, and *Solomon* not finding any farther remedy, turn'd Monk as some say in a Monastery at *Pola* in *Istria*, where he ended his Life.

After he had been at War with the Saxons, and gain'd some Advantages over them, he was summon'd by *Gregory* the VII<sup>th</sup> to a Council begun at *Rome*, in 1075; and the Pope threatned him with Excommunication, if he should fail to appear there at the time appointed. That Menace so enraged him, that he orderd a Council to be conven'd at *Wormes*, where it was Decreed, That Letters should be sent to the Pope stuff'd with Contumelies and Affronts, and with an express Command to resign the Papal Dignity. Those Letters being delivered to *Gregory* in the presence of a Hundred and Ten Bishops, were judg'd to be of such a Nature, that the whole Council press'd the Pope to excommunicate the King again.

In 1077, he cross'd the *Alps* in the midst of Winter; and after a Fast of three Days, with a profound Submission, and stript of his Royal Robes, he appear'd before the Pope, who pronounc'd his Absolution, but with this Proviso, that the *Anathema* however should return upon him, if his Promise were not inviolably performed. Considering that he never kept his Word, the Orthodox call'd

call'd together an Assembly, to which *Henry*, whom they had cited thither, did not come: and after they had read the Pope's Letters, all the Princes and Prelates declared that *Henry* was unworthy of the Crown, which therefore they put upon the head of *Rodolphus*. To decide the matter they came to *Blows* near the River *Elster*, in 1080; and *Rodolphus*, who was routed, had in the Battle a Hand cut off, of which Wound he died. As he was carried to his Grave at *Mersbourg* with a great deal of State, and as some of *Henry's* Attendants wondered that an Usurper should be so honourably dealt with after his death; he said to them, *Grudge him not this pompous Funeral; for I could heartily wish all mine Enemies were buried at this expensive rate.*

To set a new Face upon his Affairs, he resolv'd to take yet a Journey into *Italy*, finding himself qualified by his Wiles to prevail upon the Pope: and he had scarce pass'd the *Po*, but the Saxons chose *Herman* Earl of *Luxenburg* to be their King, to whom there was Opposition made at first by *Frederick* of *Schwaben*, whom *Henry* had left in *Germany*, to take care of his Interests in his absence. But *Frederick* after a Battle resolutely fought, was forc'd to run away, and to leave his Camp to the Conqueror. In the mean time *Henry* who besieged *Rome*, introduc'd thither a certain Man call'd *Guibert*, in *Gregory's* place, and was crown'd with *Berthe*. *Gregory* who retir'd into a Fortrefs of the City, because he was afraid of *Henry's* Vengeance, was amaz'd at the arrival of *Robert Guiscard* the Duke of *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, who having seized the Capitol, pulls down what *Henry* had built up, drives out the Schismatical Prelates and Garrison, and puts the Town to Fire and Sword. The Emperor being come back to *Germany*, and being not in a Capacity to oppose *Guelfe* Duke of *Bavaria*, who had taken the City of *Ausburg*, and laid waste all the Country; was at a stand what Measures to resolve upon, when he heard that Pope *Gregory* was dead, and that the Cardinals had chosen for his Successor Cardinal *Didier*, then call'd *Victor* the Third. 'Twas almost in the same time that *Berthe* died, and that King *Herman* having made his retreat into *Lorraine* was dash'd in pieces with the top

of a Rock which broke off from a Mountain near a place which he besieged. The Emperor fancying himself free and secure, after great Preparations made was overthrown by Prince *Egbert* the Commander of the Saxons, who the following Year was basely murdered. *Conrad* whom the Emperor his Father had banished into *Italy*, had there a solemn Inauguration by *Anselme* Archbishop of *Milan*, not without the unanimous Consent of the Pope, of all the Prelates, and the People.

*Henry* provok'd by that Usurpation, which he never so much as dreamt of, disinherits him, makes his Son *Henry* Sharer of the Empire in 1092; imposes still upon his Friends and the Judicious by his Artifices; he orders *Sigbard* to be assassinated, who by his Father's side descended from *Hartevich* Count Palatine, and by his Mother's from the Emperor *Otho*, and from *Witiking*. In 1104. he having resolv'd to go against the Saxons, his Son *Henry*, withdrew softly out of his Presence; he went out of the Camp without making any noise, attended with some Persons of Quality, who made it appear to him that he could not in conscience have Communication with his Father, who as for his own particular despis'd all the Pope's Excommunications, and who always rebell'd against the Church. The People of *Saxony* and *Frankenland* strengthen'd the young Prince's Party: And whereas his Father had Forces, and the Armies were in sight of one another, he saw himself deserted by the greatest part of his Officers and Soldiers, so that it was no hard matter for *Henry* to make himself Master of *Ratisbone*, *Wirtzburg*, and *Spire*; where he seiz'd all the Treasures which the Emperor his Father kept hidden there.

Some days after they came to a Parley by the Mediation of the Archbishop of *Maience*: And they came to this Resolution, That they would refer their Differences to a Diet of the Empire, which it was necessary to call together. But whereas the Son had Intimation that contrary to their mutual Promises, his Father had contriv'd against his Life, he prevented him, and order'd him to be shut up in a Castle, keeping a trusty Guard about him till the meeting of the States. The Abbot

*Sugir*

*Sugir* stiles him Inhuman, Traytor and Tyrant; And there are others that think he did well to act cautiously against a Father, who out of his love to dominion kept no Rule with him, and who waited but for an opportunity to be rid of him. However, he appear'd in this Assembly, in which, before all the Princes, and all the Prelates of *Germany* and *Italy*, and Pope *Paschal's* Legates, he resign'd up the Empire, promising that he would meddle no more with Business, and that he would regard nothing but his Salvation in some solitary Recess. Contrary to his Word given he got together all the Factionous People and Schismaricks he could, he made new Competitions in *Italy*, and rais'd Troops: In expectation of which he was flatter'd by the Duke of *Lorraine*, and the Bishop of *Liege*, who undertook to assist him with all their Forces. But he could not see the end of this great Design, because he died at *Liege* on the 7th of *August*, in the Year 1106, being the 56th of his Age, and 50th of his Reign. *Othert* Bishop of *Liege* was bold enough to have him bury'd in Holy Ground, and was not acquitted of that his Boldness, till, after an Injunction receiv'd for digging him up, he had caus'd him to be laid in unhallow'd Ground. The Emperor took care that he should be remov'd to *Spire*, where his Body, which had been out of the Church five Years, was at last put by the Pope's Permission, and where the Bodies of his Ancestors did rest. He was a proper and courageous Man, he had a charming and engaging Physiognomy; he was altogether fearless, and had been in sixty two Battels, where he always did the Business of a Soldier and Captain. For all that, he had but little Religion, he was inconstant and revengeful, and was never true to his word.

*Henry* the Vth married *Mathilde* or *Maud*, the Daughter of *Henry* the first King of *England*, and of *Mathilde* the Daughter of *Malcolm*, and Grand-daughter of *Edward Ironside*. He had by her but one Daughter call'd *Christina*, who was the Wife of *Uladislaus* the second, King of *Poland*, the eldest Son of *Boleslaus* the third, who govern'd *Poland* thirty seven Years; who reduced *Pomerania* into obedience to him, and having taken *Bia-*  
*logrod*



logrod. by Storm in 1107, having subdu'd *Prussia* in 1108, and won forty seven Battels, died in the Year 1139. *Uladislaus*, *Christina's* Husband reign'd six Years; who having endeavour'd to usurp what their Father *Boleslaw* had left to his four Brothers, was driven out of *Poland*, and forc'd to beg the Assistance of *Conrad* the III<sup>d</sup>. *Boleslaw* the IV<sup>th</sup>, surnam'd the *Curl'd* was elected in the place of *Uladislaus* by the consent of his other Brothers: And although *Conrad* in the Year 1149. had lead a numerous Army against *Poland* to re-establish *Uladislaus* there, he could not accomplish his Design. In 1157. the Emperor *Frederick* so absolutely over-rul'd *Boleslaw* that by his consent the other was put again in Possession of *Silesia*; and he died just as he was going to enjoy that Estate. In 1163. the same Emperor got the Investiture of *Silesia* for *Uladislaus's* Children, on condition that it should be under Vassalage to their Uncle the King of *Poland* who died in the Year 1173. *Henry* having seiz'd the Crown, whatever Sentiments Nature might suggest to him to wait for it at least till after his Father's death, admitted to his favour all the Princes who came to recognize him for their Sovereign. But he forgave not *Henry* Duke of *Lorraine*; and having taken from him his Duchy, he bestowed it upon *Godfrey* Earl of *Louvain*. Things being very quiet in *Germany* he went to *Ausburg*, whither at the end of the same Year *Paschal* the second had been intreated to come to determine the Claims and Differences of the Priesthood. The Pope would probably have gone thither, and he was already upon the Road after he had heard of *Henry's* death. But in a Council which he summon'd to *Guastalla*, a City upon the *Po*, he renewed the Decree against the Investitures of Bishopricks, Abbies, and other Benefices confer'd by Lay-men: And since he was not able without running some Risque, to ratify the same Decree at *Ausburg*, because *Henry* and the Bishops would not have failed to oppose it with Clamour; he went through *Burgundy* into *France*, to desire King *Philip's* Protection against the Emperor. In the Year 1107. *Paschal* assembles a Council at *Troy*, in which he generally excommunicated all those who in prejudice to the Right of the Popes, assumed

turned to themselves the Power of Investitures: And Henry having sent him Embassadors, whose Reasons and Remonstrances were offer'd to no purpose, publicly declar'd that the Bishops of *Rome* would fain challenge to themselves the Empire of the World, and dispossess him of his Dignity, who had not made War with his Father but by their Advice, In 1110. he enters *Italy* with thirty Thousand Horse, attended by *Guelfe* Duke of *Bavaria*, by *Henry* of *Carinthia*, by *Berenger* of *Sultzbach*, by *Thibaud* or *Theobald* of *Vohlbourg*, by *Engelbert* of *Crebury*, by *Sigebothon*, by *Falkeinstein*, and by other Persons of Quality, who that they might be less incommoded in the narrow Passages of the *Alps*, separated, with a design afterwards to rally at *Milan*. 'Twas there that the Archbishop crown'd Henry King of *Italy*, who, when he had pass'd the *Po*, let the Pope have notice of his Arrival. He march'd towards *Rome*, and encamp'd before the City, making first a publick Protestation that he would preserve the Liberties and Privileges of it. After that he entered *Rome*, and dismounted over against the Church of the Vatican, where he was received very honourably by the Pope, who staid for him at the top of the Stair-case, with a great number of Cardinals and Bishops. He had hardty seated himself in the Church at the left Hand of *Paschal*, but he demanded of him the performance of the Promise he had made to quit the Investiture of the Bishops, and other Ecclesiastical Rights. Being surprized at a Demand so little expected, he civilly withdraws to advise with the Princes and Bishops sitting a little lower, what Answer it would be proper for him to give: And the Pope having sent to tell him that the time of his Coronation was laps'd; the German Prelates declare that their Rights were inviolable, and that they were resolv'd to maintain them. After some Animosities on both sides, *Paschal* was arrested out of the Church, and together with his Cardinals had a Guard set upon him till Night. The Romans exasperated with so great an Indignity, presently took up Arms, and fell upon all the Germans they could meet with; on the morrow they cross'd the *Tyber*, broke into Henry's Camp, who also was wounded in the Face, and who

so

so encouraged his Men against the Romans that they made a horrible slaughter of 'em.

*Guelfe* a Duke of *Bavaria*, and *Conrad* Archbishop of *Saltzburg*, who had always dissuaded *Henry* from Violence, intreated *Paschal* to come to an agreement: And a Peace was at last sworn to be signed by them on these following Conditions; " That the Injuries done to the " Supream Bishop and to the Church by *Henry* should " for ever be forgotten; That the Pope should not " shew his Resentment of them by Censures; That the " Emperor should be allowed to invest the Bishops and " other Prelates by a Ring and Crozier, and that the " Archbishops should consecrate them; That the Emperor should set at liberty the Pope, the Cardinals, and " the Bishops whom he had made Prisoners; That he " should send back the Hostages into the City; That no " wrong should be done to the Senate, the Citizens of " *Rome*, nor to any of the Pope's Vassals; That the Emperor should assist the Pope to recover and maintain " the possession of the Holy Patrimony; That the Dignity of the Empire being preserved, the Emperor " should pay the Pope the Obedience due to him from " Catholick Emperors. The day after the signing of these Articles, *Paschal* ceremoniously placed the Imperial Crown upon *Henry's* Head, who being not a little proud that he had given Law to the Pope, went back into *Germany*. But he did not long enjoy this Satisfaction; for when *Paschal* return'd to *Rome*, the Prelates were strangely offended with his Indulgence to *Henry*; who was excommunicated in an Assembly of twelve Archbishops, an hundred and fourteen Bishops, three and twenty Cardinals, and a great number of other Prelates. He was no better us'd in *France* by a Council in which were present *Guido* Archbishop of *Vienna*, *Hugh* Bishop of *Grenoble*, *Godfrey* Bishop of *Amiens*; and the Pope was there blamed for his Condescension to *Henry*, who was again excommunicated for having forcibly extorted the Privilege of Investitures. Cardinal *Conon* Bishop of *Palestine*, and Legate from the Holy See in the East, imitated these Fathers in a Council he held at *Jerusalem*: And as he was in his Return to the West, he pronounced still

Ana-

Anathema's against him in the Provinces and Kingdoms in which he had a Legate's Power.

These Excommunications revived, made impressions strong enough upon the temper of the People, the Nobility, and the Clergy, who began to desert the Interests of the Emperor, nay, and to conspire against him too. The Saxons whom he had conquer'd before, took Arms again, and got a considerable Victory by the Conduct of their General *Lotharius*; and *Revicard* Bishop of *Halberstadt* carried Matters so high as to forbid them the privilege of a Grave, who had lost their Lives in the behalf of the Prince. The Emperor being retired after his defeat, was besieged in his Palace at *Maience* by the Mob, who with Arms in their Hands demanded of him to set at liberty *Adelbert* Archbishop of the City, whom he detained Prisoner: And after he had been forced to give him up, he was again excommunicated.

All Germany was in disorder when Princess *Matilde* who bore great sway in *Italy* died, being 76 Years old: And since She had left the Holy See her Heir in *Lombardy* and *Tuscany*, *Henry* made hast to pass over the *Alps* with the Empress in order to seize on that Inheritance. Upon the first account of his March, the Pope withdrew to *Benevent*; and the Emperor having declared War with the Orthodox, enters *Rome* again with a Resolution to get himself Crown'd again in *St. Peter's* Church. There being no Bishop bold enough to comply with him, he brought into the place of *Paschal*, *Maurice Burdin* Archbishop of *Prague*, who was called *Gregory* the VIIIth, that he might receive the Imperial Crown from him. These violent Proceedings having alienated the Affections of his most faithful Servants from him, he begs the Favour and Absolution of *Paschal*, who refused the Grant of it, because, said he, *The Anathema could not be taken off but by the Fathers of the Church, who unanimously pronounced it.* Some time after *Paschal* died; and by his death left the See for *John* of *Gaieta* Monk of Mount *Cassin*, who was called *Gelasius* the IIId, and chosen by 47 Cardinals in all the Forms. *Henry* surprized at this new Election, went from *Pavia*



to Rome again, and the Pope who withdrew into France died at *Cluny*. *Callistus* the Earl of *Burgundy's* Son being chosen Pope, caus'd a Council at *Reims* to be assembled; in which, there being present 426 Prelates, *Henry* was solemnly declar'd to be an Enemy of the Church and unworthy of the Empire.

The States of *Germany* who met together at *Wurtzbourg*, in the mean time let *Henry* know that if he did not come thither to give an account of his Administration, they were all resolv'd to bestow his Crown upon another. He hasten'd his Return for that Reason; and though all his Answers were ambiguous, though it was plain that he minded nothing but Shifts and Evasions, he was forced in the Year 1122. to part with the Right of Investitures by Ring and Crozier; and Peace was by this means restor'd to the Church and Empire. He died on the 21st of May in 1125. in the 19th Year of his Reign, and was buried at *Spire*, having left no Child behind him.

*Lotharius* the II<sup>d</sup>, surnam'd the Saxon, born at *Lutterfloh* in *Lunenbourg* near *Zell*, was the Son of *Gebhardus* Count of *Supplenburg* and *Arnsberg*, and of *Hedwiga* the Daughter of *Frederick* of *Bavaria*, Burg-grave of *Nuremberg*. He married *Rixe* or *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of *Henry* Count of *Northheim*; he had by her *Lotharim*, who died young; *Gertrude* the Wife of *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, styl'd the Proud, and who receiv'd for her Portion the Dukedom of *Saxony*, because he had no Children; *Hedwiga* married to *Lewis* the Bearded, and whom he created Landgrave of *Thuringen*. *Henry* the V<sup>th</sup>, before his death had sent into the Castle of *Hermanstein* the Ensigns of the Imperial Dignity, under the Custody of *Frederick* Duke of *Schwaben*, and of *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia* the Son of his Sister *Agnes*, whom *Henry* IV<sup>th</sup>, his Father, had married to the old *Frederick*, whom he promoted to the Duchy of *Schwaben* after the death of *Rodolphus* who had been chosen Emperor. But as the Memory of the last *Henry* was generally odious to all the People and all the Princes; the Princes chose *Lotharim*, for the excellent Qualities which they discern'd in him: And the Promotion of this Person was an occasion of new Wars,

After

After his Accession to the Crown, he designed to give *Bohemia* to *Otho* the Prince of *Moravia*, and to turn out him who was chosen against his Order. But his Attempt succeeded not; and the Siege which he caus'd to be laid before *Nuremberg*, was not much subservient to his Glory. Indeed *Frederick*, and *Conrad* his Brother who advanc'd to the Relief of that City, forc'd him to turn his Thoughts another way, and to make his Retreat in *Wurtsburg*. *Conrad* when he had left *Frederick* went over the *Alps*; he caus'd himself to be Crown'd King of *Lombardy*, and in the year 1128 was excommunicated by Pope *Honorius* the II<sup>d</sup> of *Bologne*. The Archbishops of *Maience*, of *Treves*, and of *Magdeburg* did no less than what the Pope had done; and *Conrad* made his Peace with *Lotharius* by the Mediation of *St. Bernard*. *Italy* was but little the quieter for it; because in 1130 after the Election of *Innocent* the II<sup>d</sup>, who succeeded *Honorius*, the Cardinal *Peter* of *Lyons* was proclaimed Pope under the name *Anaclet*, by the Cardinals of his own Party. With his Intrigues, his Interest, and his Money, he procur'd Friends to support him; and *Roger* Duke of *Calabria* and *Apulia*, on whom he bestowed the Title of *King of Sicily*, declar'd himself loudly for him. All that *Innocent* the II<sup>d</sup> could do, was to come into *France* to desire Assistance, where *St. Bernard* did him such Service against *Anaclet*, that he brought him as far as *Liege*, where he had a Conference with the Emperor, who when he had bore him company to *Rome*, reestablish'd him there. He was crown'd there by that Bishop in the Year 1133, in the Church of *St. John of Lateran*, because he could not be crown'd according to Custom, and with the usual Ceremonies in *St. Peter's Church*, which the Anti-Pope had seized. As soon as he was returned into *Germany*, *Peter* of *Lyons* was unmindful of nothing to make *Innocent* fall off from his Party, who was forc'd to take Sanctuary in *Pisa*, because *Roger* was always in Motion near *Rome*, with an Army that had taken Possession of the strongest places belonging to the Church.

The Emperour at the request of the Pope, went again into *Italy*, with a considerable Force; he took *Bay-*

ry ; after a Siege of forty days, he brought *Apulia*, and *Calabria* under subjection ; he reduc'd *Salerno*, and regain'd what *Roger* had unjustly taken from the Holy See. After that he conducted the Pope to *Rome* in Triumph : And as he went back towards *Germany* highly satisfi'd with his Victory and Conquests, he fell sick in his Passage over the *Alps*, and died in a Cottage between *Inn*, and *Lech* on the 6th of *December*, in 1137, in 67th Year of his Age, and the 13th of his Reign. *Henry* the Proud his Son-in-law had his body carried into *Germany*, which was buried in a Monastery near the City of *Brunswick*.

*Conrad* the IIIrd, the Son of *Frederick* Duke of *Schwaben*, and *Agnes* the Daughter of *Henry* IVth, and Sister of *Henry* Vth, marri'd *Gerturde* the Daughter of *Berenger* Count of *Sultzbac*, and had by her two Sons, *Henry* and *Frederick*, and one Daughter espoused to *Lewis* Landgrave of *Thuringen*. When he undertook to go to *Palestine*, he was willing to joyn *Henry* his Son in the Empire with him : and *Frederick* died of the Plague with many other Persons at the Siege of *Rome*. *Henry* the Haughty, who had in his Custody the Imperial Ornaments with which he was entrusted by his Father-in-law, put himself in a posture to keep them, and to see that no Man but he should be Emperor. He was powerful by the Settlement of *Saxony*, *Tuscany* and *Mathilda's* Estate upon him : and the Reputation he had acquired in Arms was so great, that he was esteemed the most Valiant, and most Fortunate General in *Europe*. But seeing he was very Ambitious, seeing that he was Justly intituled to the name of Haughty, and that he look'd upon all other Princes as below him, the Electors assembled at *Coblentz* made Choice of *Conrad*, who was presently attended to *Aken*, and seated upon the Throne of *Charles* the Great. *Henry* who could not bear the new King, and who complained of the false Promises they had made him, breathed nothing but revenge, when *Conrad* not being able to win him by Clemency, after having solemnly declared him a Rebel, deprived him of *Saxony*, and *Bavaria*. He put *Albert* Marquess of *Brandenburg* in possession of *Saxony*, and gave *Bavaria* to his Brother *Leopold*. Though the greatest part of *Bavaria* had deserted him upon the King's Declaration, yet *Saxony* with some  
Bavarians,

*Bavarians*, and the *Guelfs* his antient Tenants in Fee kept firm to him, who having time to levy Forces, did not fail to follow him into *Saxony*. With this Army he march'd near *Bavaria*, took *Lunenbourg*, drove *Albert* out of *Saxony*, and possibly had had the same good Success against *Leopold*, had not this great Man been assaulted at *Quedleburg* by a Distemper, of which he died the 14th of November, in 1139. Some are of Opinion that he was Poison'd.

*Conrad* had nothing more in his Thoughts than to establish Peace in *Germany*, when *Guelf* the Brother of *Henry* the Haughty, took the Guardianship of *Henry Leo*, and by the Assistance of the Saxons, he supported the Cause and Interests of his Nephew. 'Twas by that he incurred the Displeasure of *Conrad*: and *Roger* King of *Sicily* fearing that the latter, if his Affairs were not embroiled in *Germany*, might go and take the Crown of *Lombardy*, kept alive the Animosities between them, and continually supplied *Guelf* with Money in order to prolong the War. Which in the Event was not fortunate to *Guelf*, who after he had been defeated by *Frederick* the King's Brother, recollected the Fragments of his Army; and attempted to break into *Conrad's* Camp, who had sat down before *Winsberg*: but he was again beaten and was forc'd to make his escape into the City. Which, since it wanted all things, was necessitated at last to surrender upon Discretion: and before his Entrance into it, the King commanded that *Guelf* and the Gentlemen who were in his Interests and Party, should be presently apprehended. In the mean time the Women made their request to *Conrad*, that he would at least allow them to carry out of the City for their whole support and refuge, that which they reckon'd dearest to them: and he granted that their Desire, not doubting but their Jewels and fine Dresses were the things they design'd to preserve. The Gates were thrown open, and the Women having left all to be plundered which was in their Houses, took their Husbands upon their Shoulders to secure them from the Rage of *Conrad*; which Stratagem of theirs so affected him that he made them all a Magnificent Entertainment, and pardon'd them. The Officers who were



in expectation of the Plunder, and the Soldiers who had pleas'd their Thoughts with the great Booty, murmur'd at this unexpected Change; whereupon he told them, *that Kings were always obliged in Honour to keep their Word, and let them know that he'd rather be charg'd with such Gentleness than with too great Severity.*

This *Winsburg* Fight, as some think, gave Birth to the two Factions of the *Guelfs* and the *Gibelines*: and the Army of the *Guelfs*, call'd the *King's Forces Gibelines*, because *Frederick* their General had been educated at *Guibeling*, a little City within the Diocese of *Ausburg*. 'Tis at least true, that upon the Frontiers of *Germany* and *Italy* towards the Spring of the *Rhine*, or near the First or Upper *Rhine*, there are two noble Families, the one of *Henry* of *Guibeling*, and the other of the *Guelfs* of *Altorf*, who through their Ambition and Jealousy, wrought great Disorders in the Empire. The *Dukes* of *Bavaria* are well enough known by their Name of *Guelf*; and the *Italians*, who had no Notion of this Origine, have indifferently expressed any two opposite Factions by the Name of *Guibelines*, who were in the Interests of the Emperour, and of *Guelfs*, who sided with the Pope.

'Twas about the Year 1142 that *Conrad* gave in Marriage *Berthe*, the Sister of his Wife *Getrude*, the Daughter of *Berenger* Count of *Sultzbac* to *Manuel* the Emperour of *Constantinople*, the Son of *John Comnenus*. In the beginning of 1146 he held a Diet at *Spire*; he had another in *Bavaria* the next year, in the Month of *February* about his journey into *Palestine*: And since *Lewis* the VIth the Son of *Lewis* the *Burly* went along with him, I must make a short digression that I may be the better understood. *Alberick* Archbishop of *Bourges* being dead, Pope *Lucius* the IIId, sent *Peter* his Favourite with Bulls to get possession of the Archbishoprick. *Lewis* denys *Peter* the Investiture of that Benefice, because *Lucius's* Bull was contrary to the Liberties of the Gallican Church, and because in *France* the Kings admit only those Ecclesiastical Dignities who may be acceptable to them; notwithstanding the choice made of them by the People, or the Grants they may have from the Pope. Though the Chapter of *Bourges* had set their hands to the Pope's Act,

Act, *Lewis* would not grant this Archbishoprick to *Peter*, who had recourse to *Thibaud*, Count of *Champagne*, and to the Earl of *Blois*, who were not at all pleas'd with the King. *Raoul* Count of *Vermandois*, had Divorc'd his Wife *Gilberte*, the Daughter of *Roger* Lord of *Chateau-Briant*, upon some suspicion of Lewdness, and had taken in her stead *Petronilla*, a Bastard Daughter of *William* Duke of *Guienne*. *Gilberte* appeals to the Pope's Justice who enjoyns *Raoul* to take her again, who excommunicates him upon his Disobedience, and sends *Yves* in the Character of a Legate to renew the Censure, and to put the Prelates under Deprivation, who had given their Consent to the Divorce of *Gilberte*. *Lewis* had in vain interceded for *Petronilla*: and *Thibaud* who was willing to disoblige him, stily asserted the Pope's Cause. The King exasperated with this Affront, marches against the Count of *Campagne*; he takes *Vitry*, Sacks the Town, gives up the Consecrated Places to his Plunderers to plague the Pope, and commands 'em also to Fire a Church, where above Fifteen Hundred Country-People, Men, Women and Children, had withdrawn as into a place of Security, to avoid the Cruelty of the Soldiers. These poor Creatures were burnt there: and *Lewis* who abhorred the Action, for some time could have no Comfort by reason of it. *Saint Bernard* to make him atone for so great a Sin, engages him to resume his former Resolution to go succour the Christians in *Palestine*, and at the same time prevail'd with the Emperor *Conrad* to take the same Journey.

Forces are rais'd from all Quarters, and the Emperor sets out in *February* in 1147, with an Army of Two Hundred Thousand Men, in which there were Seventy Thousand Horse. *Guelf* the Uncle of *Leo*, who was reconcil'd to *Conrad*, entred among the first into this League with the Duke *Henry*; and they were attended by the Bishops of *Frisingen*, *Passau*, and *Ratisbonne*, by *Ottocar* Marquess of *Stiria*, by *Bernard* the Prince *Carinthia*, and by *Frederick* the Prince of *Suabia*, afterwards Emperor. *Lewis*, who had order'd Distaffs and Spindles to be sent to the Young Men who were able to bear Arms, and backward to lift themselves, follows him in

the Month of *May*, with an Army as Numerous as his. But *Manuel Comnenus* Emperor of *Constantinople*, *Conrad's* Brother-in-law, by horrid Treachery caus'd Mortar to be mingled with the Meal, which was to be molded into Bread by the Soldiers, with which the greater part were choak'd; he order'd false Money to be coin'd, with which he paid for that which the Germans had to sell, and shamefully inform'd the Turks of all the Designs of his Brother-in-law. He appointed them Guides, who by his order led them through the most dangerous Ways, where he was so severely beaten, that he returned not with above a tenth part of his Army to *Constantinople*. In the Year 1148, *Conrad* and *Lewis* not being able by land to go again to *Palestine*, imbarc'd with their Forces in some Vessels which they had bought, and succeeded so well that they came to *Jerusalem*. There it was resolv'd upon that they must needs besiege *Damascus*: And as they were before the City, and could not agree to whom the Government of it should be given, though it was not yet taken, they went away, and left at liberty the finest City of *Syria*, which must needs have surrendered to them. When *Lewis* also was returning for *France*, the Greeks took him, designing to carry him to *Constantinople*, but he was happily retaken by the Fleet of *Roger* King of *Sicily*, who then was engaged in a bloody War with *Manuel*. Thus all these great Designs were brought to nothing, either by the Infidelity of the Greeks, or by the Divisions of other Christians.

*Conrad*, who before his Departure from *Germany* had in the Diet at *Francfort* made his Son *Henry* Sharer in the Empire, found him dead at his Return from his Travels, which lasted about three Years: And the Sons of *Orto* of *Vitelspac* rebell'd. In an Assembly at *Ratisbonne*, it was decreed, that they should be prosecuted as Rebels, and that their Fathers should be banish'd. But *Orto* who was no ways concern'd in the violent Practices of his Sons, made his Peace with *Conrad*, and promis'd his eldest Son for a Hostage: On the other hand, *Henry* *Leo* enter'd *Schwaben* or *Suabia* with an Army, and press'd the King to give him Satisfaction, as to the Promise he made him before his Journey to the Holy Land, to put him

him in Possession, as he said, of *Bavaria*. He answer'd, that he had promis'd to gratify him; but that he had not promis'd him *Bavaria*, which was true, notwithstanding his earnest Demand of it; That he advis'd him to be content with *Saxony*, and to limit his Ambition within the Boundaries of that Province. In 1152. he prepared to go to *Italy*, the greatest part of the Cities of which place were divided into new and powerful Factions: But this fine Design was spoil'd by a lingering Poison which the Italian Physicians, whom he employ'd, gave him in his Drink, and whom *Roger King of Sicily* had brib'd for that purpose. He died at *Bamberg* in 1152. on the 15th of *February*, when he had reign'd above 14 Years; and his Body was bury'd in *Lorch* in the *Upper Austria*.

*Frederick* the 1st, surnam'd *Barbarossa*, from the colour of his Beard, the Son of *Frederick* the One-ey'd, Duke of *Suabia*, had to his first Wife *Adelias* the Daughter of *Diepold* Marquess of *Hochbourg* or *Bobourg* in *Bavaria*: And since she was too near a Kinswoman to be his Wife, he divorced her by a Decree of the Council at *Constance*. His second Wife was *Beatrix* the only Daughter and universal Heiress of *Renaud* Count Palatine of *Burgundy* and of *Besancon*, and of *Judith* the Daughter of *Simon* the First Duke of *Lorraine*. 'Twas *William* Count of *Macon*, the Tutor of *Beatrix*, who made the Match betwixt Her and *Frederick*. He had by her *Henry* his Successor, *Frederick* Duke of *Schwaben* who died in the Holy Land, *Otho* Earl of *Burgundy*, *Conrad* Duke of *Schwaben*, *Philip* the Successor of his Brother *Henry* the VIth, *Sophia*, whom other Historians call *Futhe* and *Lutgarda*, the Wife of *Conrad* Marquess of *Misnia*; and *Beatrix*, who was Abbess of *Quedlingburg*. Some add to these *Berthe* of *Suabia*, the Wife of *Matthew* the 1st, the eleventh Duke of *Lorraine*, who had by her *Simon*, *Frederick*, *Theodorick* Bishop of *Metz*, *Philip* Bishop of *Chartres*, *Mathieu* Count of *Thou*, *Renaud*, *Alice* the Wife of *Hugh* Duke of *Burgundy*, *Berthe* the Wife of *Herman* Marquess of *Baden*, and *Hara* the Abbess of *Miremont*.

The Interregnum continued but 18 Days; and upon the 5th of *March* the States assembled at *Frankfort*,



all unanimously created *Frederick* King of the Romans, who was crown'd a few days after at *Aken*. Forasmuch as by his Father's side he descended from the Gibelins, and from the Guelfs by his Mother *Adelais*; 'twas believed that the Choice they had made would be the readiest way to put an end to those two great Factions: Besides that *Conrad* his Uncle was more willing to leave his Throne, his Crown, his Purple and Scepter (as hoping that he would be able gloriously to support the Imperial Dignity) than to his own Son, then a helpless Child in the Cradle. Foreseeing well that the Contention between *Henry* of *Austria*, and *Henry Leo* could not but have fatal Consequences, he found out an expedient to reconcile them, and satisfy them at once. He dealt so well with the former, that he persuaded him for Peace-sake to recede from his Rights: And to make him easy under his Loss, he turn'd the Marquisate of *Austria* into a Dukedom, the Limits of which he extended up to the Forest of *Rosental*, near *Passau*; and by this means *Austria* did no longer depend upon the antient Jurisdiction of the Bavarians. 'Till that very time the Marquesses of *Austria*, *Stiria*, *Istria*, and *Vobburg*, had been Dependants of *Bavaria*, and were oblig'd to be present at their Diets, whenever the Duke sends for them thither. He bestow'd *Tuscany*, the Territory of *Spoletto*, with the Principality of *Sardinia*, upon *Henry Leo*; and he made his Brother *Conrad*, born of another Mother, Palatine of the *Rhine*.

He took many Journeys into *Italy*. In the first, at the Intreaty of the Citizens of *Lodi*, who had languished full forty Years in Bondage under the *Milaneze*; he in the Year 1154. led his Army before *Milan*, the young Men of which place were in one Sally cut to pieces; and he intended at another time to punish them for their Insolence and Pride. When he had taken a View of most of the Places of *Lombardy*, he sat down before *Tortone*, which he raz'd to the very Foundation, because it had been in the Interests of the *Milaneze*, and he mightily triumph'd for this Victory at *Pavia*, where he was crown'd in *St. Michael's Church*. From thence he stept into *Tuscany*; he went to encamp with his Army in the Country

Country near *Viterbo* to visit there Pope *Adrian* the IVth who had retired to *Città di Castello*, through the fear he was in of *Frederick's* Forces. But he soon recover'd of his distrust when the Emperor had sent to him *Arnold* of *Brescia*, who had loudly asserted in *Rome*, " That the  
 " *Ecclesiasticks, the Monks, and the Pope himself, must re-*  
 " *ceive their Maintenance only out of the Offerings and*  
 " *Alms of the Faithful, and that, all the remainder did*  
 " *of right belong to the Republicks and Sovereigns who*  
 " *were bound to distribute it among the Laity.* *Arnold* of *Brescia*, who had poison'd with his Heresy the greatest part of the Italians and Germans, was conducted to *Rome*, where *Peter* the Governour of that City condemn'd him to be hang'd without insisting much upon the ordinary Formalities of Justice : And his Body was burnt to Ashes and cast into the *Tyber*, that those who had been prepossess'd by his Maxims might find nothing of that obstinate Impostor of which they could possibly make a Relique, as of a Martyr who had suffer'd for the Faith. Thus the Pope and the Emperor being agreed they had a Conference near *Sutri* : And seeing *Frederick* had denied to serve the Pope as a Master of his Horse, and to hold either his Stirrup, or the Bridle of his Mule, the Cardinals who were there withdrew a little in haste, and left Pope *Adrian* almost alone. Nevertheless, when it was evidently made appear to the Emperor that his Predecessors had submitted to this Custom, though odd enough, he help'd the Pope without reluctance to mount his Mule, and brought him some Steps on his way : The Princes and Soldiers who were Witnesses of that pious Action commended it, because it would be no Argument for his Temporal Rights. Then he quickly cross'd the *Tyber*, and being enter'd the next day into the City of *Rome*, he retir'd into his Camp after he had been crown'd in *St. Peter's* Church. The Senate and the Magistrates, assisted by the People, being extreamly troubled that the Pope had not let them partake with him in the Ceremony of the Coronation, vigorously assaulted him in his Palace, and kill'd his Guards : *Frederick* having notice of their Violence, order'd his Forces to march thither, and they kill'd a Thousand Romans, made two Hun-

dred of 'em Prisoners, and wounded an infinite Number more. Being gone to *Tivoli* with *Adrian*, he took the City, which he gave to the Pope, and return'd thence to *Germany*. But before his Arrival there, he found Snares in his way; because the People of *Verona* had built a Bridge over the *Adige* in such a manner that he could not pass there without ruining himself and his Army, and who having not succeeded in their Design, marched with all speed to oppose his Passage at the Foot of the *Alps*. The major part of them were there cut in pieces; and eleven of their Commanders were by his exprefs order hang'd up.

In 1158. he took a second Journey into *Italy*, and forc'd the *Milaneze* to address to him for Mercy. When they afterwards made an Insurrection, and attempted at last to shake off their Yoke, he once again cross'd the *Alps*; he besieg'd *Milan*; he became Master of it; he gave it up to destruction, and having spar'd only the Churches, he did with the Town as *Abimelech* did with *Siehem* and *Thebetz*, sowing Salt there when he had pull'd down the Walls to the Ground. In a general Assembly which he held between *Plaisance* and *Cremona*, he injoynd a very exact Enquiry to be made into all the Rights of the Emperors; he resum'd those which his Predecessors had neglected, or which had been taken from them; he confirm'd by Titles to every Man what was his own; and 'twas his Will and Pleasure that all in General who held Mannors of the Empire, should pay him Homage. *Adrian* deputed to him *Octavian* Cardinal of Saint *Cecilia*, and the Cardinal of the Saints *Nereus* and *Achilles*, to complain to him, " That he had sent to *Rome* some  
 " of his Officers to debate there in his own Name the  
 " Pope's Rights, and to settle Magistrates there; That  
 " he had demanded Provisions and Forage for his Army  
 " from the Lands of the Church, as well as from those  
 " of the Vassals of the Empire; That he had treated  
 " with the Senate and People in contradiction to the  
 " Agreement he had made with Pope *Eugenius*, and that  
 " he desir'd that the Bishops should do him Homage. His  
 " Answer was, That he was Emperor of the Romans;  
 " and that if he was not Lord and Master of *Rome*, he  
 " should

should have only a bare Title without Possession ;  
 That the Agreement made with *Eugenius* the III<sup>d</sup>,  
 was no longer obligatory, because the Pope, without  
 his Privy, had made one with *William* King of *Sici-*  
*ly* their avow'd Enemy ; That he could willingly part  
 with the Homage of the Bishop, if they would part  
 with the Fees of the Empire ; but if they pretended  
 to keep them, they should be oblig'd to render to *Cæ-*  
*sar* the Things that are *Cæsar's*, and to God, the Things  
 that are God's. *Adrian* at the Instance of some Pre-  
 lates resolv'd to excommunicate him, but he died the  
 first day of *September*, in 1159, in the little City of  
*Anagni*, where he retir'd for fear of the Insults of the  
 Senate. After his Death, of thirty Cardinals, who met  
 to chuse a new Pope, there were three and twenty who  
 by the Name of *Alexander* the III<sup>d</sup>, stoutly proclaim'd  
*Rowland* Cardinal of *St. Mark*, Chancellor of the Church,  
 being *Frederick's* Enemy, and the Friend of *William* the  
 Wicked, King of *Sicily*, the Son of *Roger* the III<sup>d</sup>, who  
 died at *Palermo* in 1153. upon the 27<sup>th</sup> day of *Februa-*  
*ry*. *Octavian* Cardinal of *St. Cecilia*, who had had but  
 six Suffrages, who sided with the Emperor against *Wil-*  
*liam*, who was confident of the Favour of the Senate,  
 and of a part of the Clergy, falls foul upon *Rowland*,  
 tears off his Pontifical Robe, which the first Deacon fit-  
 ted for him ; he orders his Attendants to put another  
 upon his own Body, who made him sit down in *St. Pe-*  
*ter's* Chair with the Stile of *Victor* the IV<sup>th</sup>. *Frederick*  
 and the Senators countenanc'd this Election, which was  
 confirm'd in a sort of Council conven'd by the Emperor  
*Alexander*, who withdrew into *France*, having held a  
 Council at *Tours* ; the Acts of that Italian Conventicle  
 were abrogated, and both *Frederick* and *Victor* cut off  
 from the Church. But the Schism ended not with this  
 latter, who died at *Lucca* in 1164 ; because the Cardi-  
 nals being got together with all those of their Party,  
 substituted in his room *Guy* of *Crete*, call'd *Paschal* the  
 III<sup>d</sup>, whom *Frederick* solemnly recogniz'd in the Diet  
 at *Wirtzburg*. *Alexander* being invited back to *Rome*,  
 where they had declar'd for him ; *Frederick*, upon the  
 intreaty of *Paschal*, pass'd again over the *Alps* with a  
 for-



formidable Army; he took *Ancona* from the Greeks, who were in an Alliance with *Alexander*; he made haste to join the Archbishops of *Mayence* and *Cologne*, after a Victory they had got over above thirty Thousand Romans before *Tivoli*, and besieg'd *Rome*. He reduced that City to obedience, where his Empress was crown'd by that *Pascal*: And since the Plague had destroy'd the major part of his Army, most of the Cities of *Italy* confederated against him; the *Milaneſe* that were disperſed met together again, and repair'd the Ruins of *Milan*, which they had been compell'd to leave desolate. All these People being united and animated against *Frederick*, built a new City, which they call'd *Alexandria*, in honour of the Pope: And they who were of the Emperor's and *Pascal*'s ſide, by way of Rallery, gave it the Name of *Alexandria di Paglia*, which continues yet from that very time. *Pascal* being dead, *John*, a Hungarian, made a Cardinal by *Victor*, was choſen Pope by the Name of *Calliſtus* the III'd; and *Frederick* ſupported him too. But whereas he to no purpoſe beſieg'd *Alexandria*, whereas he loſt a Battel in which he was like himſelf to come to his end; he yielded to the Admonitions and Requeſts of his moſt truſty Servants, who made it appear to him that the laſt Miſfortunes that he had fallen into were ſent from Heaven to warn him that he ſhould no longer ſupport a Schiſm, which had laſted ſeven Years, and had put the whole Church into a Conſternation.

He made a Peace with the Pope, whom he ſaw at *Venice*; he kiſs'd his Feet, and receiv'd of him all the Evidences of a tender and ſincere Kindneſs. What is ſaid by ſome, that *Alexander* ſet his Foot upon his Neck, uttering theſe Words, *Thou ſhalt walk upon the Aſp and Baſilisk, and thou ſhalt tread the Lyon and Dragon under thy Foot*, is not \* very certain. All Impartial Judges will allow that *Alexander*'s Moderation has been commend-  
ed by the generaliry of Men; and that *Frederick* who  
was

---

\* *Calcatus ab Alexandro tertio R. Fredericus Imper. ελολήθημα και παρδεν μαθίειον* eſt *Thomas Reineſius*, quem vide *Epist. 57. Ad Chriſt. Adam Rupertum pag. 513. & Epist. 69. pag. 607.*

was haughty, and who very handsomly asserted the honour of the Empire would never have endured to be us'd as the Foot-stool and Slave of the Pope.

However it be, after he had brought *Poland* to Reason, after he had given Peace to the Church and to *Germany*, in the Year 1189. he undertook the Voyage of the Holy Land to keep *Saladin*, who had surpriz'd all *Europe* by his Conquests, from finishing them by the utter Destruction of the Christians of *Asia*. Being resolv'd to assist them, he rais'd an Army of an Hundred and Fifty Thousand Men. *Philip* the 11d, King of *France*, firnam'd *Augustus*, *Deodate*, and the Conqueror, rais'd another considerable Army of Men, and engages the Ecclesiasticks and Secular Men, who would not be personally in the Expedition, to pay the Tenth part of their Substance, which was call'd the *Tithe* of *Saldin*.

*Richard* the 1st, King of *England*, firnam'd *Lyon's-Heart*, sides with them, and leads himself only near Thirty Four Thousand Men. *Frederick* took *Philippoli* the 25th of *August*; and routed the Troops of *Isaac Comnenus*, who disputed his Passage with him; and on the 22d of *November* he came to *Adrianople*. He got a Victory over the *Turks*; hew'd in pieces Ten Thousand Men in six days time, and within six days after defeated them again. These first Successes of his, astonish'd *Saladin* so much, that he resolv'd to quit *Asia*, and to draw out of the Cities, whose Fortresses he had demolish'd, the Garrisons he had plac'd there: And *Cilicia* it self was taken from him. In these glorious Beginnings *William* King of *Sicily* who guarded the Sea, and who undertook to supply the Christian Army with Provisions, unfortunately died; and by another misfortune equally unseen, *Frederick*, who had already taken *Asia Minor*, and who design'd to enter into *Syria*, was drown'd in the River *Cydus*, where he aimed only at Refreshment. Others say, that having encamp'd on the Banks of *Serre* in *Armenia*, and bathing in that River, he was seiz'd in all parts of his Body with a Shivering, occasion'd by the coldness of the Water, and that he died the 10th of *June* in 1190. in the Thirty Eighth Year of his Reign. *Theogonon*, who was in this Expedition, and who has also written

written a Journal of of it, only says that this Emperor died suddenly at *Seleucia*. He was Courageous, Just, Witty, and Moderate even in his Anger: his Motto was, That he that knows not how to be close, and reserved, understands not King-craft, which our *Lewis* the XI<sup>th</sup> borrowed from him, as he did from *Tiberius*, and which is since cut out of the Memoirs of *Philip de Commines*. This sad Event surprized our Christians, and yet hindered them not from taking *Acre* in the Year 1191. But *Philip* and *Richard* being at variance, the former left the command of his Army to *Odon* or *Odes Duke of Burgundy*, and went back for *France*. The latter, through the fear he was in, lest *Philip* should attempt any thing against him, or rather by reason of the account he had received that his Brother *John* whom he had left in *England*, had under-hand dealing with *Philip*, makes a Truce with *Saladin*, gives him up all his Conquest in *Asia*, and comes into *Europe*.

*Henry* the VI<sup>th</sup> born in 1165, Crown'd at *Aken*, in 1169, on the 15<sup>th</sup> of *August*, was One and Twenty when he was Married to *Constans* the Daughter of *Roger*: and their Wedding was solemnized at *Milan* the 27<sup>th</sup> of *February*, in 1186. He had by her one Son named *Frederick*, who succeeded *Otho* in the Empire.

*William* the Good, King of *Sicily*, being dead in the Year 1189, in the 25<sup>th</sup> of his Reign, and having no Children by his Wife *Jane*, the Sister of *Richard* King of *England*, it was manifest that *Sicily* was annexed to the Patrimony of *St. Peter*. But since there were many Factions; since the Saracens and the Christians seized Places according as their Forces were proportion'd to their Undertakings, *Tancrede*, who had neither Courage, nor Wit, the natural Son of *Roger*, was chosen King and Crown'd by *Gautier* Archbishop of *Palermo*. *Clement* the III<sup>d</sup>, who pretended to this Crown sent an Army against *Tancrede*, which he was forc'd to call back, because *Saladin*, whom he dreaded, had besieged *Ptolemais*. *Celestin* the III<sup>d</sup> succeeded Pope *Clement*, in 1191, on the 14<sup>th</sup> of *April*, crown'd *Henry* three days after his Elevation to the Papal Throne, on Condition that he should pay an Annual Tribute that was customary to the

the Apostolick Chamber for the Kingdom of *Sicily*, that he should make War with *Tancrede* at his own Expence, and that he should drive him out of the Island. To give a fair Pretence to this Quarrel, he privately took *Constantine*, *Roger's* Daughter, out of *Saint Marie's* Monastery in *Palermo*, and gave her in Marriage to *Henry*, with the Consent and Approbation of the Clergy. The Emperor rais'd an Army against *Tancrede*, and conquered a part of his Kingdom. But those *Sicilians* who were enraged by the Cruelties of the *Germans*, being got into a Body, constrained them to quit the Siege of *Naples*, and put them to Flight. About this time *Tancrede* died, and his Son *William* was proclaimed King. Upon this, *Henry* Marches with the Empress who was big with Child, with a Resolution to subdue the Isle, which by right of Succession belonged to *Clement*. Whilst he besieged *Naples*, the People of *Sicily* were not idle, and left no Stone unturned to make him retire: and as he knew that he wanted Provisions and Mony to continue a Siege of that Importance, he made use of a Device, to which *William* could not but submit. Having divided his Dominions in *Italy*, he reserved *Sicily* to himself; he gave that which was left to him in *Apulia* and *Calabria* to *William*, who was well pleased with it; and believing him to be a Man of Integrity, he was willing to attend him to *Palermo*, the last of *November*, in 1195, where the Emperor was crowned King. Whilst *William* was making himself ready to go and take Possession of that which had fallen to his share, *Henry* order'd him and his Three Sisters to be Arrested, and had him convey'd into *Germany*, as soon as his Eyes were put out. To keep him also from Children, who might possibly pretend to this Kingdom, he was so cruel as to remove from him the Means: and this unfortunate and credulous Prince was condemned to die in a Prison. Thus the Race of the French or Normans was extinct in him; and the Kingdom fell into a Family of *Suabia*.

*Henry* being extremely exalted with this Victory, and Wounded to the very Soul by the Affronts which *Conrad* and the Emperor *Frederick* his Father had received when they travelled to *Palestine*; deputed Embassadors



to *Constantinople* to demand of *Alexius Angelus* a certain yearly Tribute ; and to tell him, if he refused to pay it, that their Master plainly declared War against him. The Greek, who had no Army to oppose him, and who was not able to get from his Subjects, nor from the Churches the Sum they required of him, ransack'd the Sepulchers of his Ancestors, and presented him with 35, or 40 Thousand Crowns to pacify him. But inasmuch as *Henry's* Cruelty was Boundless, so that to be suspected by him, was enough to make a Man to be thrown into the Sea, to be Impal'd, Roasted at the Fire, or to wear a Crown of burning Iron forc'd into the Head of the Miserable Creature that bears it, with Nails ; he was no more look'd upon but with Horror.

He was making his Preparations to go into the *Holy Land*, when he fell Sick at *Messina* : and some have thought that *Constance*, to be revenged of him for his Tyranny, Poison'd him. He died in 1198, in the Seventh Year of his Reign, and in the Two and Thirtieth of his Age. In 1191, there pass'd a remarkable Thing enough at the Ceremony of his Coronation. As he lay prostrate before *Celestin*, that Pope who put the Crown upon his head, lifted up his Foot and kickt it down, to shew him by this bold Stroak, that he could both give it, and take it from him. *Baronius* commends this Action : but things have quite another Countenance since that time ; and of all the Princes in Christendom, there is not one who would very heartily subscribe to that Cardinal's Opinion.

*Philip* the Brother of *Henry the VIth*, Married *Irene*, *Alexis* the Emperor of *Constantinople's* Daughter, and their Wedding was solemnly kept at *Ausburg*, in 1197. He had Four Daughters by that Princess ; *Cunegonda*, who was Married to *Primislaus* the Son of *Uladislaus* the IVth, *Ethissa* Married to *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, afterward King of *Spain*, *Mary* the Wife of *Richard*, the Son of *Innocent* the III'd's Sister, and *Beatrix* the Wife of *Otho* Prince of *Saxony*, who was Emperor after *Philip*. As soon as the Pope had Information that he was returned to *Germany*, he sent thither some Legates to prevent his Election : and his Threats struck such Terror, that Duke *Bertold* who was no less Covetous than Rich, was  
Crown'd

Crown'd at *Mayence*, the 1st of March 1198. *Philip* who had in his Interests *Bernard* Duke of *Saxony*, *Albert* Marquess of *Misnia*, *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, and the King of *Bohemia*, was likewise elected at *Malhausen*, a City of *Thuringen*: and *Berthold* being too weak to make head against him, voluntarily quitted all Pretences to the Empire, and took the Oath of Allegiance to the Emperor. The Pope being highly displeased that they had flatter'd him with vain Promises, oblig'd the Archbishop of *Cologne*, and *Henry* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, to choose *Otho*, to whom the Pope had promised the Crown; and to make the Promise he had given him more significant, he Excommunicated the Emperor. That Anathema had its effect. The Archbishop of *Cologne* crown'd *Otho* at *Aken*; and forasmuch as the Archbishop of *Mayence* was still at *Palestine*, *Philip* pitches upon the Bishop of *Tarentum*, who Crown'd him. Without the least Concern for the Excommunication, which he lookt upon as a *Chimera*, he rais'd Forces, seiz'd many considerable Cities; he subdued *Herman*, Landgrave of *Thuringen*, *Henry* Palatine of the *Rhine*, and the King of *Bohemia* who besieged him at *Erford*; he defeated *Otho*; and by this Means the Faction of those Men who had deserted him upon his Excommunication was ruined. All he had to do now was to reconcile himself to the Pope, who was well pleased when he saw that his Nephew *Richard* was to Marry *Mary*, *Philip's* Daughter, by whom he had for her Portion, the *Marche* of *Ancona*, the Earldom, of *Spoletto*, and *Tuscany*. After that it was decreed that the Emperor should enjoy his Rights during his Life, and that after his Death, *Otho* should be declared his Successor. *Philip* who saw all *Germany* in Peace, prepar'd to be revenged of *Canute* King of *Denmark*, who during his Domestick Wars, had taken *Hamborough* and *Lubeck*; and he had strength enough to humble him, had it not been for an Accident that befel him. *Otho* Palatine of *Witelsbach*, having in the heat of his Passion kill'd a Man who was the Emperor's Favourite, was branded with Infamy for it in a Diet: and *Philip*, who had promis'd him one of his Daughters in Marriage, did for that Action think him unworthy of so near an Alliance. *Otho* despairing

spairing to Marry her, because another had already got her, Courts a Princess in *Poland*, and begs the Emperor's Kindness in the Matter. He promises it, but does him Mischief, so that *Otho* who discover'd it, and was not able to put up two Affronts so great, entring into *Philip's* Chamber, who had been blooded in both Arms, Assassinated him in the Year 1208, and made a shift to escape.

*Otho* the IV<sup>th</sup>, the Son of *Henry Leo*, and of *Matilde* the Daughter of *Henry* King of *England*, and Sister to *Richard* who was in *Barbarossa's* Expedition in *Palestine*, Married *Mary* the Duke of *Brabant's* Daughter, whom he was forc'd to put away, because she was his Kinswoman, in a Decree which allow'd her not to be his Wife. He took for his second Wife *Beatrix*, *Philip's* Daughter; and in 1202 their Wedding was solemniz'd at *Norheim*, a City of the Dutchy of *Brunswick* in the lower *Saxony*. This Princess who was exceeding Beautiful, fell four days after into a fit of Sickness, of which she died; and some are of Opinion, that she was Poison'd by *Otho*, who had taken her out of Policy rather than for Love. In 1209, he went into *Italy*, and was crown'd at *Rome* by *Innocent* the III<sup>d</sup>. But when he had retaken the greater part of the Places which had been parcell'd out from the Empire, and which he absolutely resolved not to restore again; *Innocent*, who could not prevail with him by Intreaties, excommunicated him; which did not at all hinder him from taking *Romagna*, *Marche* of *Ancona*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*. Being returned to *Germany*, he found a Second Excommunication out against him; which engaged the King of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Bavaria*, and *Saxony*, and some others to call back his Son *Frederick* from *Italy*, who in 1212, was proclaim'd King. *Otho* made an Alliance with *John* King of *England*, with *Ferdinand* of *Portugal* Earl of *Flanders*, with *Renaud* Earl of *Bolonia*, and *Frederick* took part with our *Philip Augustus*. But to understand this League, 'tis necessary in short to explain upon what Terms it was concluded.

*Philip* having seiz'd *Angers*, *Mans*, & *Evreux*, *John Richard's* Brother went to meet him betwixt *Vernou* and *Andely*; and yeilded to all reasonable Proposals. By the Treaty

Treaty in the Year 1202, *John* promis'd to give up *Eureux* and *Qillebeuf*, and to do Homage for all the Lands in his Tenure in France. That good understanding was afterwards interrupted, because the Englishman married *Isabella* the Daughter of *Aumar* Count of *Angoulesme* against *Philip's* Consent: and because he came not to the Court of France to answer concerning some Extravagancies of which some Lords had accus'd him, nor to pay the Homage he ow'd to the King. Besides this neglect, he had murder'd *Artus* his Nephew, Duke of *Bavaria*, and Earl of *Anjou*, the Kinsman and Subject of the King, of whom *Constance* the Mother of *Artus* demanded Justice for that enormous Crime. *John* the Englishman made a second refusal to appear, and was declar'd a Rebel and Murderer convict; and all the Lands he possess'd, and which he held of the Crown, were confiscated. *Philip*, who lost no time, conquer'd the Duchy of *Normandy*, which he reunited to his Crown-Lands three Years after he parted thence; he took the Dukedom of *Guienne*, the Earldom of *Poitou*, *Touraine*, *Anjou*, *Maine*, and took *Auvergne* from Earl *Guy*, as being a Rebel. After the Conquest of *Normandy* he had another Victory over *Ferdinand* the Son of *Sanch* King of *Portugal*, and Earl of *Flanders*; because he had Married *Jane* the eldest Daughter of *Baudouin* Emperor of *Constantinople*. Married after that to *Thomas* of *Savooy* the great Standardbearer of the Church, who became Earl of *Flanders* by that Marriage. He had also brought into Subjection *Renaud* Earl of *Bologne*, and *Damartin*: and *Otho* sollicitated by *John* his Nephew, and by those Earls, did not at all question but they should without much trouble divide, and share France among them.

Those Persons whom I have mention'd were powerful, Expert and Couragious: and *Otho* to assert their cause, appeared with a Hundred and Fifty Thousand Men, not including the Horse. The Armies met between *Isle* and *Tournay*: and the Battle which they fought on the 25th of *July*, in 1214, was very bloody. *Philip* admir'd by all for his Courage and Conduct, would have been in danger of losing his Life there, after his



fall under his Horse, which was kill'd ; had he not been lifted up by *Hugh de Mareuil*, upon whom the King bestowed the Lordship of *Ville-Bois*, for the service he had done him in that his Extremity. On the other side *Otho* was very near being taken, as well as *Ferdinand* and *Renaud*, who were condemn'd to Prison for Life. The greater part of the *Germans* and *Flemins* were slain ; and for this Memorable Victory, known by the Name of the *Battle of Bovines*, the King following the Example of *Lewis* the Burly his Grandfather, founded the Abby of *Notredame de la Victoire*, near *Senlis*, dedicating it to the Blessed Virgin. *Otho* having resign'd the Empire four Years after his Defeat, led for some time a private Life, and died of a Dysentery or Bloody Flux, at *Brunswick*, in the Year 1218.

*Frederick* the II<sup>d</sup>, the Son of the Emperor *Henry* the VI<sup>th</sup>, and of *Constance* the Daughter of *Roger* King of *Sicily*, married six Wives, *Constance*, *Fole*, or *Yolante*, *Agnes*, *Rutine*, *Izabella* ; and a sixth of the same name. By *Constance* the Queen of *Aragon*, he had *Henry* whom he made King of the Romans when he was but ten Years old ; and who for his Revolts died at *Cozenca*, a City of *Apulia*, in no better a place than a Prison. *Yolante*, the only Daughter of *John* of *Bregne*, King of *Jerusalem*, had for her Portion, *Palestine* : and 'tis from thence that the Kings of *Naples* and *Sicily* have assum'd the stile of Kings of *Jerusalem*. *Conrad* was born of this venter, in 1228. He divorc'd *Agnes* the Daughter of *Otho*, Marquess of *Merania* : and *Ulrick* Duke of *Carinthia* married her, when she was Repudiated by *Frederick*. His fourth Wife *Rutine* was the Daughter of *Otho* Count of *Bolfershausen* in *Bavaria* : and his fifth, *Izabella* the Daughter of *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, who was Assassinated at *Kelheim*. He had by her *Agnes*, whom some call *Margarite*, the Wife of *Albert*, Landgrave of *Thuringen*, who brought him two Sons, *Frederick* Marquess of *Misnia*, and *Dietman*. *Albert* having a Passion for another Woman, was willing to rid himself of his Wife *Agnes*, who being informed of the Resolution he had taken to have her Murdered, broke out of the Fortrefs of *Eisenach*, and died in a Monastery at *Francfort*.  
She

She is the same Woman that bit her eldest Son *Frederick* in the Cheek; and who having drawn Blood from it, told a Captain of the Guards who reproach'd her for her Cruelty, *That by the Scar of that Wound she was willing that her Son should remember the love she had for him, and the sad Condition in which he left her.* Those Children whom he would fain have put away, when they were grown up, drove their Father *Albert* from *Thuringen*, who died at *Erford*, in most deplorable Poverty. The sixth Wife of *Frederick* was *Izabella*, the Daughter of *John* King of *England*, and of *Izabella*, the only Daughter of the Earl of *Angouleme*. Their Nuptial were celebrated at *Wormes*, in 1235; and by this Princess he had a Son call'd *Henry*, to whom his Father left *Sicily* by his Will, and *Constance* who was the Spouse of *Lewis* the Landgrave of *Hesse*. Besides these Wives he had Mistresses, among others *Blanche* Marchioness of *Monferrat*, of whom he begot *Mainfroy* Prince of *Tarentum*, *Heins* King of *Sardinia*, and *Frederick* Prince of *Antiochia*.

In 1220, he went to *Italy*, and after he had been crown'd at *Rome* by *Honorius* the III<sup>d</sup>, he bestowed the Earldom of *Fuldes* upon the Church. This Peace was not of long Continuance berwixt them: and inasmuch as the Pope had urg'd some of his Subjects to revolt, the Emperor vanquish'd those Rebels; put Bishops in the room of those whom he had deprived; and was excommunicated because he refus'd to restore them. Upon this dreadful Curse pronounced against him, the *Saracens* of *Sicily* made an Insurrection; and when the Emperor had humbled them, he return'd to *Germany*. Being importuned to go into the *Holy Land*, he undertook the Journey; he arriv'd the 7<sup>th</sup> of *September* at *Ptolemais*; and whatever Pope *Gregory* the IX<sup>th</sup>, advanc'd to the Papal Throne, in 1127, and who had censur'd him, could possibly do against him; he was so fortunate that the *Sultan* being else where detained by civil Wars, yielded up to him the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, with the places which had been conquer'd by *Saladin*. So the Emperor enter'd *Jerusalem* with his Army, the 17<sup>th</sup> day of *March* 1228, or as some will have in 29; and *Abusfarages* bears witness in his Section about *Calif*

*Mostancer* the Son of *Daber*, that the *Franks*, i. e. the *Latins* had of *Al-Camel*, *Jerusalem*, in the Year of the Turkish *Hegyra*, 625, which is the Year of our Lord 1227. But be that as it will, in spite of Pope *Gregory's* Sollicitations and Intrigues, he made a Truce for ten Years with the Sultan, and left *Reinaud* Duke of *Bavaria*, his Governour in *Palestine* with an Army by Sea and Land. This Emperor, who besides his Mother-Tongue, spoke Greek, Latin, French, Italian, and Arabick, to perfection; who had subdu'd his Enemies in *Sicily*, *Italy*, and *Germany* could not secure himself from *Mainfroy* his Illegitimate Son, whom he had made Prince of *Tarentum*. This Perfidious Wretch having perceived that the Poison he had given him, as they say, wrought not so speedy an effect as he thought it would, stifled him with a Pillow; and he buried him magnificently, that he might not be suspected of that Parricide. 'Tis true that all Historians do not agree in this Account; though they consent Harmoniously in this, that he died in 1250, in the 38<sup>th</sup> Year of his Reign, and the 57<sup>th</sup> of his Age.

*Conrad* the IV<sup>th</sup> married *Elizabeth*, *Otho* the Duke of *Bavaria's* Daughter, and had by her but one Son called *Conradin*. *Frederick* his Father admitted *Conrad* as a Partner with him in the Empire, in 1235, by the consent of the Princes, called together at *Wormes*. But *Innocent* the IV<sup>th</sup>, *Frederick's* sworn Enemy, having excommunicated them in a Council held at *Lyons*, in the Year 1245. *Henry* Landgrave of *Thuringen* stoutly withstood *Conrad's* Inauguration. *Henry* dying in 1248, of a Wound he had received at the Siege of *Ulme* in *Suabia*; *Conrad* went into *Italy*, where he regained the major part of the revolted Cities: and *Mainfroy* in hopes that he should easily take *Apulia*, and *Sicily* from *Conradin*, who was then Young; poison'd *Conrad* who died the 22<sup>d</sup> of May, in 1254, nineteen Years after his Election, and four after *Frederick's* Death.

*Mainfroy* took the Guardianship of *Conradin* who was in *Bavaria*, that he might invade the Kingdom of *Italy* and *Sicily*: and having usurpt the Title of King and deceiv'd the Pope, he sent some of his Assassins into *Germany*

many, to make away with that Young Prince. Being of Opinion that the thing must succeed, he spread abroad the report of his Death, and by the help of the *Saracens*, seiz'd the Throne. *Urban* the IV<sup>th</sup> call'd into Italy *Charles* Duke of *Anjou*, the Son of *Lewis* the VIII<sup>th</sup> King of *France* against *Mainfroy*, after he had excommunicated him. He was splendidly receiv'd at *Rome*, where in 1265, he was proclaim'd King of *Jerusalem*, and *Sicily*. Having made his Preparations for War, he overthrew *Mainfroy* near *Benevent* the Year following, and kill'd him by the Treachery of *John Rota* Earl of *Caserta*, whose Wife he had debauch'd, and he would not allow him the Honour of a Sepulchre. Thus then he is here become the King of the two *Sicilies*, and the Vicegerent in the Empire, by the Title which the Pope gave him, who pretended that the Government of the Empire which was vacant, belong'd to the See of *Rome*. *Conradin* comes down with an Army into Italy, attended by *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, by *Henry* the King of *Castile's* Son, and by a great Number of Persons of Quality, all resolv'd to support his Cause, with their Heads and Hands, with their Counsel and with their Swords. He was routed in the Battle fought bewixt him and *Charles*, near the Lake *Celano*, and was taken in his Flight with *Frederick*, *Henry*, and other Lords, in the Year 1267; and how evident soever the Reasons were which *Robert* the III<sup>d</sup> of *Bethume*, Earl of *Flanders*, offer'd to the Duke of *Anjou*, the Counsels of *Clement* the IV<sup>th</sup> *Urban's* Successor prevail'd over them, and outweigh'd them. *Conradin*, *Frederick*, and twelve of the most considerable Persons of the Army were by *Charles's* Order beheaded. The Earl of *Flanders* abhorring this Cruelty, which he to so little purpose had advis'd against, darted his Sword through the Body of *Robert de Barri* the Protonotary who had pronounc'd their Sentence, lest he should have time to boast of his having condemn'd to Death two Illustrious Princes, and caus'd the Executioner to be kill'd, who had shed such Noble Blood upon the Scaffold. As for *Henry* of *Castile*, *Charles* commanded that he should be carried in an Iron Cage through all the Cities of *Apulia*, and made him



end his Days in this melancholick Condition. Thus the whole line of *Frederick* was extinguished ; because *Heins* the King of *Sardinia* being gone to assist the People of *Modena*, was taken by the *Bolonians*, who hung up Three Hundred of his Followers, and because he himself died in a Prison, where he continued 22 Years, nine Months, and 16 Days.

*Charles* seeing himself in the peaceable Possession of the two *Sicilies*, settled there some Frenchmen for Magistrates, who without regard to their Character, to the Law of God, and to certain Rules of Decency, which are observed by the most barbarous Nations, made no other Use of their Authority, but to impose every day new Taxes, to enrage the People by their Insolence, and to Corrupt or Violate the greatest Part of the Ladies that had Virtue or Beauty. This Tyranny put the *Sicilians* into a Consternation, and among the rest *John* surnamed the *de Prochite*, Born at *Salernum*, but Originally of the Isle of *Prochyta*, near the City of *Naples*. This Physician of *Mainfroy*, whose Wife *Charles* Duke of *Anjou* had debauch'd, not being able to bear the Injury done him, goes to find out *Peter* the III<sup>d</sup>, the King of *Aragon*, the Husband of *Constance*, *Mainfroy's* Sister ; he excites him to Conquer *Sicily*, he conjures him to force so fine an Inheritance out of the Hands of a Stranger. He being not in Circumstances good enough to attempt this War, the *Prochite* disguis'd in the Habit of a Franciscan Friar goes quite to *Constantinople*, where he gets a Fleet of *Michael Paleologus*, an Enemy to the French, for the Service of *Peter*. Being come back to *Rome* in the same Habit he discourses with *Nicholas* the III<sup>d</sup>, who out of Hatred to the French, promises to put the King of *Aragon* in Possession of *Sicily*. This Franciscan Physician went again into *Sicily* to give the finishing stroke to his Design. And Pope *Nicholas* being dead, *Peter* sends *Hugh de Mataplana* to Pope *Martin* his Successor to discover his Intention, but under the Pretence of procuring the Canonization of *Remond de Pegna*, the Founder of the Order of Mercy, or of the Redemption of Captives detained by the Moors of *Africk*. In the mean time *Peter* sails with his Fleet from *Tortosa* in *Catalonia* ; Anchors at *Bonne* ;

waits

waits there for News from *Sicily*; and the Prochite seizes *Charles's* Ships in the Harbours of *Messina* and *Palermo*. The Enterprize having been two Years contrivance was put in execution upon the signal given, that is to say, at the sound of the Bells, which were toll'd at the same time in all the Cities, Villages, and Boroughs of *Sicily*, at five a Clock in the Evening on *Easter Day* in 1282. all the French in the Isle had their Throats cut without distinction of Age or Sex; and Children were taken out of the Womb and dash'd in pieces against the Walls. *Peter of Aragon*, who at *Corfica* listen'd for the noise of the Bells of these *Vespers*, after call'd *Sicilian*, enter'd into *Palermo*; and on the 10th of May was crown'd there. Some time after the *Sicilians* being excommunicated, sent Embassadors to the Pope, who made an Apology for their Cruelty by reason of the Tyranny of the French, and who having cast themselves at the Feet of *Martin*, added this impious Blasphemy to their other Crimes, by addressing themselves to him in these words, O Lamb of God, which takest away the Sins of the World; which they said thrice, and then cry'd, Grant us thy Peace. They were absolv'd from their horrible Cruelty: And *Charles* who was in *Tuscany* when this bloody Massacre was executed, whatever Attempts he made after, could not regain the possession of *Sicily*; where the King of *Aragon* for his security settled a Council of State, consisting of *Alain Leontinus*, of *John the Prochite*, of *William of Galsaran*, and of *John of Loria*, his Admiral, with whom he left 25 Gallies. This is all I design to tell of this Story, leaving the remaining part of it, which has no relation to that, which 'tis my business to go on with in this Chapter.

*William* was the Son of *Florentius* a Count of *Holland*, and of *Mahaut* the Daughter of *Henry Duke of Brabant*, the Sister of *Andrew King of Hungary*, the Father of St. *Elizabeth*. *Margaret Countess of Hennebert* was this *William's* Sister: And the Story told of her so long since would be strange if it were true. A Woman who had two little Children that were Twins, begg'd an Alms of this Countess, who dismiss'd her without giving her any thing; nay, charg'd her with being an Adulteress, be-

lieving it impossible that a Woman should have by her Husband alone two Children at a time. The poor Woman unable to endure that unjust Reproach, pray'd to God that *Margaret* might have by her Husband at one lying in, as many Children as there are Days in the Year. The thing happen'd ; and in the Year 1276. upon Good Friday she was brought to Bed of 365 Children, of the bigness of little Chickens, who were all baptiz'd by *Guy* Bishop of *Utrecht* in the Presence of many Persons of Quality ; and who died with the Mother in the same day. He gave the Name of *John* to the Boys, and called the Girls by the Name of *Elizabeth*. If it be a Miracle, I have nothing to say ; otherwise the Countess of *Hennebert* must be a Novice in the World to know so little of the ordinary Events in it.

However that be, *William* married *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Brunswick*, by whom he had a Son nam'd *Florentius* the Ist, and *Beatrix* who married *Ferdinand* the III<sup>d</sup>, King of *Castile*, and the Son of *Alphonfus* the IX<sup>th</sup>, and of *Berengere*.

After the death of *Henry*, Landgrave of *Thuringen*, wounded before *Ulme*, the Princess not being able to bring the Popes to a Temper in the behalf of *Frederick* the II<sup>d</sup>, in the Year 1247, or 48. chose *William*, who was at last crown'd at *Aken*, because the City which held out for *Frederick*, surrender'd not till reduc'd to extremity. Whilst he resided in *Italy*, the Frisons taking advantage of his Absence, made Incurfions into *Holland*, and plunder'd it ; which engag'd him to go back speedily to his States. He defeated them : But as he was in a Road with a small Retinue, he accidentally came to Water that was frozen, and the Frisons who lay hid in a Morass, killd him before he could have any Succour, in the Year 1256.

*Richard*, Earl of *Cornwal*, the Son of *John* King of *England*, who died in 1216, and of *Izabella* the Daughter of Count *Angouleme* was invited into *Germany* the 13<sup>th</sup> of *January* in 1257. and crown'd at *Aken* the 17<sup>th</sup> of *May*. ther Princes thinking it intolerable that the Bishop of *Cologne* should be sent into *England* to make choice of *Richard*, chose *Alphonfus* King of *Castile* : And the English-

man who had express'd much more hatred of those who had not been in his Interests than of the Enemies of the Empire, became odious to every one. Having return'd into *England*, where he serv'd his Brother *Henry* against the Rebels, he was kill'd in 1271, the 2d day of *April*, before a City which he besieged.

*Alphonfus* firnam'd the *Wise*, and the *Astrologer*, the Son of *Ferdinand* the III<sup>d</sup>, King of *Spain*, who died in 1252. and of *Beatrice*, married *Violante* the Daughter of *James* King of *Aragon*; and had by her *Ferdinand*, *Sancho*, *John*, and a Daughter call'd *Beringuilla*. He was chosen the same Year that *Richard* was, and approv'd not of so glorious a Choice, but upon the Pope's Sollicitation. But whereas he was slow in resolving, and came not time enough into *Germany*, he reap'd not the benefit of the Overture that was made him: And his Son *Sancho* omitted nothing to deprive him of his Estate. The Historians who give an account of him, assure us that he read the Bible fourteen times; and that he was at the expence of four hundred thousand Crowns upon some learned Men to have the † Tables compleated, which to this Day are call'd *Tabulae Alphonsinae*. This King, who was profuse, wilful and also cruel; learned, but fool-hardy, to that degree, as to boast that if he had been at the Creation of the World, he should have been of a Sentiment different from the Author of Nature, because he would have it fram'd it in a beautiful Order, died in the Year 1284. reign'd 31 Years, 10 Months, and 23 Days; and his Body was inter'd at *Seville*.

*Rodolphus* Count of *Habsburg*, a small Castle upon a Hill between *Basile* and *Zurich*, the Son of *Albert* Count of *Habsburg*, Landgrave of *Alsacia*, who attended *Frederick Barbarossa* to *Palestine*, where he died; and of *Iltha* the Countess of *Bregentz*, was born on the 27th of *April* in 1218. He had two Wives, *Anne* the Daughter of *Bernard* Count of *Hoeburg*, whom he married in 1240, and she died in 1281. By this Wife he had seven

---

† *La plupart des Juifs croient que Rabbi Isaac Hazar est le principal Auteur de ses Tables Astronomique.*



ven Sons and seven Daughters; *Rodolphus* who died at twelve Years of Age, *Hartman*, *Frederick* who died young, *Rodolphus* Duke of *Schwaben*, the Husband of *Agnes* the Daughter of *Ottocar* King of *Bohemia*, and Father of *John* who kill'd the Emperor *Albert*. The fifth Son was *Albert*, to whom *Rodolphus* gave the Dutchy of *Austria* when he had defeated *Ottocar*. *Herman* Count of *Alsatia* was the sixth, who before the Consummation of his Marriage with a Daughter of the King of *England*, was drown'd in the River *Rhine* with all the Persons in his Train. The seventh Son, *Charles*, died young. His Daughters were *Futte* the Wife of *Venceslaus*, who were married in 1285. at *Heb* or *Egra*, a little City about four Leagues distant from *Hellebogen*. 'Twas there that he was crown'd King of *Bohemia*: And on the 26th of *September* in 1290. the Emperor gave him the Office of the Great Cup-bearer of the Empire, with the Dignity of an Elector. His second Daughter was *Clemence* the Wife of *Charles* of *Pannonia*; the third *Mechthilde* or *Mahaud*, whom *Lewis* Palatine of the *Rhine* married; the fourth, *Agnes*, married to the Duke of *Saxony*; the fifth, *Hedvige*, whom *Otho* Marquess of *Brandenburgh* married; the sixth, *Catharine* the Wife of *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, some time after King of *Bohemia*; and the seventh, *Euphemia* who wore out her Life in a Monastery. *Agnes* of *Burgundy* was his second Wife, who was but fourteen Years of Age, whom he married though he was sixty nine, upon the 10th of *February*, 1287. But since the Bishop of *Spire* was younger, a Person consequently more agreeable to a Princess of that Age; and since he was no small Favourite of hers, the Emperor thought fit to banish him, and to signify to him by his Exile, that he could shift well enough without his Breviary.

In the Interregnum, and amidst the Disorders of *Germany*, where the Princes made whom they pleas'd their Emperors, *Gregory* the Xth let them know, that, if they did not elect an Emperor in the most solemn and formal manner possible, he would take care of it himself. 'Twas for that reason they met together at *Francfort* on the 18th of *October* in 1273, and made choice of *Ottocar* King

King of *Bohemia*, who thinking himself a greater Potentate, refus'd to be Emperor. The Elector of *Treves*, of *Cologne*, of *Bavaria*, *Saxony* and *Brandenburgh*, upon the Character which *Verner* Archbishop of *Mayence* gave of *Rodolphus*, who was poor, but eminent for his Birth and Vertue, gave him their Votes as one Man. He was then at War with the *Suitzers*, and besieged *Basil* (where two Factions divided the City) when he was told that he was chosen Emperor; the which for a while he could not believe, till such time as he had no longer reason to doubt of it. As soon as the People of *Basil* were told this News, they sent Embassadors to *Rodolphus's* Camp to congratulate him upon this worthy Choice, and own'd him to be their Lord and Master. When he had made peace with the Bishop, he went to take the Crown at *Aken*: And whereas the Imperial Scepter, by I know not what Accident, was not to be found at present; it was doubted whether without the Scepter the Oath of Allegiance could be taken. *Rodolphus* who was a Religious and Witty Man, took up a Crucifix that was near him, and making his Application to the Assembly, he said, with a loud Voice, *Behold here is the Sign by which we have all been redeem'd, it will serve us for a Scepter, since there is not one more glorious or more solid than this.*

The first Instances of his Policy were his Refusal to take the Imperial Crown at *Rome*, which Ceremony had cost the Emperors but too much; his continual Thoughtfulness how to give Peace to *Germany*, which was wanting to it for 17 Years of the Interregnum, and his Disregard of the Affairs of *Italy*, where he refus'd not to sell their Liberty to those of *Lucca*, *Bologne*, and *Tuscany*, for very considerable Sums of Money. 'Twas with this Design that he fell upon the Marquess of *Baden* and his Allies in *Snabia* and *Alsatia*, upon *Henry* of *Bavaria* and his sixteen Counts, who were all in a Conspiracy against his Life: 'Twas for this he contriv'd ways to humble them, and to prevent their future Insurrections, that he ordered their best Fortresses to be demolished. The War he waged with *Ottocar* was of the greatest Importance, because that King of *Bohemia*, who had given one of chief Places of his Court to *Rodolphus*, who was

was then poor enough, and a Pension for the more honourable discharge of his Trust, would neither take the Oath of Allegiance, nor acknowledge him to be his Sovereign, *Rodolphus* being forc'd to arm against him, takes with *Austria* the City of *Vienna*, after a Month's Siege; and he forced him to do Homage to him. He went thither: And as the Ceremony was to be perform'd in a Tent in a full Field, and as *Ottocar* was upon his Knees at the Foot of the Emperor's Throne which was very lofty; by the help of a Cord which was pull'd, he was openly seen of all the Army in that posture of a Suppliant. His Homage being done, he obtained in Fee the Kingdoms of *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, on condition that he would disclaim *Austria*, *Carinthia*, and *Stiria*, and that their Children should be united by Matrimony. *Cunegonde*, whom *Ottocar* had married after the divorce of his first Wife *Margaret*, being enrag'd at so great a contumely, thus uttered her mind to him. "These then are the  
" Spoils of our Enemies which you bring back to us;  
" and because you would have it so, you have made us  
" their Slaves. When I have heard of your Victory  
" over the Tartars in a Battel; that you made your  
" self Master of the Hungarian Camp; that you had  
" with an Army forced your way almost into the Heart  
" of *Italy*, I thought my self exceeding happy in so  
" brave a Man, nor could I enough magnify my Fa-  
" ther for his Choice of so great a King for me. But  
" if at length your Courage fails you, and Swords strike  
" a Terror into you, favour me so far that I going into  
" your Place may at least perform my Duty; that I  
" may make it appear by experience, whether you  
" ought to have kneeled to *Rodolphus* who was former-  
" ly our Domestick Servant, and whether *Bohemia* is  
" brought so low as to pay Tribute to the German Em-  
" pire. Fir'd with these Reproaches, *Ottocar* who had  
made his Peace with *Rodolphus*, enter'd *Austria* in the Year 1277. he plunders or burns all that he meets with in his way. *Rodolphus* assisted by *Ladislaus* King of *Hungary*, the Son of *Stephen* the IVth, marches to *Vienna*; he gave him battle on the 26th of *August* in 1278, and fourteen Thousand Bohemians were kill'd upon the Spot.

Spot. *Ottocar* who had been wounded in the Fight, and who was brought to the Emperor, died of his Wounds the same Year. *Rodolphus* restor'd *Bohemia* to *Venceslaus* the Son of *Ottocar*, gave him his Daughter *Juthe* to be his Wife : And *Austria* fell into the House of *Habsburg* by this Victory.

When *Rodolphus* foresaw that he could not possibly live long, he call'd together a Diet at *Francfort*, in which he desir'd the Electors to name his Son *Albert* King of the Romans ; but they found Arguments for their Excuse in that matter. His Distemper growing upon him, he was willing with all speed to go to *Spire*, but he could not reach it, because in 1291. he died at *Germerheim*, a small City in the Lower Palatinate, about two Leagues distant from *Spire*. He was Elected Emperor in 1275. he liv'd 73 Years and 5 Months: He reign'd 17 Years, 9 Months, and 16 Days. This Prince was of a strong Constitution, and large Size ; he had a beautiful Countenance, lively Eyes, a Hawk-nose and fair Hair ; and in his Carriage there was an Air of Grandeur remarkable which attracted a respect from both his Subjects and Strangers. For all that he was Coverous, and that is a great blemish in a Prince.

*Adolphus* Count of *Nassau*, the Son of *Adolphus* the Grand Marshal of the Emperor *Rodolphus*, was elected King of the Romans at *Francfort* six Months after his Death: And since Men were divided much in their Sentiments, the Electors allow'd *Gerard* the Archbishop of *Mayence* to appoint whom he should think fit ; and he, contrary to their expectation, nam'd his Cousin *Adolphus*. He married *Imagine* of *Limburgh*, and had by her three Sons: *Adolphus* espous'd to the King of *Bohemia's* Daughter, and both of 'em died before the Consummation of their Marriage. He had also *Henry* married to the Burgrave of *Nuremburg's* Daughter ; a third who married a Daughter of the Palatinate ; *Mechthilda* the Wife of the Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and who brought him *Adolphus*, *Rodolphus*, and *Robert*, Count Palatines of the *Rhine*.

He was crown'd with *Imagine* the Empress at *Aken* : And it is past doubt that he was brave ; but he was very proud  
of



of his Merit, and because he brought back great Booty from five Battels, in which he had got the Victory over the Duke of *Brabant*. After he was Emperor, he thought good to declare in favour of *Guy* Count of *Flanders*, to whom *Edward* King of *England* had promis'd his Daughter *Philippa* as a Wife for his only Son. Upon this Match he sent to declare War with *Philip* the IVth, surnam'd the *Fair*, who to reproach his Pride, sent him a well seal'd Packet made up of blank Paper. There happen'd something to him more material and more grievous, because *Edward* having sent him Mony to bring him Forces, he laid out that very Mony upon the Purchase of *Thuringen*, which the Landgrave *Ernest* the Father of *Frederick* and *Dietman*, of whom I have made mention, sold to him: But the People of the Country would not acknowledge him to be their Lord. Upon this Refusal he plunders *Thuringen* and *Misnia*, gives up the Nuns to the Lust and Rage of the Soldiers, and with Fire and Sword destroys all the Places which had not submitted to him. His Debaucheries and Cruelties rais'd the Indignation of most Men, and even of *Gerard* himself who had chosen him; so that he was depos'd in a Diet held at *Francfort* in 1298. and *Albert* of *Austria* proclaim'd King of the Romans. But to decide this Controversy there must be a Battel which was fought at *Hafenpriet* near *Spire*, on the 2d of *June* in 1298. It lasted full six Hours; and *Albert* who won it, with his own Hand kill'd his Enemy, who fought at the Head of his Squadron.

Prince *Maurice* Count of *Nassau*, as if he had remembered his Death, reveng'd it three hundred Years after, on the very same day that *Adolphus* was kill'd by *Albert*: and his Brother *Henry Frederick* being 17 Years old, his Cousin *Lewis* of *Nassau*, Lieutenant of the Horse of States, Count *Ernest's* Brother, had also a share in this Vengeance. Indeed, in the Year 1600, he routed the Army of Archduke *Albert*, the Husband of *Izabella* near *Nieuport*, consisting of Twelve Thousand Foot, and about 3000 Horse. He lost but two thousand Men in that Fight: among whom there was no Man of Note; and the Emperor lost above six Thousand. Among the dead were

were reckon'd Count *de Saume, de la Fere*, the Seneschal of *Mont-liamar*, the Baron of *Pimerel, Cassey*, and *Origny* the Son of President *Richardot*, Don *Gasper of Loiozza*, Don *Gonzales de Spinosa*, Don *John de Pardo*, Don *Garcia* of *Toledo*, Don *Lopez of Sapata*, Don *Alonzo de Cursano*, Don *Lewis Faccarino*, *Sebastian Velascon*, *Sebastian d'Oreha*, *Christonal Verdugues*, *Mattheo d'Otteuil*, *Joannetin de Casa nueva*, *el Contador Alines*, had not a more happy Fate. *Francisco de Mendozza*, Marquess of *Guadaletha*, Grand Admiral of *Aragon*, Don *Baptista de Villa-nova*, *Alphonfus Riquel*, Don *Philip de Taxis*, Don *Petro de Velasco*, Don *Petro de Lensina*, Don *Antonio de Mendozza*, Don *Francisco de Torres*, with many others, were made Prisoners. All the Menial Servants of the Archduke were taken, with a Hundred and Six Foot-Colours, and Five Standards of Horse, his Baggage, his Artillery; and having chang'd Arms, and Habit, and escaping with two others, Wounded in the Face, he withdrew near *Bruges*. 'Tis the same *Maurice of Nassau* Prince of *Orange*, who to the Question propos'd to him one day, who was the Greatest Captain in Europe, answered, that the Marquess of *Spinola* was the Second; and how modest soever his Answer was, the Count shew'd that the Marquess was inferior to him.

*Albert of Austria*, the Son of the Emperor *Rodolphus*, was surnamed the *Blind*, from an Eye he lost by the strength of Poison, which *Conrad* Bishop of *Salzbourg* prepared for him; and without the help of the Physicians, who gave him a Vomit, he had not been rid of it at so cheap a rate. By his Wife *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of *Menard* Duke of *Carinthia*, Count of *Tirol*, and of *Goritz* in *Goricia*, in *Friuli*, he had one and Twenty Children, ten of which number died young. The others were, first *Rodolphus*, surnamed the *Meek*, the *Well-natured*, or *Gracious*, who married *Blanche*, the Daughter of our *Philip the Hardy*, by his second Wife *Mary of Brabant*. *Blanche* was the Widow of *John* of *Namur*, Count of *Hanaw*, the Son of *Guy* Earl of *Flanders*: and after the Death of this Princess, he took to Wife *Callisia* of *Bohemia*. He had no Children either by the one or t'other, and died of the Bloody Flux at *Olmutz* in *Bohemia*, in

1326. The Second Son of *Albert* was *Frederick*, surnamed the *Fair*, Duke of *Austria*, afterwards Emperor. The third *Leopold*, surnamed the *Honor of Soldiers*, Duke of *Austria*, *Stiria* and *Carinthia*, who died in 1326. The fourth *Henry*, who married the Daughter of the Count of *Bernburg*, and died in 1344. The fifth *Albert*, surnamed the *Wise*, who after the Death of the Emperor had a great while the whole Administration of Affairs. The Sixth *Otho*, married to the Duke of *Bavaria's* Daughter, who died in 1344. Of the Daughters of this Emperor, one call'd *Agnes*, was the Wife of *Andrew* the III<sup>d</sup>, King of *Hungary*: *Elizabeth* of *Austria*, and *Ausburg*, married to *Ferry* or *Frederick* the III<sup>d</sup>, the eighteenth Duke of *Lorain*; *Anne* to the Marquis of *Brandenburg*; *Catharine* contracted to *Henry* the VII<sup>th</sup> of *Luxembourg*, after married to the King of *Apulia*, and Duke of *Calabria*, and *Guttha*, who was the Wife of *Ulrick*, Count of *Oettingen* of *Bavaria*.

This Emperor was engag'd in many Domestick Wars, in which Fortune was not always favourable to him, nor always his Enemy. Though he had been crown'd twice, Pope *Boniface* refused to do him the same Honour; because *Albert*, demanded of him to throw up all in general that had been taken by the Church from the Empire, I will say nothing of this Pope, whose Pride and Humours have been very freely described by *Platina*. 'Tis sufficient in short, to take notice that when he had excommunicated King *Philip*, and retir'd to *Agnani*, *Sciarra Colonna*, and *Felix* of *Nogaret* of *Languedoc*, made themselves Masters of his Palace: that the former, whom he had long plagued, gave him a Blow on the Cheek with his Gantlet, and so severe a one, that the Blood gushed out of it; that the Pope fell into a Phrensy, and died mad five and thirty Days after he had been so heinously affronted. In the History of *Philip* the *Fair*, it appears after what manner he thought fit to deal with that King; who was satisfied in calling him *Fop* and *Impertinent*, for being so confident, as in his Letter to tell him, That *Philip* was his Subject both in things Temporal and Spiritual. I leave it to the Enquiry of others, whether he entred the Papal Dignity like a Fox, whether he liv'd

in's

in't like a Lion, or died in it like a Dog. But be that as it will, after the Death of *Rodolphus* the Gracious, who died Childless, as I have said; *Henry* Duke of *Carinthia* who had been chosen King of *Bohemia*, by the Barons, was willing to take Possession of that Kingdom. The Emperor, being well pleas'd to invest those of his own Family in it, raises an Army of fifty thousand Foot, and three Thousand Horse: But as he was going to cross the *Rhine*, his Nephew *John* the Son of *Rodolphus* and *Agnes* Assassinated him in 1308, being enrag'd at him for depriving him of the Government of *Suabia*, because he indeed squander'd away all the Revenue of it. He reigned near ten Years, and he was removed from the Monastery, where his Empress *Elizabeth* buried him; about a Year after to *Spire*, and interred again near the Emperor *Rodolphus* the 1st, his Father.

*Henry* the VIIth Count of *Luxemburg*, the Son of *Henry* and *Beatrix*, the Countess of *Hennegau*, married *Margaret* the Daughter of *John* Duke of *Brabant*, surnamed the *Alms-giver*, upon the Account of his Bounry to the Poor. He had by her *John*, Married to *Elizabeth* the Daughter and only Heiress of the old *Venceslaus* King of *Bohemia*; *Beatrix* the Wife of *Charles* King of *Hungary*; *Mary* wedded to *Charles* the Fair, King of *France*, and *Agnes* married to *Rodolphus*, the Palatine of the *Rine*. He had by her *Agnes*, who was married to the Emperor *Charles* the IVth.

After the Death of *Albert*, there was an Interregnum, which lasted six Months, by reason of the different Opinions of the Electors. But when the Pope who feared the Power of the French in *Italy*, had informed them that *Philip* would make *Charles* of *Valois* King of the Romans, they agreed, and *Henry* of *Luxemburg* was chosen on the 25th of *November*, in 1308. The following Year he was Crown'd on the 6th of *January* at *Aken*: and having been told that the People of *Bohemia* were disgusted at the Government of *Henry* Duke of *Carinthia*, and that they desired *John* of *Luxemburg* his Son for their King, he sent him into *Bohemia* with an Army, attended by *Rodolphus* of *Bavaria*. The Duke of *Carinthia* who clearly foresaw that he should needs fall into the Snares of



the *Bobemians*, who hated him, or that he should never be able to withstand so great an Army, which was marching to attack him; threw up his Office, and rather chose very decently to go off, than to be shamefully driven away. *Italy* was at that time in a sad Condition, made so by the Factions of the *Guelfs* and *Gibelines*, and by the Usurpation of many Tyrants, who had seized on all the Cities after near Sixty Years that the Emperors did not much trouble themselves to go over the *Alps*. *Clement* the Vth, who had translated the See to *Avignon*, and given his consent to *Henry's* election, provided he would within two Years go to *Rome* to receive the Imperial Crown of them, whom he should pitch upon to bind it upon his Temples; importun'd him to resolve upon that Journey, and to force the Usurpers of the Estates belonging to the Church, to restore that which they had had the Boldness to take from her. After he had left his Son *John* King of *Bohemia* his Lieutenant in the Empire, he set out; he pass'd through the Dominions of the Earl of *Savoy*, his Brother-in-law; he forc'd the chief Cities of *Piemont* and *Lombardy* to take the Oath of Allegiance to him; and he was receiv'd with much Applause at *Milan*, where on Twelfth-Day, in 1311, he was Crown'd with his Empress *Margaret*, in *St. Ambrose's* Church. He resettled in the City *Matthew* Vicount *Gibelin* who had been driven thence by *Guy de la Tour*, the Head of the Faction of the *Guelfs*; he took almost all the Cities who were unwilling to be longer subject to the Emperor, and chose Governors to reduce them to Obedience. When he had batter'd down the Walls of *Cremona*, he besieged *Bresse*, and forc'd it to surrender; and upon the Request of the Pope's Legats he freely pardon'd those Rebels, though they had in one Sally kill'd the Archbishop of *Treves*, *Baudouin* his Brother, with many others. *Mantua*, *Verona*, *Vincenza*, *Trevese*, *Venice* and *Plaisance*, acknowledg'd him to be their Lord: and since the Weather began to be very severe, he went to spend the Winter at *Genova*. In 1212. he travelled to *Pisa*, where he was once more Crown'd: and without the least Attempt upon *Florence*, *Lucca*, and *Bolonia*, which had put themselves under the

the Protection of *Robert King of Naples*, he purpos'd to go to *Rome*, where he receiv'd the Imperial Crown from three Cardinals, who had Pope *Clement's* Order, to give it him. He staid not long there, because the *Ursin Guelfs* kept the Castle of *St. Angelo*, and the *Vatican*, which he attack't without any success, and thought only of making War upon the *Florentines*.

But there happened an Event which broke all the Measures which he had taken. *Clement* in the Letters which he wrote to the three Cardinals, who delivered them to the Emperor at *Pisa*, made use of these Expressions: " That as the Emperor and King *Robert* were oblig'd to obey him by their Oath of Fealty, and by the Favours he had conferred upon them; so also they ought to have more Zeal than all others for the Service of the Church. By the first Oath which *Henry's* Embassadors took, whom he sent to *Aragon* to ask for the Imperial Crown, they promis'd in the Emperor's Behalf that he should suffer no attempt upon the Pope's Life, nor Honour: that he should make no Ordinance at *Rome*, till the Pope should give his Consent to it. That when he was able, he should cause a Restitution to be made of all the Lands belonging to the Church. That he should advance the Holy Church, and that he should, as much as it should be in his Power, undertake the Defence of her Rights by himself, by his Lieutenants, and his other Officers. That on the Day of his Coronation he should swear the same things, and that he should take another Oath likewise, according to Custom, upon the same Occasion. That other Oath which he indeed took is this, " That he would be the Protector and Defender of the Pope, and the Holy Church of *Rome*: and that as far as he could, he would preserve her in her Patrimony, her Possessions, in her Honours, in her Privileges and her Rights. *Henry* affirm'd that that Oath was not like that which Vassals take to their Lord, but rather like the Coronation-Oath of Princes, in which they undertake the Protection and Defence of their Subjects, and to preserve their Rights and Privileges. Pope *Clement* on the other hand asserted that that

was an Oath of Fealty, such as a Vassal ought to take to his Lord, whose Tenant, Client, and Dependent he is. That before he had taken that Oath, and been crown'd by the Pope, the Person elected was neither Emperor, nor in a Capacity to act in that Station: and that in the Interregnum the Pope, at least in *Italy*, had the full and absolute disposal of all the Concerns of the Empire. *Henry*, though a Wiseman, falling into a Passion, protested by an Act before the Publick Notary, whom he sent for, that neither he nor his Predecessors ever took an Oath of Fealty to any one, and plainly fell out with the Pope. After that pretending that the Kingdom of *Naples* was a Fee, and in the Tenure of the Empire, he summon'd *Robert* solemnly and formally to come to *Pisa*, and upon his refusal to appear, he made that King an Out-Law of the Empire, depriv'd him of his Kingdom, and presented it to *Frederick* King of *Sicily*.

When the Forces which he had rais'd in *Germany*, were arriv'd with the Successor of the Gibelines, he left *Pisa* on the 9th of *August*, in 1313, and turn'd towards *Rome* with his Land-Army, being moreover strengthened with many Vessels of the People of *Pisa*, and seventy Gallies of the State of *Genova*. *Frederick* King of *Sicily*, who the same Day set out of the Port of *Messina*, with fifty Gallies, who had taken *Rhegio*, and other Places near *Calabria*, made up to *Cajeta*, where the Emperor's Fleet was oblig'd to joyn them. *Robert* could not make head against so many Forces; and by his defeat the Florentines had been brought to their last Shifts. But *Henry* preparing himself for the Holy Communion by Fasting, Prayers, and other Christian Actions; *Bernard Jacobin*, whom the Florentines had bribed for that Purpose, when he administred the Holy Sacrament to him upon the Festival of the Virgin's Assumption, gave him a Poison'd Host. The Mass was no sooner finished, but the Emperor said to the Monk *Bernard*, get you gone, retire; for if the Mischief you have done me be known, you must come to a most unhappy end; I forgive you: and the Parricide being taken, was fled alive. *Henry* who had reign'd four Years, and eight Months, and liv'd

one



one and Fifty Years, one Month, and seven Days, died on the 24<sup>th</sup> of *August*, of that Poison: and *Clement* the V<sup>th</sup> died on the 20<sup>th</sup> of *April* in the following Year.

*Lewis* of *Bavaria*, the Son of *Lewis* the Severe, Count Palatine Elector, and of *Melthide* the Daughter of the Emperor *Rodolphus*, had three Wives; one Countess, who died soon after she was married; the Second *Beatrix* the Daughter of the King of *Poland*, and he had by her *Lewis* the Duke of *Bavaria*, Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and *Stephen* Duke of *Landsthut*. By *Margaret* his Third Wife, the Daughter of *William* the III<sup>d</sup>, Earl of *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Friseland*, he had four Sons, *Albert* Duke of *Strubingen*, *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, and Marquess of *Brandenburg*; *William* Earl of *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Friseland*; *Lewis* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, Count of *Tirol*, who because he was born in *Rome* after the Coronation of *Margaret*, in 1328, was surnamed the *Roman*. He had also by *Margaret*, *Elizabeth* or *Agnes*, married to *Ulrick* Earl of *Wittenburg* the Mother of Count *Eberhard* the *Pacifick*; and who upon the Death of *William* her Brother, drown'd in *Friseland*, as being the next Heiress, brought the Earldom of *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Friseland*, to the House of *Bavaria*, who enjoy'd them near Fourscour Years. Those Earldoms after that time, return'd to the House of *Burgundy*.

After the Death of *Henry* the VII<sup>th</sup>, the Electors were four Months in choosing an Emperor, because *Lewis* and his Cousin *Frederick* the Fair, the Son of the Emperor *Albert* of *Austria*, and the Emperor *Rodolphus*'s Grandson, both of 'em laid claim to the same Dignity. *Lewis* was elected at *Francfort*, on the 18<sup>th</sup> of *October*, in 1314, by *Peter* Archbishop of *Mayence*, *Baudouin* Archbishop of *Treves*; by *John* King of *Bohemia*; *John* Duke of *Saxony*, and by *Vaudemar* Marquess of *Brandenburg*. *Frederick* who was on the other side the *Maine* at the Head of his Troops, was Elected by *Henry* of *Virneburg* Archbishop of *Cologne*, by *Rodolphus* of *Saxony*, and by *Henry* Duke of *Corinthia*. But as the two first would not allow these to be Electors, the Duke of *Carinthia* was indeed Incapacitated to give his Voice, because he no longer wore the Crown of *Bohemia*, to which the



right of Election was annext. So *Lewis* being elected according to the nicest Formalities, and conducted with great Ceremony into *St. Bartholomew's Church*, was seated upon the Altar, as the Custom is; and the People and Magistrates swore Allegiance to him. He fearing lest *Frederick* might get before him to *Aken*, prevented him, mounting the Throne of *Charles the Great*; and *Frederick* was crowned at *Bonne*, by *Henry* Archbishop of *Cologne*. Waving the particular account of their War, which lasted almost seven Years, I shall speak only of Two Battles they fought; the one upon the Banks of the *Neckar*, in 1316, hard by *Eslingen*; the other in the Field of *Ampfinguen* above *Muldorf* in the lower *Bavaria*, in the Year 1323. Though the first was exceeding Bloody, and the Earth was covered with the Dead, the Darkness of the Night separated these two Emperors; and took from them the Means of discerning to which side the Victory began to incline. The Second Battle in which they fought Twelve Hours without Intermission, decided the Controversy, because *Frederick* and his Brother *Henry* were taken in it; and because *Lewis* secur'd himself from *Frederick* by a Prison where he was in hold Three Years. But he restored him his Liberty, in 1325, after he had honourably left him the bare Title of the King of the Romans, on Condition he would bind himself by Oath no more to pretend to the Empire, nor ever to beg the Crown of the Pope. Though he was often importn'd to go to take it either at *Rome*, or at *Avignon*, he was just to his Promise, and died on the 13th of *January*, in 1330.

He had scarce reap'd the full Enjoyment of his Victory, but Pope *John* the XXIII<sup>d</sup>, cited him by a Summons publish'd at *Avignon*, to give an Account of his Actions there, upon the eighth of *October*. It was set forth in that Summons, or Monitory, "That his Election was  
 " questioned and uncertain; that he had taken the Em-  
 " pire, contrary to Custom, before the Pope had given  
 " his consent to it; that he had made his Son an Ele-  
 " ctor; that he had against the Church supported the  
 " Vicounts of *Milan*, that were condemn'd for Impiety  
 " and Heresy; that if within three Months he could  
 " not clear himself of all these Accusations, he should  
 " fur-

“ surrender the Empire; that otherwise he must prepare  
“ himself for an Excommunication, and a Prohibition  
“ of farther Obedience to be paid him by any of the Sub-  
“ jects of the Empire. The Embassadors, whom *Lewis*  
sent to the Pope with much Submission, not having had  
audience, he call'd together the Princes, the Doctors,  
and the Bishops at *Nuremberg*, he answer'd to the several  
Articles objected against him; and he appealed from all  
the unjust Proceedings of the Pope to the Holy Aposto-  
lick See, and to the Church represented in a General  
Council. *John* then excommunicated *Lewis*, and almost  
at the same time condemned the most considerable of  
the *Gibelins*, as the Vicounts of *Milan*, the *Scaligers* of  
*Verona*, the Marquess of *Ferrara*, *Passerin Bonacosse* of  
*Mantua*, *Castrucci Castracani* of *Lucca*, *Hugh* Bishop of  
*Arezzo*, and those who had refus'd to obey his Injuncti-  
ons. On the other hand the Emperor published a Mani-  
festo, in which he represents Pope *John* as a subverter of  
the Empire, a Transgressor of the Laws, an Enemy of the  
Gospel, and an obstinate Heretick. A while after, the Ro-  
mans shamefully drove away from *Rome* all those who  
seemed to be of the Pope's side, they sent to him to  
hasten his return to *Rome*: and being dissatisfied with  
his answer, they sided with the *Gibelins*; they intreated  
the Emperor by their Deputies to march speedily into  
*Italy*, and to come and take there the two Crowns ac-  
cording to Custom.

In 1327. he went over the *Alps*, and with the prin-  
cipal *Gibelins* he held an Assembly at *Trent*, where he  
call'd the Pope Priest *John*; he enter'd *Lombardy*, got  
himself crown'd at *Milan* King of *Italy*, and brought  
into subjection the major part of the Cities of the  
Church and of *Tuscany*. In the mean time the Pope con-  
tinu'd his Excommunications against the Emperor, who  
took them for a very small matter; and who valu'd  
his Anathema's no more than Paper-Thunderbolts. He  
was crown'd at *Rome* with *Margaret* on the 17th Day  
of *January* in 1328. by four Barons who were the Re-  
presentatives of the Roman People. To be fully re-  
veng'd of Pope *John*, upon the 18th of *April*, with all  
the Signals of Imperial Dignity, he ascended a Throne,

which was erected upon the Stairs of St. Peter's Church; and in the presence of many Doctors and Religious Men of different Orders, in the presence of Magistrates, of the People, of Princes, and of Officers of the Empire, he depriv'd of the Popedom *James of Cahors*, call'd *John the XXII*d, as an *Usurer*, a *Simoniackal Person*, an *Heretick*, and an *Usurper of the Holy See*. At the same time he prohibited all the Subjects of the Empire to pay him Obedience, and to own him as Pope upon the Penalty of being depriv'd of their Goods and their Estates. By an Ordinance of the 23d of April he decreed also, That the Pope should submit, as his Subject, to the Laws of the Empire; That after the example of other Bishops he should for the future reside in his Church; That it should not be in his power to be absent from it above three Months, nor be distant from it more than two days Journey, without the Consent of the People of Rome, and of the Clergy; That otherwise he should be no longer acknowledg'd to be Pope; and that being in that case reputed dead, the Election of a new Pope might be set on foot. He drove Things farther yet; since he made Friar Peter of Corbarie Pope, a Cordelier, seventy Years old, under the Name of Nicholas the Vth, who crown'd him: And it is highly probable that Pope John was so much the more mortified, in that he was Enemy to those of his Order. But be that as it will, Friar Peter Ramuce repented of the shameful Schism he had made, and submitted to the Mercy of Pope John, who kept him in a pretty decent Prison, where dying within about three Years, the Pope had the goodness to bury him splendidly in the Covent of his Fellow-Members of Avignon, in the Habit of a Cordelier.

In the mean time Lewis perceiving that the Faction of the Guelfs was grown much more powerful than he imagin'd, left Rome, where his Life was in danger: And when he had continu'd in Italy three Years, where the greater part of the Cities plainly refus'd to obey him, he went to Trent: And 'twas there that he had an account of the death of Frederick of Austria his Rival. Being come back to Germany he labour'd what he could to be reconcil'd to Pope John, and when he was dead, he

try'd



try'd all manner of ways to procure an Absolution from *Benet* the XIth his Successor, who was kept from gratifying him by the Remonstrances of the Kings of *France*, *Naples*, and *Bohemia*, all three secret Enemies of the Emperor. Upon that Refusal, the Electors and other Ecclesiastical Princes met together at *Rentz* a little above *Coblentz*, declar'd that an Emperor formally elected, and by a Plurality of Voices, might govern the Empire, and that to that end he had no need of the Consent, Approbation, or Confirmation of the Pope. *Lewis* also submitted to *Peter Roger*, Archbishop of *Roan*, who by the Name of *Clement* the VIth, succeeded Pope *Benet*: And that *Clement*, who was *Lewis*'s Friend when he was but Cardinal, all of a sudden became his Enemy, so as solemnly to excommunicate him, and to dispatch his Legates into *Italy* to raise the Magistrates, Princes, and the People against him. As severe as the Conditions were which *Clement* had enjoind him for his Absolution, he was willing intirely to submit to them: But since they concern'd the Empire, as well as the Emperor, the Representatives of the Cities assembled at *Francfort* set themselves vigorously against them: And the Pope who understood the Determinations of that Assembly, made choice of Maundy *Thursday* to issue out fresh Anathema's upon the Emperor. And being not yet satisfied with this new Excommunication, he by his Letters enjoins the Electors without delay to elect another Emperor. *Henry* of *Virneburg*, Archbishop of *Mayence*, and other Princes being terrify'd, nam'd *Charles* of *Moravia*, who was call'd by way of Railery the Pope's Emperor: And the Estates conven'd at *Spire*, null'd that Election, and renew'd their Oath of Allegiance to their rightful Emperor.

That Prince whom the Popes never suffer'd to be at rest, having magnificently treated *Jane* of *Austria*, *Albert*'s Widow, as she went through *Bavaria* towards *Vienna*, drank in a Cup which that Dutcheß presented him with when she took her leave of him; and 'tis believed that she poison'd him out of revenge, because he was prefer'd before *Frederick*. 'Tis, however, certain that he fell ill immediately after; that having gone in-  
to



to his Chamber to take an Antidote, which he had before us'd against Poison, which had been given him more then once; he was not at all reliev'd by it; that he went a Hunting with a design to get Strength by Exercise; and that as he was riding with his Sword in his Hand, against a Bear of an extraordinary fize, he fell from his Horse, as if taken with an Apoplectical Fit. After he had given some Proof of his Repentance for his past Life, he died on the 11th of October in the Year 1347; he liv'd 63 Years; he reign'd 30, and was buried in the great Church of *Munich*.

*Charles* the IVth, the Son of *John* King of *Bohemia*, (who fell in the Battle of *Creci*) and of *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Venceflaus* King of *Bohemia*, did at his Baptism receive the Name of *Venceflaus*: But as he was educated in the Court of *Charles* the Vth, King of *France*, surnam'd the *Wise*, that Prince gave him his own Name, at the time when this young Prince was confirm'd. He had four Wives, *Blanche* Countess of *Valois*, the Daughter of *Charles* Earl of *Valois* the Sister of King *Philip*; and he betroth'd her, tho' she was then but seven Years old. He had by her *Margaret*, married to *Lewis* King of *Hungary* and *Poland*; and *Elizabeth* the Wife of *Galeazzo* the Vicount of *Milan*. His second Wife was *Agnes* or *Anne* the Daughter of *Rodolphus* the Youthful, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*: The third, *Anne* or *Fane*, the Daughter of *Bulcon*, who brought him to her Portion the part of *Silesia*, which borders upon the Mountains of *Bohemia*: The fourth, was *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Bugislaus* Duke of *Stetin* the Kinswoman of *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, whom he married in 1363. By these two last he had *Venceflaus* who succeeded him; *Sigismund* afterwards Emperor, who was but five Years old when his Father made him Marquess of *Brandenburg*; and *John* who had *Gorlitz*, the Metropolis of *Lusatia* with other Cities. His Daughters were *Catherine*, married to *Rodolphus* the IVth Duke of *Austria*, *Elizabeth* to Duke *Albert*, Brother of *Rodolphus*; *Margaret* to the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, *Anne* to *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, and *Helen* to the King of *England*.

The Emperor who had bought his Election with very considerable Sums, found himself at a loss after the Death of *Lewis*; because *Henry* Archbishop of *Mayence*, who had always faithfully serv'd him, and been depos'd by the Pope for that reason, *Rodolphus* Palatine of the *Rhine*, *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, and *Lewis* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, made choice of *Edward* King of *England*. He thank'd them for the honor they had done him, having then a great War with the French. Then these four Electors nam'd *Frederick* Marquess of *Misnia*; to whom *Charles* offer'd ten thousand Marks of Silver, if he left him undisturb'd in the Post in which he was resolv'd to abide; besides that, the Marquess clearly foresaw that the People of *Bobemia* would seize all his Lands. After *Frederick*, the Faction opposing the King of *Bobemia*, nam'd *Gontier* Count of *Schwartzenburg*, a wife and valiant Man, who on the 16th of *January* in 1349. was proclaim'd at *Francfort* King of the Romans. *Rodolphus* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, was the first that own'd him; but *Charles* having begg'd his Daughter *Anno* to Wife, the Father-in-law was oblig'd to take the part of his Son. *Gontier* enjoy'd this Honour but about six Months; because *Charles*, as some think, got some Poison mingled for him in Drink, by an eminent Physician call'd *Freidano*, who by his Order drank first. *Gontier* drank the rest without much boggling: And *Freidano* falling instantly upon it, died within three days. The Count's Death, who us'd some Remedies, was not so sudden. But being become very feeble, and incapable of enterprizing great Things, *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and *Rodolphus* Palatine being prevail'd with by *Charles*, did so dexterously address themselves to the Temper of Count *Schwartzenburg*, that he resign'd his Dignity, on condition that he renouncing his Rights, two Cities of *Thuringen* should be given him, that the Title of King of the Romans should be left him, and that there should be two thousand Marks of Silver bestow'd, as a Retribution upon his Heirs for the Expence he had been at.

In the Year 1354. he went into *Italy*, where he was crown'd at *Milan*; and the following Year at *Rome* by

a Legate of *Innocent* the VIth. What he did in *Germany* gained him no great Reputation, and was also very disadvantageous to the Empire, by cutting off the Branches of it. He gave up the Kingdom of *Arles* to the King of *France*; he by prodigious Sums purchased the Suffrages of the Electors in the behalf of *Venceslaus*: And since there was not enough in his Treasury to pay them, he sold sixteen Cities of *Suabia* to the neighbouring Princes, *Ingelheim* and *Ogernheim*, with the Publick Customs, not reserving the Power of Redemption: And it was said of him, *That to expose the Eagle of the Empire to the contempt of the World, he had pull'd off his most beautiful Feathers.* This Emperor who made the famous golden Bull to ensure the future Elections, and to put them out of the reach of Contest; who understood many Languages, and who had a natural and charming Eloquence; who had a great deal of Wit, and a very little Courage, died in 1378. at *Prague*; and he reign'd 31 Years, 1 Month, and 20 Days.

*Venceslaus* the Son of *Charles* the IVth, and of *Anne* the Daughter of *Bulcon*, born in 1361. on the 28th of September at *Nuremberg*, had two Wives, *Jane* the Daughter of *Albert* Duke of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Hainault*, and of *Holland*, who within six Months after her Wedding, died with mere Vexation that she had a Prince to her Husband regardable only for his Vices. *Sophia* his second Wife, the Daughter of *John* Duke of the Lower *Bavaria*, who was as Wise as she was Handsom, died Childless in the Year 1388. That Prince is call'd by the greater part of Historians, a *Thersites*, a Monster of a Man, a *Sardanapalus*: And he was worthy of those Epithetes. Indeed he was a Coward, and consequently Cruel; and that he might not be disturb'd in his shameful Debaucheries, he spent the Days and Nights in Forests. Without the Consent of the Electors he sold *Genoua* to the King of *France*; *Milan* to *John Galeazzo* Vicount of *Milan*; blank Letters and Privileges to any, who had Money, to make advantage by them: And it is the Remark of many Authors that his Father and He would not have fail'd to sell the Empire could they have met with Chapmen enow to purchase it. In the Year 1400. he

he was judg'd unworthy of the Title of Emperor, because he thought all his time lost which he could not employ in drinking. *Rupert* Duke of *Bavaria*, and Count Palatine of the *Rhine* was elected, who was a Prince of a small Stature, but of an admirable Understanding, and a capacious Soul. *Crantz* in his *Vandalia* observes that all the Cities of the Empire having bound themselves to take the Oath of Allegiance to *Rupert*, there was none but the City of *Nuremberg* which refus'd to recognize him. But being urg'd to declare themselves, they sent some of their Body to *Venceslaus* to enquire of him what they should do in that Juncture; and to offer him twenty thousand Crowns in Gold, on condition he would excuse them from the Obedience they ow'd him, and from which he alone was able to give them a Dispensation. He consented from the moment they made the Motion to him, that *Nuremberg* should follow the example of other Cities; he refus'd the Money they offer'd him; and said only, *That they should send him some Baccharach-Wine*: Which may sufficiently convince us that he consider'd more how to fill his Belly than his Chests, and that he was more desirous to be a Good Fellow than a King. In 1418. being but fifty Years old, he died of a Fit of Rage, and of an Apoplexy, when he had heard that the *Hussites* had stirr'd up a Sedition at *Prague*, and assassinated the Senators. He held the Empire two and twenty Years, and was the one and fortieth King of *Bohemia*, after his Father *Charles's* Death.

*Rupert* or *Robert* the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Bavaria*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and of *Beatrix* the Daughter of *Frederick* King of *Sicily*, had two Wives. By the first, according to some Authors, he had *Robert*, who fighting in *Sigismund's* Army against the Forces of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, was taken by the Turks, and after he was ransom'd, died at *Amberg* seven Leagues distant from *Ratisbonne*. By his second Wife, *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, he had five Sons and six Daughters; *Frederick* who died young; *Lewis* surnam'd the Dog; *John*, the Father of *Christofer*, call'd to the Kingdom of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sueden*;  
Stephen



*Stephen* married to *Anne*, the Count of *Veldentz*'s Daughter. From this Woman came forth two Branches, the one of *Simmeren* or *Spanheim* by her own Son *Frederick*; the other of *Deux Pontz* by *Henry the Black*. He had also by her *Otho*, of whom descended the Princes of *Mosbac*, whose Off-spring was extinct in her Children. Her Daughters were *Margaret*, married to *Charles* Duke of *Lorraine*, *Elizabeth* to *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, and *Agnes* to *Alphonfus* Duke of *Cleves*.

He was elected at *Boppard*, and crown'd at *Cologne* the following Year: And because the Citizens of *Aken* were unwilling to open their Gates to him, he banish'd them, and pardon'd them not till six Years after. By his own Arms he reduced the Marquess of *Baden* to his Duty; and by his Lieutenants, *William* Marquess of *Misnia*, and *Frederick* Landgrave of *Thuringen* who besieged *Prague*, he forced *Venceslaus* not only to forsake the Empire, but to acquit also all the Subjects of their Oath of Allegiance to him. In 1403. he went into *Italy* against *Galeazzo* Vicount, who endeavour'd to make himself Master of the Kingdom; and when he was defeated in a Battel, and put to flight, he returned into *Germany*. He prepar'd for a War with *John* Archbishop of *Mayence*. who had broken all the Measures he had taken, when he fell all of a sudden ill. This Emperor who had reign'd nine Years and nine Months, died on the 18th of *May* in 1410. at *Oppenheim*, and was buried in a Church dedicated to the Holy Ghost, of which he laid the Foundation at *Heidelberg*, and endowed it with a very considerable Revenue.

*Josse* Marquess of *Moravia*, the Son of *John-Henry* the Brother of *Charles* the IVth, was elected, as some say, after *Robert*'s Death, or *Venceslaus*'s Abdication, by the Bishops, and by his Cousin *Sigismond* who sent his Suffrage by the Burgrave of *Nuremberg*; but he was never crown'd. He was not in the least fit for Business, and what he did in his whole Life, the most remarkable is, that he left this Ordinance behind him, "That the  
" Princes might oppose the Emperor without the Guilt  
" of Disloyalty, if he happen'd to do things against the  
" Laws of the Empire. He reign'd six Months, and was buried at *Bryn* in *Moravia*,

*Sigis-*

*Sigismond Charles* the IV<sup>th</sup> Son, had curl'd Hair, a long Beard, a Handsome Face, an admirable Wit, and an Understanding truly worthy of a Prince. He spoke well and gentiley, and of all the Princes of his time he was the most Religious, the most grateful, the most magnificent and most Wise. *Mary* his First Wife, *Lewis* the King of *Hungary's* Daughter, brought him that Kingdom for her Portion; and she died a Year after she was Married. By *Barbe* the most profligate of Women, the Daughter of *Herman* Baron of *Cilley*, whom he made an Earl, he had *Elizabeth* married to *Albert* Duke of *Austria*.

Being assisted by our Country-Men the *French*, he endeavour'd to oppose the new Advances of *Bajazet*; and he succeeded ill in his Attempt, as I shall relate it in another Place. The States after *Lewis's* Death being weary of *Mary's* Government, call'd from *Apulia*, *Charles Duras*, whom *Mary* Poison'd, not doubting but by his Death she should firmly settle her Son-in-law *Sigismond* in the Kingdom. He being then Twenty Years Old went into *Hungary* with an Army, in 1387; he was own'd King; he married the Princess who was design'd for him, and put to death *John Horuart*, who to avenge the Death of *Charles Duras*, had got *Mary* Drown'd. The Hungarians exasperated and provoked by the Execution of *John Horuart*, and of Thirty Barons his Accomplices, take *Sigismond* in 1401; they put him into the hands of *Horuart's* Widow, till the States had determin'd his Fate. But that Widow prevail'd with by the Promises of *Sigismond*, let him go out of Prison: and he was no sooner come back to *Germany*, but having got together all the Forces he could, he march'd them into *Hungary*, and subdu'd it. He put Garrisons in the strong Holds; he beheaded the *Weywood Stephen*, who had been the Author of his Disgrace, and by that Example, kept all the other Rebels in their Duty.

The War he made with the *Hussites* was less successful: and whatsoever Troops were rais'd to suppress them, there were never any great Advantages to be got over them. In the Year 1436 they sent him word by their Deputies, that to be an absolute Monarch in *Bohemia*,

*mia*, he had nothing to do but to grant them Liberty to communicate in both Kinds, and to procure them an Absolution from the Anathemas of the Pope. *Sigismund* promis'd them both one and t'other, and was Crown'd on the 24th of *August*, at *Prague*; but since he chang'd his Mind, and since he recalled the Religious Persons whom they had driven away, they prepared for all the Miseries inseparable from War, and found that it had something in it more disagreeable than the sight of Monks. In the interim, *Sigismund* who had in some measure appeas'd them, and who had intreated the States to elect his Son-in-law *Albert* for his Successor, died at *Znaim*, on the 8th or 9th of *December*, in 1437, in the 70th Year of his Age, after he had reign'd one and fifty Years in *Hungary*, seventeen in *Bohemia*, seven and twenty in *Germany*; and was interred at *Alba Regalis*.

*Albert* the II<sup>d</sup>, the Son of *Albert* the IV<sup>th</sup>, Archduke of *Austria*, and of *Jane* the Daughter of *Albert* the Elder Duke of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Holland*, and of *Hainault*, married *Elizabeth* the Emperor *Sigismund's* Daughter, and had by her Two Daughters and a Son. *Anne* was Married to *William* Duke of *Saxony*; *Elizabeth* to *Casimir* King of *Poland*. *Ladislaus* was born in the Citadel of *Comorra*, in 1440, the 22<sup>d</sup> of *February*, after the Death of his Father. He was not fully four Months old, when he was Crown'd King of *Hungary* by *Denys* Bishop of *Strigonia*, who also crown'd *Vladislaus* the Son of *Jagellon*, on the 17th of *July*, at *Alba Regalis*. *Vladislaus* came to his End in the War against the *Turks*, in 1445; and seeing *Ladislaus* being Posthumous, was then but five Years Old, the States committed the Government to *John Huniades* of *Valachia*, Count of *Bistrix*.

*Albert* chosen Emperor in 1438, on the 20th of *March*, or according to others, on the 13th of *April*, was the same Year upon the first of *January* crown'd King of *Hungary*, on the Sixth of *May* at *Prague*, King of *Bohemia*, and on the 20th of the same Month, King of the Romans. He preserved the People of *Moravia*, and the *Polanders* tight to their Duty; He defended *Austria* against the *Hussites*: he reduc'd *Silesia* and *Breslaw*; and drove

drove away the Turks from the Borders of *Hungary*. As he march'd to relieve the City of *Zenderou*, besieged by the Turk, the Bloody Flux got into the Army which he led; and because he had eaten too much Melon, he died of that nasty Distemper near *Gran*, the 27th of *October*, in 1439. He reigned one Year, eight Months, and 27 Days, and was buried near his Father-in-law *Sigismond*.

*Frederick* the III<sup>d</sup>, the Son of *Ernestus* of *Austria*, and of *Cunegonde* the Daughter of the Duke of *Nassau* in *Lithuania*, married *Eleoner* the Sister of *Alphonsus* King of *Portugal*: and their Nuptials were solemnized in 1452, after he had been crown'd at *Rome* by Pope *Nicholas* the V<sup>th</sup>. He had by her *Maximilian* his Successor; *Christopher*, *John*, and two Daughters, *Helén*, who died very Young, *Cunegonde* Married to *Albert*, surnamed the *Wise*, Duke of *Bavaria*. This last had been courted by the King of *Hungary* who never could obtain her: and since *Albert* of *Bavaria*, who was forty Years Old, fear'd a like Repulse, Archduke *Sigismond* her Uncle, *Frederick's* Father, who took care of *Cunegonde's* Education, and who signified much Friendship for *Albert*, receiv'd him very kindly at *Inspruck*: and by his Means the Marriage was consummated, before the Emperor had any Account of it at *Vienna*.

He was elected at *Francfort*, in the Month of *May*, in 1440, Crown'd at *Aken* the 17<sup>th</sup> of *June*, by *Dietrick* Archbishop of *Cologne*; and in 1452, at *Rome* by Pope *Nicholas* the V<sup>th</sup>. His Reign was long, but little regardable for great Events: and he had always much Aversion for War. Though he had it under Consideration, to humble, as he expressed it, the Pride of *Bavaria*, he very kindly entertain'd his Son-in-Law *Albert*, before his Death, and discover'd much Joy at the sight of *Cunegonde*, and the Three Princesses her Issue by *Albert*, *Sidonia* four Years old, *Sibilla* three, and *Sabina* six Weeks. Some time after he fell ill at *Lintz* in the Upper *Austria*, where by the Advice of his Physicians, his Thigh was laid open, the Bone of which, they found, began to putrify. As soon as the Operation was performed, which he bore with wondrous Patience, and when he had considered



sidered the miserable Condition he was in, he ask'd whether there were any Difference between an Emperor and a Peasant? adding, that a healthy Peasant was more happy than a King diseas'd and lame. Some days after he drank some cold Water, after a Melon he had eaten, to cool him; and he was seized with a sort of Bloody Flux, of which he died, in 1493, upon the 10th of August, being Seventy Eight Years of Age. He liv'd Emperor 53 Years Four Months, and Four Days, and was buried at *Kienna*. As to what concerns *Albert* his Son-in-Law, besides the Three Daughters whom I mentioned, he had *William* who succeeded him; *Lewis* who lived a Batchellor till the Year 1545; *Ernest* a Superintendent of the Church of *Passau*, afterwards Archbishop of *Salzbourgh*. He had also *Susanna*, who died Young; and another of the same Name, married first to *Casimir* Marquess of *Brandenbourg*, and afterwards to *Otho-Henry* Palatine of the *Rhine*. *Sidonia* espoused to *Lewis* Count Palatine, *Philip* the Elector's Son, died before the Consummation of her Marriage; and *Sibilla* by the Pope's Dispensation was promoted to the Station design'd for *Sidonia*. *Sabina* was married to *Ulrich* Duke of *Wirtemberg*; and after *Albert's* Death, *Cunegonde* shut her self up in a Monastery of Franciscan Nuns, where she died.

*Maximilian* the 1st, the Son of the Emperor *Frederick* the 1<sup>st</sup>, and of *Eleonor* the Daughter of *Edward* King of Portugal, was Born at *Neustad*, in 1459. He had two Wives, *Mary* the only Daughter of *Charles* of *Charolais*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and of *Izabella* his second Wife, the Daughter of *Agnes* of *Bourgogne*, and of *Charles* the first Duke of *Bourbon*. That Earl *Charles* the Son of *Philip* the Hardy, Duke of *Bourgogne*, had upon different Considerations, and politick Designs, given Hopes of his Daughter *Mary* to many Princes; to *Nicholas* of *Anjou*, Duke of *Lorraine*, *John* the Duke of *Calabria's* Son to take him out of the Interests of *Lewis* the 11<sup>th</sup>; to *Charles Dauphin*, who was after King, call'd *Charles* the 8<sup>th</sup>; to *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, after Duke of *Guienne*, and to *Philip* Duke of *Savoy*. He had also promis'd her to *Charles* of *Orleans*, Count of *Angouleme*, our

*Francis*

*Francis* the 1<sup>st</sup>'s Father ; to the King of *England's* Brother ; and to the Prince of *Tarentum*, the Son of *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*. But when she saw that *Lewis* the XI<sup>th</sup>, instead of protecting her, seized of some Cities of her Dominions, where he had also a powerful Army, and that the Citizens of *Gaunt* would fain have *Adolphus* the Duke of *Guelders* to marry her, she resolved to make *Maximilian*, who was Eighteen Years Old, her Husband : And their Nuptials were celebrated at *Gaunt*, in 1477, in the End of *July*, and as others affirm, on the 18<sup>th</sup>, or the 20<sup>th</sup> day of *August*. He had by that Princess *Philip*, who married *Jane*, King *Ferdinand's* Daughter, Heiress of the Kingdoms of *Castile*, of *Aragon*, *Grenada* and *Lion* ; *Francis* who died Young, *George* ; *Margaret* married to young *Charles* Dauphin of *France*, the Son of King *Lewis* the XI<sup>th</sup>, who sent her back without Consummating the Marriage, that he might have *Anne* of *Bretagne*. She was after married to *John* the Son of *Ferdinand* King of *Aragon* and *Castile*, and had to her third Husband *Philibert*, surnamed the *Fair*, the Second of that Name, the Son of Duke *Philip* of *Savoy*, and of *Margaret* of *Bourbon*. *Mary* being Six and twenty years old, and the fourth time with Child, died in 1483, at *Bruges*, by a fall from a Horse which she mounted with a Design to have the Pleasure of a Chase : and the Thigh which she broke might have been cur'd, if she could have brought her self to shew it to the Surgeon, and Physitian. But she chose rather to lose her Life than her Modesty, and there needs no Comment to make this understood. She was Dutcheß of *Brabant*, *Lothier*, *Limburg*, *Luxembourg*, and *Guelderland* ; Countess of *Flanders*, *Bourgogne*, *Artois*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Namur*, *Zutphen*, and of *Charolois* ; Marchioness of the Holy Empire ; Lady of *Friseland* of *Salina*, and *Malines* : and it is easy from thence to determine what Advantages the House of *Austria* drew from that Match. After her Death *Maximilian* Married *Blanche Mary* the Daughter of *Galeazzo* Duke of *Milan*, who was recommended to him by *Lewis Sforza*, and by this Wife he had no Children.

He was admitted to a Share in the Empire by *Frederick* in 1486, on the 16th of *January*; was crown'd at *Aken* the 10th of *April*, and refus'd to have that Ceremony perform'd by the Pope, because, as he said, the Grandeur and Majesty of the Empire were wholly and entirely in the States, and in no wise dependent upon *Rome*. When he married *Mary* the Daughter of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, that Princess who had plighted her Troth to him, defray'd the Expence of his Equipage and his Wedding, so poor was he; and supply'd him also with a Maintenance for those of his own Retinue. As he had no great reason to be well pleased with *Charles* the VIIIth, who had taken from him *Anne* of *Bretagne*, whom the Count of *Nassau* had married in his Name; and as he sent back his Sister *Margaret* somewhat roughly, he was willing to express his Resentment of that double Injury, and his sense of it, which appear'd just, was by reason of his Impotence, reserved and wary. He contributed also by his misfortune, to the Marriage of the Dutchess *Anne* with *Charles*, who seemed to be perswaded that *Bretagne* belong'd to him by a true or false Resignation made by the Heirs of *Pontievre* to *Lewis* XIth, which he contended for with all his Forces; and *Maximilian* could send but 2000 Men to this Dutchess to defend her from *Charles's* Armies. He was unable likewise to keep his word with *Henry* who sat down before *Bologne*, and was forced to return to *England*, because *Maximilian* was not able to join him at the time upon which they unanimously pitch'd. 'Tis true indeed that at another time, he surpriz'd the Cities of *Arras* and *St. Omer* by the help of some secret Intelligence, and that he enter'd by Night into *Amiens*: But he was vigorously repell'd from thence; and not being able thro' Poverty to carry Things farther, he consented in the Name of his Son *Philip* to a Truce for a Year, in which he would not be comprehended, or named. 'Twas no small vexation to him this, that the Flemings upon the Death of *Mary*, resolv'd to take the Guardianship of *Philip* who was the Son of her Womb: That *Maximilian*, who was willing himself to be his Guardian, withstood it: And that upon this Difference the greater

greater part of the Provinces which *Mary* brought him for her Portion revolted and left him. In 1488. he was detain'd Prisoner by the People of *Bruges*, because he attempted to be absolute Master of the Government in spite of the States, who according to Custom had their share in it as well as he. His Imprisonment lasted nine Months, and had doubtless been much longer; because they design'd to deliver him up to *Charles*, had not *Ferdinand* interpos'd, and had it not been for an Army of thirty Thousand Men under the Command of *Albert* Duke of *Saxony* against those Rebels of *Bruges*, whom he forced to set *Maximilian* at liberty. He received Homage of the Provinces which *Albert* retook, and 'twas upon this Consideration that the *Austrian*, to recompence his Zeal, bestow'd *Friseland* upon him, as his own proper Inheritance, by the Consent of all the Estates.

His Feats in *Hungary* after the Death of *Matthias* in 1490. were great and glorious. But the War which he undertook against the *Suitzers* in 1500. was not so over honourable for him; and he declar'd War only for this reason, because they would not enter into a Confederacy with *Austria* and *Suabia*. His Advances in *Italy* were neither serviceable to his Reputation, nor to *Germany*: And as he was profuse upon some Occasions, and tenacious in others, according to his Humour; and since without much trouble he gave over the Things which he set upon with as much Resolution, it is not at all strange that Fortune assign'd him good and bad Intervals. For all that he was Modest, and Temperate, Chast, and Honest; and had a huge value for learned Men. He was Author of a Poem concerning the several Dangers of his Life; he compos'd another Book entitled, *The Gate of Honour*: And sent Men into *Spain*, *France*, and *Italy*, to collect in Monasteries, in private and public Libraries, and in the Archives of Princes, all that might help to clear the Genealogies of Great Men. In 1518. in the Month of *June*, there happen'd a prodigious Eclipse of the Sun, which the famous Astrologer *George Transfetter* found to be fatal to this Emperor, who died at *Vels* in the *Upper Austria*, the 12th of *January* in



the following Year; being 59 Years, 9 Months, and 19 Days old, after he had reign'd 7 Years with *Frederick*, and by himself 25 Years, 4 Months, and 27 Days.

*Charles*, most known by the Name of *Fifth*, the Son of *Philip*, Archduke of *Austria*, and of *Jane* of *Spain* the Daughter of *Ferdinand*, who died on the 22d of *February* in 1516, was born at *Gaunt* in *Flanders* in 1500, on the 24th of *February*. *Philip* being dead when he was 28 Years old, the 25th of *September* in 1506, and having by his Will left *Charles* under the Protection, and to the Trust of *Lewis* the XIIth, that King educated him with great care; and chose *William* of *Crouy*, Lord of *Chevres* for his Governor. He was married to *Izabella* the Daughter of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, and Sister of King *John*; and their Wedding was solemniz'd at *Seville* on the 10th of *January* in 1526. He had by this Venter *Philip* II<sup>d</sup>, who was born in 1527, on the 21st of *May* at *Valladolid*, who died in 1598, upon the 13th of *September*, at the Age of 71, and who had for his Successor *Philip* the III<sup>d</sup>. *Charles* had also by *Izabella*, *Ferdinand*, who lived not very long after his Mother; *Mary* the Wife of the Emperor *Maximilian* the II<sup>d</sup>, the Mother of *Rodolphus*, the second Emperor of that Name; *Jane* who married *John* the III<sup>d</sup>, King of *Portugal*. Before his Marriage he had had by a Mistress, *Margaret*, who had for her first Husband *Alexander de Medicis*, and after *Octavius Farnese*, Duke of *Parma* and *Placentia*, the Father of *Alexander*, who governed the Low-Countries fourteen Years, and was about forty six when he died at *Arras*, in the Abby of *St. Vast* in 1592. He had also by a Gentlewoman of *Ratisbonne*, whose Name was *Margaret*, the courageous and famous *John* of *Austria*: And he kept the Thing so close, that he never spoke of the Mother or the Child but to some of his Confidants, whom he made use of before his Death to recommend that *John* of *Austria* to *Philip*.

The *Flemings* who desir'd not to go to War with the French, and who desir'd some Correspondence with *England*, had importuned Archduke *Charles* to make an Alliance with *France*; and in 1515, he sent Count *de Nassau* Embassador to confirm it, with *Renea* the Sister of Queen

Queen *Claude*, the Daughter of *Lewis* the XIIth. *Francis* the Ist was solemnly obliged to give her six hundred thousand Crowns in Gold, (provided she would quit her Pretences to the Inheritance of her Father and Mother, especially to the Dutchies of *Milan*) and to furnish the Archduke with Men and Ships to go and take Possession of the *Spains*, after the Death of his Grandfather *Ferdinand*. This Alliance was renew'd at *Noion* on the 16th of *August* in 1516, and it was resolv'd upon, That he should marry *Lewisa* the King's eldest Daughter; That upon disappointment with her, he should have the second; That if there were no second, he should take *Renea*; That he should have for her Portion that part which the new King could lay claim to in the Kingdom of *Naples*; That if he should be Childless, the Portion settled upon her should return to him; That for the Maintenance of his Daughter, if barren, *Charles* should pay him a Hundred Thousand Crowns yearly; That he should surrender *Navarre* within six Months to *Henry d' Albert*; That if it were not surrendered, it should be in the King's Power to assist him. But this fine Design came to nothing, and *Renea* betroth'd to *Charles*, and after to *Joachim* the eldest Son of *Joachim*, Elector of *Brandenburgh*, was in 1528. married to *Hercules d' Est*, Duke of *Ferrara*.

After *Maximilian's* Death, *Francis* and *Charles* then in *Spain* stood in competition for the Empire; and the Electors gave their Voices to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, who refused their Dignity, not thinking himself strong enough, as he said, to bear so great a Burthen. Being asked who ought to be chosen, he answered in the behalf of *Charles*; and on the Morrow, being the 28th of *June* in 1519, *Charles* was elected; and the next Year was crown'd at *Aken* on the 23d of *October*. 'Twas not till the 2d of *February* in 1530, that he was crown'd King of *Lombardy* in *Bologne*.

Our King *Francis* the Ist was concern'd at his Election, as well seeing that *Charles* with so many Kingdoms in his Possession would be capable of avenging the Injuries done to his House; and they taunted and reproached one another after their mutual Protestations of Friendship. *Francis* asserted that the Emperor not paying him the

Hundred Thousand Crowns which he was under an Obligation to supply him with yearly, by the Treaty of *Noion*, he was discharg'd of his Promise touching the Marriage. He complain'd that against the same Treaty he paid him not the Hundred Thousand Crowns as Tribute for the Kingdom of *Naples*. That he had not surrendred *Navarre* to *Henry d' Albert*; and he added that his Agents had spoken ill of him in the German Diets; and that he was unwearied in his Intrigues to disturb him in the Dutchy of *Milan*. The Emperor on the other hand complained, that he had granted his Protection to *William Duke of Guelders* an avowed Enemy to his House, and to the Low-Countries, and that he withheld from him the Dukedom of *Burgundy* against all manner of Justice. During these Complaints, which were publick, *Francis* gave order to *Andrew de Foix* Lord of *Esparre*, the Brother of *Lautreck* to march towards the *Pyrenean Hills*; and he met with no Opposition in *Navarre*, except at *Pampeluna*, which nevertheless submitted to a Capitulation. *L'Esparre*, who might have been satisfied with that Victorious March, enter'd the Territories of *Castile*; and before he return'd into *France*, he gave the Command of his Army to *Sainte Colombe* his Lieutenant, who to make an advantage of an unseasonable Reform, discharg'd a part of his Forces. So the *Spaniard* with ease retook what the French got not without great noise and stir: And in the Battle in which *Sainte Colombe* was defeated, he was so cruelly wounded in the Face, that he lost his Eyes, so that it may be in a manner said that his Avarice blinded him. Whilst there was War in *Navarre*, *Charles* found a pretence to carry it elsewhere. The Pretence seem'd to be just. *Robert de la Mark* Lord of *Sedan*, and Duke of *Bouillon*, being under Disgrace at the French Court, had betaken himself to the Emperor's, whither he had drawn his Brother the Bishop of *Liege*: And as the Emperor's Council had received an Appeal of Judgment which the Peers of his Dutchy had given in a Cause betwixt the Lords of *Simay* and *Emerick*, *Robert* fell into a strange Passion. He made a Point of Honour of that Business, and was foolhardy to that degree as to send a Challenge

to *Charles* the Vth in the Diet of *Worms*. Nay, he did yet more, since he gave three thousand Men to his eldest Son *Florençes*, who besieged *Vireton* in *Luxemburgh*, and of which *Francis* commanded him to raise the Siege. *Charles* not thinking it tolerable that Count *de la Mark*, who was one of his mean Vassals, and whose Ancestors had serv'd in the House of *Burgundy* as menial Servants, should take the boldness to assault him; rais'd an Army, and gave the Command of it to *Henry* Count of *Nassau*, the first Prince of *Orange* of that Family. He took four or five Places from *Robert*, and order'd a part of the Garrisons, which defended them, to be hang'd.

The War beginning to grow hot, and *Henry VIII*th, King of *England* being pitch'd upon as Umpire and Mediator of the Differences betwixt the Emperor and the King, they deputed Embassadors to him at *Calais*, where those from *Charles* all of a sudden demanded, That the King would give back *Burgundy* to him; That he would discharge him of all Homages for that Dutchy, and for the Counties of *Flanders* and *Artois*, because the Subjection of a Vassal did not comport with Imperial Grandeur. Whilst the Conference was at *Calais*, *Henry* of *Nassau* cross'd the *Meuse*, and sat down before *Mouzon*, which *Anne de Montmorancy* could not defend for want of Courage in the Garrison. The Count went thence to lay Siege to *Mezieres*, which *Anne de Mortmorancy*, and Colonel *Bayard* forced him to raise: And *Charles*, who was come to *Valenciennes* with an Army of thirty thousand Men, durst never stay for the King who recover'd *Mouzon*, burnt *Bapaume*, and made himself Master of *Landrecy* and *Bouchaim*. The Milanese in the absence of *Odet de Foix* their Governor rebelled almost at the same time; and the Marshal of *Lescun*, who was no less odious to them than *Odet*, could not keep them from bringing *Maximilian Francis*, *Lewis Sforza's* second Son, into *Milan*, with the Spaniards and Switzers.

Since the Particulars of these Wars may be seen in the generality of Historians, I shall only observe that *Francis* the Ist being gone to *Vercueil* with a design to pursue the Constable of *Bourbon*, who was of the Emperor's side, and having submitted more than he should to the

Per-



Persuasions of Admiral *Bonnivet*, he went and sat down before *Pavia* on the 27th of *October*, in 1524. There was a little City between *Pavia* and *Milan*, call'd *Castle St. Angelo*, which the Admiral committed to the care of an Italian, who had not Courage to defend it; and after the taking of that Post by the Enemies, there was a necessity of coming to a Battle, which was fought on the 24th of *February*, in 1525, before the Castle of *Mirabel*, though fourteen thousand, six hundred Men had been detach'd from the French Army to go to imaginary Conquests. The King having receiv'd an account, that a Body of Spaniards had been defeated by the Duke of *Alençon's* Squadrons and *Philip Chabot Brion's*, went out of his Camp; broke through the Enemy's Horse; and with his own Hand kill'd *Ferdinand Castriot* Marquis of *St. Angelo*, who, as some say, was of *Scanderberg's* Family. Though *Francis's* Horse had been kill'd under him, that King did not cease to fight on Foot being not discover'd: And since he was surrounded with Enemies, he surrendred himself to *Pomperan*, whom he perceived to be the Friend and Confident of the Constable *Charles of Bourbon*. The Cannon and Baggage were lost; and among eight thousand Men that fell, were reckoned *Lewis Duke of Tremouille*, being 75 Years old, the Marshal de la *Palisse*, *Francis Earl of Lambesc*, the Duke of *Lorraine's* Brother, *Aubigny*, *Saint Severin*, the Admiral de *Bonnivet*, who by his Advice had been the Author of that ill Success; the Marshal de *Lescun*; *Renatus* an illegitimate Son of *Savoy*, who both died of their Wounds; *Henry d' Albert* King of *Navarre*; *Francis of Bourbon*, Count of *Saint Pol*; the Marshal de *Montmorancy*, *Florençes*, *Brion*, de *Lorge*, *Rochepot*, *Monte-Jean*, *Montpezas*, *Langey*, *Curton*, and many other Persons of Quality were taken with the King.

The Emperor who was then in *Spain*, soon received the account of his being taken; yet allow'd not that Bonfires should be made for it: But it was suppos'd that he would make use of his Victory with Arrogance enough, when he sent this Message to the King, being a Prisoner in *Pisqueton Castle*, That to procure his freedom, he must resolve to part with the Kingdom of *Naples*, and the

the Dutchy of Milan; That he should resign to him Burgundy; That he should give to the Constable, Charles of Bourbon, Provence, Dauphine, and Lionnois, to make of them an independant Kingdom. Francis, who rejected those amazing and unreasonable Proposals, was brought into Spain, where the Emperor was resident six Months without visiting him; and he was at first so hard hearted, as to let him know that he should not see his Face till the Terms of his Liberty should be settled. But when he understood that he was dangerously ill, he visited him for Decency's sake: And he restored him not to his Freedom till he was assur'd that all the Potentates of Italy had entred into League with the King of England; that the Dukedom of Milan was ready to rebel, and that the greater part of his own Forces were in uproar and insurrection. After that, the King was taken out of Prison, where he had staid thirteen Months, on condition he should pay two Millions of Crowns in Gold for his Ransom; that with two hundred thousand Crowns for her Portion, he should marry Eleonor his Sister, Emanuel the King of Portugal's Widow, who died in 1521. and who was the Mother of John the III<sup>d</sup>, whom he had a design to marry to the Constable Charles of Bourbon; that when the Dauphin should come to Age, he should take to Wife the Daughter of that Prince; and that his two Sons, at least the eldest, and in the stead of the second, twelve Lords should become Hostages for the Security of his Promise. He added other Conditions of much harder digestion; and the King himself, though he had desir'd it, could not be oblig'd by them, because they were not at all in his Power, and because the fundamental Laws of the Kingdom were diametrically opposite to them. The Emperor after that time went down to Genoua the 12th of August in 1528. with a Fleet of ten thousand Men; and Felix of Wirtemberg with an equal number of Men enter'd by land into the Dutchy of Milan. All the Princes of Italy were in dread of those two Armies, and had no Forces to withstand them. The Pope went to receive him at Bologna; Francis Sforza was re-establish'd in the Dutchy of Milan by the Emperor; and the Florentines, who

who refus'd to acknowledge the *Medicis* for their Sovereigns, surrender'd after having suffer'd eleven Months Siege. Whatever the *Germans* could do, *Ferdinand* King of *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*, was elected King of the *Romans*, in the City of *Cologne*, by the Assistance of his Brother *Charles*, who in the Year 1533, went to Embark at *Genoua*, to go from thence into *Spain*.

Whilst King *Francis* decided his Differences with the Duke of *Savoy*, *Muley Ashem*, who had been driven from *Tunis*, by *Chairadin Barbarossa*, begg'd the Emperor's Protection, who took the \* *Goulette*, reserving it for himself, who restor'd *Ashem*, in 1535; who by his Land Army routed *Barbarossa*; who made him leave the Sea, and enlarged Twenty Thousand Christians. Having weigh'd Anchor the 14th of *August*, and pass'd into *Sicily*, where he continued near three Months, he went about the end of *November* to *Naples*, from whence he wrote to the Duke of *Savoy* to comfort him upon the insolent Behaviour of the *French*, and upon the loss of his Eldest Son *Lewis*, who died in *Spain*. When he had set himself in *Hungary*, at the head of a Hundred and Twenty Thousand Men against *Soliman*, who had under his Command near Two Hundred Thousand; and since the Turk had made his Retreat after some Skirmishes of detach'd Bodies, which he had defeated, the Pirat *Barbarossa*, also, being driven away; he became proud to that Degree of Vanity, as to believe that Victory would be his Attendant every where. With this Imagination on the 5th of *August*, in 1536, he against the Opinion of *Antony de Leve*, laid Siege to *Marseilles*, which he was forced shamefully to raise; and the Count of *Nassau* who entred *Picardy* with Thirty Thousand Men, did that before *Peronne*, which the Emperor had done before *Marseilles*. *Charles* the Vth, when he had staid 15 Days at *Genoua* went to *Spain*; and as he Sailed, he was batter'd

---

\* *La Goulete est une Forteresse batie a la Gorge du Golfe qui est entr Tunis, & la mer. Les Turcs qui la reconquirent, y joignirent deux ou trois Redoutes; & y ont bati un fort beau Port, des Magazins, une Douane, une Prison pour les esclaves Chritiens, & deux Mosques.*

batter'd with so violent a Storm that he lost Six Gallies, and Two great Vessels where his Cupboard of Plate and his own Horses were.

The Pope having made a Confederacy with the *Venetians* and Emperor against the Turk, in 1537, sent two Embassadors, the one to the latter, the other to King *Francis*; he press'd them to appear at *Nice*, and to receive there the Intercession for Peace, which he made to them. The Pope being gone thither about the end of May, the Emperor came almost at the same time into the Harbor of *Ville-Franche*; and the King into *Ville Neuve* some days after with the Queen. The Effect of that Interview was that the Emperor promis'd the King to visit him at *Aigues-Mortes* in *Languedoc*, before his return into *Spain*. Since he was as good as his Word, and since he went to Dine at the King's House; and since on the Morrow *Francis* the 1st paid him a Visit in his Galley: Though the subject Matter of their Conversation was Impenetrable, yet Men promis'd themselves great Advantages by it, because in the two Days they were together, they observed nothing but Evidences of mutual Friendship pass between them. In the Year 1539, the Citizens of *Gaunt* rebelling upon the Grievance of some Taxes, the Emperor in order to suppress that Insurrection, begg'd the King to grant him Passage through *France*, and he was receiv'd there with all honour Imaginable. In the Year 1541, he carried a Train of Artillery into *Africk* against *Barbarossa*, and sat down before *Algiers*, on the 22d of October. But he was unsuccessful in his Enterprize; since by Rain and Storm he lost fifteen Gallies, and since of Four and Twenty Thousand Men that he had imbark'd, there return'd not Ten Thousand into *Spain*.

In the Year 1544, *Soliman* attack'd *Hungary* by Land, took *Strigonium*, and *Alba Regalis*; and sent a Hundred and Thirty Gallies to King *Francis*, commanded by *Barbarossa*, which were design'd only to strike a Terror to the People of *Ostia*, and to the Borderers upon the Pope's Territories. That Pirat assisted by *Francis of Bourbon Duke of Anguien*, who had joyn'd him with two Gallies, besieged *Nicia*, but was forced to raise the Siege.



Siege. The Emperor on the other hand, when he was not able to make himself Master of *Landrecy*, took *Cambray*; and Count *William of Furstemburg*, who had left the King's side, and block'd up the City of *Luxemburg*, was fain to make his Retreat. *Francis* the 1<sup>st</sup> being dead, *Henry* the 2<sup>d</sup> his Successor, and the Emperor, made their Attempts separately, the latter to obtain Peace by it, the former to force him to go into *Hungary*. In the mean time *Charles* got the Battle at *Mulberg* in *Saxony* against the Protestants of the League of *Smalcalde*; he took *John Frederick* Duke of *Saxony* in the latter Fight; he put his Cousin *Maurice* in Possession of the Dutchy; he forc'd the Landgrave of *Hesse* to submit to his Orders, and made him Prisoner contrary to the Promise he had made to his Son-in-law *Maurice*. This Man who offer'd Propositions of Peace to *Charles* the 5<sup>th</sup>, did in the Year 1552, use so great Diligence in looking him out, that he had almost caught him at *Inspruck*: and tho he apprehended him not to be so near, he stole away in the Night with Cardinal *Granville*, and fled away quite into *Carinthia*, where he was a long time recovering his Fright. When he understood that *Henry* by his Arms had taken *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun* from the Empire, he levied the greatest Army he had ever done; he sat down before *Metz* the eighteenth of *October*, and was forc'd to leave it on the first day of *January*, having lost there Thirty Thousand Men, and to make his retreat to *Thionville*. In the beginning of the Spring he fell upon *Terovane*, which was defended by *Francis of Montmorancy* the Constable's Son; but its Ramparts were reduc'd to Dust by a Hundred Forty and Two Thousand Canon Shots: and as it capitulated before it made any Truce, the Enemies who beat down those that kept the Breach, pardon'd not so much as Infants.

In the Year 1553, the Emperor who well knew that by *Henry* the 8<sup>th</sup>'s Will, his Daughter *Mary* was to succeed *Edward* in the Throne, who had been Poison'd, press'd a Match betwixt that Princess, and his Son *Philip*, who was left a Widower by *Mary* the Daughter of *John* the 3<sup>d</sup>, King of *Portugal*: and he was actually Marri-

Married to her on the 25th of *July*, in 1554. *Henry* the 11d, who could not be pleas'd with that Marriage, knowing that the Gout had taken the use of an Arm from *Charles* the 5th, that he did not sleep at all, that he spent the Day and Night in Winding up, and taking to pieces Watches, with which his whole Chamber was filled, rais'd an Army of fifty Thousand Men, and made some Advances in *Brabant*, in *Hainault*, in *Cambresis*, and in the Country of *Namur*. When he besieged the Castle of *Renty* in *Artois*, the Emperor who began to recover, appear'd in the Field for its Relief; and the Battle, which was fought betwixt the Villages of *Marque*, and of *Franquenbourg*, having prov'd to his Disadvantage, he was forc'd to retreat.

At last being wearied with his good and bad Fortune, and also affrighted with a Comet, which he look'd upon as a Prognostick of his Death, he was willing to part with all his Dominions, whether by Birthright or Conquest; and his Son *Philip* came away from *England* to him. The Emperor made him President of the *Knights of the Golden Fleece*; and in a solemn Manner resign'd *Flanders* to him, together with his Kingdoms and Titles in the presence of *Mary* Queen Dowager of *Hungary*, his Governels in the Low-Countries; in the presence of *Emanuel Philibert* Duke of *Savoy*, and of the Potentates that were at *Brussels*. They being commanded to sit down, a Counsellor making them an Harangue in the Emperor's stead, shew'd them that he being Sick, and out of Hopes of being able to bear the weight of Affairs for the future, resolv'd to return to *Spain*, the Air of which Country was more agreeable to him than that of all other Provinces he had been in; that for these Reasons he yielded up the Low-Countries to his Son *Philip* King of *England*, who would maintain the Government in Splendor, and Glory. The Counsellor having concluded, the Emperor presently seconded him, and taking a Paper he had in his Hand to supply the Defect of his Memory, he read to the Assembly the Number of the great Actions he had done since 1517, when he left *Flanders*, and at last told them that he gave up the Low-Countries to his Son, as being no longer him.

himself in a Capacity to Govern them as he had done. He protested that in point of Conscience he had nothing to reproach himself with : but if by chance he had committed Errors, he begg'd them all to pardon him. *Philip* rising, and throwing himself upon his Knees thank'd him for all his Favours, of which he own'd himself to be unworthy ; assuring him that he would do all he was able to add to the Happiness of those Nations, the Government of which he committed to him. Soon after he turned to the Assembly, and spoke to them thus in French ; “ Gentlemen, I do not sufficiently understand the Language I now speak, to express to you so as I would do, the Affection I shall always have for you ; but the Bishop of *Arras* will set it forth much better than I can. The Bishop who was afterwards Cardinal, at large explained the Thoughts of *Philip* ; and Doctor *James Masius* being risen, told *Charles* the Vth, “ That the Princes wonder'd that his Imperial Majesty should leave them in a time of War ; but since it was his good Pleasure to do so, they were comforted in the Happiness he had secur'd to them by giving them the King his Son for their Support and Protection ; and that they would sacrifice their Lives and Fortunes for him. Queen *Mary* his Sister rose up, and in few Words declared to *Charles* the Vth, “ That in the Government of the Low-Countries she had always endeavour'd to do all things to please him ; and that she hoped he would be so Gracious as to pardon her, if her good Intention had not always been successful. *Charles* the Vth both with Countenance and Hand, express'd his Satisfaction in her ; and *Masius* in the name of the Princes, made most melting Acknowledgments to him. The Emperor resuming his former Discourse, persisted in resigning to the King his Son to the Kingdoms of *Spain*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Majorca*, and *Minorca*, the Low-Countries, and of all those in general which he had gained in the *Indies*. *Ferdinand* his Brother having refus'd to give up the Empire to his Nephew *Philip*, *Charles* the Vth sent Embassadors into *Germany* to carry his Abdication thither to the Electoral College : and when he saw all things prepar'd for

for his Voyage, he imbarc'd in *Zeland* in the beginning of *September*, and sail'd towards *Spain*. When he was there, he retir'd into the Monastery of *Saint Justus*, with the Friars of the Order of *St. Jerome*, where he might live at Ease, because he had reserved to himself an annual Pension of a Hundred Thousand Crowns, Twelve Men to attend him, and a little Pad to take the Air with. But after he had quitted the World, 'twas no longer thought that he was in it. *Philip* himself forgot all the Promises he had made him, and made bad Payment of his Pension in the Covent, where he staid near Two Years. He died there, *September* the 21<sup>st</sup>, in 1558, being fifty nine Years Old; Seven Hundred Forty Four Years after the Death of *Charles the Great*; a Thousand Twenty and One after the Death of *Constantine the Great*; and a Thousand Six Hundred after *Julius Cesar's*.

Some one having said to *Philip*; 'Tis this Day a Year since the Emperor for your Advantage parted with all his Kingdoms: *Philip* answered, And 'tis now a Year since he has repented of it. This Emperor said, "That the Spaniards seem'd Wise and were not, that the French seem'd mad, and were not so, that the Italians both seem'd and were Wise. That the Germans spoke like Carters, the English like silly Men; the French like Masters, and the Spaniards like Kings.

*Ferdinand* the 1<sup>st</sup>, the Brother of *Charles the 5<sup>th</sup>*, Archduke of *Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy* was born the tenth of *March*, in 1507, and in 1521, was Married to *Anne* the Daughter of *Uladislaus* King of *Hungary*. He had by her Four Sons; *Maximilian* born in 1527, his Successor; *Ferdinand* born in 1529; *John* in 1538; *Charles* in 1540. Besides these Sons, he had Eleven Daughters; *Elizabeth* in 1526, *Anne* born in 1528; *Mary* in 1531; *Magdalene* in the Year 1532; *Catharine* in the following Year; *Eleoner* in 1534; *Margaret* in 1536; *Barbara* in 1539; *Ursula* in 1541; *Helen* in 1543, and *Jane* in 1547; *Elizabeth*, and after her Death *Catharine* were married to *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, and the rest to German and Italian Princes.



In 1527, he was Declar'd King of *Bobemia*, Crown'd at *Prague*, on the 24th of *February*; at *Buda*, in *November* after he had expelled the *Vavoids John* out of *Transilvania*; and proclaimed at *Cologne* King of the *Romans*, the fifth of *January*, in 1531. He had for some time a share in the Government of the Empire with *Charles the Vth*: and though *Paul the IVth* did not judge his Election to be very valid, because there was no address made to him to confirm it, yet *Pius the Vth* readily approved the Choice which *Charles the Vth* had made of *Ferdinand*, as to what concern'd his Succession to the Empire. He prevail'd with the Electoral College, that *Maximilian* his Son should succeed him; and in 1564, on the 25th of *July*, he died at the Age of 61 Years, Four Months, and Fourteen Days; having been Emperor Six Years, Four Months, and Seven Days after *Charles the Vth*.

*Maximilian the IIId*, the Son of *Ferdinand the Ist*, married *Mary* his Cousin, and had by her his Successor *Rodolphus*; *Ernest* who died at *Brussels*, in 1595, when he had been a Year Governor of the Low Countries, *Matthias* born in 1557, *Maximilian* in 1558; and *Albert* in 1559. This last was Archbishop of *Toledo*, a Cardinal, and after the Death of his Brother *Ernest*, *Philip the IIId* gave him the Government of the Low-Countries, and in 1598, he gave him his Daughter *Izabella Clara Eugenia* to Wife by *Clement the VIIIth's* Dispensation. His sixth Son was *Venceslaus*, who was born at *Neustad* in *Austria*, on the 9th of *March*, in 1561, and died in *Spain*, in 1578. The Daughters of *Maximilian* were *Anna Maria*, Married to *Philip* King of *Spain*, though she was his Sister's Daughter: and *Elizabeth* married at *Spire* by Proxy, to *Charles the IXth* King of *France*; in whose Reign, in 1554, and in 1566, they began to reckon the Year from the first Day of *January*, whereas till then New-years-day was at *Easter*.

That Emperor as well as his Brother *Ferdinand* allow'd Liberty of Conscience, and by that Toleration the Protestant Religion was spread in *France*, in *England*, in *Scotland*, in the Low-Countries, in *Pannonia*, and *Poland*. He died the twelfth of *October*, in 1576, being Forty Nine

Nine Years, Two Months, and Twelve Days old, after he had been Emperor Twelve Years, and Three Months.

*Rodolbus* the II<sup>d</sup>, *Maximilian* the II<sup>d</sup>'s Son, was born in *Austria*, in 1552; he was crown'd King of *Hungary*, in 1572, and was Emperor Two and Thirty Years. He died in 1612, on the 10th of *January*, being 59 Years old.

*Matthias* who was Born at *Vienna*, and chosen King of the Romans at *Francfort*, on the 13th of *June*, in 1572, died the 10th of *March*, in 1619; he liv'd 62 Years, and 15 Days, and reign'd seven Yeers, not leaving any Heir after him.

*Ferdinand* the II<sup>d</sup>, the Son of *Charles* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, who was the Emperor *Ferdinand* the I<sup>st</sup>'s Son, by *Mary* the Dutcheß of *Bavaria*, Married two Wives; in 1600, *Maria Anna*, *William* the Duke of *Bavaria*'s Daughter, and in the Sixth Month after her Death, *Eleoner* the Dutcheß of *Mantua*. By the former he had *John Charles*, in 1608, *Leopold William*, the Governor of the Low-Countries. His Three Daughters were *Chrisian-Mary-Anne* the Wife of the Elector *Maximilian* Duke of *Bavaria*; *Cecilia*, and *Renata* Married to *Oladislaus* King of *Poland*. He died in the Year 1630, on the 25th of *February*, being 59 Years old, of which he reigned 17.

*Ferdinand* the III<sup>d</sup>, the Son of *Ferdinand* the II<sup>d</sup>, and of *Maria-Anna*, was born in 1608; he married three Wives, *Mary* the Daughter of *Philip* the III<sup>d</sup> King of *Spain*; *Maria Leopoldina*, *Leopold* Archduke of *Inspruck*'s Daughter; *Eleoner de Gonzaga*, the Daughter of *Charles* the II<sup>d</sup> Duke of *Mantua*. By the first he had *Ferdinand Francis* Born on the 8th of *September*, in 1633; *Philip Augustus*, Born on the 15th of *July*, in 1637; *Maximilian Thomas*, on the 20th of *December*, in 1638, *Leopold Ignatius*, on the 9th of *June*, in 1640; *Maria Anna*, Born on the 22d of *December*, in 1635, and Married on the 8th of *November*, in 1649, to *Philip* the IV<sup>th</sup> King of *Spain*; and *Mary* who died in the same Year with the Empress, viz. in 1646.

By *Mary Leopoldine* his Second Wife, he had *Charles Ignatius* Born on the 7th of *August* in 1649; and the Empress died in Child-bed. By his Third Wife *Eleoner de Gonzaga*, whom he married on the 13th of *April*, in 1651, he had born to him on the 26th of *March*, in 1652, *Theresa Maria Josepha*, who died the next Year in the Month of *May*; *Eleonora Maria* the 21st of *May*, in 1653; *Maria-Anna-Josepha*, the 2d of *December*, in 1654; *Ferdinand Lewis Josephus*, in 1657, who died on the 30th of *June*, in 1658. *Ferdinand* died at *Vienna* the 2d of *April*, in 1657, having liv'd 48 Years, Eight Months, and 21 Days; he was Emperor Twenty Years, one Month and 15 Days.

*Leopold-Ignatius* the LIst Emperor of Germany, *Ferdinand* the III's Son, is the present Emperor: and we shall see in some other place the most remarkable Passages in the Reigns of the last Emperors.

## CHAP II.

*The most considerable Events under the Reign of the Western Emperors.*

*In the Reign of Charles the Great.*

**B**irchric the Husband of *Eadburge*, the Daughter of *Olfe*, dying in the Year 800, *Egbert* who had been banished by him, and fled to *Charles the Great* for Shelter, cross'd the Sea again, and in 801, was recognized King of the West Saxons. He at first subdued the Cornish Men and the Welsh; and in 806, he forc'd *Bertulf* King of *Mercia* to berake himself to Flight after he had routed his Army. He marched against *Suthred* King of the East-Saxons, he conquer'd him, and took Possession of his Kingdom from thence, he sent his Son *Ethelwolf* with *Alstan* Bishop of *Sherburn* against the Kentish-Men, between *Dover* and *London*; and their King *Baldred* being reduc'd to Extremity, gave up his Kingdom to him, and ended

ended his Days in Exile. After those Conquests he assaulted *Withlac* King of *Mercia*: And the People of *Northumberland*, who had been without a King ever since the Days of *Ethelred*, being astonish'd at *Egbert's* good Fortune, voluntarily submitted to him. *Egbert*, who reign'd thirty seven Years and seven Months, was buried at *Winchester*; and in 838. he left his Son *Ethelwulf* to succeed him, who was a Sub-deacon, but was discharg'd of the Obligation of that Office by the Pope's Dispensation, and marry'd *Osburg* the Daughter of *Oslac* of the Gothish Nation.

*Turpin* Archbishop of *Rhemes* consecrated the Church of *Compostella* in *Gallicia*, *Charles* the Great being present, in the Year 808. 'Tis ordinarily call'd *St. James of Compostella*; because 'tis generally believ'd that the Body of *St. James the Greater* was brought thither in 816, in the Reign of *Alphonsus* the Chast, who adopted *Ramire* or *Ranimire*, the Son of *Veremond*.

*Alcuinus* an English-man, who wrote in the time of *Bede*, and taught a School at *York*, was the Master of *Saint Lugder*, the first Bishop of *Munster*. That Bishop, who in a Letter to *Rixfrid* Bishop of *Utrecht*, gives an account of the Miracles of *Suibert*, spread the Order of Monks over *Friseland* and *Saxony*. *Alcuinus* having been sent for twice or thrice by *Charles* the Great, whose Almoner he was, at a time when he was reading Prayers in a Monastery, did not go to him till he had done. The Emperor knowing the cause of his stay commended him for it, and said, *That the Service of God ought to be preferred before all world'y Business*. *Charas*, *Cusid*, and *Cuba* the Son of *Curid*, Kings of the Hunns, left the Pagan Religion for the Christian. And the People of *Holstein*, the Vandals and Sclavonians became Christians by the care he took to have them instructed. The Inhabitants of *Navarre*, who had been Professors of the Turkish Worship, renounc'd it. In 814. *Biorno* the IVth, King of the Goths and Suedes, the Son of *Alarick*, in order to the Salvation of his Subjects, desir'd of him some Priests and Doctors; and he sent *Hubert* to them, who made them Profelytes. *Chagan* King of the Avarians,



who had been in exile, had his good leave to settle with all his Followers in *Carinthia* and *Stiria*.

*Wibert* Duke of *Engern*, a little City of *Westphalia*, where *Witikind* his Father had been buried, in the County of *Ravenspurg*, being ready to be baptiz'd, had the Curiosity to ask, *In what place his Fore-fathers were?* And when 'twas answer'd, *That they were in a place of Unhappiness*; he receded and said, *That he design'd to go where his Ancestors were.*

There happen'd, as some Authors record it, a thing singular enough betwixt the Emperor and *Aigoland* King of the Saracens. They both agreed that certain Knights of their Armies should determine their Differences, and that the Conquerors should give Law to the Vanquish'd in all their Interests, not excepting even that of Religion. The Christians got the better in the Conflict; so that *Aigoland* and the Saracens were obliged to adhere to the Agreement they had made. But as he had one day seen twelve poor Men at Dinner near *Charles* the Great's Table, and when he had ask'd who those Men were of so bad a meen, and in so ill a dress? And when an Almoner had impertinently answer'd him, *That they were the Friends and Messengers of God*; he went back over the *Pyrenean* Mountains again; he resum'd his former way of Worship, and would no longer continue in a Religion, *The Author and God of which, said he, must needs be very little, since his Messengers and Friends were so miserable.* But this is what I cannot without much difficulty believe: And 'tis neither true, nor seems to be so, that that Emperor whom *Adrian* the Ist treat-ed as his *most dutiful Son*, as a *most Christian Prince*, and a *Second Constantine* in his Letters which he wrote to him, should stake down Christ to Mahomet, and commit the Religion, for which he had ever been so zealous, to the hazard of Arms. *Turpin*, who has spoke nothing concerning the Terms of the Fight, denies not the matter of Fact; and adds, that *Aigoland* withdrawing upon the Answer given him, was pursu'd by *Charles* the Great, that he was kill'd in the Battle, that he was in Person in that great Expedition; and that the Sun stood

still

still three days till the Saracens were entirely defeated. The Story of the Sun standing still so luckily three days for *Charles* the Great's sake, is as probable as all the rest: And if the Archbishop of *Rhemes* in that Age preach'd as he wrote History, one may say that he did not often preach Truth. *Charles* the Great was Canoniz'd upon the Sollicitation of *Frederick Barbarossa* by *Paschal*, and though he was an Anti-Pope, his Canonization was neither cancell'd, nor ratify'd by any Pope.

*In the Reign of Lewis the Meek.*

This Prince had a particular care of the Dignity of the Priesthood, and he decreed by Laws of his own Promulgation, *That those who wore the Livery of the Church, should be engag'd in no other Service; that every Church should have so much Revenue as was necessary for the support of her Priests; lest being poor they might forsake their Employment, and through necessity be forced to beg.*

In 816 he conven'd an Assembly at *Aken* for the Reformation of the Clergy. The next Year there was another in the same City for the Regulation of the Monks, both in their Education and Morals. There was a third in 819, in which he made Ordinances both for the Clergy and Laity.

In 822 he caus'd a Monastery to be built at *Corwey* in *Saxony*, like to that of *Corbie* in *Picardy*, in which all Polite Human Learning was to be taught; and very great Men went out of that Abby.

There was brought to him a Grecian Priest called *George*, who promis'd to make him Organs according to the fashion of those us'd in the Greek Church; and the first he made were carried to *Aken*. The Emperor entertain'd him very generously, and gave him a Pension during Life.

In 826 *Harold* King of *Denmark* was baptiz'd at *Maience*, with his Wife, his Children, and a great many Danes in the sight of *Lewis* the Meek.

In 836 the Festival of *All Saints* was solemnly observ'd through *Germany* and *France* by his Order, and by *Gregory* the IVth's.

In 838 by a Synod he assembled the Canons were reviv'd, shewing what the Bishops and Priests ought to be; how the Bishops and Abbots are to demean themselves towards their Dependents; and what the Emperor ought to contribute to the Government of the Church, and the Administration of the Common-wealth.

*Walafrid Strabo* the Author of a common Gloss upon the Scripture, was then in very great repute. He wrote a Book, *Of the Life of Saint Othmar*, and of the Life of *Leudgaire*; as also the Chronicle of the Monastery of *Fulden*, which was afterwards carried on by some other Writers. † Moreover *Trithemius Surius* in the Life of the Saints, and *Baronius* in his Catalogue of Famous Authors were deceiv'd when they thought *Walafrid* Abbot of *Saint Gal*, and the Monk *Strabo* to be two different Men. In truth, that *Walafrid* after he had been a Monk at *Fulden* was Dean of *Saint Gal* in *Switzerland*, and the next remove Abbot of *Reichenau* a little City of *Germany*, in an Island which had but three Parishes in it. The Abby founded by *Charles Martel*, was in the Year 1540. united to the Bishoprick of *Constance*, from which it is distant but a League.

### *In the Reign of Lotharius.*

In 844 the Popes after their Election began to change their Names, and have ever since that time continu'd to do so.

In 845 *Hincmar* a Monk of *Saint Denys*, afterwards Bishop of *Rhemes*, was in great reputation. He crown'd *Lewis* the *Lisper* in 877, and died in 885 according to *Sigebert*, or as \* *Blondel* says, in 882, on the 21st of December.

† Vide *Joh. Gerard. Vossium* lib. 2. de *Histor. Lat.* c. 33. *Aubert Miræ* in *Austario Script. Eccles.* p. 229.

\* *Blondel* dans son *Eclaircissement sur la Papesse Jeanne.*

In 887 *Rabanus*, *Alcuin's* Scholar, and Abbot of *Fulden*, was the sixth Archbishop of *Mayence*. Besides his Comments upon the Bible, he made or added to a Martyrology; and *Trithemius* who wrote his Life in three Books, has told us how his Body was convey'd into *Saxony* from the Monastery of *Saint Alban* where he was inter'd. He died in 853, or as *Blondel* affirms, on the 4th of *February* in 856.

In 851 there was a dearth in *Germany*, attended with so dreadful a Famine, that Fathers and Children did there feed upon one another. *Haymon* the Scholar of *Rabanus*, a Monk of *Fulden*, the third Bishop of *Halberstadt*, died in 856. *Trithemius* says that he died in the Reign of *Lewis the Meek* in 834; which is impossible, because he was personally in the Synod of *Mayence*, of which *Rabanus* was President in 848. The Author of the *Annals of the French*, for which we are beholden to *Mounfieur Pitbou*, says that *Rabanus* died three Years after *Haymon*, who, according to the Opinion of the best Chronologists, died, as I just now observ'd, in 853. He has written seven Books upon the Revelations, six upon the Heavenly Country, an Abridgment of the sacred Story, some Comments upon the twelve Prophets, upon the Psalms, upon all *St. Paul's* Epistles, and Homilies upon the Gospels.

'Tis said, that then a Maid nam'd *Gilberta*, who had put on Man's Cloths to conceal her Sex, was promoted to the Papal Dignity after *Leo the IVth*, that she reign'd two Years, five Months, and two Days; and that *Benet the IIIrd* succeeded her. *Marianus Scotus*; \* *Martin a Polander*; *Palmier*, *Platina*, *Chalcondula*, *Philip of Bergamo*, *Marcyllus* a Bishop, and many others have spoken of that famous She-Pope *Joan*: And *Anastasius* the Library-Keeper, *Audemar*, *Reginon* of the Order of *St. Benet*, Abbot of *Prom*, *Herman* abrig'd the Son of *Volfrad*

---

\* *Natione Polonum fuisse scribet Bellarminus, at Carsulae sive Cascinae in Umbria Natum dicunt Eifengremius, Raphael Volaterran, Possevinus, Miræus, &c. Vid. Gerard Vossi. de Historicis Latinis, lib. 2. c. 60. p. 484.*



*frad* Count of *Veringher*, and other eminent Historians make no mention of her at all. The former Writers, by the Account they have given, have made a strong impression in the Minds of Men who run away with things without examining them to the bottom, or who are naturally inclin'd to take them in the worst sense. And yet by the silence of Authors, who could not well have omitted a Circumstance of that Nature in their Chronicles and Histories, the quick-sighted and less credulous Persons have got up even to the source of that Fable, and have rejected it. 'Tis commonly said however, that one part of those Historians have written with all exactness, and that the rest have suppress'd this shameful Story to secure the Honour of the Holy See. One of the first who gave that Chimera Life and Being, was the *Polander Martin*, a Monk of *Citeaux*, the Penitentiary of *Innocent* the IVth, or as *Gerard Vossius* says, one of the Order of the Preaching Friars, and Penitentiary to *Nicholas* the IIIrd, who made him Bishop of *Gnesne*. But if that Monk, who undoubtedly must be an ignorant Man, in his Book of the *Wonders of Rome*, did take *Pompilius* for the Father of *Numa* the IIrd, King of the Romans, and *Numa Pompilius* for a Tribune of the People; if he took *Justin* the Epitomizer of *Trogus Pompeius* for *Justin Martyr*; if he took the Gate of *Ostia* or Saint *Paul's* Gate, and the *Porta Capena* or Saint *Sebastian's* for another which he calls *Collina*, and which must in all probability be the *Collatina* or *Pinciana Porta*; in short, if he took the *Pantheon* for the Temple of *Cybele*, and the *Amphitheatre* for the Temple of the Sun, we may easily forgive him, if in his History which he has left us, he has mistaken the Sex of a Pope. It is true, and a man may say so upon the Authority of *Luitprand* and *Onuphrius*, that this *John* the XIIth, who was advanc'd to the Papal Throne by the interest of his Father *Alberick*, was one of those who were never heard of but for their Vices; that he gratify'd his Humour in all things, and willingly committed himself to the Conduct of some Ladies that he kept. *Luitprand* has nam'd three of 'em; and forasmuch as *Joan* was his greatest Darling; forasmuch as that Widow govern'd him, and dis-

pos'd

Boo  
pos'd  
call'd  
to her  
wer'd  
anoth  
things  
he no  
Exam  
there  
nia?  
Never  
Jim C  
comod  
with  
like a  
led Pe  
pens'd  
Iwer  
racter  
that o  
is mu  
taken  
them  
about  
till af  
and t  
gave  
by a  
Pope  
ken t  
of his  
proud  
two V  
simple  
that b  
of his

\* L  
& 59.  
sellii,

pos'd of all things in the Ecclesiastical State, he was call'd *Pope Joan*, from the blind Complaisance he shew'd to her, and from the meaness of Spirit which he discover'd by being content with the Title of a Pope, whilst another assum'd his Authority, especially if we consider things according to her management of 'em. 'Twould be no hard matter to illustrate this Reflection by many Examples of the same kind: And who can believe that there was a *Julias Cesar* who had been Queen of *Bithynia*? A Queen *James* or a King *Elixabeth* in England? Nevertheless those Titles were given them, because *Julius Cesar* had a Conversation not to be nam'd with *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia*, because King *James* was charg'd with some Effeminacy, and Queen *Elixabeth* govern'd like a King. In our time likewise was not *Olympia* call'd Pope, being the Niece of *Innocent* the Xth, who dispens'd all his Favours pursuant to her Advice, or in answer to her Requests? Authors by those different Characters alter'd their Sex, and they have likewise chang'd that of the Pope upon the strength of Tradition, which is much to be doubted upon such Occasions; because it takes Figures for the Things themselves, and delivers them just as it receiv'd them. Whatever has been said about the pretended *Close-stool*, which was never in use till after that time, has not a jot better Foundation; and the Stool indeed had no hole in it. That which gave birth to this Mistake, was that the Chair was nam'd by a Latin word signifying a *Dunghil*; because, as the Pope rose up from it, two Verses were customarily spoken to him in those barbarous Times, to remind him of his former Condition, and to keep him from being proud of the high Station in which he was plac'd. Those two Verses are in the 112th Psalm. *Who \* raises the simple out of the dust; and lifts up the poor out of the mire, that he may set him with the princes; even with the princes of his people.*

As

---

\* *De sede stercoraria* v. D. *Joh. Mabillon Itiner. Ital.* p. 58.  
 & 59. *Valer. Chimentelius in Marmore Pisano, de Honore Bissellii*, cap. 20.

As to the Lying in of this *Joan*, who had got above the Pope by the Power which she had over him, I do not well know whether the Fact be true. But if it be not allowable to doubt of it, I must declare that she took not right Measures, when she would be present at a solemn and publick Proceſſion; and that her Child when born, could not have done her so reproachable a Dis-service, as to shew it self to so great an Assembly. † But a Consequence which may be easily drawn from the Acts of the Council of *Soissons*, which broke up about that time, may be sufficient absolutely to make ridiculous all that Story of *Gilberta* firnam'd the English *Joan*, who yet was, as they say, of the City of *Mayence*. The Fathers of that Council wrote to Pope *Leo* the IVth to gain his Approbation: And when their Deputies found him dead, they return'd the same Year from *Rome* into *France* with the Subscription of *Benet* the IIIrd, who succeeded him. There was then no great distance of time betwixt the Death of *Leo* and the Election of *Benet*; and if that be so, as it is in Fact, How could Pope *Joan*, who was advanced to the Spiritual Throne of *Rome* after the death of *Leo* the IVth, continue in Possession of that See two Years, five Months, and two Days?

*In the Reign of Lewis the Second.*

*Edelf* or *Ethelwolf*, of whom I spoke in the beginning of these Remarks, being Victorious over his Enemies, offer'd to God for the Redemption of his Soul, and the Souls of his Predecessors, the tenth part of his Kingdom, which he exempted from all kinds of Tributes and Services due to the Crown. Afterwards he went to *Rome* with his Son *Alfred*; and there out of a Devotion surprizing enough, he made all the Kingdoms conquer'd by his Father, pay Tribute to the Holy See.

Every

---

† On peut voir le familier Eclaircissement de la question, si une Femme a ete assise au Siege Papal de Rome, &c. par David Blondel.

Every Family was indebted one Pound Sterling, payable yearly at the Festival of *St. Peter and St. Paul*, or at the farthest at the Festival of *St. Peter ad Vincula*; and that Tribute was constantly paid from that time till the Reign of *Henry the VIIIth*. In his Return from *Rome*, he went into *France*; and the Queen his Wife being dead, he prevail'd with *Charles the Bald* for his Daughter *Judith* who was very young, and whom he engag'd to accompany him into *England*. Whatever ambitious Intrigues had been set on foot in his absence by *Ethelbald* his Son, *Eanuf* Earl of *Somerset*, and *Aldestan* Bishop of *Sherbourn*, to hinder his Return into his Kingdom, he was receiv'd there with the Acclamations of the People; and he would by no means have them punish'd, or remov'd from his Presence. Though the Custom of that time allow'd not the King's Wife the stile of *Queen*, nor that she should be seated on the Throne near him; it was his Pleasure that *Judith* should have privilege to sit there during his Reign; and he reign'd after but about three Years. In 858, he by his Will order'd his Kingdom to be divided betwixt *Ethelbald* and *Ethelbert* his two eldest Sons; and he allotted some Territories for the Portion of the rest. By the same Will he oblig'd his Successors to the end of the World to maintain in Meer, Drink, and Clothes a poor Native of *England* or a Stranger; and to send three hundred Marks yearly, for the ease of his Soul to *Rome*, of which there should be two laid out in Tapers for the Church, and the remaining hundred was design'd for the Pope's own particular Use and Advantage. After a Reign of twenty Years he died: And in that time *Osithe* of the Royal Blood was noted for her Piety, whom some Danish Pirates put to death in a little Town of *Essex* call'd *Chic*, to which was given the Name of *Saint Osithe*, when that holy and Noble Maid had been canoniz'd.

In 860, the City of *Winchester* was Taken and Plundered by the Danes; and as they return'd with their Booty under their Care in their Vessels, *Ostrich* and *Ethelwolfe* the Earls of *Hampshire* and *Barkshire*, set upon them and put them into a terrible Confusion. The rest  
re-



returning some time after staid all the Winter in the Isle of *Thanet*, and towards Spring they laid waste all the County of *Kent*. *Ethelbert* went out against them, and succeeded so well that he drove them all out of his Kingdom. *Ethelred* his Successor in the beginning of his Reign was amaz'd that a great and new Fleet of those Danes having Landed, they should spend their Winter in the Country of the East-Angles, and that in 867 it should steer its Course towards *York*, the Metropolis of *Northumberland*. They took the City; they kill'd two Kings *Osbyrth* and *Aella* who attempted to drive them from it; they defeated their Troops; made a great number of Prisoners, and brought into Subjection all the rest. In 871, these new Usurpers went up into the Country of the West Saxons, and three Days after they had staid within the Boundaries of *Berkshire*, and fortified themselves, *Ethelwolf* the Earl of that Country, gave them Battle at *Ingelsfield*, and forc'd them to retreat. Four Days after, *Ethelred*, who had got together all his Forces, order'd them to march towards *Reading* with *Alfred*, where they were vanquished by the Danes; and Earl *Ethelwolf* was killed in the Fight. There were betwixt them other Battles in which the Fortune of the Danes was in Appearance chang'd: but *Ethelred* a little after was defeated, and died of a Wound which he had received. *Alfred* his Brother, who had been crown'd King at *Rome* by *Adrian* the II<sup>d</sup>, did all he could to drive them away; but if he did beat them in some Battles, he was beaten by them in others, and his Reign of 28 Years Continuance was nothing but a Mixture of Success and Misfortunes.

In 859, there was so dismal a Winter in *Italy*, that the *Adriatick* Sea was frozen up, and Men walk'd on Foot to *Venice*.

In 861, *Bruno* the Son of *Ludolphus* Duke of *Saxony*, caus'd the City of *Brunswick* to be built: and *Tanquard* *Bruno's* Brother had a Fortrefs erected call'd after his Name *Tanquarrode*. *Henry* the Fowler, and *Henry* the Lion increas'd the City into which *John* of *Bugembag* first brought the Lutheran Doctrine in 1528. It was besieged

sieged on the 19th of *May*, in 1671, by four Princes of the same Name, and surrender'd the 2d of *June*.

In 865, the Prince of *Bulgaria* turn'd Christian after he had begg'd of God Victory over his Enemies, by his Sisters Advice, who had been baptis'd at *Constantinople*. The *Chakan* King of the Huns, being not in a Condition to resist the People of *Bavaria* was Baptized, as well as the Prince of *Bulgaria*, and was nam'd *Theodorus*.

In 871, *Lewis* the II<sup>d</sup>, was crown'd at *Rome* on *Whit-funday* by *Adrian* the II<sup>d</sup>.

In 873, there were Locusts in *France* which had six Feet, and Teeth as hard as a Stone; and there was such a vast a Number of 'em, that in 24 Hours space they devour'd all that was Green in the Trees or other Plants of the Gardens. Finding nothing more there, they went towards *England*, and they were driven by a violent Wind into the Sea, and were all drown'd there. This is what is recorded by *Aimoin*, and *Function*, the Author of the *Annals of Fulden*.

*In the Reign of Charles the Bold.*

During the residence of that Emperor *Italy*, the French conspir'd against him; and his Wives Brother *Boson* his particular Favourite was in the Number of the Conspirators. They slighted him because they were persuaded that he was more apt to undertake, than courageous to act; they disregarded him because he burden'd his Subjects with Taxes, because he promoted to the highest Honours Men of little Merit, and mean Extraction; and because by wearing the Garb of the Greeks their most implacable Enemies, he seem'd to have little Value for his own People. Being poison'd by *Sedecius* as he pass'd over the Hill *Cenis*, he was forc'd to stay in a Scurvy Place called *Brios*, where he died: and his Body, which was buried at *Verceil*, was not removed till seven Years after to the Abby of *St. Denys*. But since he gave up *Neustria* to the Nations of the North which wander'd every where, we must go a little higher, and take a view of the Inheritance of those Vagrants in *Normandy*.

In the Year 876, *Alfred*, who had succeeded *Ethelred* was to stand the attack of *Roul*, or *Rollo*, who had landed in *England* with an Army of Normans, or Northern-Men, made up of the Inhabitants of *Norway*, *Sweden*, and *Denmark*: and this War determined almost nothing either for one or the Other. 'Twas afterwards that *Roul* cross'd the Sea again, and came into *France*; where *Charles* the Bald was forc'd to grant him with the Title of a Duke a part of *Neustria*, the Name of which place he changed, and called *Normandy*. The King gave him also his Daughter *Gelleste* on Condition, as some say, that he would turn Christian: and he was Baptiz'd by *Francis* Archbishop of *Rouen*; and *Robert* Earl of *Paris* was his Godfather, and gave him his Name at his Baptism. That *Roul* govern'd his People excellently well; and he was so exact a Distributer of Justice that he punish'd as Thieves those who detain'd the Goods of another, or who did not honestly own what they had been kindly intrusted with. For this Reason, as some Authors have it, the Normans even at this day call to their Assistance their Duke *Roul*, crying, *Haro*, or *Ha! Ro*, when they suffer Oppression, though others derive that Word from *Harouenna*, which in old French signifies the Guild-Hall, or place of Justice.

*Alfred* who thought himself safe after the Departure of *Roul*, had other Normans to fight with, who crush'd him so, that he was forced to retire into *Somersetshire*, where he was miserable enough. About the same time *Hubert* a Dane, the Brother of *Hynward*, who had gone from the Country of the Westerly Britons into that of *Don*, was killed by those of the King's Side: and as this Victory follow'd by another, gave him some Hopes of conquering his Enemies, he actually brought them into Subjection, and granted Peace to *Gormond*, on Condition he would espouse the Christian Religion; and he was as good as his Word. So *Alfred*, who enjoy'd profound Peace in his Kingdom, divided it into Counties call'd *Shires* in *Saxon*, and these Counties into Hundreds: and established such a general Security according to *William* of *Malsbury*, and *Ingulphus*, that those who did put Money at the High Cross in Cities, or in the most

most frequented Roads in the Country might find it on the Morrow, nay a Month after not a jot less in Value than they left it. He took care to build a great number of Publick Houses, to repair the City of *London*, which War and time had ruined; to Found some Monasteries and Academies, to which by his Bounty he invited Honest and Learned Men. To be exemplary also to others, he employed Tutors himself in the 20th Year of his Reign; and made so great a Progress in a little time, that he Translated the Pastoral of Pope Gregory, Boetius's *Consolation of Philosophy*, the first part of David's *Psalms*, Orosius's *History*, and the Exploits of the English written by Bede. He Married *Egelwitha* or *Alsfurida* the Daughter of *Ethelrede*, surnamed *Mucil*, and of *Easbuth* of the Family of the Kings of *Mercia*; and had by her *Eltrude*, *Elfrede*, *Elgine*, and three Sons *Edward*, *Elfbryt*, and *Adelwold*. *Eltrude* was married to *Baudouin* the II<sup>d</sup>, surnamed the *Bald*, Earl of *Flanders*, who had by her two Sons *Arnolph*, surnamed the *Great*, Earl of *Flanders*; and *Adolphus* Earl of *Bologne*, and of *Terovane*, who died without Heirs in 933. *Elgine* took the Habit of a Nun in the Nunnery at *Schafzбург*, and was afterwards the Abbess of it. *Elfrede* married *Ethelrede* King of *Mercia*; *Adelwold* was educated in polite Learning; *Elfbryt*, or *Ethelbryt* died Young, and in the Year 900, *Edward* who was the Eldest Son, succeeded his Father *Alfred*.

We must now return to *Rollo*, and take a view of the Order of his Successors in *Normandy*. By *Poupe* the Daughter of *Berenger*, Count of *Bessin*, and of *Beauvais*, he had two Children, *William* who was Duke of *Normandy*, *Charlott* married to *William* Earl of *Poitiers*; *William* surnamed *Long-sword*, had by *Storce* the Daughter of *Herbert* Earl of *Senlis*, *Richard* surnamed the *Intrepid*, who succeeded him, and who took to Wife *Agnes* the Sister of *Hugh* the *Great*, Earl of *Paris*, and Sister of *Hugh Capet*. He had no Children by *Agnes*: but by *Gonnor* a Danish Knights Daughter, who had been his Mistress, and whom he married, he had *Richard* the II<sup>d</sup>, the Fourth Duke of *Normandy*; *Robert* the Father of *Richard* Earl of *Eureux*, and of *William* after Archbishop of



Rouen; *Mauger* who succeeded him in the same Ecclesiastical Dignity; *William Dorguez* Lord of *Exines*, after Earl of *Eu-Avine*, his eldest Daughter married to *Ethelred* King of England, was Saint Edward's Mother; *Henout* whom *Godfrey* Earl of *Bretagne* Married; and *Mahaut* the Wife of *Eudes* Earl of *Chartres*. To *Richard* the Fearless, or *Intrepid*, who died in 980, *Richard* the III<sup>d</sup> was Successor: and he had by *Judith* the Sister of *Godfrey* Earl of *Bretagne*, *Richard* the III<sup>d</sup>, and *Robert*, who were successively Dukes of *Normandy*: Amongst his Daughters he had *Leonora* married to *Baudouin*, surnamed *Fairbeard*, Earl of *Flanders*, whose Son of the same Name married a Daughter of *Robert* King of France; and *Emma* first the Wife of *Ethelred* King of England, next of *Canute* the Son of *Sueno* King of *Denmark*. After *Richard* the III<sup>d</sup>, the Fifth Duke of *Normandy*, who reigned but about Two Years, and died in 1028, his Brother *Robert* Succeeded, surnamed the *Liberal*, who died 1035, in his return from the Holy Land: and it was in the same time that *Robert Guiscard*, or the *Cunning*, a Norman Lord, began to distinguish himself by his great Achievements in *Apulia*. *William* the Natural Son of *Robert* the *Liberal*, whom his Father had made his Heir to the Prejudice of his Legitimate Children, was put in Possession of *Normandy* before he went to *Palestine*: and by the Will of his Cousin Saint Edward, the Son of *Ethelred*, and Brother of *Edmond* the II<sup>d</sup>, he got *England*, where he was solemnly crown'd notwithstanding all the Stratagems, and forcible Opposition made use of by *Harold* the Queens Brother. He took also from *Henry* the I<sup>st</sup>, the Father of *Lewis* the *Burly*, *Xaintogne* and *Poictou*: and it was for good Reason that he was surnamed the *Conqueror*. By *Maud* the Daughter of *Lewis* the *Meek*, Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Alice* the Daughter of *Robert* King of France, he had *Robert* who succeeded him; *Richard* who died Young; *William* surnamed *Rufus*, King of *England*; *Henry*, who after the Death of his Brother *William*, seized upon the same Kingdom. His Daughters were *Cecilia*, the Abbess of *Caen*; *Gertrude* married to *Baudouin* of *Bologne*, King of *Jerusalem*, and Duke of *Lorain*; *Constance* the Wife of

*Allain* Earl of little *Britanny* ; *Ela* promis'd to *Harold*, who came to *France* to inform her Father what a Legacy *Saint Edward* had left him ; *Alice* the Wife of *Stephen* Earl of *Blois*, whose Son of the same name the Earl of little *Britanny* did for some time enjoy *Normandy* and *England*.

*Robert* the II<sup>d</sup>, surnamed *Short-Legs*, the eldest Son of *William* the Conqueror, was deprived of the Crown of *England*, for taking away the Dukedom of *Normandy* from his Brother *Henry* against the known will of his Father. He mortgag'd it afterwards to *Henry* ; and sold the little County of *Constance* that he might accompany *Godfrey* in a Voyage to the Holy Land ; where after he had signalized his Valour by some wondrous Achievements, he refused the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*. Being return'd thence he died in 1102, in the Principality of *Wales* ; where *Henry* his Brother King of *England* had doom'd him to perpetual Imprisonment, having first made him lose his Eye-sight by the heat of a burning Balon. *Henry* the First of that Name, King of *England*, and the Ninth Duke of *Normandy* being Dead, *Stephen* Earl of *Bologne* and *Mortagne* succeeded him in 1135, and his Successor was *Henry* the II<sup>d</sup>, King of *England*, the Tenth Duke of *Normandy*, who had that Dukedom by the Resignation of *Stephen* of *Blois*, Earl of *Bologne*, who conquer'd a part of *Ireland*. He married *Eleoner* the Daughter of *William* Duke of *Guienne*, and Earl of *Poitiers*, who was sole Heiress to her Father's whole Estate : She was first the Wife of *Lewis* the Young King of *France*, whom she attended to *Palestine*, and who was divorc'd from him for having discovered no great Signs of strict Virtue to one *Saladine* a Mahometan. She had by *Henry* the II<sup>d</sup>, who married her, a Prince of the same Name, surnamed *Short-mantle* ; *Richard* King of *England*, who were, one after another, Dukes of *Normandy* ; *Geofrey* the Husband of *Constance*, Countess of *Bretagne*, the Mother of *Arthur*, whom his Uncle the King of *England* put to death ; *John* King of *England*, Duke of *Normandy* ; *Eleoner* married to *Alphonfus* King of *Castile*, who had by her *Blanche* the Wife of *Lewis* the VIII<sup>th</sup>, the Father of *Saint Lewis*. *Henry Short-mantle*,  
A 2 2 Crown'd

Crown'd King of England, died when his Father was still living ; and was the eleventh Duke of Normandy, being invested there by Henry the II<sup>d</sup>, his Father, when he married him to Margaret of France, the Daughter of Lewis the Young, the Seventh of the Name, who was afterwards the Wife of Bela the Third King of Hungary. Richard, surnamed Heart of Lion, King of England, was the Twelfth Duke of Normandy, by the Death of Henry, Short-mantle his Brother : and John King of England, surnamed the Landlefs, succeeded him in the Year 1199. The Dukes of Normandy, after him, were John King of France, who had the Dukedom from King Philip of Valois his Father. That was the same John who in 1356, lost against the Prince of Wales the Battle of Poitiers, and who was taken with Philip his Son, who defended him with so much Courage, that he was from that time surnamed the Hardy. Charles the V<sup>th</sup>, King of France was created by his Father John, the next Duke of Normandy, in 1355 : and Charles of France, who was put in Possession of that Duchy by his Father Charles the VII<sup>th</sup>, enjoyed it but Two Months or thereabout, because the King took it from him again. That Prince died Duke of Guenne, at Bourdeaux, in 1472 : and some Authors are of Opinion that his Death was hasten'd by Poison.

Ratramne, or Bertram, a precise Benedictine, afterwards Abbot of Corby, liv'd in the Reign of Charles the Bald ; and if he had written in our time, at the rate he has deliver'd himself concerning the Sacrament of the Eucharist, the Monk had never been made an Abbot. 'Tis however true, that \* Learned Men have father'd his Book of *The Body and Blood of our Lord*, upon John Erigene a Scotchman, who died in 883, or 84, having been stabbed by his Pupils with Penknives. But if John Erigene, who at the request of Charles the Bald, translated the Greek Text of the Hierarchy ascribed to Dionysius the Areopagite, into Latin, dissented from the Doctrines

---

\* Voyez sur Ratramne, Bertram, & Jean Scot Erigene ; La Perpetuite de la foy de l' Eglise Catholique defendue a la fin du Livre.

Strines of the Church, how could *William* of *Malmsbury* stile him *Holy Philosopher*, and Pious Soul? How comes it to pass that his Name is found on the Fourth of the Ides of *November*, in the Book of Martyrs, printed in 1500 at *Antwerp*, by the command of Pope *Gregory* the XIIIth, and in the Appendixes to other Martyrologies? What reason could oblige the Popes to reckon him in the number of the Martyrs of *Jesus Christ*?

*Charles* the Bald reduc'd the Kingdom of *Aquitain* into a Dukedom, of which *Ranulphus* a Native of *Burgundy* was the first Duke. He was killed in the War against the Normans, with *Robert* of *Saxony*, the first Earl of *Anjou* mentioned in Story: and was the Father of *Eudes*, who after *Charles* the Burly stepp'd next into the Throne of *France*; of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundy*; and of *Robert* the IId, Earl of *Anjou*. The Children of that *Richard* were *Rollo*, who was King of *France* about two Years; and who left the Dutchy of *Burgundy* to *Gilbert* his Brother, married to *Gerberge* the Daughter of *Henry* the Fowler, and Sister to *Otho* the Great, Married to *Hugh* the Great Earl of *Paris*. *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, the Second of the Name, Crown'd King by *Herve* Archbishop of *Reims*, in opposition to the Right of *Charles* the Simple, was killed near *Soissons*, in 922. That was the very Man who gave his Name to *Rollo* Duke of *Normandy* at his Baptism; and who married the Sister of *Hebert* Earl of *Vermandois*, by whom he had *Hugh* the Great, Earl of *Paris*, Constable of *France*; and who after the death of *Robert* his Father, bestow'd the Dukedom of *Anjou* upon *Geofrey* *Grise-gonnelle*, who died in 938. *Foulques* his Son Married the Daughter of *Alain* *Barbetorte*, Count of *Bretagne*, by whom he had a Son surnamend *Martel*, for his Warlike Actions, being Earl of *Anjou*, *Poitou*, of *Xaintonge*, and of *Gatinois*.

*In the Reign of Henry the Fowler.*

In 896, or the Year following, Pope *Formosus* being dead, *Stephen* the VIIth, his Successor, had his Body Dug up out of the Ground, and when he had himself cut off, or ordered three Fingers of the Hand with which he



gave the Blessing to be cut off, and stript him of his Habit, he caus'd him to be thrown into the *Tiber*; because he had left his Bishoprick of *Porto* to take that of *Rome*: a practice expressly prohibited by the Canons, it being not Lawful for any Man living to desert his lawful Spouse, and to take another more Beautiful and Rich Before him the Roman Church had not had a Bishop whom she had taken from another Sec, to be Translated to that of *Rome*.

In the Year 923, *Ulrick*, who has been plac'd in the Number of the Saints, was Bishop of *Ausburgh*; and the next Year under *Olha*, and *Volodimir* his Son, the Russians or Muscovites received the Christian Religion according to the Manner and Institution of the Greek Church, which they have kept Pure and Unaltered ever since, even to this Day. 'Twas in the time of *Otho* the Ist, that *Silesia* in the Year 965, embrac'd the Christian Faith: and *Mieslaus*, or *Miecislau*s Duke of *Poland*, who married *Dambrouka* *Boleslaus* the Duke of *Bohemia*'s Daughter, and Saint *Venceslaus*'s Niece, ( who was kill'd by his Brother *Boleslaus*, in 938 ) was Baptiz'd at *Gnesne*, with a great many Persons of Qualiry. *Favin* in his *Theater of Honor and Knighthood*, has given an Account of the Original of that City; " As for *Lechus* his Brother, &c. fixing his Abode in a Moorish place, at first " fight of a very difficult Situation, six Miles distant " from the River *Warte*, when he was laying the " Foundation of it, upon the first Stroke with the Mattock there was found a Nest of Young Eagles with " their White and first Down; and from that Nest which " in the Polish Tongue is call'd *Gnasdo*, he would have the " Town so call'd. In time ( which with its Teeth Devours all things ) that word was chang'd into *Gnesno*, " and in Latine was called *Gnesna*. The *Lechus* whom *Favin* mentions is *Lechus* the Ist, who about the Year of our Lord 550, caus'd the City *Gnesne* to be built: and from that Eagles Nest so found, " the Arms of the City and Kingdom were of *Gules* with an Eagle *Argent* " crown'd, his Limbs being *Or*, with extended Wings. The *Miecislau*s, of whom I speak, was the Son of *Ziemovislau*s the Son of *Lescus* the IVth, and the Father of

Boles-

*Boluslaus Chrabri*, or the Great, who in 999 succeeded his Father.

In the Life of that Emperor I have taken to task the Opinion of *Wolfin*, who would have the Invention of Tournaments ascribed to *Henry the Fowler*; and I must say something of it. If we believe the Emperor *Cantacuzenus* in his first Book of the History of *Andronicus*, the Knights of *Savoy* and *Dauphiny* taught the Greeks the use of them when they attended the Empress *Anne*, the Daughter of *Amedeus the Great*, to *Constantinople*: and these Tournaments made up the most pompous Solemnities at Weddings, Coronations, and Christenings, in *France*, *England*, and *Spain*, and in all the Kingdoms of *Europe*; when the Princes and Kings kept their Table free to all Comers, and as in our old *Gaul* 'tis expressed, *Cour pleniere & Tinel ouvert*, a full Court, and an open Hall or Pantry. There the Combatants on both sides fought with Blunted and Civil Lances, and with Swords without either Edge or Point. He that staid longest in the Ring, that was last in this Military Exercise and Scuffle was reckon'd the most Expert and Valiant Man: and not one of them had any other Aim but their own particular Glory, the Satisfaction of the Ladies, the Honour of their Nation, or the Divertisement of their King.

King *Philip* of *Valois* made many Laws and Orders for these Tournaments, and it was his Pleasure that none should be admitted Entrance into them that had done, or said any thing against the Catholick Faith, to what Quality soever they might make just Pretences to, nor any who could not prove their Gentility for at least Three Generations by Father and Mother. There was no Access neither for those who by Words or Deeds had dishonoured their King, nor to the Vassal who had betray'd his Lord, or deserted him in Battle; nor to him that had basely run away; that had made any Trouble or Disorder in the Army, or through Malice or Grudge assaulted those of his own side. He removed from them also those who had done any great Injury to the Ladies; who had plaid Tricks with their own Seal, or Counterfeited that of another; who had been guilty of any

Tyranny over the Poor, the Fatherless, and the Widows; who had revenged themselves of their Enemies by dishonourable Practices; who had settled new Taxes upon their Lands without their Lord's leave and approbation; who stood convicted of Adultery, of the unnatural Sin, or of Drunkenness. He ordered also that no Merchants or Tradesmen should have admittance there, nor any that appeared not at that Assembly after due advertisement given of it. If any one came thither, and was found guilty of one of those Crimes, he was punished according to the Rigor of the Laws, and his Correction was proportioned to his Fault. According to the Nature of his Guilt they threw down his Shield, Head-piece, and Crest; they sometimes also broke them; they gave him Blows with the flat side of their Swords, and with their Whips and Switches. They cut off his Horse's Saddle-girts, and *made him bestride the Rail of their Camp or Lists, and with a loud Voice to beg the Ladies and Gentlewomens Pardon.* Perjured Persons, Traytors, Assassins, and Cowards were shamefully degraded from their Quality and Chivalry. They did cut off upon a Dunghil the Tails of their Horses; they broke in pieces with a Hammer their Shields and Helmets. Their Coats of Arms were torn asunder, and the very thing they were drawn on, into Shreds; their Swords and Lances were broken with the Points downward; their Belts and Spurs were forcibly taken from them; to say nothing of some other Ceremonies which were made use of to publish their Infamy.

Those Diversions were very taking, and Sights so much the more delightful because they were never defil'd with Blood. But since they have run into a Humour of fighting *desperately with Steel ground, with keen Swords and Daggers, with whetted Countle-Axes*, if I may use old words; those Shews were no longer to be beheld with dry Eyes. It became necessary that the Popes *Innocent* and *Eugenius* should condemn them; that the Lateran Council in *Alexander* the III'd's time, in 1180. should Anathematize those Murtherers by Profession, and that in 1316, in the Reign of *Philip* the Fair, Pope *Clement* should by a Bull excommunicate those desperate Wretches,

Wretches. In the mean time the Laws, Anathema's, and Bulls were vain and ineffectual. The more these Sports were forbidden, the more they were frequented; and there was nothing more observable almost throughout all *Europe*, than Methods and Rules for cutting Throats without advantage, or foul play. " They fought " in the Lifts, throwing Lances, they fought with a half " Pike, and with the Point and Edge of the Sword; " and without the Rail. They did run to it with sharpen'd Weapons temper'd and steel'd so, that they bent, broke or lost their Lances; and the Careers being ended, every one was to take hold of his Dagger, or Hanger, to make use of it upon occasion; with which Daggers and Hangers they were to fight so long and so far till the one was worsted and utterly disabled.

Duels were not less in use than Tournaments; and the Monks had recourse to that Expedient, when the Titles, which they produc'd to get their Money, were insufficient. If they had to do with Persons of Quality who scorn'd to fight thus *desperately* with them, they kept Men ready, and choice ones, whom they called *Abbots*, or *Knight-Vicars*, who failed not to fight their Battels. Tis observable in the History of *Roderigo of Toledo*, that King *Alphonfus* desir'd to introduce Saint *Ambrose's* Liturgy at the instance of his Wife *Constantia*, and of *Richard* Abbot of Saint *Victor* at *Marseilles*, whom Pope *Gregory* the VIIth sent thither to reform the Churches of that City. The Clergy and People of *Toledo* formally opposed it; and the King and Clergy agreed that that Controversy should be determin'd by a Duel. The King's Champion was overcome by the other that had been chosen by the Clergy: But *Alphonfus's* Authority was such, that he never the less attained his Desire; and then they said, " That the Will of Princes made " the Power of Law useless. The Emperor *Otho* was content that the Disputes of the Church should be decided by Duels; and a Duel put an end to that Question which the Civil Law could not resolve, " Whether the " Children of the deceas'd Children should with their " Uncles succeed their Grandfathers. Fortune declared in



in the behalf of those who maintain'd the Cause of the dead Brothers Children: And we shall see in the Reigns of *Otho* the III<sup>d</sup>, and *Henry* the Black, that single Combats were made use of to assert the Honour and Vertue of Women of Quality.

*In the Reign of Otho the Third.*

In the Year 985, *Lotharius* King of *France* crowned his Son *Lewis* the V<sup>th</sup>, surnamed *Le Faineant*, or the Slothful, and admitted him Partner into his Throne after he had married him to *Blanche* the Princess of *Aquitain*, or of *Provence*, who did not intirely and solely love the King her Husband. The Fame went that *Ascelin Adalberon* Bishop of *Laon* was much in the good Graces of that Queen, and that she by Poison also cut short the Life of *Lotharius*, who died the 12<sup>th</sup> Day of *March* in 986, in the 45<sup>th</sup> Year of his Age, and the 35<sup>th</sup> of his Reign. If this be so, she probably enough served the King her Husband, whom she slighted, as she had served the King her Father-in-Law; for he reigned by himself but sixteen Months. The common Opinion is, that the Race of *Charles* the Great, which lasted two hundred thirry six Years, ended in *Lewis*, surnamed by some, the *Lazy*; because he did no memorable Thing, and because the third Race of our Kings, which continues to this Day, begun with *Hugh Capet*, who upon the death of *Lewis* the V<sup>th</sup>, got himself crown'd at *Rheims* in 987 or 88; who reign'd nine Years, and likewise as some of our Authors affirm, ten Years, and four Months. But our most celebrated Chronologers have fully prov'd, that by his Father's side *Hugh Capet* descended from a Brother of *Charles Martel*; and consequently that since the Settlement of the Monarchy there have been but two Royal Families, or two Branches coming out of the same Stock.

*Robert* the Son of *Hugh Capet*, and of *Adelais* the Daughter of *William* the II<sup>d</sup>, Earl of *Poitou* and of *Guienne*, was crowned at *Orleans* the first Day of *January* in 988, when his Father had made him Sharer in the Govern-  
ment

ment of the Kingdom. He was no more than eighteen Years old when he was married to *Lutgarde* the Widow of *Arnou*, surnamed the Great, Earl of *Flanders*; and that Widow, who was not very young, could not for that reason have all that Women should have to make them amiable. After her death he married *Bertha* the Daughter of *Conrad* King of *Burgundy*, and of *Maud* the Sister of *Lotharius* King of *France*. But since they were related, tho' in a degree remote enough; and since *Robert* had been Godfather to one of her Children, he put her away through the Admonitions and Intrigues of *Abbon* the Abbot of *Fleury* upon the *Loire*. Some are of opinion too that before this *Bertha* he had wedded *Rozella* the Daughter of *Berenger* King of *Italy*, the Widow of *Arnou* the Young Earl of *Flanders*; that he chang'd her Name *Rozella* into *Susanna*; and that he first put her away, and then was formally divorced from that Queen. His third Wife was *Constance*, surnamed *Blanche*, probably from the fairness of her Complexion; she was the Daughter of *William* the 1st, Earl of *Arles* and *Provence*, and of *Adelais*, or *Alice* of *Anjou*. There are Authors also who tell us that *Constance* was of *Aquitain*; that her Father *William* was Count of *Toulouse*; because the Name of *Aquitain* for the sake of the City of *Aken* was given to the Counties of *Provence* and *Toulouse*; and that *Constance*, surnamed *Blanche*, is the very same Person that *Lewis* the Vth, *Hugh Capet's* Predecessor had taken to Wife. One may say at least that she was sufficiently like her in Temper and Spirit, because she was haughty and imperious, obstinate and revengeful: And I shall satisfy my self with the Relation of one single Instance of her Vengeance. Having found that *Hugh de Beauvais* strengthen'd *Robert's* Resolution against her Intrigues, she made her Complaint of it to her Cousin *Foulques* Earl of *Anjou*, and left nothing unattempted to engage him in her Service against *Hugh*. This *Foulques*, to whom Revenge was no less grateful nor less natural than to the Queen, sent eleven Gentlemen, who took their time when *Hugh* was Hunting with *Robert*, and who cut off his Head in the King's Presence, being perfectly deaf to his Intreaties, *Robert*, surnamed the

*Saint,*

*Saint, the Devout, the Most Christian, and the most learned of all Kings*, by the Bishops of the Council of *Limoges*, had been brought up by *Gerbert*, afterwards Pope under the Title of *Sylvester the IId*, who was look'd upon as a Magician, because after his death Mathematical Instruments were found in his Study. Among the spiritual Songs and Hymns which *Robert* made, and which the Church has always tenderly preserved; there was one to the Glory of the Holy Martyrs, in which he was pleas'd to put the Name of the Queen, who was exceeding glad to see her self recommended in his Works, which were so Universally applauded. But we must hear *Nicholas Gille*. "*Robert* who was a very great Clerk, and made fine Responses to the Honour of the Saints, as our ancient Histories record it, was desired by Queen *Constance* his Wife to make some Hymn in her Praise. He seemingly to gratify her, made to the honour of *St. Denis* and other Martyrs, the Hymn which begins thus, *O Constantia admirabilis Martyrum*, &c. and Queen *Constance* who understood not Latin, thought that the said Response was made in her Praise, and sung it not knowing what she said.

The Children of *Robert* were *Hugh* the IId, surnamed the Great, whom he thought fit to make a Sharer in his Royalties, who died on the 10th of September in 1026. *Henry* the Ist who succeeded him; *Robert* of France, Duke of Burgundy; *Eudes*; *Alice* married in 1027. to *Baudouin* the Vth, surnamed the Meek, Earl of Flanders, the Son of *Baudouin* the IVth, with a fair Beard, and of *Ogina* the Daughter of *Gilbert* Count of *Luxemburg*; for his second Wife was *Eleoner* the Daughter of *Richard* the IId, Duke of Normandy, Sister to *Alice* Countess of Burgundy. It is from the Marriage of *Baudouin* the Vth and *Alice*, that *Baudouin* the VIth, Earl of Flanders, and *Robert* called the Frize-lander, descended, who had for their Sisters, *Maud* of Flanders, the Wife of *William* Duke of Normandy, and King of England; *Judith* Countess of Kent, afterwards Dutchess of Bavaria, and *Ide* of Flanders, Marchioness of Saxony. I must not omit a very considerable thing which our Historians have

have taken no manner of notice of. 'Tis that *Alice* or *Adele*, *Robert's* Daughter had *Baudouin* the Vth, fir-  
named the Meek but for her second Husband, because  
*Richard* the III<sup>d</sup>, Duke of *Normandy* had married her  
before, if \* that be true which I have read.

*Archambaud* Vicount of *Turenne*, who signalized him-  
self by many Duels, fought one in Vindication of the  
Honour of *Mary Garcia* the King of *Aragon's* Daughter,  
the Wife of the Emperor *Otho* the III<sup>d</sup>, who was ac-  
cused of Adultery. He had the advantage in the En-  
counter, and that was Matter of great Joy to the Em-  
press. This is the very Woman, who was so extreemly  
enamoured with the Duke of *Modena*, who refus'd to  
pollute the Bed of his Lord the Emperor; and whom  
she so highly charged for having attempted to debauch  
her; that he was put to death for it. The Duke's Wi-  
dow exasperated with that Cheat, and the sad Conse-  
quence of it, demanded justice of the Emperor some  
time after, in a general Assembly of *Italy* upon the Ri-  
ver *Po*, near *Plaisance*. She offer'd her self up to prove  
the Innocence of her Husband by Fire Ordeal, accord-  
ing to the practice of that time: And the Truth was  
no sooner known, but *Mary* of *Aragon* was burnt alive  
in 986. and the Widow was requited with four Ca-  
stles.

Some, as I have said, trace up the Right of the Ele-  
ctors for the Nomination of the Emperors to the Year  
1000. in the Reign of *Otho* the III<sup>d</sup>. Others testify  
that they had not that Right in them till 1071. and the  
Reader may consult *Aventin*, *Onufrius*, *Heig*, and the  
German Authors, who have written upon that Sub-  
ject.

*In the Reign of Henry the Lame and the Saint, of  
Conrad the Salique, and Henry the Black.*

In the Year of our Lord 1002, the Bishoprick of *Bam-  
berg* was instituted, or according to others, in 1007.

The

---

\* V. D. Lucas Dachery *Spicilegium Veterum aliquot Scripto-  
rum tomo septimo.*



The Saracens of *Asia* took the City of *Jerusalem* in 1009, and broke in pieces the Sepulchre of our Saviour. *Viligisius* Bishop of *Mayence* acquired an extraordinary Reputation. He was the Son of a *Wheel-right*; and to remind him of his Parentage, he caus'd a *Wheel* to be painted in many Places, which the Archbishops of *Mayence* still keep in their Arms.

In 1023. *Aribon* Bishop of *Mayence* call'd together a Synod at *Salmstade*, in which there were Decrees made for the Observation of Fasts, and the Vigils of the Festivals of some particular Saints. They determin'd the Times in which Marriages were prohibited, or allow'd: And it was there resolved that a Priest, who in the Summer Nights should drink till Cocks-crowing, should not be capable on the Morrow to say Mass.

In 1036. *Emerick*, with his Father *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, was Canoniz'd by *Benet* the IXth.

In 1052. *Casimir* King of *Poland* translated the See of the Bishop of *Silesia* to *Breslaw*.

In 1075, *Geofrey* surnamed the *Bearded*, the Third of the Name, a private Earl of *Anjou*, and Nephew of *Geofrey Martel*, left at his decease *Foulk* the IIId, his Heir, This *Foulk* was first married to *Hermengarde* of *Bourbon*; his second Wife was *Bertrade* the Daughter of *Amaury* of *Montfort*, who elop'd from her own Husband that she might freely enjoy the Caresses of *Philip* the Ist, the Son of *Henry* the Ist, who died on the 4th of *August* in 1060.

*Baudouin* the VIth, of *Mons*, Earl of *Flanders*, the Son of *Baudouin* the Meek, and of *Alice* of *France*, the Daughter of *Robert* and of Queen *Constance* of *Arles*, died in 1070. By *Richilda* the only Daughter and Heiress of *Reignier* the IIIId, Earl of *Mons* in *Hainault*, *Herman* of *Saxony's* Widow, he had *Arnold* and *Baudouin*, whom their Uncle and Tutor *Robert* the *Friselander* used very ill. This *Robert*, surnamed the *Friselander*, from the Victory which he got over the *Friselanders*, had married *Gertruda* the Daughter of *Bernard* Duke of *Saxony*, *Florentius* the Count of *Holland* and *Zeland's* Widow, by whom she bore *Florentius* Prince of *Holland*, and Queen *Bertha*, *Philip* the Ist's Wife.

'Tis

'Tis observed in the English Story that *Gunbilda* the Sister of *Canute* the II<sup>d</sup>, was Married to *Henry* the Son of the Emperor *Conrad* the *Salique*, and that she was charg'd with Adultery. She put her self in a way of proving her Innocence by a single Duel in a *Field Rail'd in*: but when she had seen that her Accuser was of a Gigantick Stature, and that that dreadful size struck Terror into those who would have gladly been her Champions; she engag'd in her Quarrel a little Youth whom she had brought with her from *England*. He being scarce able to lift his Hands higher than the Legs of his Enemy, dexterously ham-string'd him: and the Empress being exceedingly pleas'd that her Virtue was made to appear by a Means which in all Appearance must needs give her up for a Criminal in Perfection, made her answer to the Emperor's Accusations, and never admitted him again to her Bed. I might add in the Reign of *Lewis* the *Stammerer*, another Instance in the Countess of *Gastinois* the Wife of *Ingelger*, and Godmother to *Ingelger* Earl of *Anjou*, to whose Charge it was laid that she had been accessory to the Death of her Husband, who was kill'd in his Bed; and found dead by her side. *Gontran* the nearest Kinsman to the dead was her Accuser; and though the Countess of *Gastinois* offer'd to purge her self by an Oath, the King look'd upon this to be so strange an Accident, that he commanded her to enquire after a Champion to defend her. When the Countess had no hopes left, and when she saw no one to undertake for her; *Ingelgar* the Earl of *Anjou*, her God-son, being but Sixteen, offers to Fight *Gontran*, a Man in high esteem, and the greatest Hero of his Age; he sets upon him in the Sight of the King, and the Court, cuts off his Head, rescues the Countess from her Imprisonment, and with the same Blow, preserves her Honor, and her Life.

'Tis not unknown what of old happened to *Gondeberge* the Wife of *Errioldus* King of the *Lombards*. She had in her Retinue a Gentleman of *Lombardy* named *Adalulph*, whom she valued much, and who thereupon was so Proud and Insolent, that he presum'd to make, and declare his Love to the Queen. *Gondeberge* being  
asto-

astonish'd at his Carriage, spits in his Face, and threatens the inconsiderate Wretch with Death; who to prevent his Resentment, cautioned the King, that the Queen had a Design against him, that he should mistrust her, and that she was fully resolved to Poison him, that she might be married to *Tafon* the Marquess of *Tuscany*. *Erriold* upon the Information of that Slanderer, makes *Gondeberge* a Prisoner in a Castle; and she could not get out thence, tho *Clotaire* the *Last* had deputed Embassadors to him to complain of the Injuries done his Kinswoman, who descended from the Kings of *Austrasia*. *Lancelot* one of the Embassadors prevailed with the King that one of that Virtuous and Beautiful Queen's Servants might challenge her Accuser to a Duel; and *Aribert* a Kinsman of the Queens threw down his Gauntlet as one ready to fight him. *Adalulph* took it up; but he was worsted by *Aribert*, and afterwards hang'd: and *Gondeberge*, after Three Years Imprisonment was set free.

*In the Reign of Henry the IVth.*

Before we go into *Asia*, and discover what Events there were in *Henry's* Time, the Reader possibly will be able to remember, that in the Year 941, *Hugh* King of *Italy*, the Son of *Lotharius* Earl of *Provençe*, and the Father of *Lotharius*, whom *Berenger* the II<sup>d</sup> succeeded, burnt almost all the Fleet of the Saracen Moors; that in 944, *Ranimir* King of *Gallicia*, or *Castile*, the Third of the Name, the Son of *Sancho*, surnamed the Great, did in *Spain* defeat their best Army.

In 951, when they filled *Calabria*, *Apulia*, and *Lucania* with Fire and Blood, they were vigorously and courageously beaten off by *Aubury* Marquess of *Tuscany*, and utterly routed near *Garigliano*. The next Year having made Inroads from the Hill *Garganus* into the Neighbouring places, they took the City of *Benevent*, and burnt it. *Vermond* the II<sup>d</sup>, King of *Leon*, and of *Castile*, the Son of *Ordonius* the III<sup>d</sup>, was deeply engaged in War, in 953, against *Mahomet Ibni Aben Hamur*, surnamed *Almanzor* the Deliverer, who was both the bravest and

and the most fortunate of all the Moors. But that successful Hero was overthrown by *Veremond* in Battle; which continued a whole day, and he was forc'd also to run away. He died, as 'tis said, with mere Vexation at it; and *Abdimelik*, surnamed *Aldomofar* the Fortunate or the Victorious, who was desirous to revenge the Death of his Father *Almansor*, was likewise beaten with his Army.

*Alphonfus* the Vth, Son of *Veremond* the II<sup>d</sup>, was in *Andalus*, kill'd with the Shot of an Arrow, before a City, by a Saracen belonging to a Garrison, which he was desirous to take by Force; and seven Years after the Saracens, who went again into *Italy* with two Armies, took *Capua*, from whence they were shamefully driven by *Henry the Saint*, in the Year 1013.

There were after that time a great many Wars in *Spain* with the Moors, who were such awkward Politicians as to divide themselves, and to turn into little Kingdoms all the Places, where they had any Authority. By this Means they ruin'd themselves; and for the Satisfaction of being independent, they did unawares absolutely do all they could to strip themselves instantly of their Liberty. The Spaniards being sensible of it, made their best Advantage of that Opportunity; and they weaken'd them so, that when they had kill'd *Mahomet Enazir* Sixty Thousand Men, in the Year 1150, they retook in about Thirty Years *Valence*, *Murcia*, *Carthage*, *Alicant*, *Cordove*, *Seville*, and \* other considerable Cities.

The Moors had nothing left them save only the Kingdom of *Grenada*, from whence they were at last driven by *Ferdinand* stiled the *Catholick*, and the *Great*. Whilst six of *Mahomet Enazir's* Children were disputing the Succession berwixt themselves, others invaded the Kingdoms of *Fez*, of *Tremissen*, or of *Algier*, and all the other petty Kings of *Africa* did no longer own the Kings of *Morocco* as their rightful Masters.

B b

In

---

\*Voyez le chapitre des Califes.



In *Asia* the Saracens were almost in the same Condition ; and the *Turks* whom they called in to their Assistance, were already become their Lords. The Emperors of *Constantinople* were no longer active ; and *Romanus* called *Diogenes* who was haughty upon some Conquests he had made, and who had taken *Neo-Cæsarea* in *Cappadocia*, and *Aleppo*, and *Hierapolis* in *Syria*, was himself the Captive of *Abu Talep Togrul Beg*.

The greatest part of *Europe* were at Variance in the Reign of *Philip* the 1st of *France*, and of the Emperor *Henry* the IVth, of *Germany*, in the time of the Popes *Gregory* the VIIth, *Victor* the IIIrd, and *Urban* the IIrd, who by their Conduct sufficiently discovered that the Spirit of Man is not always governed by the Spirit of God. Among all those Disorders which divided the Inclinations and Interests of Church-men and Princes, there happened an extraordinary thing, which for a while suspended their Mutual, and Grievous Hatred. That which I mean is the Holy War ; the History of which I shall but lightly touch upon, because it must needs be well known.

† *Peter* of *Amiens*, call'd the *Hermite*, had some Conversation at *Jerusalem* with *Simon*, who was then Patriarch of it, and who having amplified to him all the Misfortunes of the Christians of that Country, and the Effeminacy of the Emperors of *Constantinople*, mov'd Pity in the Heart of him that heard him, without imagining that a Conversation which was accidental could prove of any great Consequence. But *Peter* the *Hermite* engag'd at first to use all his Interest for the Ease of the Christians, and indeed he was as good as his Word. He wrote to the Pope, he went to *Rome*, he importun'd *Urban* the IIrd vigorously to press the Princes to recover the Sepulcher of our Lord and Saviour ; he described to him all the Glories of *Palestine* and the Adjacent Places, and made it appear to him that it was easy and practicable  
to

---

† *Favyn* dans son *Theatre d'Honneur & de Chevalerie* : Tome 2. p. 1526, & suiv. *Vigenere* dans ses *Annotations* du *Tasse*.

to Conquer them. Upon the unquestionable Reputation of *Peter the Hermite*, in 1095, *Urban* calls together a Council at *Clermont* in *Auvergne*; excites all the Powers of *Europe* to that Conquest: and both the Houses of private Men, and thole of *Grandeess*, the publick Places, and the Streets were filled only with Persons wearing a *Red Cross* upon the right Shoulder, which was the Badge of the *Listed*, and which gave occasion to the Words, *Cross'd* and *Crusade*. *William* Archbishop of *Tyre*, who wrote that whole History, has told us that natural Affection kept back neither Husbands, nor Wives, neither Fathers, nor Sons; that even the Religious quitted their Cloisters; that Quality, Age, and Sex, were no Bar to any one in that way. But he adds, that all made not God's Glory their End; that some went away, either to follow their Friends, or to adapt their Devotion to their Interest, and others, lest they should be look'd upon as Cowards, or that they might be exempt from the Payment of their Debts.

However it was, *Italy*, *France*, *Germany*, *England*, *Scotland*, *Hungary*, *Denmark*, and *Suedeland* were engaged in that War. The Dukes, Earls, Marquesses, Barons, Lords and Gentlemen sold, or Morgag'd their Estates to raise a supply for that Glorious Expedition.

*Godfrey* of *Bologne* the seventh Duke of *Lorraine*, the Son of *Eustachius* Earl of *Bologne* near the Sea, and of *Ida* the Sister of *Godfrey* *Greatneck*, Duke of *Lorraine*, of *Ardenne*, and *Bouillon*, was the first Volunteer in that Holy War. He sold also, to *Obert* Bishop of *Liege*, as some tell us, that Dukedom of *Bouillon* to be a supply for the Expences of his Enterprize, and his Brothers *Eustachius*, and *Baudouin* attended him. Next to these three Brothers, the most noted Men in Story of those listed under the Banner of the Cross were *Hugh* the Great Earl of *Vermandois*, *Robert* the *Friezlander* Earl of *Flanders*, *Robert* the Son of *William* the Conqueror King of *England*, *Stephen* Earl of *Champagne*, *Blois* and *Chartres*, *Aimar* Bishop of *Orange*, *Raimond* Earl of *Toulouze*, *Baudouin* Earl of *Hainault*. It adds *Baudouin* Earl of *Retel*, *Boemond* Duke of *Apulia*, *Garnier* Earl of *Grege*, *Harpin* Earl of *Berry*, *Ysard* Earl of *Die*, *Rambaud* Earl of *Orange*,

*William Earl of Fore, Stephen Earl of Aumale, Hugh Earl of Saint Paul, and Rotron Earl of Perche.*

In the Year 1096, there were eight Armies form'd out of the infinite Number of those that freely enter'd into the Service, who were all to be under *Godfrey's* Conduct; and four of them were defeated in their Passage through *Hungary, Bulgaria, and Greece*, the Inhabitants of those Countries not being able to bear their Insolence. The Remainder arrived by Sea, and Land, and there were computed upon the Muttering of the Forces no less than six hundred Thousand Foot, and a Hundred Thousand Horse.

In 1097, *Godfrey* took the Cities of *Nice* and *Heraclea* in *Bithynia*; *Tarsus* in *Cilicia*; he cross'd *Asia Minor*, and the next Year drove away the Turks out of *Antioch* in *Syria*. Upon the 15th of *July* in 1099, having himself first mounted the Wall, he got possession of the City of *Jerusalem*, though at the beginning of the Siege, as some Authors assure us, he had but Thirty Thousand Men.

About eight days after he was proclaim'd *King of Jerusalem*; but he would not take that Title upon him: and the Historians who made him King, did make him so purely by their own Authority, since he was neither anointed, nor crown'd, and since he refus'd to be King, if we believe what is handed down to us by Tradition, "because, as he express'd himself, he could not without  
"impious Ambition wear a Crown of Gold upon his  
"Head, where our Lord and Saviour had worn a Crown  
"of Thorns. The Truth is, that he was *Duke*, and not *King of Jerusalem*, which is easily prov'd by his Epitaph: *Here lies the Illustrious Godfrey of Bouillon, who gain'd all this Land that the Christians might have it for their Worship.* It appears also by the Ordinances and Letters of his Brother *Baldwin* who succeeded him; which begin in this Stile, *Baldwin by the Grace of God, of all the French and Latins, the First King of Jerusalem*, as *William of Tyre* informs us, who in another place says that *Baldwin of Bourc* was the second French King of *Jerusalem*; and in the first Chapter of the Sixteenth Book of his History, that *Foulk* was the Third King of it.

In this City of *Jerusalem* taken by Storm, there was a horrid Massacre of the Saracens, and there were kill'd of them,

them, according to *Abulpharages*, to the Number of Seventy Thousand about the Temple. *Godfrey*, whom the same Author calls *Geofrey*, with Five Thousand Horse, and Fifteen Thousand Foot, did not only withstand the Sultan of *Babylon's* Army, which was seven times stronger than his own, but the same Year defeated it. kill'd a Hundred Thousand upon the Spot, and took *Ascalon*.

In less than four Years he reduc'd *Licaonia*, *Cappadocia*, *Cilicia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Comagena*; he died of the Plague in 1100, and *Baldwin* his Brother, whom *Abulpharages* calls *Barduvil*, succeeded him.

In *Baldwin's* Reign which continu'd eighteen Years, the Army of the Christians, or as they nam'd it, of the *Latins* was vanquished in 1102; and the next Year *Boemond* was taken, and rescu'd by his Nephew *Tancrede*.

In the Year 1104, the *Latins* took *Ptolemais* after a Siege of Twenty days, and in 1105, the greater part of the *Saracens* were cut to Pieces. They made themselves Masters at once of *Tripoli*, *Assur*, *Cesarea*, *Acce*, *Sabid*; they lost *Tancrede*, who was kill'd in a Battle in 1115: and *Baldwin* the Ist King of *Jerusalem*, died on *Palm-Sunday* in 1118, and was magnificently interred on Mount *Calvary*, near his Brother *Godfrey's* Grave.

*Baldwin* of *Bourg*, the Son of *Hugh* Earl of *Retel* succeeded him, when *Eustachius* Earl of *Bologne* the Brother of *Godfrey*, and of *Baldwin* the Ist, renounced all his pretences to the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, fearing that at last the Civil Wars would utterly subvert Religion in the Holy Land. He reign'd Thirteen Years, he defeated *Selioukides*, one of the Sultans who had been the King of it, in a Battle; he kill'd him the same Year, made the King of *Damascus* run away, and was conquer'd, taken, and put in Chains by Sultan *Balah* the Son of *Babram*, *Solimans's* Nephew, and after eighteen Months Imprisonment was set free. In 1122, the Cities of *Tyre* and *Joppa* were taken from the Infidels by *Dominick Michael* the Thirty Fourth Duke of *Venice*. In 1125, and the Two following Years the *Latins* got considerable Victories, and in 1131 *Baldwin* died.



*Foulk* Earl of *Anjou*, the third of the Name married *Meliscende* the Daughter of *Baldwin* the Ild, King of *Jerusalem*, and succeeded him. He reigned Ten Years; but his Reign was inglorious, if one takes an estimate of it by his Conquests: and his Death was strange enough, because having mounted a resty Horse, he fell and broke his Neck in hunting a Hare.

In *Baldwin* the III'd's time, who after the Death of *Foulk*, his Father was King of *Jerusalem*, *Atabeg Zenazi* seiz'd upon *Edeffa*, and reduc'd almost all *Mesopotamia*, in 1143. Some Authors have call'd him *Alaf*, and *Alap* *Atabeg*, nor minding that this last was King of *Aleppo*, then by the *Italians*, call'd *Atapia*. The next Year *Baldwin* drove the Saracens out of *Gaza* and *Ascalon*, and overthrew *Nuro'ddin*, or as some Authors name him, *Mahmud Nuradin Melic-Adel*, the Son of *Atabeg Zengi*, who is the Sanguin of the Historians of the Holy Land. The Consequences of that War may be seen in the Account of *Conrad* the III'd, *Henry*, and *Frederick* in the History of the Emperors of *Germany*.

*Baldwin* died in 1163, he reign'd two and twenty Years, and *Amauri* his Successor Reigned Ten. Though he was a Man of Resolution, and Conduct, he was worsted in many Skirmishes by *Asado'ddin Schiracuk*, the Saracen of our Historians, and by \* *Fusuph Zalach-Addin*, or *Salacho'ddin*, that is to say, the Re-establishment, or Restorer of Religion, who is our *Saladin* Sultan of *Egypt*. In 1175 King *Amauri* died of a Fever, and *Baldwin* who stept into the Throne next after him, reign'd Twelve Years, without doing any things worthy of Record.

*Baldwin* the Son of *Sibylle*, and of *William Long-sword*, Marquess of *Montferrat*, was his Successor; and being yet Young, he had *Raimond* for his Preceptor, who was then Earl of *Trippe*. That Guardianship was the Occasion of great

---

\* *Fusuph Zalach Addin*, &c. Unde porro etiam oriundus est *Fusuph Zalach Addin* vulgo *Saladin* vocatus, celebris ille Sultanus *Aegypti* qui *Mamlucorum* collegia primus instituit. *Fuchasin* fol. 149. & *Tarich Persic.* p. 33.

great Disorders, because *Sibylle William's* Widow upon her Second Marriage, became the Wife of *Guy of Lusignan*, who was suspected of having rid himself by Poison of that *Baldwin*, who reigned but about eight Months: and *Raimond*, with the most considerable Persons of the Kingdom, thought themselves oblig'd to declare War against him. *Guy* had recourse to *Salabo'ddin*, who making use of that Occasion takes *Ptolemais*, *Ascalon*, and *Jerusalem*, in 1187, cuts in pieces the Army of the Christians, dispossesses them of all *Judea*, and leaves them *Tyre*, *Triple*, and *Antioch* only, for their whole Refuge. He also took *Guy*, whom he released some time after, upon these hard Conditions, That he should speedily return into Europe, and that upon Oath he should renounce all his Pretences to the Holy Land, The Bishops having determin'd that Oath to be by no Means Obligatory, he rais'd some Troops, and took some Cities; and whatever he could do, he could not regain the Fine Kingdom he had lost.

The same Kingdom was ruin'd by certain People of *Persia*, who were forc'd to give up their Lands to the *Tartars*, and to look out more for themselves. *Baibars* Sultan of *Egypt*, surnam'd *Bundocdar*, because he had serv'd a Master of the same Name, whom the Historians call *Bodegar*, expell'd all the Christians out of *Syria*; he took *Cesarea* in 1265, he took *Galilee*, and *Jerusalem* the following Year; he Plunder'd *Antioch*, in 1268; and Burnt *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Triple*, and *Beyruth* in 1290, according to the Computation of most of the Chronologers.

In 1299, the *Saracens* were driven out of *Jerusalem* by the *Tatares* or *Tartares*: and in 1300, *Osman* or *Othman* had already made a noise in the World. But let us return to our Chronological Observations.

In the *Lateran* Council, which Pope *Nicholas* the II<sup>d</sup> did solemnly convene in 1059. *Berenger* of *Tours*, Archdeacon of *Angers*, who had publicly written, That the Bread and Wine in the Eucharist were but the Figure of the Body and Blood of *Jesus Christ*, in the presence of a hundred and thirteen Bishops openly abjured his Heresy, which was confuted by *Lanfranc*, by *Guimond* a Re-

ligious Benedictine of *St. Leufroy*, of the Diocess of *Eureux*, afterwards a Cardinal, and Archbishop of *Averse* in *Apulia*; by *Durandus* Bishop of *Liege*, and by *Adelman* Bishop of *Brescia*. *Berenger* however ceas'd not to defend his Opinion, though he had been forced with his own Hand to burn the Book of *John Erigenes* a Scotchman, and to subscribe a Confession of Faith\*, which the Cardinal *Humbert* had drawn up. When he was more at liberty, he set that Dispute on foot again, which lasted till the Year 1079; and *Gregory* the VIIth having summon'd him to *Rome* before a Council, that Pope manag'd him at such a rate that he owned *Transubstantiation*: And he was no sooner returned into *France*, but having taken the Habit of *Saint Benet*, he retired into the Priory of *Saint Come*, within 2 Leagues of *Tours*, where he died in 1088. *Hildebert* his Scholar, who was afterwards Bishop of *Mans*, and next Archbishop of *Tours*, in the Epitaph, which he made for him in Verse, stiled him Charitable, Sincere, Pious, Grave, Blessed, Wise, and Saint: And † one may have a sight of that Epitaph in *William* of *Malsbury*, in *Papirius Masson*, and in *Baronius* about the Year 1088. In the mean while he is not over certain that *Berenger* recanted heartily; and a Man need for his satisfaction read only what that Cardinal says of it in his account of that very Year.

*John Xiphilin*, who was Patriarch of *Constantinople* in 1063. was a Person in high esteem. He was his Uncle, who made the Abridgement of *Dion*, though *Vossius* and *Andreas Schottus*, with many others have ascribed that Work to the Patriarch.

In 1074. in the time of *Gregory* the VIIth, before named *Hildebrand* or *Hellebrand*, the Clergy-men were prohibited to marry in the Synod of *Erfort* in *Thuringen*.

In

\* Vid. *Baronius ad ann. 1059. Papir. Masso. Annal. Franc. lib. 3.*

† *Guil. Malm. Regum Angl. lib. 3.*

In the Council of *Lateran*, held in 1078. all secular Princes were forbidden under pain of Excommunication to invest Men with Ecclesiastical Dignities.

In 1081. *Boleslaus* the Ild, surnamed the Bold. King of *Poland*, was excommunicated by *Gregory* the VIIth, because he had kill'd *Stanislaus* the Bishop of *Cracow* at the Altar, who by his Ghostly Advice had endeavoured to reclaim him, representing to him the Enormity of his Life. The Nobility, who could no longer bear his Cruelties, having conspired as one Man against him, he escap'd into *Hungary*, where he was distracted to such a degree that he kill'd himself: And some there are who say that he was devoured by Dogs. He was the Son of *Casimir* the Ist, who was banish'd with his Mother *Richsa* by the *Polanders*, whom she had used ill. He being a Minor, and under the Guardianship of that Queen, who had withdrawn her self with great Riches near the Emperor *Conrad*; she had that Prince conducted to *Paris* to train him up under some good Tutor; and the Monastick Life so charm'd his Soul, that he devoted himself a Monk in the Abby of *Clugni*. So the Kingdom being expos'd to all kinds of Seditions and Intrigues, was without a King above six Years; and the *Polanders*, who procured of *Benet* the IXth a Dispensation for that Prince's Vow, and liberty for him to marry, went to the Abby of *Clugni* to fetch him; and he was crown'd. In acknowledgement of the Pope's Favour, the Poles oblig'd themselves to pay to the Holy See a Tribute Penny every one by the Head, the Gentry being excepted; and that Tribute was call'd *St. Peter's Penny*. He reigned eighteen Years, or as some say, five and twenty; he reduced *Massovia*, which *Maslaus* the Son of *Miecislus* or *Miesko* had usurp'd, calling it by his own Name; he took *Silesia* from the *Bohemians*; and translated the Episcopal See to *Breslaw*.

Some refer the Institution of the Order of the *Chartreux* by St. \* *Bruno* of *Mayence*, and Canon of the Cathedral

---

\* *Petrus Cluniacensis, &c. nullam Canonici Parisiensis mentionem facit, qui inter solennes inferias dicitur respondisse mor-*



tuus. *Papirius Masso Annal. lib. 3. in Philippo Rege; videatur etiam Job. Launonii dissertatio de vera causa secessus S. Brunonis in Ereum.*

dral Church of *Rheims*, to the Year 1084. He retir'd into the Chartreuse of *Grenoble* on the 24th of *June* in the same Year. Others, as *Palmier*, *Onuphrius*, and *Baronius*, place the Institution of that Order in 1086. which was confirm'd by *Alexander the IIIrd*, in the Year 1174.

*Lanfranc* a Benedictine Monk of the Abby of *Bec* in *Normandy*, afterwards Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who wrote a Book upon the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper against *Berenger*, which is put in the sixth Tome of the *Bibliotheca Patrum*, died on the 18th of *May* in 1088. and *Gregory the VIIth* died on the 24th of the same Month and Year. 'Twas this latter who after he had assum'd to himself the Title of *Supreme Bishop*, and of *Pope*, suffered it no longer to be given to any other Bishops but the Bishop of *Rome*. Indeed those Titles and that of *Bishop of Bishops* were ordinary enough. *Lupus* Bishop of *Treguier*, was honoured with that last Title by *Apollinaris Sydonius*, as well as the Greek who was Bishop of *Marseilles*; and the Bishops of *Rome* had it, because being Metropolitans, they had other Bishops under them. When *Apollinaris* was pitch'd upon to elect and settle a Bishop at *Bourges*, in the Presence of *Aegrotius*, Bishop of *Sens*, he call'd that *Aegrotius*, Our Most Holy Father the Pope; he stil'd *Lupus* in some other place the Principal Bishop of the Earth; he call'd too *Mamertius*, Supreme Bishop: And Saint German Bishop of *Paris* is just so nam'd by *Fortunatus*. Honour the Bishop, said *Ignatius* to the Citizens of *Smyrna*, because he is the Chief Priest: And it is not strange that *Gregory of Tours* said, while he was speaking of the Church of *Bourdeaux*, That it was the Apostolick See; since the Sees of all Bishops are Apostolical. The Clergy of *Rome* writing to *St. Cyprian*, gave him the Title of, Most Holy and Most Glorious Pope. *Sidonius Apollinaris*, of whom I have spoken, who call'd *Megethius*, *Fonteus*, *Eutropius*, *Faustus*, *Patient*, *Auspex*, *Prosper*, *Euphronius*, &c. Popes, was himself stil'd Pope, as Bishop of *Clermont*, by *Mamerti-*

us,

us, at that time Bishop of *Vienna*. All Bishops in that time had the Stile of Pope given them, as now we call every one of them, My Lord.

*Anselme* a Benedictine Monk, the Pupil of *Lanfranc*, succeeded him in the Archbishoprick of *Canterbury* in 1093: and some Chronologers have been mistaken when they asserted it for Truth that *Lanfranc* died not till the Year 1097. *John Brompton* says that he died in 1088. as I just now observed; that his Place was not fill'd again till four Years after: And one may consult the old Historians of *England*, which have been given us by *Roger Twisden*.

\* *St. Yves* who was already Bishop of *Chartres* in 1092, died in 1114.

In 1096. the stated Hours of our Lady were appointed in the Council of *Clermont*; and it is observ'd in the Annals of *Ptolomy* of *Lucca*, that it was ordain'd that the Office should be celebrated on *Saturday*, that *Urban* the IId made the Preface to it, which they sing at Mass.

In 1098. the Order of Cistercians was instituted by *Robert* the Abbot of *Molesme*, in the Diocess of *Lan-gres*; and two and twenty of his Monks followed him into that Abby.

In the Reign of *Henry the Fifth*; of *Lotharius the Second*, a *Saxon*; of *Conrad the Third*; of *Frederick Barbarossa*, and *Henry the Sixth*.

*Ame* the IId, Count of *Maurienne*, Marquess of *Suza*, and Lord of *Tarantaise*, the Son of *Humbert* the IId, was

---

\* *Scriptum inter alia Volumen Decretorum, idque inscriptum Pannomiam, id est, quod omnes complectitur leges, ut ait Possevinus in Apparatu. Verum ea Pannomia quæ sub nomine Ivonis fertur, non dicitur Ivonis quia sit ab Ivone composita, sed quia ex decreto Ivonis maxima ex parte desumpta. Est enim Pannomia ista quasi Compendium Decreti Ivonis Bellarm. lib. de Scriptur. Eccles.*

was the first Earl of *Savoy*, by the favour of *Henry* the Vth, who advanced *Savoy* into an Earldom. His first Wife was *Geltrude*, the Daughter of *Simon* the Xth, Duke of *Lorraine*, and of *Geltrude* of *Saxony*, the Emperor *Lotharius* the II'd's Sister. He had no Children by that *Geltrude*, but by *Guigonne*, or *Maud* of *Albon*, the Daughter of *Guigues*, Count of *Albon* and *Vienne*, who was the first laid claim to the Principality of *Vienne* as his own, and who assum'd the Title of the Dauphin of *Viennois*. That *Ame* was born in 1080. at *Montmeilan*; and died in *Cyprus* in 1154. in his return from his Voyage into the Holy Land.

*Robert* surnamed *d'Arbrissell*, from a little Village of the same Name, where he was born in 1047. within seven Leagues of *Rennes*, died in 1117. He founded the Order of *Fontevrault* in 1100: and one cannot sufficiently admire that the learned Jesuit, Father *Sirmond*, among the Letters of *Godfrey* Abbot of *Vendome*, and Cardinal, which he put in Print in 1610, should let one pass which decries the Conduct of *Robert*, without observing that it was written by Prebendary *Roscelin* his Enemy, the Head of the Sect of the Nominals, and the Tutor of *Peter Abailard*. The Life of *Robert* was so Holy, and his Reputation so well establish'd, that there was not a Pope, a King, a Prince, a Bishop, or Prelate in his time, who spoke of him but to his Advantage: And *Godfrey* Abbot of *Vendome*, who by a false Letter seems to be his Accuser, always look'd upon him to be a learned and holy Man, and publicly professed a friendship for him. Father *John de Mainferme* has with so much reason disprov'd the Calumny of *Roscelin*, who was a profligate Wretch, condemn'd for his Heresies in the Council of *Soissons*, and banish'd *France*; that if we reject his Arguments, we ought no longer to pretend to common Sense. Madam *Mary Magdalene Gabrielle Adelaïde* of *Roche-chouart*, is the Thirty third Abbess, the Head and General of the Order of *Fontevrault*, who is subject neither to the Visitation nor Inspection of any Bishop, and whose Tenure is immediately from the Pope. There would be sufficient Materials to set off the peculiar Worth of that Abbess, who has a great deal

deal of Wit, a wonderful stock of Goodness, who understands Greek and Latin; and who, besides her natural and acquir'd Parts, is a Person of an exemplary Piety. But they who delight only in the Praises of God, have little value for those of Men; and their Modesty, on that occasion, suffers always, even by the justice that is done them. In the ninth Volume of the Works of Father *Theophilus Rainaud*, it is shew'd that the Superiority given in this Order to Women over Men is contrary neither to the Laws of the Church, nor to Reason.

In the Year 1120. *Marsilius* of *Padua* made a noise with these Opinions which he maintained: Namely, "That after the Ascension of Jesus Christ there was no one upon Earth his Vicar; That there was no difference betwixt Bishops and Priests; That the Pope might not only be judg'd by the Emperor, but that when the See was vacant, he had a right to succeed him, and that Clergy-men could not be rightful Possessors of an Estate.

In 1125, a certain Man call'd *Tandesm*, or *Tanquellin* of *Anvers*, had the boldness to assert and teach publicly for a long time, that the "Office of Bishops and Priests might justly be accounted insignificant; That the Holy Sacrament was not necessary to Salvation; and that Adulteries were lawful.

In 1128. \* *Peter* of *Bruys* in *Provence*, preach'd, "That Children, who are not at Age of Discretion, cannot be sav'd by Baptism; That the Faith of others is unserviceable to them, who cannot make use of their own; That we ought to pull down Churches instead of building them up; That consecrated Places are not necessary for the Worship of God; That the Cross should be broke and burnt, because our Saviour died upon one; That Jesus Christ was not real-  
" ly

---

\* *Pierre de Bruys* fut brulé a *Saint Gilles* en *Languedoc*, eut pour Successeur dans sa doctrine *Henry*, & leurs Sectateurs furent nommez *Henriciens*, *Petro-brusiens*, &c. Vid. *Papyr. Massé Histor. Franc. in Philippo August.*



"ly in the Holy Eucharist; That Alms and Sacrifices  
"were in no wise useful to the Dead.

*Nortberg*, of the Country of *Cleves*, Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, the Son of the Count of *Gennes*, an avow'd Enemy to the Errors of *Tanchelin*, and the Founder of the Order of the *Premontreux*, under the Rule of *St. Austin*, died in 1134, and was Canoniz'd by *Gregory* the Third, in 1582.

*Lewis* the *Burly*, the Son of *Philip* the 1st, and of *Bertha* the Daughter of *Florentius* Earl of *Holland*, died on the 1st Day of *August* in 1136, in the 29th Year of his Reign, and 58th of his Age. The Zeal which he first express'd for the Ecclesiasticks, and his Piety, gain'd him the Name of *Defender of the Church*: And he carried back so many Victories over his Enemies, that he was from them nam'd the *Great* and the *Warrior*. He was contracted to *Luciane* of *Rocheport*, the Daughter of *Guy* Earl of *Rocheport* in *Fueline*, Seneschal of *France*, and of *Elizabeth* of *Crecy*, Countess Dowager of *Corbeil*: And since they were related in a degree forbidden, he was acquitted of his Promise in the Council of *Troyes* by *Paschal* the 11d. 'Twas afterwards that he married *Alice* of *Savoy*, the Daughter of *Humbert* the 11d, and of *Guille* of *Burgundy*, the Sister of *Pope Calixtus* the 11d; and the Marriage was solemniz'd in 1115. His Son *Philip*, a Youth most hopeful, was anointed, and crown'd at the Age of fourteen, on the 15th of *April*, at *Easter*, in 1129. But as he rode through the Streets from one of the Suburbs of *Paris*, his Horse being scar'd by a Hog which run betwixt his Legs, pranc'd, threw him upon the Ground, went over his Body and bruis'd him in such a manner, that he died the same Evening on the 13th of *October*, 1131. His other Children were *Lewis* the VIIth, surnam'd the *Pious*, and the *Young*, his Father being alive; *Henry*; *Hugh* little known; *Robert*; *Peter*; *Constantia*. *Henry* a Monk of *Clairvaux*, afterwards Bishop of *Beauvais*, and next Archbishop of *Rheims*, &c. died on the 13th of *November* in 1175; *Robert* Earl of *Dreux*, who gave beginning to the Branch of other Earls of *Dreux*, died on the 11th of *October* in 1188. He married three Widows, that of *Amauri* the Earl

Earl of *Montfort*; *Arvoise*, or *Arvoise*, *Rotron* the II'd's Widow, who was Earl of *Perche*, the Daughter of *Gautier* Lord of *Salisbury* in *England*, and the Sister of *Patricius* the I<sup>st</sup>, Earl of the same Place. His third Wife was *Agnes* of *Braine*, the Widow of *Milo* Earl of *Bar* upon the *Seine*, the only Daughter and Heiress of *Guy* of *Baudemond* Lord of *Braine* upon the *Vesle* near *Soissons*, the Lord of *Fere* in *Tardenois*, of *Nesle*, of *Pontarci*, and of *Longueville*. Let us go back to the other Children of *Lewis* the Big. *Philip* the Great, Archdeacon of the Church of *Paris*, having been nominated after the death of *Thibaud* to the Bishoprick about 1160, generously yielded it up to his Tutor *Peter Lombard*, Canon of the Church of *Chartres*, surnamed the Master of the Sentences, and died in 1164. *Peter* married *Elizabeth* the Lady of *Courtenay*, and of *Montargis*, the Daughter and Heiress of *Renaud*. *Baldwin* of *Avesnes* in his Chronicle, allows this *Peter* to be one of the best and bravest of Princes. He had by that Wife, *Peter* the Lord of *Courtenay*, of *Montargis*; the Earl of *Auxerre*, of *Nevers*, and of *Tonnerre*; the Marquess of *Namur*, and Emperor of *Constantinople*. *Constantia* was bethroth'd to *Eustachius* Earl of *Bologne*, the eldest Son of *Stephen* Earl of *Blou* and *Bologne*; but *Stephen* died before the Consummation of his Marriage. She was after married to *Raimond* Earl of *Toulouse*, and of *St. Gilles*, Duke of *Narbonne*, Marquess of *Provence*, the Son of *Alphonfus* the I<sup>st</sup>, and of *Faitide*. That *Alphonfus* who was born in *Palestine*, was routed with his Army in *Africk*, and taken Prisoner. After he was set free, he carried some Troops to the Christians in *Asia*; and was no sooner in the Holy Land, but the Enemies of his Glory poison'd him. He died at *Cesarea* in 1146, and after his death *Faitide* was made a Captive, and carried away by the Saracens with her Son and her Daughter.

In 1140. the Heresies of *Peter Abailard*, born in *Little Britanny*, were condemn'd by a Council held at *Sens*, who in regard of the Trinity, as *Bernard* has observ'd it, taught something common with *Arrius*; with *Pelagius* about Grace; and with *Nestorius* concerning the Person of *Jesus Christ*. "He believ'd that betwixt the Crea-  
" tor,

" tor, and the Creatures, there was something Eternal  
 " which was not God ; That God was not the Author  
 " of all Good ; That the Divine Essence consisted of Per-  
 " sons really distinct from that Essence ; That the Fa-  
 " ther alone is Almighty ; The Son alone Wise ; And  
 " the Spirit alone was Bountiful ; That the Holy Spi-  
 " rit is the Soul of the World ; That Jesus Christ took  
 " not Flesh to redeem us ; That the Fear of God was in  
 " Jesus Christ ; That Man had not Free Will ; That  
 " God himself was not a Free Agent, not being able to  
 " make Things otherwise than he has made them ; That  
 " the Blessed see not God, but some Light or Brightness  
 " of his Being ; And that their Beatitude consists only  
 " in the Vision of that Brightness. When he had been  
 condemn'd at *Sens*, he appeal'd from that Judgment to  
 the Holy See ; and having been stop'd at *Clugny* by *Pe-*  
*ter the Venerable*, he put on the Habit of a Monk, and  
 ended his Days in that Abby.

*Hugh* a Native of *Saxony*, call'd *Hugh* of *St. Victor*,  
 because he was a Canon in that Abby, died in the Year  
 1140.

The Year before, *Poret* or *Poretan*, who was Bishop of  
*Poitiers*, asserted, " That the Divine Essence was not  
 " God ; That the Properties of the Divine Persons were  
 " not the Persons themselves, but Eternal Things di-  
 " stinguish'd from his Essence ; That the Divinity was  
 " not incarnate in Jesus Christ ; That Men did not Me-  
 " rit, because there is none but God that Merits ; That  
 " no one is truly baptiz'd except those that are sav'd. But  
 inasmuch as he submitted his Opinions to the Holy See,  
 and renounced them when they had been condemn'd, he  
 was sent back to his Bishoprick of *Poitiers*, nor was  
 look'd upon as a Heretick, because he persisted not in  
 his Heresies.

*Thomas Becket*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and Chan-  
 cellor of *England*, who thwarted *Henry* the II'd in some  
 certain Rights belonging to the Church, was assassinated  
 in his Cathedral in 1171. He was placed in the num-  
 ber of the Saints by *Alexander* the III'd in 1172, though  
 his Bull for it was not publish'd till the Year after.  
*Henry* the VIIIth, who in the Year 1538, ordered all  
 the

the Remains of that Archbishop which could be left, to be burnt, fully declar'd himself not to be of the Pope's Opinion. That *Henry* the II<sup>d</sup>, Earl of *Anjou*, of *Normandy*, of *Guienne*, of *Touraine*, and of *Poitou*, and King of *England*, was the Son of *Geofrey* Earl of *Anjou*, the fifth of the Name, and of *Mathilde* Daughter of *Mauleen* King of *Scotland*. Forty Years after the Death of *Thomas Becket* a Question was started among the Doctors of *Paris*, *Whether he were damn'd or sav'd?* and *Roger Normand* said that he had deserved death by his Rebellion against the King his Master. There were others who asserted that he ought to be reckon'd among the Martyrs, because he died in the Quarrel of the Church and Clergy; insomuch that *Alexander* Canoniz'd him, when he came back to *Italy*.

*Richard* of *St. Victor* a Scotchman, died in 1173.

The Teutonick Order of *St. Mary* in *Jerusalem*, begun under *Clement* the III<sup>d</sup>, in 1189; and was settled the first Year of *Pope Celestin* the III<sup>d</sup>, in 1191. The renowned *Salahoddin* died in 1194. and before his death he commanded the Standard-bearer of his Army to walk at the Head of the Pomp of his Obsequies with a Napkin upon the Point of his Lance, and to say aloud, that "*SALAHODDIN*, out of so many conquer'd Kingdoms, out of so many Victories gain'd by him, has carried along with him only a Winding-Sheet to bury him.

*Richard* surnam'd *Cœur de Lion*, being inform'd that a Gentleman had found a \* Treasure which he had hid in the Castle of *Chalus* in *Limosin*, made haste to besiege him there; and whilst he went to take a View of the Castle, he was wounded with a Dart out of a Crossbow, the use of which he had brought into *France*. That Stroak in all probability would not have been of dangerous Consequence, had not his Incontinency render'd the Wound mortal. It gangreen'd, and he died

C c

of

---

\* Ce tresor selon quelques-uns etoit une Antique d'Or, qui representoit un Empereur assis a Table, avec sa femme, & ses enfans.



of it in 1199. His Body was interred in the Abbey of *Font-Evrault* near *Henry the II<sup>d</sup>*, whose third Son he was.

*In the Reign of Frederick the II<sup>d</sup>, of Conrad the IV<sup>th</sup>; of William, and Rodolphus the I<sup>st</sup>.*

(a) *Abu Amram Musa Ebn Maimon*, surnamed, *Al Rays*, as if he had been the Chief amongst them, the most Learned indeed of all the Rabbins, died as some affirm, in 1204, or according to *Abulpharages*, in the 615<sup>th</sup> Year of the *Mahometan Epoch*, which is the 1208<sup>th</sup> of our Lord. That *Moses* the Son of *Maimon*, was Born at *Cordoue*; and he is often call'd *Moses the Egyptian*, because he had his Education in *Egypt*, where the Sultan then Reigning, made choice of him for his Physician. He was but three and twenty Years old, when he begun his Exposition upon the Text of the *Talmud*; and he was two and Forty when he finished that Great Work of Fourteen Books in Four Volumes, in which the *Talmud*, before confus'd, was digested into a Copious and most Elegant Abridgment. After that he made another Book, which he call'd *Delala Elhairin*, which is Tantamount to the Hebrew Expression *More Nebochim*, or the Director of the Doubtful. In the Year 1500, it was Translated by *Austin Justiniani* Bishop of *Nebio*, and if the Errors of the Impression, especially those committed in reading the Abbreviations were corrected, that Version would be better than that of the Hebrew, of *Samuel* the Son of *Tibbon*, a Spanish Rabbi, who often blunder'd for want of a Sight of the Arabick Text. This *Rambam* is in wondrous Reputation among the Jews, who call him the Great Eagle, and who have likewise said of him, That from *Moses* to *Moses*, there has not liv'd a Man equal to him. He was the Disciple of *Joseph* the Son of *Meir*: and 'tis in his Age, that among the Jews those two were

---

(a) *Pocock notis ad Specimen Historia Arab.* p. 367. De *Maimonide Cunaus* in *Rep. Heb.* c. 11. p. 11, 12.

were eminent, Rabbi \* Judah, Hallevi, or Judas the Levite, the Author of *Hac Cozari*, which is nothing else but a great Dialogue between the King of the Cozarians and Rabbi Isaac; and Abraham Aben Ezra, who has made Literal Comments upon one part of the Scripture, and was Author of these following Books, *The Reasons of Fear*, *The Balances of the Holy Tongue*, and, *The Elegance of Grammar*. He was the Grandson of Ezra, and the Son of Meir; and one may reckon in that time *Jebudah Aben Taphon*, or *Tibbon*, his Son *Samuel Bechai*, *Hazzachen*, or the old Man; *Rabbenu Tam*, otherwise *Rabbi Jacob*, the Son of *Solomon*, *Isabaki's* Daughter, known by the name of *Farki*; and his Brother *Samuel*, or in short, *Rachbam Farki's* Son-in-law, and *Meir's* Son. There liv'd also in the same Age the fam'd Rabbies, *Abraham* the Son of *Dior*; *Abraham* the Son of *David*; *Isaac* the Son of *Abba*; *Benjamin* the Son of *Fonas*, the Author of the *Itinerary* whom I quote sometimes in this History, and *Moses* the Son of *Naebman*, of *Girone* in *Catalonia*. It will not be forgotten that *Solomon Farki*, or more briefly *Raschi*, was of *Troies* in *Champagne*, though others have said that he was of *Lunel* in *Languedoc*, taking their Hint from the Word *Ferak*, which in Hebrew signifies the Moon.

The Order of the *Franciscans* first founded by *Saint Francis*, in the time of *Innocent* the III<sup>d</sup>, in 1209, was confirm'd in 1223. by *Honorius* the III<sup>d</sup> who had succeeded *Innocent*, in 1216, on the 18th of July, and who died upon the 18th of March, in 1227. *Innocent* the III<sup>d</sup>, whom *Palatina* reckons among the Popes of a Holy and Exemplary Life is call'd by *Matthew Paris*, a *Horsleech* for his Avarice, and a *Lion* for his Cruelty. *Saint Francis* died in the City *Affisi*, in *Umbria*, in 1226, being 45 Years old, and eighteen after the Institution of his Order.

The Faction of the *Guelfs* and *Gibelins*, resum'd new Strength in the Reign of *Frederick* the II<sup>d</sup>, which was made remarkable for the Piety of *Saint Elizabeth* the

C c 2

Daugh-

\* Pocock notis ad Specimen Hist. Arab. p. 384.

Daughter of Andrew King of Hungary, the Wife of Lewis the Landgrave of Thuringen and Hesse, who died in 1231, and was interred at Marburg, in the Church that bears her Name. The same Reign was also the more regardable for the Worth and Works of *Vincent Cadluck*, who wrote a Chronicle of Poland: of *Accursius* the Learned Lawyer of Florence; of *William* Bishop of Paris, and of *Peter de Vignes* that Emperor's Chancellor and Secretary. That *Peter de Vignes*, through a blind Zeal for the Pope, wrought in himself a Resolution to have his Master *Frederick* Poison'd; and for that purpose he tamper'd with a Physician, as great a Traitor as himself. The Emperor had notice of it, and as he was ready to take that which the Physician brought him, he said to them, "I place my Confidence in you, My Friends: take heed you give me no Poison instead of the Remedy I have need of. *Peter* in the very Moment, answered him, that there was nothing to be fear'd from that Physician, whose Integrity was known to him: on whom when the Emperor had earnestly fix'd his Eyes, he said to him, *Drink to me*: He quaking for Fear, took the Drink, and fell down on purpose that he might spill it. There remain'd however, some part of it, which *Frederick* order'd to be given to some Malefactors actually Sentenc'd to Death, who expir'd in the very Instant they drank it. This Conspiracy being discover'd, and fully prov'd, he hang'd up his Physician, and put out *Peter de Vignes's* Eyes, whom nevertheless upon Occasion he consulted with; because he had a great Genius for Business: and the thing under Consultation being to get Money enough to make War effectually, the Secretary advis'd him to seize all the Gold and Silver that was in the Churches. The Advice, as soon as given, was instantly followed; and *Peter de Vignes* who knew it, said to the Emperor, "I have this day had my full Revenge for the outrage I have received. You have drawn upon your self by your Conduct the Hatred of Men, and I have so manag'd the Point, that through your Sacrilege God is become your Enemy. The Emperor not expecting to be thus rallied, threw up that Traitor to the *Pisans* that

that he might be killed : and he had no sooner Notice of it but he broke his Head in Pieces against the Pillar, to which he was fastened. Others say, that he was unjustly accus'd, and that meeting with ill usage in a Prison at *Capua*, he dash'd out his Brains against the Walls. 'Twas also near this time that there were flourishing *Raimond* who methodiz'd the Decretals; *Hugh* of *Barcelona* Cardinal of *Ostia*; *John de Sacro-Busto*, an Englishman, generally call'd *Sacro-Bosco*, of the Order of the *Trinitarians*; *Evrard* Bishop of *Salzburg*, and \* *Albert* the Great, who being Bishop of *Ratisbonne*, voluntarily resign'd his Bishoprick, that he might be publick Professor at *Cologne*. This Example is singular, and there are few Doctors at this day, who would not throw away their Caps to wear a Mitre.

*Saint Dominick*, born in 1170, founded the Order of the *Preaching Friars*, in 1208; he died in 1221; and was Canoniz'd by *Gregory* the IXth, in 1234.

*Lewis* the VIIth being dead, in 1180, on the 18th, or as others will have it, on the 20th of *September*, in the Sixtieth Year of his Age, and the Forty Third of his Reign; *Philip* the II<sup>d</sup>, surnamed *Augustus*, and the Conqueror, the Son of that King by *Alice* his third Wife, the fifth Daughter of *Thibaud* the Great, the Fourth of that name, Earl of *Champagne*, succeeded him. He was born upon the 22d of *August*, in 1166; and married *Isabella* the Daughter of *Baldwin* the IVth, surnamed the *Courageous*, the Earl of *Hainault*, and of *Margaret* the Countess of *Flanders*. She was the Sister of *Baldwin* the Vth, Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Henry* Emperor of *Constantinople*, and by the Female Line, she descended from *Clovis* and *Charlemain*. She had by *Philip*, *Henry* the VIIIth; and was but Eighteen or Twenty when,

C c 3

in

---

\* *Ex Bolstadiensibus Regulis natus est Lavinadae Suedorum, vulgo Lawen. Primus Latinorum, quicquid in Græcis, Latinis, Arabibus, Hebræis, Philosophis, egregium fuit, perscrutatus est Centuriat. Magdeburg. Vir eruditionis admirandæ, quem divinarum rerum pauca, humanarum fortasse nulla latuerunt. Sixtus Sineps, Lib. Biblioth. Sanctorum.*



in 1189, she died of a Distemper that seized her after she had been delivered of two Twins, dead from their Birth. In 1193, on the 12th of *August*, *Philip* at his return from the Holy Land, married *Ingerburga* King *Canutus* the VIth's Sister, the Daughter of *Waldemar* the Great: and though that Princess was as beautiful as she was Virtuous, on the very Morrow after his Wedding-day he had such an Aversion for her, that upon Presence of nearness of Blood, he determin'd some time after to send her Back, and Deliver her into the Hands of the Embassadors of *Denmark*, who refus'd to be so dishonourably employ'd. Having got his Divorce to be Authorized by some Bishops, he was married in 1196, to *Agnes*, *Berthold's* Daughter, and Sister of *Otho* Duke of *Moravia*, of *Dalmatia*, and Earl of *Engel*, whose Family sprung from *Rapold*, one of the natural Sons of *Arnold* the Emperor, of the Race of *Charles* the Great. *Ingerburga* complain'd of it to the King her Brother, and to Pope *Celestin* the IIIrd, who declar'd that the Sentence of Divorce pronounc'd by the Bishops was unjust, and against the Law of God: and since *Innocent* the IIIrd had sent Cardinal *Peter* of *Capua* into *France* to make void that unjustifiable Separation; and seeing that *Philip* could submit neither to good Council, Reasons, nor Intreaties, his Kingdom was excommunicated and set under an Interdict. When that Matter was again debated by the Prelates, at *Soissons*, the King of his own accord took *Ingerburga* again, at which *Agnes* was so sensibly concerned, that she died upon it, in 1201. *Ingerburga* died in the Priory of Saint *John*, at *Corbeil*, in 1236, and *Philip* at *Mante*, upon the *Seine*, in 1223, about the 44th Year of his Reign, and the 58th of his Age. *Lewis* the VIIth, his Successor was as yet but fourteen, when he was Married to *Blanche* Infanta of *Castile*, the Daughter of *Alphonfus* the IXth, and *Eleoner* of *England*, King *John's* Sister. Besides two Daughters by this Marriage, he had *Philip* who died Young, *Lewis* the IXth, *Robert* Earl of *Artois*; *John* Earl of *Anjou*, and of *Maine*, who died after he had been betrothed to *Joland*, the Daughter of *Peter* and *Alice*, the Duke, and Dutchess of *Bretaigne*; *Alphonfus* Earl of *Poitou*, and of *Toulonse*, by his  
Wife

Wife *Jane*, the only Daughter and Heirels of *Raimond* the Vth, Earl of *Toulouse*; *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, of *Maine*, and of *Provence*, after King of *Sicily*, and *Stephen* who died Young. *Henry* the VIIIth surnamed the *Lion*, died in the Castle of *Montpensier* in *Auvergne*, on the seventh of *November*, in 1226; he lived near Forty Years, and Reigned three or four Months. *Lewis* the IXth who is our *Saint Lewis*, was his Successor; he was anointed and Crown'd at *Reims* the first day of *December*, in the same Year, being just twelve; he embark'd in 1256 for *Asia*, and a while after for *Africa*. But both those Voyages were unfortunate; and by a secret of *Providence* unknown to Men, the *Saint* Triumpht not over the Infidel. Having late down before *Tunis*, after he had taken *Carthage* by storm, he fell into a Bloody Flux, which was attended with a continual Fever; and died on the 25th of *August*, in 1270, being the 44th Year of his Reign, and the 56th of his Age. He had already at the Siege of *Carthage* lost his Son *John*, surnamed *Tristan*, because the Queen his Mother was brought to bed of him at *Damiata* in *Egypt*, in 1260, whilst the King was detain'd Prisoner by the Saracens: for he was taken with his Two Brothers, *Alphonfus* and *Charles*, by *Saleb* the Son of *Camel*, the Sultan of *Egypt*, at *Mansoura*, or the City called *Victorious*; situated upon the Eastern Bank of the *Nile*. By the Dispensation of Pope *Gregory*, the IXth, *Saint Lewis* had married *Margaret* the eldest Daughter of *Raimond Berenger* Earl of *Provence*, and of *Forcalquier*, and of *Beatrix* the Daughter of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*. From this Marriage descended *Lewis*, who died at sixteen, after he had been betrothed to *Berengaria*, the Daughter of *Alphonfus* the Xth, King of *Castile*, and of *Yoland* of *Aragon*; *Philip* the Hardy; *John Tristan*, the Husband of *Yoland*, the Daughter of *Eudes*, of *Bourgogne*, and of *Maud* of *Bourbon*, Countess of *Nevers*; *Peter* Earl of *Alencon*, who died in *Apulia*, in 1283; and *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* in *Beauvoisis*. This *Robert* was Married to *Beatrix* the Daughter of *John* the IIIrd, Duke of *Burgundy*, and of *Agnes* Heirels of *Bourbon*, and of *Charolois*. The Branch of *Bourbon*, issued out of this Marriage: and three hundred Years after *Henry* the

Great of that House came to the Crown. The Daughters of St. Lewis were *Isabella* married to *Thibaud* the 11d, King of Navarre; *Blanche* the Wife of *Ferdinand* Prince of Castile, surnamed *de la Cerda*, the eldest Son of *Alphon-sus* the Xth, King of Castile, the wise Man and the Astrologer; *Margaret* espous'd to *Henry* Duke of Brabant, and of Limbourg, who turn'd Monk, after married to *John* his Brother and Successor, and *Agnes* married to *Robert* Duke of Burgundy.

*St. Antony* of Padua, who died in 1231. was Canoniz'd by *Gregory* the IXth the following Year.

The University of *Vienna* in *Austria* was founded by the Emperor *Frederick* in 1237. Four Years before, *Robert Sorbonne*, so call'd from a Village of the same Name, near *Sens*, where he was born, a Prebendary of *Nostre-Dame* in *Paris*, *St. Lewis's* Almoner and Confessor, had built the College of *Sorbonne*; and *St. Lewis* bestow'd some Revenues upon it.

*Alexander* of Hales, of the Order of *St. Francis*, the Master of *St. Bonaventure* and *St. Thomas*, died in 1245. *St. Edmond* Bishop of *Canterbury* in 1246. and *Blanche* the Mother of *St. Lewis*, being 66 Years old, died in 1252. and was interred in the Monastery of *Maubisson*, of the Order of White Friars near *Pontoise*.

\* *St. Bonaventure*, born in 1223. entered into the Order of *St. Francis* in 1245. when he was but two and twenty; he was chosen General of the Order in 1256. he died in the Council of *Lyons* in 1274. and was Canoniz'd in 1282. He had been a Bishop and a Cardinal: *St. Thomas* died the same Year.

The Order of *Carmelites* was introduced by *Almerick* Patriarch of *Antioch*, and the Apostolical Legate, who re-united in the same Body all the Hermites of Mount *Carmel*, with some others in 1270. The next Year it received the Rule of *St. Albert* the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*;

---

\* *Balnio-Regium*, vulgo *Bagnarea*, locus ille est, quem *Plinius* Novem pagos vocat, in finibus *Etruriae* oppidum ortu inclutum est *Bonaventurae* Ordinis Minorum, &c. Vid. *Sixtus Senensis*, lib. 4. *Bibliothec.*

lem; afterwards it was reduced to a better Posture; and then confirm'd by *Honorius* the III<sup>d</sup>, in 1216. and by *Honorius* the IV<sup>th</sup>, in 1285. This *Albert* the Carmelite was enroll'd in the number of the Saints, or the Blessed, by *Sixtus* the IV<sup>th</sup>, in 1476.

The Religious Order of the *Celestins*, instituted according to the Rule or Discipline of *St. Benet*, by *Peter* of Mount *Morron*, a little City of the Kingdom of *Naples*, was at first call'd the Order of *Peter* of *Morron*. But when he was made Pope by the Name of *Celestin* the V<sup>th</sup>, the Order took the Name of *Celestins* from the Name of that Pope, who died in 1296. on the 19<sup>th</sup> of *May*, and was placed in the number of Saints by *Clement* the V<sup>th</sup>, in 1313.

*Philip* the III<sup>d</sup>, surnamed the *Hardy*, and *Lion's Heart*, who had succeeded *St. Lewis*, who had twice defeated the Saracens before *Tunis*, who forced them to beg Peace of him, and who subdu'd the Kingdom of *Navarre*, died on the 6<sup>th</sup> day of *October*, in 1285. He had married two Wives, *Isabella* the Daughter of *James* the I<sup>st</sup>, King of *Arragon*, and of *Yolante* of *Hungary*. *Isabella* having passed through the Fair or Canal of *Messina* in her Return from *Africa*, and desiring to travel by Land as far as *Apulia*, because she was with Child; fell from her Horse, when she went over the River *Crati*, and was so disorder'd upon it, that she would be carried to *Cosenza*, where she died on the 22<sup>d</sup> of *January* in 1275. being four and twenty Years old. In the Supplement of the History of *William* Archbishop of *Tyre*, we are assured that she was drown'd in the Passage of that River. He had by her *Lewis*, who died by Poison in 1276; and *Peter de la Brosse*, who of *St. Lewis's* Barber was become *Philip's* Favourite, stir'd up an Accuser against *Mary* of *Brabant*, of whom I am going to speak. But that Accuser was at last hang'd; and *de la Brosse* who kept Correspondence with the King of *Castile*, had the same Fate. *Philip* had also by *Isabella*, *Philip* the IV<sup>th</sup>, surnamed the *Fair*, and *Charles* Earl of *Valois*, whose Posterity has been so great, that it has furnished *France* with near thirteen Kings. By *Mary* of *Brabant*, the Daughter of *Henry* the III<sup>d</sup>, Duke of *Brabant*, and of *Alice* of *Burgundy*,



*gundy*, he had *Lewis* Earl of *Evreux*, *Margaret* the Wife of *Edward* the 1st, King of *England*; and *Blanche* married in 1298. to *Rodolphus* Archduke of *Austria*, the Son of the Emperor *Albert* the 1st, and of *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Mainard* Duke of *Carinthia*, Earl of *Tirol* and of *Goritia*,

*In the Reign of Albert of Austria, of Henry the VIIth, of Lewis of Bavaria, of Charles the IVth, of Venceslaus, and of Rupert.*

*Raimond* Gothon of *Aquitain*, Archbishop of *Bordeaux*, chosen Pope on the 5th of *July*, in 1305. is *Clement* the Vth, the Author of the *Clementines*, who was crown'd at *Lyons* on the 11th of *November*, who removed the See to *Avignon*, where he and his Successors kept it seventy one Years, till the time of *Gregory* the XIth, a *Limosin*, who was the Son of *Peter* Earl of *Beaufort*.

*Haytho* of *Armenia*, the Author of the *Oriental History*, or the *History of the Tartars*, lived at that time: And most Writers affirm that this *Haytho* or *Antony* was born in *Cilicia*. There were already some Accounts of *Tartary* given by *Friar John du Plan Carpin*, a *Cordelier*, who was sent to the *Cham* by Pope *Innocent* the IVth, in 1256. beside that Relation of *William de Rubruquis*, dispatch'd away to the *Cham* by *Lewis* the IXth, in 1253. *Mark Paul*, or *Paul of Venice*, whose Travels we have in Print is somewhat of a fresher Date than those two, since he went into *Tartary* with his Father and Uncle till the Year 1272; and because he began not to compose his History till he return'd to *Venice*, in 1295. Some there are also of opinion that he wrote it when he was a Prisoner at *Genova*; and *Andrew Muller* may be consulted in the Edition which he has given us of this Author.

\* *John*, call'd *Duns*, because he was born in the Village of *Dunston*, in the County of *Northumberland*, died at

---

\* *Joh. Duns Thomæ Aquinatis æmulus acerrimus, seu potius primus et perpetuus ejus impugnator, natus in quadam villula Parochiæ de Emilton, vocata Dunston in Comitatu Northumbria. Vide Camdenum in Britan. p. 366.*

at Cologne, as *Trithemius* tells us, in 1308, four and thirty Years after *St. Thomas*. He was of the Order of the Minorites, or lesser Friars, who stil'd him *Doctor Subtilis*: And he ought not to be over-rul'd and determin'd against by the Opinions of *St. Thomas*, since he made use of the utmost Effort of his Wit to oppose them. Those School-men who are of the same Opinion with that Scotchman are call'd *Scotists*; and those who defend *St. Thomas*, are call'd *Thomists*.

*Philip* the IVth, surnam'd the Fair, and the Great, who had succeeded *Philip* the Hardy, died on the 30th of October, in 1314. in the 23d Year of his Reign, and the 48th of his Age. He had married *Jane* the Daughter and Universal Heiress of *Henry* King of Navarre, and had by her *Lewis* Hutin, or the Contentious, *Philip* the Long, *Charles* the Fair, and *Isabella* the Wife of *Edward* the III, King of England, of whom descended *Edward* the III, who after the death of the King's three Sons, pretended to have a Right to the Crown of France. It was upon the Importunity of *Philip* that *Lewis* the IXth was Canoniz'd by *Boniface* the VIIIth, in 1297.

On the 29th of June, in 1315. the sam'd *Raimond* Lully, a Native of *Majorca*, of the third Order of Saint Francis, suffer'd Martyrdom for the Christian Faith at *Bugia* a City of a Province of the same Name, within seven Miles of *Algiers*, upon which at this time it depends. Since he went thither to preach the Gospel, and seeing that he courageously confuted the Whimsies of *Mahomet*, the Barbarians seiz'd him, and after most inhuman Usage of him, condemn'd him to be ston'd without the Walls of the City.

*William* of Occam, which was the place of his Nativity, of the Order of the Franciscans, surnamed the Father of the Nominals, and the File of Wits, the Disciple of *John Duns Scotus*, maintain'd the Emperor *Lewis* of Bavaria's Cause against Pope *John* the XXII, or as some affirm, the XXIII, and was excommunicated for his Book. He went to find out that Emperor, and said to him, *Defend me only with your Sword, and I'll defend you with my Pen*. This was near as bold an Undertaking as that of *Nestorius*, who in an Address thus spoke to  
Thea-

*Theodosius* ; " Let me, Sir, have your Assistance in rooting up Heresy, and you shall have mine to Master the Persians.

*Lewis* the Xth, surnam'd *Hutin*, because he was a Man of mean Parts, or because he was Contentious, and made a great Noise in the World, died suddenly at *Vincennes* Wood, in 1316. He married *Margaret*, the Second Daughter of *Robert* the 11d, Duke of *Burgundy*; and two Years after *Clemence* the Daughter of *Charles Martel* King of *Hungary*, and of *Clemence* of *Habsburg*, *Robert* the King of *Sicily*'s Niece. She died on the 3d of *October*, in 1328. By *Margaret* he had *Jane* the Wife of *Philip* Count d' *Evreux*; and by *Clemence* he had *John* a Posthumous Son, who liv'd not a full Month.

*Bartholomew des Pres*, Doctor in Law, died, as some say, in 1319, at *Bologne*; *Dante* at *Ravenna* in 1321. and \* *Nicholas de Lyra*, so call'd, because he was of *Lier* in *Brabant*, begun in 1322. to write his Comments upon the Bible. He was born a Jew, and was afterwards a Franciscan. *Pere Simon* in his Criticisms upon the Old Testament has told us, That he had the Name of *Lyra* from *Lire*, which is a Borough in the Province of *Perche*; which if it be true, he must have better Memoirs than mine. 'Tis true also that others give him the Name of *Lyra* from a Town in *Normandy*, where he was born, in the Diocess of *Evreux*; an Account which might be made out by his Epitaph. After his Baptism he took the Franciscan Habit in the Monastery of *Verneuil*; he died, as some assure us, in 1349, or in the following Year; on the 23d of *October*, he was advanced to the chief Stations of his Order.

*Philip*, surnamed the Long, by reason of his great Stature, being Anointed and Crown'd on Twelf-day, in 1317, had married *Jane* the Daughter of *Othenin* Earl of

---

\* *Nicolaus natus Lira, bodie Lier, oppido Brabantiae, et Judeo Christianus factus, Hebraicarum literarum peritia, et Commentariis in Universam Sanctam Scripturam clarus, multa E. Solomone Isacide transtulit. Dictum de illo, Si Lyra non Lyraisset, totus mundus delirasset. Hosiander Epitom. Histor. Ecclesiast. Centur. 14. lib. 2.*

of Burgundy, by whom he had *Lewis* born in 1316; who died the same Year, and was buried in the Cordeliers Church in *Paris*. His Daughters were *Jane* married to *Eudes* the IVth, Duke of Burgundy; *Margaret* the Wife of *Lewis* Count of *Nevers*, and of *Retel*; and afterwards of *Flanders*; *Isabella* whose first Husband was *Guigue* the Dauphin of *Viennois*, and her second *John* Baron of *Faulcougney*, one of the chief Lords of *Franche Conte* in *Burgundy*. *Blanche* the fourth Daughter became a Nun at *Longchamp* near *Paris* in 1317. and died there in 1358. *Philip* the Long died the 13th of *January* in 1322.

*Charles* the Fair his Successor, died on the 1st of *February*, in 1328. when he was Four and Thirty, after a Reign of six Years and a Month. He had three Wives, *Blanche*, *Othenin*, the Count of Burgundy's Daughter, the Sister of *Jane*, the Wife of *Philip* the Long; *Mary* of *Luxemburg*, the Emperor *Henry* the VIIth Daughter; *Jane d'Evreux* the Daughter of *Lewis* Count d'Evreux, the Brother of *Philip* the Fair, her Uncle, and of *Margaret* of *Artois*. By *Jane*, he left *Blanche* a Posthumous Princess, who was married to *Philip* Duke of *Orleans*, the younger Brother of King *Philip de Valois*, the Son of *Charles* Count of *Valois*, and of *Margaret* of *Sicily* his first Wife.

*Philip de Valois*, surnam'd the *Fortunate*, crown'd at *Reims* with the Queen his first Wife, in 1329, died on the 22d day of *August*, in 1350, being the fiftieth Year of his Age, and the twenty first of his Reign. He had two Wives, *Jane* the Daughter of *Robert* the IIId, Duke of *Burgundy*, and of *Agnes* the Daughter of King *Lewis* the Saint; *Blanche*, *Philip* the IIIId, the King of *Navarre's* Daughter, and of Queen *Jane* King *Lewis* *Huttin's* Daughter. By *Jane* he had *Lewis*, who died fifteen Days after his Birth; *John*, who died in 1353; *Philip* Duke of *Orleans*, Count of *Valois*; *Mary* the Wife of *John* of *Brabant*, Duke of *Limbourg*, who was the Son of *John* the IIIId, Duke of *Brabant*, and of *Mary de Evreux*. *Philip* the *Fortunate* had by Queen *Blanche* his second Wife, *Jane* who was betroth'd to *John* of *Aragon*, Duke of *Girone*, the eldest Son of *Peter* the IIIId, and who died at *Beziers*, in 1371, as he was going into *Spain*. 'Twas



'Twas in 1344, in the Reign of *Philip*, that the first Tax upon Salt was laid ; and King *Edward* for that Reason called him the *Author of the Salique Law*.

It was decreed in *Catalonia*, in 1351. on the 25th of *December*, as *Tarasus* has observed in his *Chronicle of Spain*, " That the Christians should no longer date their " *Æra* from the *Calends*, nor from the *Incarnation* of " our Saviour, but from his *Nativity*. And 'tis an Observation highly necessary for the Curious who deal in old Authors.

*Clement* the VIth, the Son of *William Roger*, Lord of *Roxez*, in the Territory of *Malemont*, died on the 6th of *December*, in 1352. He had been Abbot of *Fecan*, Bishop of *Arras*, Archbishop of *Roan*, and Archbishop of *Sens*. 'Twas his Will and Pleasure that the Holy Jubilee should be celebrated every fiftieth Year ; and some tell us, that it was he who gave leave to the Most Christian Kings to communicate in both kinds. Whilst he sat on the Papal Throne, there was a dreadful Plague in the Year 1348. It went, as *Villanius* says, from the *Higher Asia*, and the Kingdom of *Catay* into the rest of *Asia*, into *Egypt*, *Africa*, and *Greece* ; into *Italy*, *France*, and *Spain* ; into *England*, *Germany*, and *Poland*, and into all the Countries of the North. *Villanius* adds, that sixty thousand Persons died of this Plague in *Florence* ; and according to the Account of *St. Antonine*, there were near a hundred thousand. It came originally from a Body of Fire which issued out of Heaven, or perhaps out of the Earth, which spread it self to an extraordinary Bigness ; and which passing through diverse Places destroyed the Rocks, Trees, Houses, Living-creatures, and all Things whatever that stood in its way. After that there appeared little Creatures full of Eyes and Tails, with an infinite number of Worms, little Serpents and other Insects, which fell from the Heaven to the Earth ; the Rottenness and Stench of which infected the Air, the Fruits, and other Things with which Men were ordinarily and usually Nourished.

*Innocent* the VIth a *Limosin*, was *Clement* the VIth's Successor. This is the very time in which *Nicephorus Gregoras* lived, who had begun his History of a Hundred

dred Forty five Years, where Nicetas made an end of his; This was the time of \* *Petrarch*, *Boccace*, and of the famous Lawyers *Cinus*, *Baldus of Perusia*, *John Andrew of Bologna*, and *Aubri of Bergamo*, in *Lombardy*.

*John*, the Fiftieth King of *France*, died on the 8th of *April*, in 1364, in the 52d Year of his Age, and the 23d of his Reign. Being informed that *Edward Prince of Wales*, with Twelve Thousand Men, had Plunder'd *Querci*, *Auvergne*, *Limosin* and *Berry*; and that he march'd on to serve *Anjou*, *Touraine*, and *Poitou* in the same manner, he made haste to prevent him, and forc'd him indeed to withdraw. He came up to him within two Leagues of *Poitiers*, near the Abby of *Nouaille*, where *Edward* the Son of *Edward* the III<sup>d</sup>, was intrenched among Vines and thick Hedges. Instead of starving him in that place, which he might have done in Two or Three Days, he set upon him there against all Rules of good Conduct, and was made Prisoner with *Philip* his Son; above Six Thousand Frenchmen being killed in the Fight, among whom there were Eight Hundred Gentlemen. There were found too, in the Number of the Dead, the Duke of *Bourbon*, the Count of *Ponthieu* his Brother, and Fifty or Sixty Lords of Quality. The King was convey'd to *Bordeaux* with *Philip* his Son, Duke of *Touraine*, the Counts of *Nassau*, and of *Sarbruck*, with *Tancarville*, and his Son, and *John* of *Artois*, Count of *Eu*. From *Bordeaux*, where he spent the Winter, he was brought to *England*, and there he was treated with the respect due to his Character and Merit. After three Years and a Month he was set at Liberty, on condition that he should give to the English an absolute Sovereignty in *Poitou*, *Saintonge*, *Roche*, the

---

\* *Petrarcha triplici corona decoratus, laurea, bederacea, & myrtina. Francisc. Swertius notis ad Magium de Tintinabulis. Baldus Joh. Andr. juris fontem & tubam appellavit, &c. Scripsit, inter alia, in quinq; libros Decretalium, quod opus Novellæ inscripsit.*

*Albericus Rosatus scripsit Dictionarium Juris, & in leges Casueas. Vid. Forsterum.*

the Country of *Aunis, Angoumois, Limosin, Querci, Agennois, Bigorre, Rouerge, Calais*, the Counties of *Oyen, of Guines*, and of *Ponthieu*; and that he should pay three Millions of Crowns in Gold for his Ransome. In the Year 1331, he married, as *Paradin*, and *St. Marthe* say, *Bonne* the Daughter of *John of Luxemburg*, King of *Bohemia*, and of his Wife *Elizabeth*; and in 1349, *Jane* the Daughter of *William* Count of *Auvergne*, and of *Bologne*, and of *Margaret d'Evreux*, the Widow of *Philip* Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*. By *Bonne* his first Queen he had *Charles* who was King; *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, and Count of *Maine*, *John* Duke of *Berry*, and of *Auvergne*, and Count of *Poitou*; *Philip* Duke of *Touraine*, and after Duke of *Burgundy*: His Daughters were *Jane* Queen of *Navarre*, the Wife of *Charles* the II<sup>d</sup>; *Mary* the Wife of *Robert* the eldest Son of *Robert* Earl, and after Duke of *Bar*; *Isabella* married to *Galeas* Visconti, the first Duke of *Milan*; and *Margaret* who was a Nun at *Poissy*. He had two Daughters by the Second Wife, who both died very Young.

*Urban* the V<sup>th</sup> died in 1370, he succeeded *Innocent* the VI<sup>th</sup>, who died on the 12<sup>th</sup> of *September*, in 1362.

*Francis Petrarch* was born in 1304, was crown'd with *Laurel* in the *Capitol* for his *Eloquence*, in 1351, and died in 1374.

*John Boccace* of *Florence*, both a *Poet*, *Philosopher*, and *Astronomer* died the next Year, being *Threescore* and *Two*: and *Gregory* the XI<sup>th</sup> of *Malemont* in *Limosin*, the Count of *Beaufort* in *Valee*, translated the See from *Avignon* to *Rome*, in 1377. *Clement* the VI<sup>th</sup> his Uncle had made him *Cardinal* when he was but *Seventeen*.

*Charles* the V<sup>th</sup>, surnamed the *Wise* and *Eloquent* died the 16<sup>th</sup> of *September*, in 1380, the *Forty Fourth* Year of his *Life*, having reigned *seventeen* *Years*, and *Six* *Months*. In 1349, he married *Jane* the Daughter of *Peter* the I<sup>st</sup>, Duke of *Bourbon*, and of *Isabella* and *Valois*. He had by her *Charles* the VI<sup>th</sup> who succeeded him; *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, from whom proceeded the *Branches* of *Orleans*, and of *Angoulesme*, from which *Lewis* is the XII<sup>th</sup>, and *Francis* the I<sup>st</sup> descended. His Daughters *Jane*, *Bonne*, *Jane*, *Mary*, *Isabella*, and *Catharine*, all

all died Young. In his Wars with *Edward* the III<sup>d</sup> King of *England*, and *Charles* King of *Navarre*, he found an Expedient to get *Bertrand du Guesclin* into his Service, whom for his extraordinary Actions he made Constable on the 2<sup>d</sup> of *October*, in 1370, and who died of a Fever in 1380, on the 13<sup>th</sup> Day of *July*. *Charles* was the first that bore the Title of *Dauphin* of *Viennois*, fancy'd by the Eldest Sons of our Sovereigns since the Resignation of it made by *Humbert* or *Imbert*, to their behoof, in the Reign of *Philip* of *Valois*; and here is the History of it in short. In the Bloody Battle of *Creci*, which *Edward* the III<sup>d</sup> won against *Philip*, on the 26<sup>th</sup> of *August*, in 1346, there were more than Thirty Thousand Men slain; among others *Charles* Count of *Alencon*, *Philip's* Brother; *Charles* Count of *Blois* his Nephew; *Charles* of *Luxemburg* King of *Bohemia*; *Raoul* Duke of *Lorraine*; *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*; *James* the Son of *Imbert* *Dauphin* of *Viennois*; the Counts of *Harcourt* and of *Sancerre*, with Fifteen Hundred Persons of Quality. *Humbert*, who after that lost his other Son, being but Two or Three Years old, and being continually plagu'd by Count *Amideu* the VI<sup>th</sup>, he was weary of the World, and resolv'd to wear out the rest of his Life in a Cloyster. After this Resolution, which was an effectual one, (for he became a *Jacobin* or *Dominican*) he resign'd *Dauphinee* to *Philip*, who gave him Forty Thousand Crowns in Gold; and Ten Thousand Florins as a yearly Rent, provided that the first Sons and Heirs of *France* might assume the Title of *Dauphin* of *Viennois*; that the Arms of *Dauphinee* might be quarter'd with those of *France*; and in his Will he left Order that *Charles* should be the first that should be call'd *Dauphin*.

Some think that the use of Fire-Arms was discover'd in 1380, by *Berthaud* or *Bertholdus* the Black, a German Monk, and a celebrated Chimist, who having Hammer'd Steel near a Mortar in which he had beaten to Poulder Sulphur and Salt-peter, and cover'd it with a Stone by mere chance, struck a Spark into that Mortar, where the Poulder fir'd, and blew it up with Force and Violence. They add that a while after he bethought himself, and contriv'd some little Iron Canons, which



he charg'd with that Poudre, that he might shew to others the speedy Operation of it, and that then he taught the Venetians the use of it in their War against the Genoesse. Some German Chronologers mightily abuse Polydor Virgil's Authority, quoring that Passage of his, *They say that a certain Man call'd Berthold, &c.* because those words importing no more than hear-say, are much of the same weight with those of *Platina* concerning the *She-Pope Joan*. *Funger* makes it appear that the Name of him is not yet known, who was the first Author of that Invention, which *Polydore* ascribes to some Devil; and that is just all one as to say nothing. *Father Riccioli* in one of his Chronological Tables will have it that that *Bertholdus* found not out the use of Fire-Arms till 1390, in which Computation he differs from the Germans Ten Years. *Haithon* an Armenian who liv'd in 1305, as one may see in the 46th Chapter of his History, observes in the first Chapter of his Book that the People of *Catay* made use of some certain Arms, which were never seen elsewhere. *Andrew Muller* in his Geographical, and Historical View of *Catay*, says that *Mercator*, in his great Atlas, and in the Description of the Kingdom of *China*, is positive that the use of these Arms is of so long a Date among the *Chinese*, that they are Ignorant who was the first Inventer of them. He adds, *The Venetians, if I mistake not, were the first that made use of 'em against the Genoesse, though no one can deny that they were in use a long time before in China.* Indeed the *Chinese* had that Invention from the People of *Pegu*, as these had from the Inhabitants of *Asem*. (a) *Golnitz* in writing his Abridgment of Geography, where he says, *The first Invention of Printing and Great Guns, for which the Germans have been us'd to value our selves, is owing to the Chinese, made himself sufficiently Merry with his own Country-men, and others who have boldly asserted that Bertholdus the Black had invented Gun-powder, in 1380, or 1390.* By that he condemns like-

wife

(a) On peut voir Tavernier dans la 2 partie de ses Voyages au Chap. 17. du livre troisieme.

(b) Z  
B. Goth.  
ab Alexa

wife those who have maintained that in 1440, Printing was invented by *John of Guttenberg* at *Strasburg*, from whence it was brought to *Naples* by *John Rufingher*; some time after to *Rome*, by *Ulric Han Alleman*. The Fathers *Martini*, *Trigault*, *Semedo*, differ in Opinion from these Men; and I know few Men of Learning who are not satisfied that we have these two things Originally from the *Chinese*, and the use also of the Com-pafs. We are beholden to them likewise for the Secrets of breeding (b) *Silk-worms*, and of working the *Silk* which they make: and 'twas in *Justinian's* Reign that two Greek Monks brought to *Constantinople* the Eggs of those Worms, which they had taken in *Catay*. Before a Pound of *Silk* was worth a Pound of Gold: and 'tis the Observation of *Lampridius* and *Spartian* that *Heliogabalus* was the first who made use of Garments of pure *Silk*, which was an Instance of most exorbitant Extravagance in him, because other Emperors thought it sufficient to have their Robes edg'd with it.

*Wiclif* an Englishman who had begun to publish his Heresies in the Year 1370, died in 1387: and One and Forty Years after his Body being taken out of the place, where it was laid, was burnt.

Some say that the University of *Heidleberg* was founded in 1387; others, that it had been settled in 1345, by *Robert*, or *Rupert* the Ild, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*.

*Saint Briget*, or *Brigide* of *Sueden*, being seventy Years old, who died at *Rome*, in 1373, on the 23d of *July*, was Canoniz'd by *Boniface* the IXth, on the 7th of *October*, in 1391; and in 1419 her Canonization was confirmed by *Martin* the Vth.

The University of *Angers* was Founded, as *Francis Belleforest* tells us, with great Privileges in 1398; and that of *Wirtsburg*, in 1403. This City formerly belonging to the Empire, is now under her Bishop who is Duke of *Franconia*, and the University there is in small esteem.

D d 2

In

(b) *Zonaras* tomo 4 *Hist. in Justin. vita Procop. lib. 2.*  
*B. Goth. Theophanes apud Photium. C. D. 64. p. 79. Alexander*  
*ab Alexandro Genial. Dier. lib. 4. c. 9.*

In 1407, *Lewis Duke of Orleans*, the only Brother of *Charles the VIth*, and the Husband of *Valentina* the Daughter of *John Galeas Duke of Milan*, was Murder'd in the Night at *Paris* by the Intrigue of his Cousin *John Duke of Burgundy*, who could not bear with the Duke of *Orleans* in the Regency. *Raoul of Orguetonville* a Norman Gentleman was pitch'd upon for this horrid Execution, and he the more easily undertook it, because *Lewis* had turn'd him out of an Office he had under the King. But in 1419 *Tannegay of Chatel*, assisted with some others, reveng'd his Death in the Castle of *Montereau* in *Brie*, and kill'd *John*, when he was kneeling to the *Dauphin*, who then was but seventeen Years Old.

*In the Reign of Sigismond, of Albert, of Frederick, the IIIrd, and of Maximilian the IVth.*

*Francis Zabarella* Professor in Law of the University in *Padua*, afterwards Archbishop of *Florence*, was promoted to be a Cardinal by *John the XXIII*, on the Sixteenth of *June*, in 1411.

*Bartholomew Salicet* a profound Lawyer, who by his Advice and Requests prevail'd with *Albert of Est Marquess of Ferrara*, to fix a School in that City, died at *Bologna* the 18th of *December*, in 1412. The School was settled at *Ferrara* accordingly, in 1398.

*John Husse* ( who had his Name from the little Borough of *Husseniz* in *Bobemia*, where he was born) the Disciple and Follower of *John Wiclif*, after Condemnation pass'd upon him for his Heresies in the Council of *Constance*, was burnt in 1415: and *Emanuel Chrysoloras*, a Gentleman of a noble Family, an excellent Latinist, and a very good Grecian, died in the same City of *Constance*, the 15th of *April* in the same Year.

*Ferome* of *Prague*, who was of *John Husse's* Opinion, was like him too condemned to the Fire; and *Zabarella* died at *Constance* on the 6th of *November*, in 1417.

In 1418, the *Hussites* rais'd horrible Tumults in *Bobemia*. They demanded the Communion in both kinds, and they so positively asserted that it ought to be grant-

ed them, that nothing could shake them, or make 'em Wavering. They pull'd down to the Ground all the Churches and Monasteries, they Massacred all the Monks and Priests; and in their Arms they took the *Chalices*, from which they were called *Calistins*. Though all *Germany*, and the West opposed them, they never gave place to their Enemies, whom they often put to Flight or Routed; and they could not be brought to Subjection till 1630. After that time the way of Treatment of them, which was thought most proper, prov'd only an Occasion of their Revolts: and the present Wars are nothing else but the Consequence of it. In fine, not to put it to the Question whether the Sentence pronounc'd against *John Huss*, and *Ferome* of *Prague* were over-hasty: I must observe in this place, that neither of them embrac'd all the Opinions of *Wiclif*, notwithstanding the great Veneration they had for him; and that they believ'd *Transubstantiation* in the Sacrament of the Eucharist in the very same manner the Church of *Rome* believes it. They who have asserted the contrary, have not been very well acquainted with their Story, or if they have, they were guilty of Falseness.

*Charles* the VIth died the 21st of *October*, in 1422, in the 52d Year of his Age, after a Reign of Two and Forty Years, and Five and Thirty Days. He was Married to *Isabella* the Daughter of *Stephen* Duke of *Bavaria*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*: and he had by her Six Children, of which the Three eldest were short-liv'd; *Lewis* and *John* who were poison'd, and *Charles* his Successor. As this King was marching into *Britany* to force the Duke to deliver up *Peter* of *Craon* who shelter'd himself in his Country, after he had assassinated his Constable *de Clisson* who however died not of his Wounds, he fell into a Phrensy; and some add this Circumstance, that as he was going out of *Mans*, and passing into a Wood, there stept out of it a huge Black Man, who took hold of the Bridle of his Horse, crying out to him and saying, *Stop, O King! Whither will you go? you are betrayed.* This whether Fancy or Vision, exceedingly discompos'd him: and ever after at certain



times his Distraction was Remarkable. In his Reign *Charles the IIId*, King of *Navarre* surnamed the *Bad*, the Son of *Philip of Evreux*, and of the *Jane* the Daughter *Lewis the Contentious*, got himself wrapp'd up in Cloth steep'd in Spirit of Wine, with Sulphur in it, by the Advice of his Physicians, who made use of that as a Remedy to Revive and Strengthen his natural Heat, which was very much weaken'd by his loose and irregular Practices. When he was sown up in the Cloth, the Surgeon desiring to cut the last Thread of the Seam, with a Candle accidentally put near it, so fired the Cloth that the Fire could not be extinguished. He Languish'd three Days, being in dreadful Torment, and died of it the 1st of *January*, in 1387. In the Year 1425, the University of *Louvain* was founded on the tenth of *September*, by the Preservation of *Martin* the Vth; and Pope *Eugenius* permitted Philosophy to be taught there.

The \* very same Year *Peter d' Ailly* of *Compiègne*, a Town upon the *Oise*, died being 85 Years old. He was a Doctor in 1380, Chancellor of the University, Almoner and Confessor to *Charles* the VIth, in 1389; Treasurer of the Holy Chappel of *Paris*, in 1394; the next Year Bishop of *Puy in Velay*; Bishop of *Cambray* in 1396, Cardinal under the Title of *Saint Chrysogone* by *John* the XXIIId, in 1411. *John de Gerson*, and *Nicholas de Clemangis*, of the Village of *Champagne* may surely be numbered among his chief Disciples, both of 'em being Men of extraordinary Worth.

The Order of the *Golden Fleece* was instituted in 1429, by *Philip* the IIIId Duke of *Burgundy*, who in the Year 1411, had married *Michelle* the Daughter of *Charles* the VIth; who died in 1422. He married in 1424, *Bonne* of *Artois*, the Daughter of *Philip* of *Artois*, Earl of *Eu*, and of *Mary* of *Berrey*. She was the Widow of *Philip* of *Burgundy*, Count of *Nevers* and of *Retel*. He had no Children by these Two Wives. The Third whom he married in 1429, was *Isabella* the Daughter of *John* the  
Ist

---

\* *Joh. Launojus Hister. Naverræ Gymnasii Parisiensis*, p. 137, & 467.

1st King of *Portugal*, the natural Son of *Don Pedro* King of *Portugal*, and of *Teresa Gallega*. She was brought to *Flanders* by her Brother *Henry* of *Portugal*, Duke of *Viseo*: and it was upon the very day of her Wedding at *Bruges*, that *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy* created the Order of the Golden Fleece.

Some say that he appointed that Order as a Memorial of the great Revenue he got out of the Wool of the Low-Countries; others, that he did it in Remembrance of *Jason*, who Gloriously won the *Golden Fleece*; or of *Gideon*, who defeated a prodigious Number of Midianites with only Three Hundred Men. The Good Duke *Philip*, in all Probability, had neither *Flanders* nor the *Old Testament*, nor the Fable of the *Golden Fleece* in his Thoughts; since the History of that time takes notice that he was inclinable to frequent Alterations, or to invent new Fancies, and to change them. This then was the Occasion of his Order, which one may see in *Favin's* Theater of Honor and Knighthood, who has related the matter drily, and without much Ornament. *Philip* by the *Burgundians*, surnamed the Good, being in love with a most beautiful Lady, discover'd, upon the Dressing-Cloth of that not over-cautious Woman, some Light-colour'd Hair of I know not what Pretender, which made his Attendants Laugh. The Duke, who was in earnest touch'd with the Accident, to give Countenance to that Ladies Carelessness, swore an Oath, that whosoever had Laugh'd at that Flaxen Hair, should not have the Honour to wear a Collar of the *Golden Fleece*, which he design'd to Confer and Distribute for the sake of that beautiful Person. And accordingly, he was the Founder and Sovereign of that so noble Order in the Year Fourteen Hundred Twenty Nine, and he held the first Chapter for it at *Lisle* in *St. Peter's* Church, in 1431; the second at *Bruges*, in 1432, in the Church of *St. Donas*; the third at *Dijon*, in 1433. In the Fourth, and in the Fifth, there was not one Knight made. The Sixth was kept at *St. Omer*, in 1440, where among others these Knights were created, *John* Duke of *Little-Britain*, who died at his House call'd *de la Touche*, near *Nants*, on the 28th of *August*, in 1442; *John* Duke of

*Alencon* who died in 1472; *Matthew de Foix* Count of *Cominge*, who died in 1456. The seventh Chapter was held at *Gaunt* in 1445; and the Duke of *Burgundy* there Knighted *Alphonfus* King of *Arragon*, who died when he was threeſcore and four, on the 28th of *July* in 1458; *John* of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Eſtampes*, and firſt Duke of *Nevers*; *John* of *Coimbre*, Prince of *Antioch*, Regent of the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, who died in 1457. The tenth Chapter was held at *St. Omer*, in *St. Bertin's* Church in 1461. where *Don John* King of *Arragon* and of *Navarre*, the ſecond of that Name, was admitted, who died in the eighty third Year of his Age, in the City of *Barcelona* in 1479.

The Order of *The Knights of the Garter* had almoſt the ſame Riſe in 1347. *Edward* the III<sup>d</sup>, the Husband of *Philippa* the Daughter of *William* Earl of *Hanault* being one Day with *Alice* of *Salisbury*, whom he had a criminal Paſſion for, took up a blue ſilk Garter which fell upon her Patin, and in paying her that Complement he liſted up a ſmall part of her Shift, which proved an occaſion of Mirth to all that ſaw the Action. The Lady being Vertuous, reproved *Edward* for it, who having ſaid in his own Vindication, \* *Honi ſoit Qui mal y penſe*, Shame be to him that thinks harm in it; added, that ſuch a one as had laugh'd at the Garter ſhould look upon it as an honour to wear one like it. That *Alice* of *Salisbury* was not unworthy of a King's Love, if that be true which *Froiffard* ſays of her: " That he was fully perſuaded that he had never ſeen ſo noble, ſo brisk, nor ſo beautiful a Lady, and that he thought there was not in the World one ſo amable as ſhe was.

*John* of *Troſneau*, ſurnamed *Ziſke*, or the *One-ey'd*, a General of the *Huſſites*, died of the *Plague* in 1424. and left this Injunction, as ſome ſay, that he ſhould be ſlea'd, when dead, and that a Drum ſhould be made of his Skin, upon the beat of which, as he believed, the Enemies when they ſhould hear it, would always fly.

In

---

\* *Honrir C'eſt deſhonorer.*

In 1429. *John Charlier*, surnamed *Gerson*, from a Borough of that Name under the Jurisdiction of *Reims*, died at *Lyons*, being sixty six Years old; and 'tis in that time those famous Men lived, *Mapes Veggio* of *Lodi*, Pope *Martin* the Vth's Datary, and Canon of the Church of *St. John* of *Lateran*, who might have well forborn to add a thirteenth Book to *Virgil's Eneid*; *Eneas Sylvius*, *Blondus Flavius*, (a) *Leonardus Bruni*, surnamed *Aretin* or of *Arezzo* in *Tuscany*, *Laurentius Valla*, *Nicolaus Cusanus*, so call'd from the little Village of *Cusa* in the Diocess of *Treves*, where he was born. Some say that he was a Native of *Tergoetz*, which is in the Isle of *Beveland*.

The Council of *Florence* was open in 1439. and they who desire to know the History of it may consult that written by *Sylvester Syropulus*, translated by *Robert Greighton*, and *Leo Allatius's* Observations upon that Gentleman, the King of *England's* Chaplain. *Joseph*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, died at *Florence* during the Session of that Council. *Bessarion*, a Native of *Trebizonde*, Archbishop of *Nice*, who also was Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and *Isidorus* of *Salonichi* were there made Cardinals. *Amedeus* Duke of *Savoy* was there chosen Pope, by the Name of *Felix* the Vth. of whom I shall here say something. *Amedeus* the VIIIth, at the Age of fifty six, lost his Wife *Margaret*, the eldest Daughter of *Philip* the Hardy, King of *France* and Duke of *Burgundy*; and being resolved to leave the World, he resign'd his Government to his Son *Charles*, Count of *Geneva*, who had married *Anne* the only Daughter of *John* of *Lusignan*, King of *Jerusalem* and of *Cyprus*. He retired to *Ripaille*, a solitary Place belonging to the Priory of the Order of *St. Maurice*, which his Predecessors had founded, and which he caus'd to be re-built within half a League of the City of *Tounon*, upon the Lake of *Geneva*. There he took the Habit of a Hermite of *St. Maurice's* Order, that is to say, as *Monstrelet* describes it, " A gray Gown, a long  
" Mantle,

---

(a) De Leonardo Bruno Aretino, *Aeneas Sylvius*, Epist. 51. *Jacob. Philipp. Bergom. Chronicor. Supplemento ad Ann. M. CCCC. XVI. Paulus Jovius in Elogio, c. 9. &c.*



" Mantle, and a gray Hood, a short Tippet a foot long  
 " or thereabouts, and a red Cap; a Robe girt with a  
 " gold-coloured Girdle, and over the Mantle a Cross of  
 " Gold, like that worn by the Emperors of Germany.  
 For the Attendance of his own Person, and for the Service of some Noblemen who retired with him, he kept twenty of his Servants, who brought not before him Roots and pure Fountain-water, the Meat and Drink of Hermits, but choice Meats and delicious Wines. 'Tis from the Life of that Duke, who was a Hermite, that we borrow our old Expression, *faire ripailles*, i. e. to give generous Entertainment, and good Fire. He was Pope nine Years, six Months, and seven Days. But since the Christian Princes were united to suppress the Hydra of the twenty third Schism, he resign'd the Popedom to Nicholas the Vth, who was formally chosen in 1447. He was contented with the Title of Cardinal of *Sabinia*, and a Legantine Power in *Savoy* for Term of Life; but covenanted however that the Cardinals which he had made should be preserved and continued in their Character. He died, being sixty nine Years old, in 1452.

The Dutch Historians tell us that *Printing* was found out at *Harlem* by *Laurence Coster* and *Thomas Pieterfen*, in 1440; but that their Agent *John Faustus*, who betray'd them, carried away their Letters to *Amsterdam*, then to *Cologne*, and afterwards to *Mayence*, where one *John Guttemburg* a Gentleman, to whom some ascribe this Invention, discovered a way to increase and improve it; I have already hinted that we are oblig'd to the *Chinese* for it: And 'tis amazing to consider that the *Romans* who had the use of Seals, had not the Art of Printing.

In 1441. the *Festival of the Blessed Virgin's Visitation* was first appointed: And the other of *her Conception* was confirmed in the Council of *Basil* which broke up in 1442.

Pope *Eugenius* the IVth, who had been summon'd and accus'd in the Council of *Basil*, and depos'd from the Papal Dignity in 1439. died in 1447. He was a *Venetian*, of the Family of the *Gondolmieri*,

In

In 1448. *Nicolaus Cusanus* who was esteem'd as a Prodigy for his Skill in polite Learning, was made Cardinal on the 20th of *December*. *Nicolas* the Vth died in 1405. on the 24th day of *March*; and the next Year *John Huniades* call'd *Corvin* from a Village in *Transilvania* of the same Name, which was the place of his Nativity, and part of his Father's Estate, died, as *Bonfinius* tells us, on the 11th day of *August*; or as some other Authors will have it on the 10th of *September*. Before his death he would by no means have the Holy Sacrament brought to his Palace; and as ill as he was with the Wounds which he had received, he was carried to Church, where after his Confession, he communicated, and gave up the Ghost in the Arms of the Priests, who held him up by reason of his Weakness. His Name was so dreadful to the Infidels, that when the Children cried, their Fathers threatned them with the coming of *Huniades*, as they are elsewhere kept in awe by a *Wolf*; and there was no readier Expedient to make them quiet.

*Ulrick* Count of *Cilley*, the chief Man in the whole Kingdom, except *Ladislaus*, a posthumous and profess'd Enemy to *John Huniades*, having drawn his Sword against *Uladislaus*, and *Matthias* the Son of that same *Huniades* in 1457, was kill'd by the former; whom *Ladislaus*, though he ow'd his Crown to their Father, beheaded at *Buda* for that Action. *Ladislaus* died the same Year: And *Matthias Corvin*, who was closely confin'd to a Prison, was not taken out thence but to be brought upon the Throne. That happy Turn puts me in mind of the like Fortune of a Prince of *Mauritania*, who after he had been long detained a Prisoner at *Salobrena*, was desirous one day to try, whether Fortune, which had so in all Instances thwarted him, would once declare her self in his Favour. Being big with this Meditation he plays a Game at Chess; and he had no sooner begun, but an Express came to him to tell him that he must be put to death. The Prince not being surpriz'd at his Tidings, demands only two Hours to prepare himself for it; and whatever he could say, the Messenger only granted him time enough to end his Game which he had just begun. The Prince plays on, and  
so

so happily too, that before his Game was up, he saw another Courier come, who not only draws him from his Play and his Prison, but conducts him by the Order of the People of *Grenada*, who waited for him, and gave him the Crown vacant by the death of the King his Brother.

*Callistus* the III<sup>d</sup>, who was *Alphonfus* of *Borgia* of *Valence*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of the same Name, being chosen in 1455, died on the 6<sup>th</sup> of *August* in 1458. and *Aeneas Sylvius*, a Native of *Sienna* was chosen Pope, who was call'd *Pius* the II<sup>d</sup>, and who in 1460. erected the University of *Bale*. That too of *Fribourg* in *Brisgau* was founded almost at the same time by *Albert* of *Austria*.

*Charles* the VII<sup>th</sup> was so fully persuaded that there was a design against his Life to take it away by Poison, that being already much out of order he abstained from all manner of Food for seven days ; which so clos'd up his Stomach and Guts, that there was no Passage for the Nourishment which his Attendants endeavour'd to make him take.

So one may say that he suffer'd himself to be starved for fear of being poison'd. He reigned eight and thirty Years, eight Months, and three and twenty Days, and died in 1461. He had married *Mary* the Daughter of *Lewis* the II<sup>d</sup>, Duke of *Anjou*, King of *Jerusalem* and *Cyprus*, and of *Yolante* of *Aragon*. And that *Mary* who was born at *Saumur* in *Anjou* on the 14<sup>th</sup> of *October* in 1404. died in 1463. By whom *Charles* had *Lewis* the XI<sup>th</sup>, *Philip* born at *Chinon* the 4<sup>th</sup> of *January* in 1436. and dead in the beginning of *June* the same Year ; *James* who died at *Tours* in 1437. *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, and after Duke of *Normandy* and *Guienne*. His Daughters were *Radegonda* who died young, and who had been betrothed to *Sigismond* the eldest Son of *Frederick* the V<sup>th</sup>, Duke of *Austria* ; *Yoland*, who was married to *Amedeus* the VIII<sup>th</sup>, surnamed the *Vertuous*, the Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Savoy* ; *Catharine* married to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* ; *Jane* to *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, the second of that Name, Constable of *France* ; *Magdalene* to *Gaston de Foix*, Prince of *Vienna*, the eldest Son of *Gaston* the IV<sup>th</sup>, and of *Leonora* of *Aragon*, the Heiress of the Kingdom

Kingdom of *Navarre*. From this Marriage descended *Phebus de Foix* King of *Navarre*, *Catharine* Queen of *Navarre*, Countess of *Foix*, and Princess of *Bearn*, who after the death of her Brother *Phebus*, brought that Estate by Marriage to King *John* of *Albret*. *Jane* and *Mary* Twin-sisters, and the last legitimate Daughters of *Charles* the VIIth, died young. The natural Daughters of that King were *Charlotte* and *Mary*; the first, the Wife of *James* Lord of *Bresse*, Count of *Maulevrier*, the Great Seneschal of *Normandy*, the Son of *Peter* of *Bresse*, slain at the Battle of *Montlebery*, and of *Jane* Lady of *Bec Crispin* and of *Mauny*. *Olivier de Coitivy* Lord of *Taillebourg*, and Seneschal of *Guienne*, the Brother of *Pre-gent de Coitivy*, Admiral of *France*, made *Mary* his Wife. *Charles* was surnamed the *Victorious*, because he got many Victories; because he recovered *Normandy* and *Guienne*, and reduced the English to so great Extremity that they had nothing more left in their Possession besides the City of *Calais*, with the Earldom of *Guines*. He appointed and created the Parliament of *Grenoble*; he design'd another at *Bourdeaux* for *Guienne*, erected the Court of Aids of *Languedoc*, which *Lewis* the XIth his Son and Successor settled at *Montpellier*; and was the first of all our Kings, who made a League with the *Suitzers* by a Treaty in 1453. confirmed after by *Lewis* the XIth. He was also surnamed the *Happy*; but the death of *Agnes Sorel* of *Touraine*, his dear Mistress who was poison'd; the secret and continual Intrigues of the Duke of *Alencon* against him; the Retreat of the Dauphin to the Duke of *Burgundy*, and his open contempt of his Commands; the Accounts of Conspiracies against his Life, made it a very grievous Burden to him. 'Twas in the Year 1429. about the end of *February* that *Baudricourt*, Governor of the *Vaucouleurs* in *Champagne*, sent to him *Joan* of the Village of *Dantemy*, upon the *Meuse*, the Daughter of *James d'Arc*, and of *Isabella Gautier*, who had been educated in the Country. She declared that she had her Commission from God to relieve the City of *Orleans*, which the Earl of *Salisbury* had besieged from the 12th of *October* in 1428. And indeed she accordingly supply'd it with Provisions; and being enter'd there her self, she fought  
so



so fortunately that the English were forced to raise the Siege on the 12th of May in 1429. The King who had signal Service done him by that Maid upon other Occasions, confer'd Honours upon her, her Father, upon her three Brothers, and their Daughters Children also; he changed their Name of *Arc* into that of *Lys*, and gave them for Arms, a *Shield Azure with a Sword in Pale, Gard and Pomel Or, betwixt two Flowers de Lys, with a Crown of the same upon the Point.*

In 1430. on the 24th of May, she was taken in the Siege of *Compiègne*, as she retreated from a Sally, when *William de Flavy*, Governor of the Place, either through Envy or Imprudence, had barred the Gate against her. A Gentleman of *Picardy*, who took her, sold her to one of the Generals of her Enemies, who sold her again to the English for ten thousand Livers in Hand, and five hundred to be paid yearly. The English, who carried her away to *Rouen*, being obliged to use her like a Prisoner of War, had no regard to the Law of Nations, but accused her of Witchcraft and Heresy; and made it a Capital Crime in her to bear Arms in the Habit of a Man, as she had done to the dishonour of her Sex, and directly against the Divine Commands. After several Examinations, *Peter Cauchon* the Bishop of *Beauvais*, and Vicar of the Inquisition, and some Doctors in Divinity, condemned her to Bread and Water, and to a Prison for Life, prohibiting her for the future to put on Man's Cloths. But the English having some time after taken her again, solicited the Judges with so much importunity, that they gave her up to the Secular Power, and the Duke of *Bedford* got her to be burnt alive in the old Market-place at *Rouen* on the 30th day of May in 1431. About 24 Years after, her Memory and Honour was asserted upon the Request of the King by the Archbishop of *Rheims*, and the Bishops of *Paris* and *Constance*, whom *Callixtus* the III<sup>d</sup> deputed for his Commissioners in that Affair; and they did all that could be serviceable to the Reputation of *Joan de Lys*, who deserved a more honourable End. Her Fame must be of necessity well established whilst she was living, and as long as she was reputed born for the destruction of Tyrants; and therefore also *Bonna* of *Milan*

lan presented her a \* Petition, which was thus Prefaced,  
" To the Most Renowned and Religious Maid *Joan*,  
" sent by the King of Heaven to avenge and extirpate  
" the English ; and which ended thus, and, therefore, the  
" said *Bonna* being the only and universal Heiress of the  
" said Sir *Barnaby*, humbly intreats the Heroick Maid  
" to restore her Inheritance unjustly seiz'd upon by the  
" said *Galeas*. However it be, since the death of *Joan*  
*de Lys*, the Affairs of the English have alter'd their Coun-  
tenance ; and *Henry* the VIIth, who, on the 27th of No-  
vember, in 1431. was crown'd with a double Crown in  
the Church of *Notre Dame* in *Paris*, was so far from be-  
ing like to Rule in *France*, that he was made the Duke  
of *York's* Prisoner in *England*, and forced to fly into *Scot-*  
*land*.

In 1462. *Frederick* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, in a  
Battel between the Rivers of the *Rhine* and *Neckar*, took  
three Princes, *Charles* Marquess of *Baden*, *George* his  
Brother, Bishop of *Metz*, and *Ulrick* Count of *Wirtem-*  
*berg*, who in opposition to the Count of *Izenberg*, assert-  
ed the Cause of *Alphonfus* of *Nassau*, who was nominat-  
ed Archbishop of *Maience*. He entertained them mag-  
nificently in his Palace ; but as he had given express  
Command that no Bread should be put before them,  
though they incessantly demanded it, he would not  
suffer a bit to be brought them, to teach them " that  
" a Man may fall upon his Enemy without making Ha-  
" vock of all the Country ; or without burning the  
" Stores of the Husband-men to force them to die with  
" Famine. However he sent them back, and sold them  
their Liberty as he ought to do.

*John Tritbemius* was born in the same Year.

In the following the Emperor *Frederick* being besieg-  
ed in the Citadel of *Vienna*, that he might get out of it  
call'd for the assistance of *George Podiebrack*, King of *Bo-*  
*hemia*, who rescu'd him : And *Frederick* to shew his Gra-  
titude,

---

\* On peut voir cette Requete dans l' *Histoire d' Argentre*,  
Et dans le *Theatre d' Honneur Et de Chevalerie* de *Favyn*. l. 3.  
P. 745.

tritude, made his Children Princes of *Munsterberg* in *Silesia*. *Flavius Blondus* who had been Secretary to several Popes, died at *Rome* the same Year.

In 1464. *Matthias Corvinus* was crown'd King of *Hungary* on *Easter* day as some say; and *Pius* the II<sup>d</sup>, who died on the 2<sup>d</sup> of *August*, had his See fill'd by *Peter Barbi* a Venetian, who was *Paul* the II<sup>d</sup>. The same Year *Nicholas Cusanus* a Cardinal, the Bishop of *Brixen*, in the Country of *Tirol*, a Divine, an Orator, a Mathematician and Philosopher, died at *Todi* on the 11<sup>th</sup> of *August*; and *Laurentius Valla* King *Alphonfus's* Secretary was buried in the Church of *St. John Lateran*, of which he had been a Canon.

*George Castroit* or *Scanderbeg*, died of a Fever in 1466. and *Albert Durer*, or, as we ordinarily call him, *Albert Dure*, was born in 1471. *Paul* the II<sup>d</sup> died on the 25<sup>th</sup> of *July* in the same Year, and *Francisco della Rouere* of *Savona*, of the Order of the lesser Friars, succeeded him. *Pomponius Latius*, and *Domitius Calderin*, whose Works are sufficiently known by Men of Learning, were then in very great esteem. *Vives* says of *Pomponius Latius*, " That he so passionately loved the Latin Tongue, that he " never would learn the Greek; That he had so great " a Veneration for Antiquity that he chang'd his Name " *Peter* into *Pomponius*; and that he observed the day of " the Foundation of *Rome* and *Romulus's* Nativity as a " solemn Festival He was called *Peter* of *Calabria*; and 'tis believed that he was the natural Son of a Prince of *Salerno*. For all that he died so poor, when he was seventy Years old, that being sick he was fain to get himself carried to an Hospital, and being dead he was buried at the Expence of some of his Acquaintance. *Vives* adds as to what concerns *Calderin*, " That he would " not go to *Mafs*, and that, if he were forced to it a- " gainst his Will, he cried out, well! do we then al- " low our selves to run into the common Error?

In 1473, *Nicholas Copernicus* a celebrated Mathematician was born at *Thorn*, a City of the Royal *Prussia*. The System of this Philosopher was, that the Sun is plac'd in that part which seems to be the middle of the World, where it is immoveable: that without changing

changing its place, it turns round upon its Axis, that the Planets are all rang'd betwixt the Sun and the fixed Stars; that the Earth which is one of the Planets, has three sorts of Motion, the first Diurnal, the second Annual, and the third of Inclination, which always keeps its Axis in the same Position.

*Hasan Al Tawil*, the Son of *Tur Ali Beg*, and the Brother of *Jehan Ghir*, died in 1477: and the Title of *Grand Seignior* would have becom'd him well, since from a mean Governor of *Armenia* he advanc'd himself to the Persian Throne by his signal Victories, and Conquests. He is call'd by the Greeks *Cassanes*, by *Texeira* *Ozum Acen Bek*; by *Leunclavius* *Ufun-Chasan*, which is the very same thing, because he was of a Great Stature, and because in the Turkish Tongue *Tawil* signifies Long.

*Christiern* the Ist, surnamed the Rich, Count of *Oldenburg* and of *Dalmenhorst*, King of *Denmark*, after he had invoc'd the Holy Virgin, instituted the Order of the Elephant: and the first Chapter about that Order of Knighthood was held in the Metropolitan Church of *Lunden*, at the Wedding of his Son *John*, married in 1478, to *Christina* the Daughter of *Ernestus* Duke of *Saxony*. That *John* who succeeded him, in 1481, had in 1513, for his Successor *Christiern* the IId, the Husband of *Isabella* of *Castile*, *Philip* the King of *Spain's* Daughter, who had two Daughters by her, *Dorothy* the Wife of *Frederick* Duke of *Bavaria*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*; and *Christina* married first to *Francis Sforza* Duke of *Milan*; and afterwards to *Francis* Duke of *Lorraine*, the Son of *Antony*, and of *Renea* the Daughter of *Gilbert* of *Bourbon* Count of *Montpencier*. The *Suedes* and *Danes*, by an unanimous Revolt, having delivered themselves from the Tyranny of *Christiern* the IId, *Frederick* surnamed the Peacemaker, the second Son of *Christiern* the Ist, was elected in 1522; and had by *Anne* of *Brandenburg*, *Christiern* the IId, Married to *Dorothy* the Daughter of *Magnus* Duke of *Lower Saxony*. From that Marriage issued *Frederick* the IId, the Father of *Anne*, who was married to *James* the VIth, King of *Great Britain*; and *Christiern* the IVth. This Man

E c

who



who succeeded in the Throne, in 1588, was King when but Eleven Years Old: he reigned Sixty, and built *Christianstadt* in the Isle of *Schonen*, *Christiania*, in *Norway*, *Christianople* in *Bleking*, *Gluckstadt* upon the *Elbe*, and *Christianpreis* in the Territory of *Slezwick*. His two eldest Sons *Christiern* and *Ulrick* being dead, whilst their Father was still alive, his Third Son, *Frederick* the III<sup>d</sup> succeeded him, who had been Bishop of *Verden* in *Lower Saxony*, and afterwards Archbishop of *Bremen*; who had by *Sophia Amelia* George Duke of *Brunswick's* Daughter, *Christiern* the V<sup>th</sup> who Reigns at this time, George who married a Daughter of the Duke of *Tork*, now King of *England*; and four Daughters. The Eldest was given in Marriage to *John Georges*, Prince Electoral of *Saxony*, the second to *Christian Albert*, Duke of *Holstein*, the Third to *Vilhelmine* the Prince Electoral Palatine, and *Ulrique* to *Charles* the XI<sup>th</sup>, King of *Sweden*, the Son of *Charles Gustavus*, and of *Heidwige Eleoner* of *Holstein*.

That *Charles Gustavus* the Son of *Casimir* Duke of *Deux-Ponts*, and of *Catharine* the Sister of *Gustavus* the Great, was born at *Nicoping* in *Sweden*, in 1622; and 'twas by the Abdication of *Christina* that he became a King.

*Baptista Platina* who has left us the Lives of the Popes, died of the Plague, at *Rome*, in 1481: and *Martin Luther* was born at *Isleben*, in the County of *Mansfield* in *Saxony*, in 1483.

*Lewis* the XI<sup>th</sup>. died in his Castle *du Plessis les Tours*, on the 30<sup>th</sup> of *August*, in 1483, in the One and Sixtieth Year of his Age, he Reigned 22 Years, One Month, and Eight Days, and he was 38 Years Old when he first mounted the Throne. He was but Fourteen when he Married *Margaret* the Daughter of *James* the I<sup>st</sup>, King of *Scotland*, who died in 1445, at *Chalons* in *Champaigne*, and was carried to *Tours*, in *Lewis's* Reign, into the Abbey of *St. Laon*. In 1451, he was Married to *Charlotte*, the Daughter of *Lewis* the II<sup>d</sup>, Duke of *Savoy*, and of *Anne* of *Cyprus*, betrothed before to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*; she died in 1483. He had by her *Joachim*, who died Young; *Charles* the VIII<sup>th</sup>; *Francis* Duke

Duke, of *Berry*, born in 1472, in *September*, and dead in the Month of *July* the next Year; *Lewis* who went to the Grave Young, *Anne* the Wife of *Peter* of *Bourbon Beau-jeu*; *Jane* born in 1464, and Married in 1476 to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, who was after the Twelfth King of that Name. Forasmuch as he had not consented to that Marriage but by Force, he got it dissolved in 1499, by *Philip* Cardinal of *Luxemburg*, Bishop of *Mans*, by *Lewis d'Amboise* Bishop of *Albi*, and by *Ferdinand Ferrail* Bishop of *Ceute*, whom *Alexander* the VIth deputed to Hear and Determine that Affair. After the Dissolution of that Marriage, the Queen withdrew into the Covent of the *Annonciade* which she had Founded at *Bourges*; and she died there in 1504. The Illegitimate Daughters of *Lewis* the XIth, were *Jane* the Wife of *Lewis* the Bastard of *Bourbon*, Earl of *Roussillon*, Admiral of *France*; *Jane* Married to *Anthony* of *Beuil*, the Eldest Son to *John* of *Beuil*, Admiral of *France*, Earl of *Sancerre*; and *Mary* to *Aimar* of *Poitiers*, the Fifth of the Name, Lord of *Saint Vallier*, and Count of *Valentin*. Never Man fear'd Death more than that King *Lewis*: and he call'd out of *Calabria* *Francis de Paul*, to whom the Order of the *Minims* owes its Institution, that he might importune Heaven to prolong his Life; though that good Father, who died in 1507, the 2d of *April*, and was Canoniz'd by *Leo* the Xth, in 1519, spoke to him only concerning the profound Submission he ought to pay to the Divine Will. A Greek Poet has said of *Egypt* that it was stor'd with salutary Herbs, and naughty Weeds; and something like that may be said of this King. He had a strange Penetration; he was Winning and Subtle; Eloquent enough to persuade Men to what he pleas'd; Grateful for all Services done him, if agreeable to his own Humour; and no small Proficient in good Literature. But he was Ingenious to plague himself, and trouble others; one of great Art, and Diffimulation; Timorous; Stirring; Self-conceited; having little Deference to the Advice of others; Superstitious and yet by no means Devout; Un sincere, Unjust, and Revengeful; and so Cruel that by different Punishments he put to death above Four Thousand Persons, of whom

*Tristan* the Provost of his Palace, and his *Dear Favourite* was usually the Accuser, the Judge, and the Executioner. The *Order of Saint Michael* was made and establish'd by him on the 1st Day of *August*, in 1469: and it was in his Reign that the Constable Count *de St. Paul* had his Head cut off in the *Greve* at *Paris* for his Tricks, and that the two sons of that Grand Cheat were plac'd under the Scaffold that their Father's Blood might run down upon their Heads. *Lewis* the XIth said, *That there was plenty of all things in his Kingdom, but that Truth could scarce be found there*: and to that purpose I remember that I have heard of a thing spoken by *Monsieur Camus* Bishop of *Bellay*, and Preacher to the Incurable, or desperately Sick-Folks in the Hospital, worthy of his peculiar Courage. *Monsieur* the Duke of *Orleans*, being come thither attended with the Abbot *de la Riviere*, a notorious Flatterer, and his Favourite, and by *Monsieur Tubeuf*, who at that time was Intendant of the King's Revenues, sent word to the Bishop, "That he should begin his Sermon again, because he had not long begun it. He without much Consideration replied, My Lord, On Sunday my Subject was the Triumph of our Lord Jesus Christ in *Jerusalem*; on Friday last I preach'd upon his Death; Yesterday upon his Resurrection, and to Day, I preach of his Walk to *Emmaus* with Two of his Disciples. You were Triumphant in the time of *Queen Mary de Medicis*; after that we saw you dead by the Judgments of Courts: you are recover'd from them by the Goodness of the King your Brother; and methinks now you are in a Pilgrimage under the Ministry. From whence come Revolutions so strange upon Princes? Oh! My Lord, 'tis because none but Flatterers are near them, because Truth usually comes to their Ears just as Money comes to the King's Coffers, one Pound instead of a Hundred.

*Philip* the IIIrd, Duke of *Burgundy*, Founder of the *Order of the Golden Fleece*, died at *Bruges* the 15th of *June*, in 1467. *Charles* Count of *Charolois* his only Son, as Active and Daring as he was brave, the most implacable Enemy to *Lewis* the XIth, was kill'd in an Enterprize

prise which he made by a Siege upon *Nanci*, 'on the 20th Day of *June*, in 1476, after he had lost the Battles of *Granson*, and of *Morat* against the *Suissers*. Their Quarrel was odd and humerfome enough, since they made War only for a Cart-load of Sheep-skins, as formerly the People of *Ætolia*, and *Arcadia*, did for the Head of a Wild-Boar; as the Citizens of *Carthage*. and *Utica* did, for the Galley of a *Brigantin*; as the *Frisons* and the *Romans* did, in *Drusus's* time, for some Ox-hides; and as the *Picts* and *Scots* did, for some Dogs that had been lost.

\* *George of Trebizonde* well enough known to all Learned Men, born the 4th of *April*, in 1396, died at *Rome*, in 1486, being Ninety Years Old: and some say that in his Old Age he in general forgot all the Learning he had acquir'd. He infinitely admir'd *Aristotle*, and as much despis'd *Plato*; in which he differ'd much from *Cicero*, though he himself spoke a thing against Common Sense, when he said, *That he would rather lose his Way with Plato, than be in the ready Rode with all others.* The major part of the Fathers of the Church who have been *Platonists*, would not have subscrib'd to *George's* mean Opinion of *Plato*, who through Pride or Freak would have the City *Trebizonde* where his Father was born, to be the place of his Birth too, though, indeed, he was a Native of *Creet*.

In 1490, *Matthias Corvinus* King of *Hungary*, died of an Apoplexy at *Vienna*, at the Age of Forty seven, having reigned 33 Years: and *Ladislaus* the VIth surnamed the Cow, because not at all Active, succeeded him.

In 1492, King *Ferdinand* Banished, and Drove out of the Kingdom of *Spain*, above Six Hundred and Seventy Families of Jews by one Edict only: he happily added to his Dominions the Kingdom of *Grenada*, where the Moors had govern'd so long: and Pope *Innocent* the VIIIth, who died on the 25th of *July*, was the Immediate Predecessor of *Alexander* the VIth.

---

\* *V. Paulus Fovius in Elogiis Doctorum Virorum. n. 25.*



In 1494, Italy lost *Hermolaus Barbarus*, *Angelo Bassi*, surnamed *Politian*, because he was of *Monte Pulciano*, a small Town in *Tuscany*, call'd in Latin *Mons Politianus*; it lost likewise *John Picus* Earl of *Mirandula*, call'd a *Miracle* by *Zara*, a *Prodigy without Defect* by *Scaliger*, and the *Phoenix* of fam'd *Wits*, by *Politian*. He was but one and twenty Years old, as some say, or three and twenty, as others, when he publish'd at *Rome* 900 Propositions in all sorts of Sciences, which he undertook to defend in 14 or 15 Languages against any Disputants whatever that should come to oppose them. And for fear Strangers should excuse themselves by reason of the length or Difficulties of their Journeys to him, he promis'd to bear their Charges. Some Authors say, that when he was two or three and Thirty, he having stept up a Ladder which he us'd in his Library, to take down some Books which he had a mind to shew some of his Friends, who came to visit him; there fell some of them from the Shelf he was searching, which knock'd him down, and that he was kill'd with that fall. Though he had made twelve excellent Books against judicial Atrology, his Death did in some sort justify the Science which he endeavoured to cry down, if especially it be true that he died just as *Lucius Bellancius*, *Angelo de Castaninis*, and *Antony Serigate* of *Florence* had foretold he would. We ought no longer to believe what is recorded in divers Authors, that *Hermolaus Barbarus* never had Satisfaction nor Health after his Banishment from *Venice*, upon his Promotion to the Patriarchate of *Aquileia*; or that through a desperate Affection *Politian* dash'd his Head in Pieces against a Wall.

*Gabriel* \* *Biel* a German, who cannot but be known by

---

\* *Erat distortis saepe moribus, uti facie nequaquam ingenua, & liberali, ab enormi praesertim naso, subluscoq; oculo perabsurda; ingenio autem astuto, aculeato, occulteq; livido, cum aliena semper irrideret, nec sua, vel non iniquo judicio, expungi pateretur. Non sine gravi Musarum injuria doloreq; seculi festinante Fato ereptus est. Vix enim quadragesimum quartum Aetatis annum attigerat. Fovius in Elogiis Illustrum Virorum.*

by Divines and Philosophers, died in 1495, in the University of Tübingen, in the Dutchy of Wirtemberg.

Peter Ricci, or Crinitus, a Scholar of Politian; James Philip de Foresta of Bergamo, a Chronologer; Sebastian Brandt; Abbot Trithemius; Manard the Physitian; John Pontanus; Raphael of Volterra; Jason the Civilian; John Nauclerus; Gaguinus, and Philip Beroaldus were of great note about that time.

Charles the VIIIth the 55th King of France, being 27 Years, nine Months and eight Days old, died of an Apoplexy on the 6th of April, in 1498, as he went to see a Game at Tennis in the Ditches of the Castle of Amboise. He reigned 14 Years, and Six Months: and he had by Anne of Britanny, whom he married, Charles Orland, to whom the good Man Francis de Paul, gave that Name, who lived but three Years, and three Months; Charles born the eighth of September, in 1496, who died in the Month of October the same Year; Francis and Anne, who died Young. By the Death of his Children, the right Line of the Kings drawn from the Branch of Valois, failing in his Person, the Kingdom fell into the Collateral Line of Orleans, as being the next in Blood. 'Tis well known that never Voyage was more successful than his into Italy; that all the Cities opened their Gates at his Approach. In 1494, on the 17th of November he made his entry into Florence; on the 18th of December into Rome; on the 22d of February, in the Year following he enter'd into Naples, and conquer'd the whole Kingdom in 15 Days. He had a homely Face, round Shoulders, slow Speech, and an infirm Constitution. But he was of easy Access to his Courtiers and to Strangers, he was Courteous, Just, and Generous; and had so noble a Courage, that James Philip of Bergamo, surnamed him the Great. There is a pretty Passage methinks, in Nardi's first Book of the History of Florence. When Charles had a mind to take that City, and as he affirmed, with Menaces that he "would make his Trumpets" sound, if the Citizens should put themselves in a Condition to resist him; Peter Caponi the Secretary of the Republick tore the Capitulation in Pieces in his sight,

and looking boldly upon the King, answered him thus, " Well, Sir, if you sound your Trumpets, we will " ring our Bells.

On the Morrow after the Death of *Charles*, *Ferome Savonarola* of *Ferrara*, a Dominican, a great Preacher, whom *John Francis Picus* Earl of *Mirandula*, and *Marfilus Ficinus*, look'd upon as a Prophet, was burnt at *Florence* with *Silvester* and *Dominick* of the same Order, by the command of Pope *Alexander* the VIth. By his Sermons, his Eloquence, and Management he so well guided the People of *Florence*, that in 1484 he got himself summon'd to the Senate; and by his help *Paul Antony Soderin* preserv'd the Popular Government against *Guy Antony Vespucius*, who labour'd to establish an Aristocracy there. He maintained his Reputation and Interest above ten Years: but in a Sedition, the Mob broke down the Gates of his Monastery, from whence he was dragg'd to Execution: and 'tis a kind of Miracle that they had not sooner put him to Death, who in his Pulpit openly and without Equivocation, inveighed against the Pope and the Clergy, and who preached up nothing but the Reformation of the Church. For that Reason he was called by some Protestants the *Luther of Italy*, and the *Forerunner of the Evangelical Reformation*.

*John Calvin*, the Son of *Girard Calvin*, and of *Jane le Franc*, was educated with the Children of the House of *Mommor*, and among his other Masters he had in the College of *Montaign*, *Mathurinus Corderius*. He was preferred to a Living in the Cathedral Church of *Noyon*, where he was born in 1509, on the 10th of *July*, and to a Cure at *Pont l'Eveque*, from whence his Father came. Thinking it not sufficient to have received the Dictates of *Petrus de Stella* at *Orleans*, under whom he made a very great Progress, he became the Pupil of the famous *Alciat* at *Bourges*, where *Melchior Wolmar* the Greek Professor, advis'd him in earnest to study that Language. He follow'd his Advice; and a long time after at *Basil* and at *Strasburg*, he learned the Hebrew Tongue. In 1536, he taught Divinity at *Geneva*; he was Minister too there; he was driven from thence with *Earell*, in 1538; he was sent for to *Strasbourg*, and in

1541, reinstated at *Geneva*, where he died on the 27th of May, in 1564.

*John Pontanus*, in high esteem for his Prose and Verse, died in 1505. *Henry the VIIth*, King of *England*, and our Country-man *Philip de Commines* in 1509, and *Philip Beroaldus*, one of the greatest Men of his Age in 1510.

*Albert*, Marquess of *Brandenburg* was the Great Master of the Teutonick Order in 1511, or according to others in 1512. After he had govern'd his Order about 13 Years. *Sigismund* King of *Poland* made him Duke of *Prussia*, and there he introduced the Protestant Religion. In 1511. *Georgon*, a celebrated Painter of *Veddelago*, or as some will have it, of *Castel-Franco* in *Trevissane* died, at the Age of 34, of the Plague, which he caught of a Lady whom he lov'd, and whom he supposed not to be infected with it.

In 1512. *Paulus Manucius* the Son of *Aldus* was born at *Venice*, and *Gerard* the Merchant or Mercator a Geographer and Mathematician in *Rupelmonde* a City of *Flanders*.

*Lewis* the XIIth, surnamed the *Just*, the Father of his People, died the 1st of *January*, in 1515 being thirty-seven Years old, and in the 17th Year of his Reign. He had married *Jane*, whom he divorced, as I told you a little before; and married *Anne* of *Britanny*, by whom he had a Son who was contracted to one of the Daughters of *Philip* Archduke of *Austria* and King of *Castile*, and of *Jane* of *Aragon*; but the death of the Dauphin hinder'd the Consummation of the Marriage. He had another Son by her who died young; as also *Claude* married to *Francis* the 1st; and *Renea* the Wife of *Hercules d'Este* the Second of the Name, Duke of *Ferrara*, the Son of *Alphonsus*. In 1514. he took for his second Wife *Mary* King *Henry's* Sister; who after the death of *Lewis* the XIIth, returned to *England*, and was married to *Charles Brandon* Duke of *Suffolk*. She during Life kept the Title of Queen, and died in the Month of *June*, in 1533. This King established the Great Council, which had been projected by *Charles* the VIIIth; he created a Parliament at *Rouen* for *Normandy*, and another at *Aken* for



for *Provence*: He was more than once Master of *Milan* and *Italy*; he made a second Conquest of *Naples*: And all the Consequences of that War were unfortunate by his own Neglect, by the Artifices of *Julian de la Ronere*, Cardinal of *St. Peter ad Vincula*, who was Pope *Julius* the II<sup>d</sup>, and by the Treachery of the Princes of that Country, who deserted him. *Gaston de Foix* Duke of *Ne-mours*, his Nephew, being 20 Years old, whom he sent under the Character of the General of his Forces, entred into *Bologna* in 1512. in spite of the Army of the Ecclesiastical Confederates, commanded by *Raimond* of *Caydonne* Vice-Roy of *Naples*; he defeated *John Paolo Baglione*, with most part of the *Venerians* who served under him; he broke through the Intrenchments of *Bresse*; he kill'd in the Streets above 8000 Men: And in these three great Actions he spent not full fifteen Days. Having besieged *Ravenna* with a design to draw the Enemies to a Battle, they came near that City to force him to raise the Siege; and having rais'd it to fight them, he routed them, and took their Commanders, or put them to flight. But as he eagerly pursued a Body of 4000 Spaniards, which made a very orderly Retreat, he was surrounded by them, and run through with many a Pike, and many a Sword. The Body of this young Prince was carried to *Milan* in a Litter, attended by the Prisoners he had taken; among whom were *Fabricio Colonna*, the Marquesses of *Pesquiere*, of *Padille*, of *Etoile*, of *Bitonto*; the Count of *Monte Leon*, *John* of *Cardone*, *Peter* of *Navarre*, the Legate of the Council of *Lateran*, with many others. Ten thousand of the Leaguers were kill'd in that Fight; and the City of *Ravenna* was plunder'd. *George* of *Amboise*, Archbishop of *Rouen*, Cardinal Legate in *France*, and *Lewi's* Chief Minister, died at *Lyons* in 1510.

*Ferdinand* King of *Spain*, died in 1516. \* *Albert Crantz*, D. D. Canon of the Church of *Hambourg*, who wrote

---

\* *Albert. Crantzii* scripsit *Metropolin quæ continet Historiam Ecclesiasticam; item Saxoniam, Vandaliam, Daniam, Sueciam Chronic. Alberti Crantzii vitam scripsit Melchior Adam, quem vide.*

wrote the History of the North, and the Ecclesiastical History, and *Andrew Mantegna* of *Mantua*, a Painter, a Scholar of *Father Squircione* in 1517.

The very little Year the Empire of the *Mammelucs* was subverted by *Selim*; and since that Name frequently occurs in Histories, and is understood but by few, I think my self oblig'd to say something of 'em.

*Mamluc* comes from the Root *Malac*, that is to say, *purchas'd*, *acquir'd*, or *enjoy'd*; and in the Plural Number *Mamalic* imports in *Arabick* as much as a *purchas'd* *Servant* or *Slave*, a Person over whom a Master has got to himself Power by his Money and Purchase. This sort of People appeared under *Nosemoddin*, whose true Name was *Saleb*, who brought them into his Countries, and who was called the *Master of the Turks*, because he had bought a thousand Turkish Youths of the *Tartars*; which makes it evident that they, who have believed that the *Mammelucs* were absolutely the *Sons of Christians*, were mistaken. That *Nosemoddin* promoted those Turks to great Honours, because they stood stoutly by him at a time when all his People left him: And after his death they gain'd a mighty Reputation by fighting against the *French*, who were at the Conquest of the Holy Land. When *Turan Scab* the Son of *Nosemoddin* was kill'd, the Widow of the latter had the whole Administration in her Hands, and married one of those *Mammelucs*, whose Name was *Azoddin Ibeg*, who reigned in the Year 648. of the *Hegira*, and in the Year of our Lord 1250. He was the first of 24 Kings *Mammelucs Babrites*, who reigned 236 Years, 7 Months and 9 Days. The *Mammelucs* of *Circassia*, call'd *Borjites*, succeeded them: And their first King was *Bibras Al Jassenhir*, or *Dhaer Barkuk*, taken in *Circassia*, by a Man call'd *Orbman*, and bought in the Tarrary of *Krim*. He was afterwards sent into *Egypt*, where having received his Freedom from *Yilboga* the General of the *Mammelucs*, he made himself so strong, that when he had kill'd *Al-Saleb*, who was the last King of the *Mammelucs Babrites*, he became Lord and Master of their whole Kingdom. He had two and twenty Successors, who with him reigned about 136 Years: And *Tuman Beg*, whom *Selim*

*lim* order'd to be hang'd, was the last of 'em. *Leonclavius*, and others, speak of some call'd *Zinds* and *Zindians*: But *Pocock* has observed in his Supplement to *Abulpharages*, that they are under a Mistake; because *Zind* and *Zindi* is the very same thing with *Giond* and *Giondi* in the Plural, which signifies an Army and Soldiers.

*Albert* Elector of *Mayence* was created Cardinal by *Leo* the Xth, in 1518; and *Henry* the Ild, King of *France*, was born in that Year.

*In the Reign of Charles the Vth, and of Ferdinand.*

*Raphael Sanctio*, alias *Raphael d'Urbis*, the City where he was born in 1483, had a violent Fever after a Night's Debauch with a Lady whom he admir'd: and whereas he conceal'd the occasion of his Distemper from the Physicians who attended him, they ordered him to be blooded, which weaken'd him so much that it was impossible to preserve him. This wonderful Painter died at the Age of thirty seven, in 1520. and in that time his extraordinary Worth had undoubtedly advanced him to the Dignity of a Cardinal, if he had lived longer.

*Leo* the Xth, who was made a Cardinal at fourteen, and Pope at six and thirty, having heard that the French had been driven from *Milan*, *Parma*, *Plaisance*, and some other Places of *Italy*, was in such a Transport of Joy for it that he died the third day after that News, on the 2d of *December* in 1521. *Bernard Michelot*, and *Angelus Politianus* had been his Preceptors; and he was admired by all Men for his Temper and Wit.

*John Reuchlin*, born in 1445. at *Phortzeim* in the Marquisate of *Baden Durlach*, died in 1522. He was otherwise known by the Name of *Capnio*: And 'twas *Hermolaus Barbarus*, who advis'd him in *Italy* to take that Name, which in Greek signifies *Subtle Smoke*, as *Reuchlin* does in the High German. He was the first Man, who in the West brought Greek and Hebrew to life again, which drew much trouble upon him, because in that

that Time it was a dangerous thing to be a good Scholar. A Jew, whose Name was *Pseffercorn*, and the Divines of *Cologne* endeavour'd to run him down with their Libels; but by his Answers they were cast into the utmost Consternation. *Galatin* a Jew, who became a Convert to Christianity, defended *Reuchlin* in \* a Book, which for a great while was valued by all Men of Learning; but the Fame of *Galatin* was very unfortunate in the Event, because he was at last discover'd to be a Plagiarist, having stole all that was good in his Book out of one of *Father Raimond Martin's*, a Dominican of *Soubiras* in *Catalonia*. One may observe by the way, that *Joseph Scaliger* in two Letters to *Causabon* was much deceived, when he took *Raimond Martin* for *Raimond de Sebonde*, who was not Cotemporary with the other; who was not of the Order of the Dominicans; and who had but slender Skill in the Oriental Tongues.

*Adrian* the VIth, born at *Utrecht*, as 'tis commonly thought, who had been *Charles* the VIth's Preceptor, chosen Pope after *Leo* on the 9th of *January*, in 1522. was poison'd according to the general Belief; and was Pope but 1 Year, 8 Months, and 6 Days. *Julius de Medicis*, i.e. *Clement* the VIIth succeeded him; and *Peter Peruzin* the Scholar of *Andrew Verrochio* of *Florence*, and the Master of *Raphael d'Urbino* died in 1524.

On the 29th of *October* in 1525. they begun to say Mass in *Wirtemberg* in the vulgar Tongue. *Luther* after he had left off the Habit of an *Austin* Friar, upon the 27th of *June* \* married *Catharine Boorn*, or *de Bora* whom he took out of a Cloister.

*Isabelle* the Wife of *Christiern* King of *Denmark*, died the 9th of *January* the same Year. Some German Chronologers

---

\* *De Arcanis Catholicae veritatis.*

† *Pugio Fidei quem edidit cum notis, Josephus de Voisin Presbyter & ex-Senator Burdegalis.*

\* Eodem hoc Anno (1525) *Lutherus* ætatis suæ agens annum 42. ex improvise uxorem duxit *Catharinam a Bora*, virginem nobilem, antea monialem. *Melchior Adam*, quem Vide in *Vitis Theologorum Germanorum*, p. 130.



nologers affirm that *Ismael* King of *Persia*, call'd *Sophi*, died in 1525; and according to *Pocock* in his Supplement to *Abulpharages*, he died in the 920th Year of the *Hegira*, or in our 1514th.

The *Imperial Chamber*, which had been founded at *Francfort* by *Maximilian* the 1st in 1495, was brought to *Wormes* in 1497, to *Nuremberg* in 1501, to *Ratisbone* or *Regensburg* in the *Lower Bavaria* in 1503, and for a second time to *Wormes* in 1509. It was removed to *Spire* in 1513, to *Wormes* a third time in 1514, to *Nuremberg* a second time in 1521, to *Eslingen* in 1524, and to *Spire* in 1527, where it continues to this day.

*Clement* the VIth quitting the Interests of *Charles* the Vth, *Charles* of *Bourbon* the Generalissimo of that Emperor's Forces, made them march towards *Rome*, and found the Gates of it shut against him: And when he attempted forcibly to get into it, when with his Soldiers he himself mounted the Walls by the help of Ladders, he was kill'd there with a Musket-shot. The City however was taken; and we need only read *Paul Ebor*, *Guichardin*, and *Sleidan*, to be informed of the Cruelties that were there committed. The Constable *Charles* Duke of *Bourbon*, Earl of *Montpencier* and of *Auvergne*, had married *Susanna* the Daughter and only Heiress of *Peter* the 11th, Duke of *Bourbon*, and of *Anne* the Sister of King *Charles* the VIIIth, though *Susanna* had been betrothed to *Charles* of *Valois* Duke of *Alencon*. But because *Charles* of *Montpencier*, who upon this Marriage was call'd Duke of *Bourbon*, asserted that by Law, *Peter* being dead, all his Father-law's Lands held in *Appennage* belong'd to him, since he was descended of a younger Brother of *Bourbon*, which he could easily prove; the young Woman was given to him to prevent and silence this Controversy. *Susanna* being dead, *Lewisa* the Regent, by the Advice of Chancellor *du Prat*, as 'tis said, commenced a Suit, pleading that those Lands held in *Appennage* reverted to the King, and that she had a Right to all the rest of her Estate, as being the next Heiress, and a Daughter of *Peter's* Sister married to the Duke of *Savoy*. Besides that, *Charles* was dissatisfied with *Francis* the 1st before, because he had given the

Van-

Van-Guard of an Army to the Duke of *Alençon* and to Marshal of *Charillon*, to which he had all due Pretences as Constable; both through the fear he was in that he should be reduced low by the loss of his Cause already brought into Parliament, and through his Aversion to the Queen-Regent, he left *France*, accepted of a Command under the Emperor *Charles* the Vth; and chose rather to be a Rebel than a poor Man. *Francis* the Ist was blam'd for the deference which he had paid his Mother, who was in love with the Constable, though not belov'd by him; and who for that reason was thus reveng'd of him.

*Albert Durer* a Paintier and Engraver, died in 1527, or as *Melchior Adam* will have it, in 1528, having liv'd to the Age of 57.

*Margaret*, the Emperor *Maximilian's* Daughter, and *Philip* the King of *Spain's* Sister, died at *Malines* in 1530, being in the one and fiftieth Year of her Age; and her Sitter *Mary*, *Lewis* the King of *Hungary's* Widow, succeeded her in the Government of *Flanders*.

*Andrew* surnam'd *del Sarto*, because he was a Taylor's Son, died the same Year; and his Pictures are highly esteem'd. He was born in 1478; and 'tis observ'd by *Vasari*, that he so exactly imitated the Picture of *Leo* the Xth, doné by the Hand of *Raphael*, that *Julius Romanus* after he had view'd it nicely, affirm'd that it neither was, nor could be a Copy; that he observ'd in it even the least Strokes of his Master's Pencil, and some likewise of his own. *Vasari* to satisfy him that he was mistaken, turned the Picture, and by a mark of *Andrew del Sarto*, which was on the backside of the Canvas, he demonstrated to him that it was not *Raphael's* Work. *Julius Romanus* being convinced, declared that for all that he did not prize it the less; that on the contrary he valu'd it much the more; it not being common in his Opinion that an excellent Artist should so perfectly imitate another in his Colours, and way, that even the greatest Masters should be deceiv'd thereby. After such an Instance our great *Verruoso's*, and our great Painters may probably enough be often mistaken in pronouncing upon Originals and Copies, unless they are more discerning and skilful than *Julius Romanus*. \* *San-*

\* *Sannazaro* died at *Naples*, as some say, in 1530, Aged 72 Years, one Month, and 29 Days. *Thomas Porcacchi* who wrote his Life, says that he was born in 1471, that he died at *Rome* in 1532, and that he was 71 Years old.

*Lucas of Leiden*, a well known Painter, died in 1533, in the 39th Year of his Age.

(a) *Henry Cornelius Agrippa*, of the Family of *Nettesheim*, born in 1486, died in 1534, in an Alms-house at *Grenoble*, as *Bodin* says; or at *Lyons*, if we'll believe *Paulus Jovius* and *Thevet*, among the Poor and Miserable, abhorred and abandoned by all Men. He was the Emperor *Maximilian's* Secretary; a Favourite of *Antony de Leve*, and a Captain in his Troops; a Professor in Divinity at *Dole*, and at *Pavia*; a Physician to the Countess of *Angouleme*, *Francis the Ist's* Mother; a Counsellor and Historiographer to *Charles the Vth*. He expressed himself exceedingly well in eight Languages; he was chosen by *Cardinal de Saint Croix*, that he might have his Assistance in the Council that was to be held at *Pisa*: and the *Cardinal Gattinaria*, the King of *England*, and *Margaret Princess of Austria*, had at the same time invited him to their Service. The Accusation drawn against him by some Authors, as though he had been a Magician, is a meer Whimsy: and he died not in an Hospital, as *Thevet*, *Paulus Jovius*, and *Bodin* have asserted, but at *Grenoble*, in the House of the Receiver General of the Province, whose Son died first President in the same City.

The same Year *Henry the VIIIth King of England* was the Cause of very great Disorders in Church and State by his Divorce of *Catharine*, *Ferdinand the King of Spain's* Daughter, and his Marriage of *Anna Bullen*. But it is worth while to give an Account of his Humour and Temper.

Henry,

---

\* *Sannazarius, hoc est a Sancto Nazario. Inter Neopolitanos eum refert Leander Albertus in descrip. Italiae.*

(a) Voyez ce qu'en a écrit *Gabriel Naude* dans l'*Apologie pour les Grands Hommes qui ont été faussement soupçonnez de Magie. cap. 15.*

*Henry*, who was born in 1481, on the 28th of *June* was train'd up in the Knowledge of good Literature, and in Philosophy which at that time had a large mixture of Divinity in it. Since he took much delight in reading *St. Thomas*, 'tis no wonder that he was both a Divine and Philosopher: and 'twas in 1522, that he wrote in *Vindication of the seven Sacraments* of the Church against *Luther*, who in his Answer to him, without the least Regard had to his Character, which being Regal should have been Sacred to all, had the Impudence to call him the Devil's \* *Excrement*. In that King's Reign, who was notorious for his Cruelty, there were very considerable Events; and without dwelling upon the History of his Life, which has been written by a † Learned Man; I shall think it sufficient for me to recount some Circumstances of it. He was an understanding Man, as I have said already; and it was a long time since Philosophy had been upon the Throne. His Zeal for the Church was stark blind, nor had ever Man a more profound Submission to the Holy See. But that I may go to the Source of all his Misfortunes, it is necessary to relate here that *Henry* the VIIth his Father had chosen for a Wife to his eldest Son *Arthur*, a Youth of Sixteen, *Catherine* the Daughter of *Ferdinand* King of *Spain*, who brought him Two Hundred Thousand Crowns as her Portion; and that *Arthur* died five Months after the Solemnity of his Wedding, on the 14th of *November*, in 1501, and was buried in *St. Paul's Church* in *London*. *Henry* the VIIth, who was a tenacious Prince, that he might not be obliged to repay that Sum, which in that Age was very considerable, desir'd that Princess for his second Son *Henry*, by the good Leave, and under the Dispensation of *Julius* the II. Some time after, *Henry* the VIIth mov'd with the Arguments of *Warham* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who asserted that that Marriage was condemn'd by the Laws of God and Man, command-

F f

ed

---

\* *Stercus diaboli*.

† *Monsieur Burnet*. Voyez *Mr. Le Grand* sur *Mr. Burnet*, dans son *Histoire Du Divorce de Henri Huetieme*.



ed the young Prince to declare against the Validity of it before a Publick Notary, and enjoyn'd him also, a little before his Death, to get it Dissolved. He died the 21st Day of *April*, in 1509, being the 53 Year of his Age.

When his Head was laid, *Henry* the VIIIth his Successor did with much Solemnity marry *Catharine* six Weeks after his Accession to the Crown: and of the Children, which he had by his Brother *Arthur's* Widow, only Princess *Mary* was left, who was born on the 19th of *February*, in 1516, to whom he gave the Title of Princess of *Wales*. When he clearly foresaw, by some of the Queens Infirmities, that he could not have more Children by her, the secret Aversion he had for her, her disagreeable Temper, and the scruple of his Conscience, which upbraided him with his Incestuous Marriage, absolutely engag'd him to leave no Stone unturned to make it Void. After that he had long and in vain solicited Pope *Clement* the VIIth, who was very loath to declare his Sense against *Catharine* the Aunt of the Emperor *Charles* the Vth, as being the Daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*; and after that the most Learned Men of *Italy*, *Germany*, *France*, and the Parliament had determined that his Marriage was contrary to the Law of God and Nature, he gave a Bill of Divorce to *Catharine*, in 1531: and on the 14th of *November*, in 1532, he secretly married *Anna Bullen*, one of the Queens Maids of Honour. *Rowland Lee* after made Bishop of *Coventry* and *Litchfield* read the Office at that Ceremony, and the Duke of *Norfolk*, the Earl of *Ormond* and of *Wiltshire*, *Anne's* Father, together with her Mother and Sister were present as Witnesses to it; as was likewise *Cranmer*, who by his Reasons beat the Path for others in order to dissolve the former Marriage, and who in a little time was promoted to the Archbishoprick of *Canterbury*.

In 1533, *Anne Bullen* being big with Child, on the 7th of *September*, lay in of *Elizabeth*: and the Succession of the Children to the Crown was in 1534, settled by an Act of Parliament. *Henry* push'd on things much too far, in that he would be publickly declared, and recognized next after God, the *Supreme Head* of the Church

*Church of England*: in that he himself pronounc'd them Guilty of Death, who should own the Pope's Supremacy; and since he prohibited all Payments to him for the future, that had been made to him yearly before. The Generality of the Clergy who submitted to his Supremacy, came to his Resolution also, that the Pope being at the most but Bishop of *Rome*, his Authority could signify no more in *England* than that of every other strange Bishop. Hereupon he gave Order that there should be a Visitation of the Monasteries, that a strict Enquiry should be made into the Value of them; and he appropriated the Revenue of them to himself. *Catherine* whom he had Divorced, being 50 Years old, died in 1536, when she had spent 33 of 'em in *England*.

In the same Year the King being jealous of *Anne Bullen*, and turning his Heart another way, had her sentenc'd to Death as an Adulteress, though her Crime had never been well proved against her: and on the 29th of *May*, she was beheaded upon a Scaffold. Her Brother, who was suspected to have taken the greatest Freedoms with the Queen, and others likewise believed to be equally Offenders, were condemn'd to the same Punishment. The very next day after the Queen's Execution, *Henry* married *Jane Seymour*, who of all his Wives had most the ascendant over his Soul; and who perhaps would not have escap'd his Cruelty, had she not died whilst the King continued his Affection to her without Abatement. For on the 12th of *October*, in 1538, he had a Son by her called *Edward*; who cost his Mother her Life, because her side was fain to be cut open to make way for the Child.

*Paul* the III<sup>d</sup>, being not able any longer to bear his Outrages, nor the Havock he made by his Butcheries of the Clergy, and the Principal Men of his Kingdom, issu'd out by Bull a Sentence of Excommunication, against *Henry*, which exasperated him to that Degree, that in his two Houses of Parliament which he had called together, it was enacted that all the Riches in general belonging to Monasteries and Nunneries should be confiscated, and united to his own Demesnes. Those who were desirous to oppose that Act were dragg'd to Prisons,

and then condemn'd to die. 'Twas at that very time that upon the general Fame of the amazing Beauty of *Anne*, *William* the Duke of *Cleve's* Daughter, he desired her for his Wife: and as soon as she was landed in *England*, the King went *Incognito* as far as *Rocheſter* to meet her, being impatient to have a fight of her. But not finding in that Princess the Charms which poſſibly had been too much magnified to him, he took an Averſion to her, and ſwore that they had brought him a *Flanders Mare*. However, he married her upon the 6th of *January*, in 1540, and lay with that Queen of his five Months. His diſlike of her daily increaſing, he frankly confeſ'd to *Thomas Cromwell*, who had been the Promoter of that Match, (whom he put to death, though he had been exceeding ſerviceable to him) that it was not in his Power to conquer his Averſion for her; that he doubted whether ſhe came a Virgin to his Bed; and that ſhe had a rank and diſagreeable Sent about her. She was a *Lutheran*, and had been betrothed to the Duke of *Lorraine's* Son, when they were both very Young: and that was ſufficient to Authorize and Juſtify *Henry* in his Deſign, who was fully reſolv'd to part with her. However, a Convocation of the Clergy found this Marriage to be againſt the Laws of their Country, and Laws of God: and on the 9th of *July*, the Sentence of their Divorce was pronounced.

Thus having got a Diſpenſation from living for the future with *Anne*, he married *Catharine*, My Lord *Edmond Howard's* Daughter, who was the Duke of *Norfolk's* Brother: and tho' he had taken notice of the exact Diſcretion of her Carriage, it was diſcovered to be ſo ſilly and brutiſh, that it was with Eaſe prov'd againſt her that ſhe had maintained Criminal Converſations with private Men, both before and after her Marriage. She acknowleg'd too that ſhe was Guilty, and in 1542, ſhe was beheaded, together with the Witneſſes and Acceſſories of her Lewdneſs. At laſt after he had done a great deal of Miſchief to the Church, after having put to death his Wives, and his Favourites, after having by a Will regulated the Succeſſion of his Children to the Throne, he died the 28th of *January*, in 1547, of a continual Flux of his

Fat

Fat which trickled down from all parts of his Body, by reason of the Anguish of an Ulcer which he had in one of his Legs. 'Twas provided by his Will, if it was not a supposititious one, that *Edward* the Son of *Jane* *Seymour*, being ten Years old, should succeed him; that in Case he should die without Issue, *Mary* the Daughter of Queen *Catharine* should inherit the Crown. But if *Mary* had no Children, that *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Anne Bullen* should succeed her. That then the Crown should be enjoy'd by the next legal Heir, which was fulfilled in the Person of *James* the VIth King of *Scotland*, the Son of *Mary* the Grand-child of *Margaret*, *Henry's* Sister.

*Henry* *Buchold* of *Leyden*, a Taylor by Trade, was in the City of *Munster*, proclaim'd King of the Anabaptists, on the 24th of *June*, in 1534; and *Bertrand Knipperdolling* was his Vice-Roy. These are pretty near the Matter, the extravagant and abominable Doctrines of those Hereticks, " That the Righteous before the day of  
" Judgment shall have a Monarchy upon Earth: that  
" the Wicked shall be all destroyed. That Men are not  
" justified by their Faith in Christ Jesus. That Jesus  
" Christ is neither the Son of *Mary* nor of God. That  
" there is no Original Sin. That Infants can by no  
" means be Baptised: That Immersion or Dipping is the  
" only form of Baptism. That every one has Authority  
" to Preach and Administer the Sacraments. That  
" Men are not oblig'd to pay Respect to Magistrates,  
" nor to take an Oath of Allegiance to their Sovereign.  
" That every thing ought to be common; and that it is  
" lawful to Marry many Wives.

*Clement* the VIIth died on the 25th of *September*, in 1534, having been Pope ten Years, ten Months, and seven Days; and *Paul* the IIIrd succeeded him the 13th of *October*, in the same Year.

*John Aventine*, Author of the History of the *Boians*, died the 9th of *January*; and the Cardinal *Thomas* of *Vio*, or *Cajetan*, ( because he was a Native of *Cajeta* ) on the 9th of *September*, or as some think on the 10th of *August*. *John Rhedius* a Dane, and *Peter Savonius* doubted not at all but *Ragguagli di Parnasso*, and *Pietra di Paragone*, which were publish'd in the name of *Trajan Boccalini*,



*lini*, were the Works of this Cardinal. But it is certain that they were mistaken ; and that *Boccalin*, who was a Son of an Architect of *Rome*, was drubbed, or beaten with bags of Sand at *Venice*, by the Spanish Embassador's Order, who found an expedient to have him taken ; and those that understand Italian are not ignorant what the Word *Saquetter* imports.

In 1535, on the 24th of *June*, *Munster*, which was in the Hands of the Anabaptists, was taken by force ; and Fire and Sword was us'd for the Punishment of those Hereticks.

*Geneva* which was a Dependent of the Duke of *Savoy*, left the Catholick and Roman Religion, and made it self Free and Independent,

*Andrew de Foix*, the Brother of *Lautrech*, had conquer'd all *Navarre*, except the Castle of *Pampelune* ; when *Ignatius Loyola*, a Gentleman of a Noble Family, being twenty Years old, who had got into that place, was wounded there upon the Wall, by a slight stroke of a Canon-shot, which broke his Thigh, by which Accident he was made a Cripple all his whole Life. Being in his Retirement at Home, he seriously consider'd the Things of Eternity, and resolv'd in that Meditation to labour after Knowledge, and at the same time to get an Opportunity of serving God. He went afterward to be a Student in the University of *Paris*, where having got together some vertuous Persons of his own Temper, he happily begun to found the Society of *Jesus*, of which he was the chief Governor. In 1539, *Paul the IIIrd* having seen the Rules of that his Institution, cried out in a rapture, as *Father Riccioli* tells us ; *Here is the Finger of God* ; and confirm'd it the Year following by a Bull of the 27th of *September*, reducing the number of the Society to sixty, of which he allowed an Augmentation by a Bull of the 14th of *March*, in 1543. 'Twould be needless to speak here of that celebrated Company : and 'tis sufficient for me to observe that *Ignatius Loyola*, being born in 1491, and dying in 1556, was put in the number of the Blessed by *Paul the Vth*, in 1609, and in the number of the Saints by *Gregory the XVth*, on the 12th of *March*, in 1622.

*Thomas*

Thomas More, Chancellor of England, was beheaded at London in 1535. on the 2d of July, for censuring King Henry the VIIIth's Divorce; and Charles the Vth upon this News, which was soon publish'd, declar'd, That † King Henry in beheading Sir Thomas More, had cut off the Head of the Kingdom of England. John Fisher Bishop of Rochester, died for the same Reason, after a long continuance in Prison, where Paul the IIIrd made him a Cardinal.

In 1536. \* John Manard a Physitian, and Philosopher, died at Ferrara, and the learned and famous † Erasmus at Basil. Lilio Gregorio Giraldi, in the second Dialogue of the Poets of our time, amidst the Praises which he gives him, questions whether he was so great a Man as some Men are persuaded he was; and he says, " That he is an Italian among the Germans, and a German among the Italians. His Name was not Desiderius Erasmus, but Gerard Gerardi, or Gerard the Son of Gerard, about which thing you may consult Gerard Vossius in his third Book of Idolatry.

In 1538. the University of Strasburg was founded by John || Sturmius: And Bonaventure Vulcanius who took pains upon some Latin and other Greek Authors, was born at Bruges.

John Antonio Licenio of Pordenon a fam'd Painter, died at Ferrara; the learned William Budeus at Paris; Francis Guicciardin at Florence, and the next Year Theophrastus Paracelsus at Saltzburg.

John Casimir Count Palatine of the Rhine, the Son of Frederick the IIIrd, was born in 1543; and Polydore Caldara de Caravaggio, a celebrated Painter was stab'd in

F f 4

the

---

† Vid. *Erasmi. Epist. l. 2. p. 8, 9, 10. 2. 6. Drexel. in Tobia, p. 1. c. 2.*

\* *Manard. conscripsit libros 20 Epistolar. Medicinal.*

† *Erasmi Vitam in Vitis Philosoph. scripsit Melch. Adam, quem vide p. 86, & seq.*

|| *Sturmius natus Sleida oppido ad confinia Limburgensis, & Fuliacensis Ducatus. V. Melch. Adam, qui vitas Sturmii & Vulcanii scripsit.*

the City of *Messina*, by a young Man who was his Servant, and who murder'd him only to rob him. Cardinal *Contarini* a Venetian, *Nicholas Copernicus*, *John Ludovicus Vives* a Spaniard, and *Andrew Carlostad* died also the same Year.

*Clement Marot*, whose Poems are well enough known, the Son of *John Marot*, Poet to Queen *Anne* of Little Britain, and *Francis* the Ist's *Valet de Chambre*, died at the Age of sixty in extreme Poverty, on some day in 1544.

In 1545. there was without regard to Age or Sex, a most cruel Massacre of the *Vaudois*, so nam'd from the leading Man amongst them, *Peter de Vaud* in *Dauphine*, a Merchant at *Lyons*, call'd since that time \* *Albigenses* from the Diocess of *Albi* in *Languedoc*, where by the means of a certain Man, one *Olivier* a great Follower of *Peter de Vaud's* Doctrin, the Opinions of the latter were disperfed. Inasmuch as their Elders and Ministers were call'd *Barbes*, they denominated from them *Barbets*, i. e. Sons, because in the Language of *Lombardy*, *Barbe* signifies Father or Uncle.

In 1546. the Council of *Trent* was open'd, which was put off and frequently interrupted by Wars.

*Tycho-Brabe* was born the 14th of *December*, in the same Year in *Schonen*, which is the *Scandia*, or *Scandinavia* of the Ancients. *Martin Luther* died in *Islebia* on the 18th of *February*; *Cheredin* surnam'd *Barbarossa*, at *Constantinople*; and *Julius Romanus*, *Raphael's* Scholar died at *Rome* in 1544.

In 1547. *Philip*, Landgrave of *Hesse*, was arrested Prisoner at *Hall* in *Saxony*, by the Order of *Charles* the Vth; and *Herman* Count of *Meurs*, Archbishop and Elector of *Cologne*, was removed from his Dignities by *Paul* the IIIrd, and the Emperor. *Adolphus* Count of *Schwansbourg* was put in his Places as his Coadjutor.

Anne

---

\* Ils furent encore nommes *Pauvres de Lyon*, *Lyonistes*, *Papicains*, ou *Pistes*, *Tolosains*, *Egomiles*, *Bulgares*, *Patariens*, *Insabaras*, *Gazares*, *Turlupins*, *Arnoldistes*, *Esperonistes*, *Jesephites*, *Lollards*, &c.

*Anne* Queen of Hungary, the Wife of King *Ferdinand*; *Peter Bembo*, and *James Sadolet*, Cardinals; *Ferdinand Cortez*; *Francis Vatablus*; *Perrin Buanaccorsi*, surnamed *Del Vaga*, for having made his abode with a Painter of that Name; *Sebastian of Venice*, commonly call'd *Del Piombo*, died all that very Year, which was also fatal upon the last day of *February* to *Francis* the Ist. I have already spoke of that Prince in some Places; and that, which I have left to say of his Life, is no great matter. *John* of Orleans, Count of *Angouleme*, the third Son of *Lewis* Duke of Orleans, being dangerously assaulted at *Paris*, was brought into *England*, as an Hostage for a hundred thousand Crowns, due from the Duke his Brother to the English, who had come into *France* at their Charge against the Duke of *Burgundy*. He continued a Prisoner there thirty Years; and at his Return, he married *Margaret* the Daughter of *Alain*, Vicount of *Roban*, and *Mary* the Daughter of *Francis* the first of the Name, Duke of *Little Britain*, and of *Izabella* of *Scotland*. That *John* Duke of Orleans died in the Castle of *Coignac* in 1467, and *Margaret* his Wife in 1468. *Charles* their Son being then eight Years old, was educated in the Court of *Lewis* the XIth; and in 1488. married *Lewis*a the Daughter of *Philip* Earl of *Bresse*, after Duke of *Savoy*; and of *Margaret* of *Bourbon* his first Wife. He had by *Lewis*a, *Francis* the Ist; and *Margaret* married first in 1509. to *Charles* Duke of *Alencon*, who died in 1525. and afterwards to *Henry* the IId, Duke of *Nemours*, King of *Navarre*, the eldest Son of *John* King of *Navarre*, and of *Catharine de Foix* the Heiress of that Principality. That Queen who had studied the Sciences no less than the King her Brother, published to the World these Books, *The Pearl of Pearls*, *The Looking-glass of the sinful Soul*, *The Triumph of the Lamb*, and some other Treatises of her making. Cardinal *Bellay* said, she was one of the quick Wits of *France*; others call'd her the Tenth Muse, and the Fourth Grace. *John Dorat*, *Peter Ronsard*, *Nicholas Denisot*, a Lawyer, *Matthew Paccius*, *Charles* and *Scevola de Sainte Marthe*, have prais'd her highly; and the three Princesses, *Anne*, *Margaret*, and *Jane Seymour*, made upon her death a hundred Latin



tin Distichs, which were translated into several Languages by *Joachim* of *Bellay*, and by other Poets of his time. She died in the Castle of *Odos* in the County of *Bigorre*, on the 21st of *December* in 1549; and the King her Husband in 1555. in the two and fiftieth Year of his Age.

Never did King love his Subjects better than *Francis* the 1st. nor was King ever better beloved by them. He was stiled the *Father*, the *Restorer of Learning*, and the *Sciences*; and he could not but love Men of Learning, because he was himself in that Number. His Stature was large, his Face beautiful, and his Eyes brisk; he had a high Forehead, and a Hawk-nose; and though plain and true-hearted, good and civil, his Generosity, his Clemency, his Bounty, his Magnificence, and his Carriage, evidently shew'd him to be a King. He lov'd Hunting, Musick, Pictures, and Statues; and by the Castles of *Fontainebleau*, of *St. Germain in Laye*, of *Chambor*, of *Bologne*, or of *Madrit*, of *Folembray*, of *Villers-Cotretz*, and by the beginning of the *Louvre*, one may conclude that he was delighted with Architecture. We may say likewise that he was no Enemy to the Ladies, which was easily observable as soon as he saw *Anne de Pisseleu*, whom he made Countess of *Estampes*, brought by his Mother to him at his departure out of his Prison in *Spain*, to divert him after his long Trouble. If he had confined his Inclinations to her, his Life perhaps had been longer. But the Fair *Ferroniere* probably hasten'd the end of his days; because her Husband, who was an Ironmonger, not being able with patience to allow the King a share in the Embraces of his Wife, contrived to go into a Bawdy-house, where he got the scandalous Disease. He was cur'd of it by some prepar'd Remedies; his Wife died of it, and the King all his Life languished under it through the foolish and wicked Tenderness of his Physicians, who had more regard to his Quality than to his Disease. He died in *Rambouillet* Castle on the last day of *March* in 1547: And I forgot that on the 14th of *April* in 1544. *Francis* of *Bourbon*, Earl of *Enguien*, being twenty Years old, won the famous Battle of *Cerisoles*, of the Marquess of *Guaft*; that he

he kill'd him ten thousand Men upon the Spot ; that he took his Cannon, Ammunition, and Baggage ; that he made four thousand Prisoners, and that he did all this with the loss only of two hundred Men. Here is a Passage which pleas'd me, and which possibly will not displease those who have heard nothing said of it. The Marquess of *Guast* who question'd nor but he should have the whole Advantage of the Battle, gave very fine Arms, a costly Suit, and a Spanish Horse to a Fool that followed his Army, with a Promise of five hundred Ducats on condition that he would first carry to the Marchioness his Lady the happy Tidings of his Victory. This Fool was one of the Prisoners taken by Count *Enguien* ; and appearing in this Equipage, and being thought to be a Man of Quality, he was presently brought to the Prince. When he had ask'd of him what he really was, he told him that the Marquess of *Guast* had presented him with those Arms, and that Habit, promising him five hundred Ducats to carry the Marchioness the News of the Victory. But, added he, " I doubt not but the Marquess is willing to get the Money himself, and that before me he will perform that which he committed to my care.

By Queen *Claude* his first Wife, who was a Dutchess and the Heiress of *Little Britain* and *Milan*, born on the 14th of *October* in 1499. crown'd at *St. Denis* in 1517. dead in the Castle of *Blois* in 1524 ; at the Age of five and twenty, King *Francis* had the Children which I am going to name ; *Francis* the Dauphin born the last of *February* in 1517. crown'd at *Rennes* Duke of *Bretany*, and poison'd at *Lyons* by *Montecuculi* of *Ferrara*, one of his Household, died in 1536. *Henry* the II<sup>d</sup> succeeded him. *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, born the 22<sup>d</sup> of *January* in 1521. died in 1545. *Lewis* born the 19<sup>th</sup> of *August* in 1515. died in 1517. on the 21<sup>st</sup> of *September*. *Charlotte* born the 23<sup>d</sup> of *October* in 1516. died in 1524. *Magdalene* born in 1520. married in 1537. on the 1<sup>st</sup> of *January* to *James* the V<sup>th</sup>, King of *Scotland*, died on the 7<sup>th</sup> of *July* the same Year ; and *James* the V<sup>th</sup>'s second Wife was *Mary* of *Lorraine*, the Widow of *Lewis* of *Orleans*, Duke of *Longueville*, by whom he had *Mary* Queen of

of Scotland, *Francis the Ild's Consort*. *Margaret* the youngest Daughter of *Francis the Ist*, born the 5th of *June* in 1523. was in 1526. promised to *Lewis Prince of Piemont*, the Son of *Charles the Ild*, Duke of *Savoy*; but he dying at thirteen, the Marriage was not consummated. After that she was betroth'd to *Emanuel Philibert Duke of Savoy*, *Lewis's* younger Brother, and the Marriage was solemniz'd at *Paris* on the 19th of *July* in 1559. She understood the Latin and Greek Tongues, and her Praises were published by *Mark Antonio Flaminio*, by *Monod*, by *Tonso*, by *Michael de L' Hospital*, her Chancellor, and after Chancellor of *France*, by *Joachim de Bellay*, by *John Dorat*, by *Peter de Ronsard*, by *Philip Desportes*, and by many others. She brought to her Husband, Duke *Charles Emanuel*, one of the most glorious Princes of his Age, and died the 15th of *September*, in 1575. having liv'd one and fifty Years, three Months and nine Days. As for *Eleoner*, the second Wife of *Francis the Ist*, born in *Brabant* in 1498, on the 24th of *November*, crown'd the 5th of *March* in 1530; when her Husband was dead, she retir'd into the Low-Countries near her Brother *Charles*; she followed him into *Spain* in 1556. and died at *Badaios*, being threescore Years old, in 1558. which was in the Year, in which the Emperor died.

In 1548. Religion had a new Face under *Edward the VIth*, King of *England*; and *Sigismond* King of *Poland*, who had *Sigismond* his Son for his Successor, died after a Reign of two and forty Years.

Pope *Paul the Ild*, of the Family of *Farnese*, died in 1549. being eighty and two Years old; and *Julius the Ild* succeeded him. He was of the House of *Del Monte*, and was elected on the 8th of *February* in 1550. *Pere-notte de Granville*, *Andrew Alciat*, a great Lawyer; and *Paul Fagius*, who had wonderful Skill in *Hebrew*, died in 1550.

In 1551. *John Basil Duke of Muscovy*, took *Casan*, the Metropolis of the Province of the same Name in *Tartary* the Desert. *Mark Antonio Flaminio*, known for his Verses, died at *Bologne*; *Martin Bucer* at *Cambrige*. The latter of the City of *Schlestad* in *Alsatia*, and left  
the

the Dominican Habit and Order which he had enter'd young. When his Disputations, the Zeal he expressed for the Protestant Religion, and the known Esteem *Martin Luther* had for him, had gain'd him a great Reputation in *Germany*; he was invited into *England* by *Thomas Crammer* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in the Reign of *Edward* the VIth. His Body, and the Body of *Fagius*, were taken out of their Graves and burnt in *Queen Mary's* Time; and in *Queen Elizabeth's* those two Hereticks were declar'd Innocent. Farther, 'tis of some use to observe that the *Psalter* which was made publick under the Name of *Aretius Felinus*, is *Martin Bucer's*, who fram'd his Name *Aretius*, of the Greek word *ἄρετις*, by the Latins call'd *Mars*, alluding to *Martin*; and out of the Latin word *felis*, which signifies a Cat, he form'd *Felinus* to give a small hint of his Name *Bucer*, which signifies a Cat in High Dutch.

In 1552. the City of *Metz* was brought into Subjection to *Henry* the IIId, by the Constable *Anne de Montmorency*. *Paulus Fovius* of *Como* in *Lombardy*, Bishop of *Nocera*, who in his History wrote only according to the Dictates of his Passion or Interest; *Sebastian Munster*, a Hebrew Professor; *Lilio Gregorio Giraldi*, whose most excellent Works are yet Extant; *Peter Appian*, call'd *Benewiz*, a fam'd Astronomer, and Cosmographer, died, the first at *Florence*, the second at *Basil*, the third in a Hospital at *Ferrara*, and the last at *Ingolstadt*, a City of the Upper *Bavaria* upon the *Danube*. *Francis Xavier* being about five and fifty, died the same Year in the Isle of *Sanchian*, where the Portuguese traded with the Chinese, because the City of *Amacoa* was not then built.

In 1553. *Edward* the VIth, King of *England*, died on the 6th of *July*, being sixteen Years old. If one may believe *Cardan*, in the Matter, who is a very credible Author, that Prince, before he was eight Years old, wrote Latin Letters to *Henry* his Father; but when he was fifteen, he understood Latin, Greek, French, Italian, Spanish, and was no Stranger to Musick, nor Logick, nor the Principles of Natural Philosophy. *Michael Reues*, surnamed *Servetus*, who asserted with the Sabellians,



*Sabellians*, "That there was in God but one Person; "with the *Eutichyans*, that there was but one Nature "in our Lord Jesus Christ;" and who made seven Books of the *Errors concerning the Trinity*, was burnt at Geneva the same Year, on the 27th of October, upon the repeated Requests of Calvin. He was a Native of *Taragon* in *Spain*; he profess'd *Physick* at *Pavia*, and travel'd into *Africa* that he might exactly understand the *Alcoran*. Since that time *Lewis Herzec* of *Bavaria*; *Laelius Socinus* of *Siena*; *Nicholas Paruta*, an Italian; *John Valentine Gentiles* of *Cosenza*, in the Kingdom of *Naples*; *John Blandrata* of *Saluzzo*; *John Paul Alciat* of *Piemont*; *Francis Lisman* of *Corfou*; *John Somer* of *Pirn* in *Misnia*; *James Paleologus* of *Scio*; *Faustus Socinus*, the Nephew of *Laelius*, rais'd the Price of, and refin'd upon the Impious Blasphemies of *Servetus*. The Sect which has its Denomination from *Laelius* and *Faustus Socinus* is but too well known: And among the most learned of those Blasphemers, you may reckon *Faustus Socinus*, *Ostrod*, *John Crellius*, *Lewis Wolfogh*, *Christopher Sandius*, and *Daniel Brenius*, who has made Notes upon the whole Bible, though this last has took almost all he has from *Grotius*.

*George* the Son of *Ernestus*, Prince of *Anbalt*, who wrote some Theological Discourses, very much magnify'd by *Camerarius* and *Melancton*; *John Baptista Egnatius*, a Venetian; *Jerome Fracastorius* of *Verona*, an Orator, a Poet, a Physician, Philosopher and Mathematician, died in 1553.

*Francis Rablais* of *Chinon* in *Touraine*, the Son of *Thomas Rablais*, an Apothecary of the same City, died, as some say, in that very Year. When he was young, he took the Habit of *St. Francis* among the *Cordeliers* of *Fontenay-Le-Comte* in *Poitou*; he went afterwards into the Order of *St. Benedict*, at *Maillezais*, and left his Cloyster that he might go and study *Physick* at *Montpellier*, where a while after he was in great Repute for his publick Lectures. He made some excellent Discourses upon *Hippocrates*, he translated his Aphorisms into Latin; and was Physician in Ordinary to Cardinal *John Du Bellay*, the Bishop of *Paris*, who had him with him in

his Embassy to *Rome*; who made use of him in some Negotiations, which he manag'd most successfully; who gave him a Prebend in the Collegiate Church of *St. Maur des Fosses*, and the Rectory of *Meudon*. The greatest Men of the Age he liv'd in had a high esteem for him; for besides the French, which was his Mother-Tongue, he was Master of the *Italian, Spanish, German, Latin, Greek, Hebrew*, and of *Arabick* too, which he set himself to learn at *Rome*; he was a good Grammarian, a tolerable Poet for his time, a Philosopher, a Physician, a Lawyer, and Astronomer.

*Melinus* of *Saint Gelais*, an Abbot of Monks, a celebrated Poet in the time of *Francis* the 1st, and *Henry* the 2d, the Son of *Octavian* of *Saint Gelais*, Bishop of *Angouleme*, who had taken great Care of his Education, died at *Paris*, in 1554. He was a Mathematician, a Philosopher, a Divine, a Lawyer, a Poet, and look'd upon to be as quick at Jest and Repartee, as any Man in the World.

Pope *Julius* the 3d, whose Successor was *Marcellus* the 2d, died on the 23d of *March*, in 1555: and *Paul* the 4th of the Family of *Caraffa*, on the 18th of *August*, succeeded *Marcellus* the 2d, de *Monte Pulciano* in *Tuscany*, who was Pope but two and twenty Days.

*Henry* the 2d, after he had broken many Lances in a Turnament at *Paris*, compell'd *Gabriel* of *Montgomery* Lord of *Lorges*, Captain of the Scotch Guards, the last day of *June*, to enter the Lifts against him. He obey'd him and broke his Lance; but the Eye-hole of the King's Headpiece being by chance open, he was wounded with a Splinter of it in his Eye, which was the occasion of his Death in eleven days time, he expiring on the 10th of *July*, in 1559. He married *Catharine* the only Daughter of *Lawrence de Medicis*, Duke of *Urbino*, and of *Magdalene* Countess of *Bologne, Clermont, Lauragais, Baronesse de la Tour d' Auvergne*, the Grand Niece of *Leo* the 10th, and call'd the Niece of *Clement* the 7th, though that Pope was but Cousin German to *Peter de Medicis*, who was *Catharine's* Grandfather. She had few Virtues, and many Vices; and to the Character that *Davila* gives of her, that she lov'd to see Human Blood shed, that she was never true to her Word, this may

may be added, that she was Ambitious, a great Disssembler, and never without Trick and Stratagem in time of need. After ten Years Barrenness she had *Francis* the II<sup>d</sup> who was King; *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*; *Charles* who reign'd; *Henry* the III<sup>d</sup>, *Charles's* Successor; *Francis* of *Anjou*; *Elizabeth*; *Claude*; *Margaret*; *Victoria*, and *Jane*, that were Royal Twins. *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans* being born the 3<sup>d</sup> of *February*, in 1548, died on the 24<sup>th</sup> of *October*, in 1550. *Francis* Duke of *Anjou* who had been nam'd *Hercules*, was born on the 18<sup>th</sup> of *March*, in 1554; and there were some Proposals of Marriage betwixt him and Queen *Elizabeth*. He was Crown'd at *Antwerp* Duke of *Brabant*, of *Limburg*, and of *Lothier*, in 1582; the next Year he was oblig'd to withdraw upon the 7<sup>th</sup> of *January*, after he had endeavour'd by his Intrigues to make the City his own. There were above Fifteen Hundred French-men killed, and about Two Thousand made Prisoners: and after his return into *France*, having many Fits of the Ague, he vomited a great quantity of Blood, and languishing visibly and daily, he died in 1584, being generally thought to be poison'd. He liv'd Thirty Years, Two Months, and 26 Days.

*Elizabeth* born at *Fontain-bleau*, on the 2<sup>d</sup> day of *April*, in 1545, was married to *Philip* the II<sup>d</sup>, King of *Spain*, the 22<sup>d</sup> of *June*, in 1559, and had two Daughters by him, *Elizabeth Claire-Eugenia* the Wife of *Albert* Archduke of *Austria*, the Emperor *Maximilian* the II<sup>d's Son; and *Catharine* married to *Charles Emanuel* the Duke of *Savoy*. *Elizabeth* the Queen died the 3<sup>d</sup> day of *October*, in 1568, being Three and Twenty. *Claude* the II<sup>d</sup>, Daughter of our *Henry*, born in 1547, married in 1558, to *Charles* the III<sup>d</sup>, Duke of *Lorraine*, the Son of Duke *Francis*, and of *Christiern* of *Denmark*; died in 1575, in the 28<sup>th</sup> Year of her Age. *Margaret* Dutches of *Valois*, born on the 14<sup>th</sup> of *May*, in 1552, married to Prince *Henry*, afterwards King of *Navarre*, and of *France*, surnamed the Great, died at *Paris*, being Sixty Three, on the 27<sup>th</sup> of *March*, in 1615. *Victoria* and *Jane* were born the 24<sup>th</sup> of *June*, in 1556; *Victoria* died immediately after her Birth; and *Jane* her Sister, as soon as she was Born, and Baptized.</sup>

The

The natural Children of *Henry*, and of *Diana* Dutcheſs of *Valentinoiſ*, were *Henry* of *Angouleme*, Knight of *Malta*, advanc'd to the Dignity of Grand Prior, by the Death of *Francis* of *Lorraine*, of the Houſe of *Guiſe*; *Diana* a legitimated Lady of *France*, at firſt married in 1553, to *Horatius Farnefe* Duke of *Caſtro*, the Younger Son of *Peter-Lewis*, the Brother of *Octavius*, and the Uncle of *Alexander Farnefe* Prince of *Parma*, whoſe wonderful Atchievements may be ſeen by the inquiſitive in *Strada's* Hiſtory of the War of *Flanders*. After *Horatius* had been killed with a Canon-ſhot, in *Hedin* Caſtle in *Artois*, *Francis* Duke of *Montmorency*, a Peer and Marſhal of *France*, the eldeſt Son of Conſtable *Anne*, and of *Magdalene* of *Savoy*, married *Diana*, in 1557, and died in 1579.

*Henry* the II<sup>d</sup> was a proper Man, of an agreeable Aſpect, eaſy of Acceſs; his Face was ſomewhat long, his Noſe ſtreight, his Forehead high, his Eye Sweet and Grave, his Complexion Brown and ſomewhat Red; and he was reckon'd at all ſorts of Exerciſe to be the moſt dexterous Man in his Kingdom. Though he was naturally gracious, and inclinable enough to be juſt; he had neither ſteadineſs of Mind, nor an Application requiſite for Buſineſs: and he allow'd himſelf to be managed by his Favourite *Diana* of *Poitiers*, the Widow of *Lewis* of *Breze*, whom he had made Dutcheſs of *Valentinoiſ*. She was Forty Years old, having had a great many Children by her Husband; ſhe was Outragious, Unjuſt and Haughty towards thoſe that diſpleas'd her, and ſtuck at nothing to ſerve them who were ſo happy as to be in her Favour: and in Turnaments, in his Mottos, in his Furniture, and upon the Fronts of his Palaces, *Henry* was deſirous in Complement to that bright and buckſome *Diana*, that there ſhould appear a Half-Moon, with Bows, and Arrows. Before his time the Princes of the Blood wore no Swords in the Great Court of Parliament, and he decreed that in his Abſence the Princes of the Blood, and the other Princes, the Dukes, and the Peers, the Conſtable and the Marſhals, might enter there with their Swords by their Sides. He converted into Dukedoms and Peerdoms, the Lordſhip of *Albert*



in *Guienne*, for the King of *Navarre's* sake, the Earldom of *Aumale* in *Normandy*, in Favour of *Claude* of *Lorraine*, the First Duke of *Guise*, and the Barony of *Montmorency*, in the Person of *Anne* Constable of *France*. He appointed the House of Parliament in *Little-Britain*, the Residence of which was settled at *Rennes*; he built the Mint-Chamber, like a Sovereign Court, and a Court of *Assistance* at *Monferand* in *Auvergne*. On the 12th of *June*, in 1549, the *Switzers* not without much Difficulty resolved to enter into an Alliance which he was willing to renew with them, because he had burnt some of those who were of their Religion; because he had also had the Curiosity to see them die; and because the Sight of so dreadful a Spectacle was unfit for a Christian King. I have spoken of his warlike Actions in the Life of *Charles* the Vth.

*John* the IIIrd King of *Portugal*, the Son of *Emanuel*, died in 1557, and *Sebastian*, who was but three Years old, succeeded him.

*Gustavus* the Ist, King of *Sueden*, the Father of *Henry*, or *Erick* the XIVth; *Philip Schwartzerd*, who assum'd the Name of *Melancthon*, or black Earth, as *Schwartzerd* signifies in the German Tongue; and Chancellor *Francis Olivier* the Predecessor of *Michael de l'Hopital*; and *Andrew Doria* the most fam'd Captain of his Age, died in the Year 1560.

*Francis* the IId, King of *France*, who died on the 5th of *December*, of a very violent Imposthume in his Ear, liv'd not above seventeen Years, and reign'd but seventeen Months, and Five and Twenty Days. His Marriage being agreed upon with *Mary Stewart*, the only Daughter and Heiress of *James* the Vth, King of *Scotland*, and of *Mary* of *Lorraine*; was solemnly celebrated in the Church of *Notre-Dame* in *Paris*, in 1558, by *Charles* Cardinal of *Bourbon* Archbishop of *Roan*: and the next Year he was Anointed and Crown'd King by *Charles* Cardinal of *Lorraine*, Archbishop of *Reims*. That Prince being of a weak Understanding, and of a very nice Constitution, the Princes of the Blood undertook the Administration of Affairs. The Duke of *Guise*, and the Cardinal his Brother being Related to the King by the Queen

Queen his Spouse, who was their Niece, were willing to govern : and *Catharine* the Queen Mother, the most Ambitious, and perhaps too the most wicked Woman living, was desirous to keep to her self alone the whole Management of the Kingdom. The Presences of these three Persons, were the Source of all the Disorders that happen'd in the Reign of *Francis*, and of the three succeeding Kings. The Princes of the Blood; *Antony* King of *Navarre*, *Lewis* Prince of *Conde*, the Duke of *Montpencier*, and the Prince *de la Roche* upon the River *Yonne*, form'd one Party. The Duke of *Guise*, the Cardinal *Lorraine*, the Duke of *Aumale*, the Cardinal of *Guise*, the Marquess of *Elbeuf*, the Grand Prior made up the other : and *Catharine*, who went over to neither, but stood hovering betwixt both, endeavour'd by her Flatteries, and Promises to draw to her self either of them, which should have most Inclination to support and serve her. Whilst they were contesting their Rights, the *Guises* seiz'd upon the King's Person, and soon found in their Interests the Marshal of Saint *Andrew*, *Lewis* Duke of *Montpencier*, *Charles* Prince *de la Roche* upon the *Yonne*, and the Constable of *Montmorency*; to whom the Protestant Religion was abominable. By a different Opinion the Admiral *de Coligny*, and his Brother Lord *d' Andelot*, a Colonel of the French Foot, joyn'd the Princes; and the Queen *Catharine* encourag'd the *Guises* in hopes of being the better able to divide the Two Factions, and to reign alone. In the mean while the Young King ordain'd in every Parliament, *une Chambre ardente*, i. e. a Committee empower'd to punish by Fire all those in General who had abandon'd the Roman Religion : and there was so great a Multitude of 'em burn'd, that at last, the rest resolved to prevent their fatal Sentences by a League. 'Tis from a Word in the \**Suisse* which signifies League, which was corrupted by the People of *Geneva*, as Friar *Paul* says, that that Word *Hugonot* is derived, and I shall call them by another name no more.

G g 2

They

---

\* *Eidgnossen*, *Eidgnos*, *Huguenots*.

They continued with much haste to inquire after them, when a Gentleman of *Angoumois*, *John Bary de la Renaudie* secretly supported by Prince *Lewis* of *Conde*, attempted with his Followers at *Amboise*, to take the Duke of *Guise*, and the Cardinal his Brother, that they might be condemn'd to death by the States. But the Conspiracy being detected, *de la Renaudie* was killed as he was defending himself: and there were near Twelve Hundred of his Accomplices who were beheaded, drown'd, or hang'd. The Prince of *Conde* also was arrested at *Orleans*, and condemn'd to lose his Head. But the King died at that time; and 13 Days after, *Lewis de Conde* got out of Prison.

The Council of *Trent*, which was begun in *Paul* the III<sup>d</sup>'s time, and continued under *Julius* the III<sup>d</sup>, ended in *Pius* the IV<sup>th</sup>'s time; on the 4<sup>th</sup> of *December*, in 1563. It lasted five Years; two while *Paul* sat on the Papal Throne, one whilst *Julius*, and two when *Pius* was there: And the Articles of it were signed by four Legats, by two Cardinals, three Patriarchs, five and twenty Archbishops, two hundred sixty eight Bishops, seven Abbots, nine and Thirty Procuratours of the absent Prelates, and by seven Generals of Orders.

*Francis Salviati*, a Painter of *Florence*, died that Year: and in the Year following, *Michael Angelo Buonaroti*, a Painter, Architect, and great Statuary.

*In the Reign of Maximilian the II<sup>d</sup>, and Rodolphus the II<sup>d</sup>, and Matthias.*

*Alexander Ales* a Scotchman, a Professor in the University of *Leipsick*, died in 1565, on the 17<sup>th</sup> of *March*: And we should take heed lest we confound him with the other *Alexander Hales*, who was the first as it is reported who durst write against *Lombard*, the Master of the Sentences, and who had *St. Bonaventure*, and *St. Thomas Aquinas* for his Scholars.

*Adrian Turnebus* died the 12<sup>th</sup> of *June*; *Paul* the IV<sup>th</sup> on the 9<sup>th</sup> of *December*: *Conrade Gesner* of *Zurich* the 13<sup>th</sup> of the same Month: *Marcus Antonius Vida*, a famous Poet,

Poet, the Bishop of *Alba*, and *William Rondelet* the same Year. In 1566, the Count of *Egmont* Governor of *Artois*, and *Philip* of *Montmorency* being convicted of Treason, and of Disloyalty to the King of *Spain* were both beheaded at *Brussels*.

*Charles* the Son of *Philip* the II<sup>d</sup> was poison'd, as some say, by his own Father, in 1568. The latter had before that had so little regard for the Memory of the Emperor his Father, whom he suspected to have entertained the Doctrines of the reformed Religion, that he order'd his dead Body to be digged out of the Ground, and his Bones to be burnt, not at all fearing, or being Apprehensive, that having condemn'd him as a Heretick, he himself acknowledged that he had lost and forfeited all his Kingdoms, and consequently the Power of making over the Inheritance of 'em to his Son. In 1559, he burnt a great number of Clergy-men, convicted or suspected of Heresy, and not being able to get *Constantius Poncius* burnt in Person, who was *Charles* the VI<sup>th</sup>'s Confessor, and assisted him even to his Death; he had him burnt in Effigie.

In 1570, *John Sigismond* Prince of *Transilvania*, the Son of *John Zapoli*, died on the 14<sup>th</sup> of *March*: and after his Death *Stephen Bathori* was chosen Vaivode.

The Nuptials of *Frederick* the II<sup>d</sup>, King of *Denmark*, and of *Sophia* the Daughter of *Ulrick* Duke of *Mecklebourg*, were solemnized on the 20<sup>th</sup> of *August*, in 1572.

On the 26<sup>th</sup> of *August*, *Peter Ramus* a Professor of Philosophy, the Son of a Labourer of *Guth*, a little Town of *Vermandois*, was assassinated. After his Body had been stabb'd all over, it was thrown out at a Window; and his Bowels which were torn out of him were whip'd in the Streets by the Scholars of *James Carpentier*, and of some other Professors who had sought Opportunities to be reveng'd of that learned Man, because he had been so bold as to oppose the Opinions of *Aristotle*, who was the Idol of the Colleges. 'Tis true too, that his Religion serv'd as a Pretence for that Vengeance: and it was publickly said, that he was not hearty in the real Sentiments of the Church. After he had studied a course of Philosophy in *Paris*, as he was preparing



to go out there Master of Arts, he took this for the Thesis of his Act, *That all Argumentations founded upon Aristotle's Doctrine are Mistakes and Untruths.*

*Dionysius Lambinus*, a Native of *Montreuel* in *Picardy*, sufficiently known by his Commentaries upon several Authors of Antiquity, died at the end of the same Month of *August*.

*Charles* the IX, who was thought to be Poison'd, died of Faintness on the 30th Day of *March*, in 1574; he reigned thirteen Years and a half, and liv'd almost five and twenty. He was Quick, Active, Close, and a great Dissembler; he was Cruel, Revengeful, Cholerick, and a Blasphemer. Moreover, he was Laborious, but not Generous; he delighted in violent Exercises, he lov'd Hunting, Musick, and Poetry, and made Verses too, of which some were mingled with those of *Peter Ronsard*. For whom he he had much Affection and Esteem, and yet did no great matter for him, for fear lest becoming much richer, he might also turn negligent in Writing. He added, *That a good Poet should be used like a good Horse, which should be fed, but not glutted*: And if all Princes who liv'd before or after him, had been of his Humour, the Poets would not have much wanted Exercise to help their Digestion. As for *James Armiot*, who had been his Preceptor, he promoted him to be Bishop of *Auxerre*, and Grand Almoner. By the true Character which I have given him it may be doubted whether the Funeral Oration of that King pronounc'd at *Rome* before *Gregory* the XIIIth, and the College of Cardinals by *Mark Antony Muret*, and the other spoken in *France* by *Arnaud Sorbin de Sainte Foy*, after Bishop of *Nevers*, were agreeable to all the Rules of History, the Object of which is truth. By *Elizabeth* of *Austria* the Emperor *Maximilian* the II'd's Daughter, whose Espousals were consummated on the 27th of *November*, in 1570, and who died the 22d of *January*, in 1592, he had *Mary Elizabeth*, born at *Paris*, in 1572, upon the 27th of *October*, and dead in 1578. He had likewise by his Mistress the Lady of *Belleville*, *Charles* of *Valois* Duke of *Angouleme*, Peer of *France*, Earl of *Auvergne*, Colonel General of the Horse of *France*, who was born in *Dauphine* the

the 28th of *April*, in 1573, who was married in *Languedoc*, on the 6th of *May*, in 1591, to *Charlotte* the Daughter of *Henry* the Duke of *Montmorency*, Peer and Constable of *France*, and of *Antoinette de la Mark* his first Wife; and at his second Wedding, in 1624, to *Frances* the Daughter of *Charles* of *Narbonne*, Baron of *Maruil*, and of *Leonora de la Riviere*.

He rais'd into Dutchies and Peerdoms, the following Lordships. The Earldom of *Ponthievre*, the most antient of *Britany*, for the sake of *Sebastian* of *Luxemburg*, Vicount of *Martigues*. The Grant dated from the Month of *July*, in 1569, was made good, or took effect on the 15th of *September*, in the same Year. He rais'd the Vicountie of *Uzèz* in *Languedoc*, into a Dutchy in favour of *Anthony* of *Crussol*. His Letters Patent importing that he descended of the most antient, and most noble Families of *Languedoc*, bearing Date from the Month of *January*, in 1572, had their full effect on the 3d of *March* the same Year. He advanc'd the Marquisate of *Mayenne* in the Main to a Dukedom in the behalf of *Charles* of *Lorraine*, the Younger Brother of the Duke of *Guise*. His Patent dated from *September*, in 1573, had its full Force and Virtue on the 24th day of the same Month, and Year. For the sake of *Claude de la Tremouille*, the Son of *Lewis*, he turn'd into a Dutchy the Vicountie of *Thouars* in *Poitou*, in 1573. The Title of Peer was added to him afterward, and his Grant was made good and effectual on the 7th of *December*, in 1599. He honoured with the same Title of a Dutchy the Lordship of *Rouanois* upon the Account of *Claude Gauffier* Marquess of *Boisy* the Grand Esquire, or Master of the Horse of *France*.

Among the Ordinances of that King, there are two remarkable. In the one he decreed, that for the future the Year should begin upon the 1st Day of *January*, which before begun not till *Easter-day*. By the other he made Mothers that should out-live their Children, incapable of conveying away the Inheritance of their own Joyn-tures and peculiar Estates of which they were only to be Usufructuaries: and there is nothing more just and reasonable than this Ordinance, since the peculiar, and

ancient Estates being kept intire in eminent and noble Families, they have at least enough to support their Dignity.

Let us not for *Charles's* Honour any more mention the Duke of *Anjou*, and the Duke of *Guise*, the Festival of *St. Bartholemew*, and the following days of the Year, 1572. There could not have been a more horrible Massacre of Innocent Men : and, it may be, 'tis for that reason that *Joseph* has not spoke a Syllable of it in his History. Five Thousand Persons Massacred, and among others, Six Hundred Gentleman, some Women with Child, some Old Men, and some Children knock'd down with the Blows of a Lever, Ax, and Swords ; some Drown'd, or thrown headlong out of Windows ; the dead Body of Admiral *Cologne*, dragg'd three whole days after his Death in dirty places, hang'd up, and Broil'd ; some Catholicks who were envy'd for their Wealth, Glory, or Offices, mixed with those whom they were willing to destroy, made up the subject of a Tragedy, the Nature of which is to move Horror and Pity. Religion thirsts not after Blood, abhors Carnage and Slaughtering. But *Catharine* who bore a mortal hatred to all she could be jealous of, consulted only her own Ambition and Humour : and if she had put to death all that had a secret and invincible Aversion for her, she had turn'd the whole Kingdom into a vast Desert.

*Titian* an admirable Painter, being 99 Years old, died in 1576 : and though he was taken off by the Plague, he was buried publicly, and as he had always desir'd, in the Church of the *Cordeliers* of *Venice*, at the foot of an Altar. I have read somewhere that he and *Raphael* had so exactly drawn a Man who had an Ague, that a Physician who had a sight of the Picture, concluded and knew it to be a Quartan.

\* *Ferome Cardan*, who was no less Vain than Learned, and who attributed much to Dreams, died at *Rome* : and

---

\* *Cardanus vir inventionum Andreae Alciato. Ingenium profundissimum, felicissimum, & incomparabile ei tribuit Caesar Scalliger : quæ magna laus est ab Adversario tam gravi & acerbo, &c.*

and *Remi Belleau* a Physician, and a notable Poet in his time, in 1577, at *Paris*. Some there are who have asserted that this *Cardan*, who was unwilling to be reflected on as one deceived in his Conjectures, hasten'd his own death, that it might keep touch with the very Day he had foretold it.

In the Year 1578, *Sebastian* King of *Portugal* was killed on the 4th of *August*, in a Battle near the City *Alcazar Quiver*, which in Arabick signifies the Grand Palace, the Metropolis of the Province of *Asgar*, in the Kingdom of *Fez*: and the Description of that Battle may be seen in the last Book of the History of *Portugal* by *Osius* Bishop of *Silves*. *Ferdinand* the Son of *Philip* the IId, King of *Spain*; *Venceslaus* the Brother of the Emperor *Rodolphus*; and *John* of *Austria*, died all three in the same Year.

*Francis Drake* having left *England* on the 17th of *November*, and when he had, as they say, gone round the whole World in two Years, and 10 Months, landed again in *England* in 1580, on the 3d, or as some will have it on the 21st of *September*, and was Knighted by *Queen Elizabeth*. *Philibert* Duke of *Savoy*, died on the 10th of *August*: and *Anna Maria* the Emperor *Maximilian's* Daughter, and the Wife of *Philip* the IId, King of *Spain*, on the 25th of *October*. The same *Philip* who conquered *Portugal* was crown'd at *Lisbon* upon the 16th of *August*, in 1581.

*William Postel*, Born at *Barenton*, a Village of the Lower *Normandy*, died in 1581, on the 6th or 7th of *September*, in the Priory of *St. Nicholas des Champs* at *Paris*, where he was shut up by a Sentence of Parliament. There was no kind of Learning which he was not perfectly Master of, there were no foreign Languages which he understood not. But besides, that the reading of the Rabbins had spoil'd his Genius, he had a Whimsy took him that the Angel *Raziel* had revealed to him many Mysteries unknown to others; and upon those pretended Revelations he published an abundance of Heresies. He liv'd above a Hundred Years.

*James* Infant of *Spain*, the Son of *Philip* the IId, and of *Anna Maria* of *Austria*, died on the 21st of *November*:  
and



and by the way, I must tell you here that the word *Infant* does not signifie a *Male-Child* or *Son*, as some fancy it does ; but that in the antient Language of the People of *Biscay*, 'tis nothing else but a *Successor*. *Charlotte* of *Montpencier* the Daughter of *Lewis*, and the Third Wife of *William* Prince of *Orange*, died at *Antwerp*, on the 5th of *March* ; *George Buchanan* a Poet and Historian at *Edenborough* in *Scotland* ; and *Ferdinand Alvarez* of *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, on the 12th of *December* at *Lisbon*.

*Gregory* the XIIIth, who was *Pius* the Vth's Successor, ended his Life and Reign in the Year 1585. *John Bodin* of *Angers* known well by his Books ; but whose \* *Dialogues* make it too plain, that either he was a Jew, or that he had no religion at all ; † *Mark Antony de Muret*, who perhaps has not had a Superior since *Cicero* in Roman Eloquence, if we will be determined by the Judgment of *Monfieur la Fevre* ; and *Peter Ronsard* the greatest Poet of his Age, died the same Year. His Ancestors were born upon the Frontiers of *Hungary* and *Bulgaria* ; and *Baldwin* who brought a Company into *France* to King *Philip* of *Valois*, in the time that he was at War with the *English*, did service enough to deserve and obtain some Rewards for it. He was the stock or source of the *Ronsards* of *France*, and he took a Wife in the Dutchy of *Vendomois*. *Lewis* a Knight of the Order of *St. Michael*, and Lord Steward of the King's Household, was married to *Jane de Chaudrier*, a Person related to the Families of *Bouchage*, and *Tremoille* ; and *Peter* was born, being the Issue of that Marriage, in the Castle of *Poissoniere*, on the 11th Day of *September*, in 1524. He was Page to *Francis* the King's eldest Son, and to his Brother *Charles* the IXth, and since in the Journey which he went in the Train of *Lazarus Baif*, Master of the Requests, sent to *Spire* in the Character of an Embassador, the

---

\* Ces Dialogues ont pour titre, de abditis Rerum Sublimium arcanis.

† In Lemovici pago suburbano, cui Mureto nomen, natus est M. Antonius Muretus ; Elegans & Judicii Vir, cujus scripta Venus inhabitat. Lipsius Præf. in Senec. & in 1. Annal. Taciti.

the Wines which he drank upon the Road being impregnated with Sulphur, and many other Inconveniences occasioned something of Deafness in him, which Infirmary he had in common with *Bellay*, and *John d' Aurat*, he design'd nothing more than to devote himself entirely to study. In this Resolution he lost not the Opportunity of following *D' Aurat*, who was to be the Rector of *Conqueret* College, and who taught him the Latine Tongue by the Greek. He made a mighty Progress in both; and when he had nicely searched the Greek Poets with *John d' Aurat*, and *Antony* the Son of *Lazarus Baif*, he tried to form his Stile by theirs, and to give a new Air to his Poetry. His first Essays were admired: and though *Charles* the IXth said, *That neither a good Horse, nor a good Poet should ever be pampered*, for the Reason already assign'd; he nevertheless bestowed upon him the Abby of *Belloxane*; and he had too, the Priory of *St. Come* in *Tours*. To his Friend who advis'd him to revise his Works, and to make them more valuable than they were, he replied; *Oh! Sir, do you imagine that to put his Children in a better Condition, a Father could take any Pleasure in breaking their Legs and Arms?*

In 1586, *Margaret* of *Austria*, the Daughter of *Charles* the Vth, the Wife of *Octavius Farnese*, and the Mother of *Alexander Farnese*, Duke of *Parma*, compared by *Strada* to *Alexander* the Great, died in the Month of *February*: *Mahomet Chodabandah*, the Son of *Tahmasp*, in *December*; *Stephen Bathori* King of *Poland*, and Prince of *Transylvania* in the same Month. In 1587, *Mary* Queen of *Scotland*, the Widow of *Francis* the IIId, of *Henry Stewart*, and of *Earl Bothwell*, was beheaded upon a Scaffold hung with Black, in the great Hall of the Castle of *Fotheringay*, on the 18th of *February*. *Sigismund* the IIIId, King of *Sueden*, was crown'd King of *Poland* in *Cracow*, on the 27th of *December*. *William* of *Gonzaga* Duke of *Mantua*, and of *Montferrat*, died the 4th of *August*; and *Francis de Medicis*, on the 9th of *October*.

The Grand Fleet, or *Armado* of *Philip* the IIId, consisting of a Hundred and Fifty Men of War, and Twenty Thousand Soldiers, furnish'd with Two Thousand Six Hundred and Fifty great Guns, with Ammunition, and  
Pro-

Provisions for six Months, was beaten by *Charles Howard* and by *Francis Drake* his Vice-Admiral, and reduced to nothing by the English, and the Storms. *Monfieur de Thou* said that he had been inform'd by *Don Bernardin de Mendoza*; that it cost the King of Spain Twelve Millions of Gold; and that the Duke *de Medina Sidonia* was employ'd six whole Years in Equipping it. *Marco Antonio Colonna* chosen at the Pope's Request to be Admiral of it went to Spain, where he died, as 'twas said, poison'd by the Spaniards, Jealous and in Rage that an Italian was prefer'd before them. After the Victory Queen *Elizabeth* had in a Medal engrav'd, a Fleet running away with full Sails, this being the Device or Inscription, *He came, He saw, He fled*: And in another Medal a Fleet of Men of War and Fire-ships with this Motto, *A Woman had the Conduct of this Action*.

*Paul Calliari* called the *Veronese*, because he was of *Verona*, an admirable Painter, being gone to a solemn Procession to get the Indulgences, which *Sixtus Quintus* granted in 1588. was wrought into such a degree of Heat, that he died of it.

*Henry the III*d, King of France died in 1589. on the 2d of August, being stab'd the day before by *James Clement*, a Dominican Friar, of the Village of *Sorbonne* near *Sens*, a Profess'd Monk, in a Covent of *Paris*, and in Priest's Orders. 'Twas by the death of this *Henry* that the Branch of *Valois* or of *Orleans*, issuing from King *Philip the Hardy*, the eldest Son of *St. Lewis*, ended; so that those of *Anjou*, of *Burgundy*, of *Alencon*, and of *Evreux* being extinct likewise, the Kingdom, by vertue of the Salick-Law, devolved to the Branch of *Bourbon*, derived from *Robert of France*, Lord of *Bourbon*, and the youngest Son of the King *St. Lewis*. *Henry the III*d was born at *Fontainbleau* on the 19th of September, in 1551; he liv'd thirty nine Years, and reign'd fifteen, and two Months. He was crowned at *Reims* the 17th of February, in 1575; and two days after he married *Lewis*a of *Lorraine*, the Daughter of Prince *Nicholas* Duke of *Mercœur*, Earl of *Vaudemont*; and of *Margaret* of *Egmont* his first Wife. Queen *Lewis*a being seven and forty, died at *Moulins* in *Bourbonnois*, in January 1601; and tho' she

she was most extremely beautiful, her Beauty prevailed not with her over her Modesty. Henry shewed great Resolution and Courage in the Battles of *Jarnac* and of *Montcontour*: And he continued the Siege of *Rochele* till after the death of King *Sigismond*, surnamed *Augustus*, the last of the *Jagellon* Race, when he was chosen King of *Poland*, and great Duke of *Lithuania*, upon the 9th of *March*, in 1573. at a General Assembly of the States held in the Plain of *Warsaw*. But he continued in *Poland* not above three Months, and he went thence *Incognito* as soon as he understood by his Mother Queen *Catharine's* Couriers that his Brother *Charles* the IXth was dead. In 1579. he founded the Order of the Holy Ghost, and abolished not that of *St. Michael*, instituted by *Lewis* the XIth; and the Baronies I am going to mention were raised to Dukedoms, and Peerdoms. *St. Fargeau* in *Puisay* for *Francis* of *Bourbon* Prince Dauphin, after Duke of *Montpencier*. The Barony of *Mercœur* was turned into a Peerdom; and I have spoke of it in the Reign of King *Charles* the IXth. The Marquisate of *Elbeuf* in *Normandy* for the sake of *Charles* of *Lorraine*. The Earldom of *Retelois* in *Champagne* for *Lewis* of *Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers*. The Barony of *Epernon* in *Beausse* for *John Lewis de la Valette*. The Viscounty of *Joyeuse* in *Languedoc* for *Anne de Joyeuse* Admiral of *France*. The Barony of *Piney* in *Champagne* for *Francis* of *Luxemburgh*. The Earldom of *Retz* in *Bretany* for *Albert* of *Gondy*. The Earldom of *Monbazon* in *Touraine* for *Lewis* of *Roiban*. The Earldom of *Ventadour* in *Limosin* for *Gilbert de Levy*. The Marquisate of *Megnellers* in the Name of *Haluwin* for the sake of *Charles* of *Haluwin*, Lord of *Piennes*. I make no mention here neither of the Battle of *Coutras*, nor how *Henry* Duke of *Guise*, and the Cardinal his Brother were kill'd in 1588, nor of the Barricado's of *Paris*, nor of the Leagues, nor Fraternities, nor other particulars that are known.

*James* the VIth, King of *Scotland*, in 1589. married *Anne* the Sister of *Christiern*, and Daughter of *Frederick* the IIId, King of *Denmark*; and *Catharine de Medicis*, the Mother of *Francis* the IIId, of *Charles* the IXth, and of *Henry* the IIIId, died on the 5th of *January*.

*Sixtus*



*Sixtus Quintus* died on the 27th of *August*, in 1590. and I must say something of \* him. *Felix Peretti*, the Pope of whom I am to give an account, the Son of *Francis Peretti*, a Vine-dresser, was born on the 13th of *December*, in 1521, in a Town of the Province of the *Marche* of *Ancona*, situated within the Territory of the Lordship of *Montalto*. He was as yet but nine Years old, when his Father being poor, and not able to maintain him, in the necessitous Case he was in, placed him with a Burger of the Town, and he kept his Sheep; but being not over-much pleased with him, he afterwards made him keep his Hogs. In this condition having observed a Franciscan Friar, who was much concerned to find out the way to *Ascoli*, a City of the *Marche* of *Ancona*, he followed him quite to his Monastery, where he express'd so great an Affection for Learning, that it was resolved that he should be gratify'd. He was instructed there; he there took the Habit, and gain'd so fair a Reputation, that it was not at all doubted but one day he would do honour to that Order. And indeed he learnt to read in a very little time; he became a good Grammarian; and then so good a Philosopher, that he was not at all inferior to his Teachers, which created such Envy towards him in his Brethren (who besides found that he was haughty, self-conceited, and obstinate) that they could no longer conceal the Aver-sion they had for him. His Interest in his Superiors occasion'd no less Vexation to his Companions: And as one time the Warden of *Cosmo* went to *Lucca* to see *Paul* the III<sup>d</sup>, and the Emperor *Charles* the V<sup>th</sup>, who had pitch'd upon that place to discourse about an Attempt upon *Algiers*, and of the assembling of a Council; some one of the Friars, as he stept before Friar *Felix*, and looking upon him with Contempt, said, " There is a pretty Fellow to go to see the Pope. *Felix* reply'd merrily enough; " I go to observe the State of the Pope-  
dom that I may know how I shall be able to away  
" with

---

\* Ce qui suit est tiré de la Vie de Sixte par Gregorio Leti.

“ with it. When he was at *Lucca*, he very carefully minded all the Steps of the principal Prelates, and of the Courtiers of *Paul* the III<sup>d</sup>. One day among the rest being at the Table with the Warden and his Fellow-students, he ask’d them so many Questions about that which chiefly concern’d the Person of the Pope, that the Student could not forbear to tell him smiling, “ I believe you have a mind to be Pope: And he answered him likewise smiling, “ I am not old enough to be so. At his return from *Lucca*, a Batchellor of Arts, who met with him in the Warden’s Chamber, after he had made him a low Bow to ridicule him, took him by the Hand, and told him in Rallery, “ Since thou hast seen “ his Holiness, thou smellest all Pope: And Friar *Felix* answered him, “ If, Sir, you are troubled because I “ have seen him, you’ll possibly be more vex’d, when “ you shall see me seated on his Throne. He was ordained Priest in 1545. and was promoted to the Degree of a Batchellor; after which he assumed the Name of *Montalto*; some time after he commenced Master of Arts, and was Divinity-Professor at *Sienna*. The Sermons he made at *Rome*, at *Genoua*, at *Perugia*, and in other Places, had gain’d him so good a Reputation that he was appointed a General Commissioner at *Bologne*, and a Judge of the Inquisition at *Venice*, from whence he was forced to withdraw, because he had made himself odious to the Senate there, and to all the Monks of his Order: Some Body jeering him upon his over-hasty Escape, and telling him if he had not good Legs his Pantaloon would certainly have hang’d him; he answered him, That “ having made a Vow to be Pope at *Rome*, “ he could not think himself oblig’d to stay for a Hal-  
“ ter at *Venice*.

When he was at *Rome*, he gave an account of his Management, and was admitted into the number of the Counsellors of the Congregation, by the Mediation of his two Patrons, *Carpi* and *Alexandrinus*. In spite of the Intrigues of his Enemies, who were great, he was made General Solicitor of the Order. The Cardinal *Carpi* being dead in 1563. Father *Montalto* despairing of the Success of his Affairs, was comforted by the Cardinal

dinal *Alexandrinus*, who assur'd him of his Support and Countenance upon all Occasions: And by another lucky accident for him, *Mark Antony Colonna*, whom *Montalto* had taught Philosophy, was made a Cardinal by *Pius* the IVth.

*Montalto* being gone into *Spain* in the Quality of Chaplain to the Legate, and of Counsellor of the Holy Office with the Cardinal *Buon Compagno* a *Bolonian*, and it being impossible he should be ignorant that he had disparag'd himself by his Intrigues, he all of a sudden chang'd his severe Humour, and was so complaisant that all who convers'd with him, were charm'd with the Greatness and Sweetness of his Wit. In the mean time *Pius* the IVth died on the 10th of *December*, in 1565. which Event effectually put an end to the Negotiation in *Spain*: And on the 7th day of the ensuing Year *Alexandrino*, of the Order of the Dominican Friars, though absent, was chosen Pope, known by the Name of *Pius* the Vth. When he was at *Rome*, he remembred *Montalto*, and dispatch'd to him in *Piemont* the General of his Order's Brief; he made choice of him for his Extraordinary Confessor; in 1568. he gave him the Bishoprick of *St. Agatha*; and next a Cardinal's Cap. After that there was not to be seen a Man more contented; and his Moderation shew'd it self in his Habit, in his Actions, and in his Words.

In 1572. *Pius* the Vth died on the 1st of *May*, and the World stood amaz'd that *Montalto* refus'd to concern himself in the Election of a new Pope; that he, I say, should be so unconcern'd, who, when a Monk, vigorously and even to the hazard of his Life oppos'd all the Senators of *Venice*; who had been in continual Contentts with the Superiors of his own Order, and who had been so notorious an Intriguer. The Election ended the 13th of *May* in favour of the Cardinal *Buon Compagno*, then stil'd *Gregory* the III'd: And *Montalto*, who had nothing more in his Thoughts than to attain to the same Dignity, voluntarily renounced all kinds of Address and Management; he complained of the Infirmities of his old Age, and was seldom or never seen but in his Retirement, where he lived as if he had minded nothing but

but his Salvation. When *Gregory* the XIIIth was dead, after ten days spent in the Ceremony of his Obsequies, it was necessary for the Cardinals to enter the Conclave, of which the two and forty that compos'd it, were divided into five Factions. *Montalto*, who pretended to be older than he was, appear'd no more publickly, but with his Head leaning upon his Shoulder; his Body born up by a Staff, as if he had no strength to support him; and he spoke not at all but with a broken Voice, and with a Cough which seem'd every Moment to threaten him with death. He made his Complements and paid his Respects to Men of the greatest Interest, and wished to every one in particular that which he himself was in hopes to obtain. When he was informed that the Election might possibly center in him, he answered, " That he was in no wise worthy of so great an Honour; " That he had not a proportionable Capacity nor Faculties of Mind sufficient to take upon himself only the Government of the Church; That his Life in all appearance would not last so long as the Conclave; " That however, if God had determin'd it otherwise, " he should retain only the Name of Pope, and that others should have the Authority. This Declaration was enough to secure his Election on the 24th of *April* in 1585. and he was no sooner chosen, but being gone out of his place, he briskly threw away the Staff which had supported him into the Hall; he held his Head upright, and sung out *Te Deum* with a Voice so strong that the Roof of the Chappel echo'd with it; he, I say, who two Hours before could not speak without a Cough that would move your Pity. All were surpriz'd at this change in him; and the major part of the Cardinals were much astonish'd, when they perceiv'd that no one should share with him in the Administration of Affairs, and that he would govern the Church alone.

In the Evening the Gentleman of his Bed-chamber ask'd him what he would please to have for his Supper, because they had been us'd to enquire when he was Cardinal what he would have sent up for his Meals; he answer'd, looking earnestly upon his Chamberlain, " Is it  
H h " usual



usual to ask a Sovereign Prince what shall be set before him? Let my Table be spread in the same manner as that of Kings is us'd to be, and I'll take what I shall think fit. Behold here a very sudden alteration in Cardinal *Montalto* when made *Sixtus Quintus*; which sufficiently proves that 'tis never safe to rely upon Appearances, and that in all Posts, Stations, and Characters there are Cheats and Hypocrites to be met with.

He was severe even to Cruelty; and after the rate he punish'd the smallest Offences, he could not be very well persuaded that there ought to be a mixture of Mercy with Justice. Though he had condemn'd to the Gibbet and to the Gallies, Persons that deserv'd but a slight Correction; and though he had ordered the adjudged Tryals for above ten Years past to be revis'd; when he discovered any Partiality or Corruption, he neither spared the Judges whom Importunity, Money, or underhand Dealing had perverted; nor those who for the sake of their Friends, or their Relations were proved to have been Solicitors of a bad Cause. 'Twas for these Cruelties and for many others, that *Pasquin* had the Habit of a Postition given him carrying a Letter with this Superscription to the Hangman, "To my Lord *Gibolo*, one of his Holiness's Prelates, and the Publick Executioner in the Court of *Rome*. Though Queen *Elizabeth* was in his Opinion an Heretick, he would not allow her to be called Cruel; and when it was made appear to him how she us'd the Catholics in *England*, he said; we also should do the same thing. The Cardinal his Nephew giving him an account of the death of *Mary Stuart*, he clapp'd his Hands and cry'd out in these Words, "O over happy Queen for having had the honour to cut off a crowned Head! Oh! that we could do as much! And when the Cardinal came to that Passage of the Narrative, in which *Elizabeth* sent a Message to *Mary* that she must prepare for Death; 'Ha! cry'd out he, when shall I meet with the like Occasion?

But how severe and unmerciful soever he might be, his Magnificence was highly extolled. He caused to be erect.

erected in the Piazza of the Vatican an Obelisk that was 72 Foot in height, which lay behind the Vestry of *St. Peter's Church*; he order'd another to be dug up which was much less, and broken into three pieces, and after they had been very neatly put together, he commanded it to be placed before *St. Mary Major's Church*. Two more Obelisks buried under the Ruins of the *Circus* were recovered thence, one of which was fixed in the Piazza of *St. John of Lateran*, the other in that of *St. Mary of the People*; and 'tis the very same that *Augustus Caesar* had dedicated to the Sun. He built in the Church of *St. Mary Major*, a Chappel over-laid with white Marble, richly imboss'd and set off with Sculpture; and seeing the *Quirinal Mount* distressed for Water, he relieved it by an *Aquæ-duct* from a living and plentiful Spring. Two, three, and four thousand Workmen were employ'd in that Work for eighteen Months, which stood him in near a Million of Mony. Near the Gallery which he made over the Gate of the Church of *St. John Lateran*, he built a magnificent Palace, the Front of which looking upon the Obelisk, is three hundred and forty Foot wide, that towards *St. Mary Major's*, three hundred thirty and five, being above a hundred and thirty Foot in height. What he did in *St. Peter's Church* is sufficiently known to the World: And I shall speak in another place of the Pillar of *Trajan* and *Antoninus*. At last after he had loaded his People with Taxes, after he had excommunicated the King of *Navarre*, the Prince of *Conde*, *Henry the IIIrd*, *Elizabeth Queen of England*; after he had left five Millions of Gold in the Castle of *St. Angelo*, he died, being seventy Years old, having been Pope five Years, four Months, and three Days. Some have thought that he was poisoned by the Spaniards, who dreaded him: And had he not been prevented by Death, 'tis probable that he would have re-united the Kingdom of *Naples* to the Patrimony of the Church.

*Urban the VIIth*, his Successor, chosen on the 15th of September, died the 27th of the same Month, and was Pope but twelve Days.

\* *Francis Hottoman*, a Native of *Silesia*, of the Family of the *Hottomans*, a great Lawyer, died on the 24th of *February*: † *James Cujacius* at *Toulouse*, the third of *October*. The President of Parliament *Barnaby Briffonius*, a Man of incomparable Worth, was strangled at *Paris* in a Prison, and afterwards hang'd up through the blind Fury of the People.

*Gregory* the XIVth, a Native of *Milan*, the Successor of *Urban*, died in 1591, upon the 15th of *October*. *Innocent* the IXth, his Countryman, of the Family of *Fachinetti* of *Milan*, who was put into his place the 30th of the same Month, died on the 30th of *December*: and *Clement* the VIIIth, before Cardinal *Hippolitus Aldobrandinus*, was elected the 30th of *January*, in 1592.

*John* the IIIrd, King of *Sueden*, the Son of *Gustavus*, and Father of *Sigismond* King of *Suedeland* and *Poland*, died on the 18th of *November*, and *Alexander Farnese* Duke of *Parma*, and of *Placentia*, on the 2d Day of the following Month.

*James du Pont*, call'd *Bassano*, because he was born in a place of that Name, died on the 13th of *January*.

In 1593. *Henry* the IVth having solemnly abjur'd his *Heresy*, heard Mass on the 25th of *July*, at *St. Denis*; he was Crown'd at *Chartres*, the 27th of *February*, in 1594. and wounded in his Mouth with a Knife, by *John Chatel*, on the 27th of *December*.

*James Rolusti*, a Painter of *Venice*, surnamed *Tintoret*, because he was the Son of a Dyer, ended his Life that Year

In 1595, the War having been declared between *Henry* the IVth King of *France*, and *Philip* the IIrd King of *Spain*; *Peter* Earl of *Fonteine*, took *Han*, and *Catelet*, in the Month of *June*; *Dourlens* on the 30th of *July*; and *Cambray* the 9th of *October*.  
Tor-

---

\* *Franc. Hottomannus ex Ormannorum apud Silesios familia oriundus, sed Parisiis natus; Antiquarius eruditissimus Rosino; Antiq. Rom.*

† *Jacobus Cujacius summus Divini Themidos Oraculi vates atq; anistes. Pet. Faber. lib. 11mo semestrium. Jurisconsultorum sine controversia Princeps. Lipsius, Epist. 4. Centur. 11. Select.*

*Torquato Tasso* died, being one and fifty the 25th of April, and that Poet who was learned, made himself Immortal by his Works. But those who will look upon him on the other side, will perhaps confess that no Man ever was more to be lamented; and that the Prosperity he enjoy'd in *France*, *Savoy*, and *Italy*, was not comparable to his Misfortunes. He was reduc'd so low, that he was fain to beg for a Crown in a Letter he wrote to *Don John Baptista Licinio*, to help him, as he phrased it, to pass away the Holidays: and Poverty was but one cause of his Unhappiness, which was chiefly attributed to the love he had for the Princess *Eleoner* of *Est*, *Alphonfus* the Duke of *Ferrara's* Sister. Some there are who will have it that the Daughter of the Count of *Sale*, *Eleoner* Countess of *Vital*, who was then in *Alphonfus's* Court, was the sole Object of his Passion: and to render him more excusable, others have written that he was in love only with one *Eleoner*, an Attendant of *Eleoner d'Est*, which is no very likely Story. Indeed *Tasso* being a Gentleman, and very dexterous in his Address, Ceremony and Complements, might with Reason enough considering his Merit, Credit, and high Reputation, openly pretend to a Waiting-Maid without the least Presumption: but in the mean time he must needs believe his Life was at stake by discovering that Affection which he felt in his Heart to a Princess. Monsieur *Morofini* has formerly told me, that discoursing at a Window with the Princess *Eleoner d'Est*, he was so bold as to Kiss her; that having been discovered in this Posture by some one that was walking in the Garden, he thought himself ruin'd, and that he afterwards feign'd himself mad to save his Live. However, one may see in *John Baptista Manso*, who has filled a little Volume with the Life of *Tasso*, the sad Consequences of that Amour, the Continuance of his Imprisonment, and the Miseries he was reduc'd to. Upon a Visit he made to *Baronius*, that Cardinal at first sight told him that his *Jerusalem*, [a Poem] ought to be burnt; that he deserv'd to be punish'd himself, and that by his Book he had done much more Mischief to the Church than *Luther*. He went the same day to see Cardinal *Bellarmin*, who shew'd him a Thou-



land Civilities; and turning the Discourse to his Book, he magnified it much; adding that it was pury, that having so much Wit, he had not contriv'd to employ it upon something more serious, and useful. After these Visits one of his Friends ask'd him what he thought of those Cardinals. He answer'd, *That \* Baronius seem'd to him like a Citizen's Son of Sora, and Bellarmine to be a true Cavalier.*

*Gilbert Genebrard of Riom in Auvergne, a Benedictine Monk, a Scholar of Adrianus Turnebus, of Claudius de Saintus, and of James Charpentier, a Doctor of the Faculty of Paris, in the House of Navarre, the King's Professor and Interpreter in the Hebrew Tongue, by the Mediation of those concerned in the League, of which he was an obstinate Ring-leader, was made Archbishop of Aix in Provence. But when by a blind Zeal for Religion he rav'd even in his Sermons against King Henry the IVth, he was forc'd to retire to Avignon, where he compos'd a Book by no means favourable to the Rights of the Gallian Church, which was burnt by a Decree of the Parliament of Provence; Genebrard also was banished the Kingdom, in 1596, upon the 20th of January; and he was permitted to return to it, and to retire in his Priory of Semur in Burgundy, where he died the 14th of March, in 1597.*

*Arch-Duke Albert, Governor of the Low-Countries, took Calais on the 17th of April, in 1596: and the 16th of May, Henry the IVth took the City Fere in Picardy, which had endur'd seven Months Siege. Queen Elizabeth's Fleet commanded by Robert Earl of Essex, and Charles Howard High Admiral, burnt Calais, the 28th of June, and Hulst in Flanders surrender'd to Arch-Duke Albert, on the 18th of August. Cardinal Tolet a Spanish Jesuit, died at Rome.*

*In the same Year Amiens, surrendred to Henry the Great, on the 25th of September; and the 8th of May, in 1598, Clement the VIIIth enter'd into Ferrara to take Possession of*

---

*\* Baronius etoit de Sora Ville du Royaume de Naples dans la terre di Lavoro.*

of that Dukedom, vacant by the death of *Alphonfus* the Ild, who left no Issue. *Cesar d' Est* after an Agreement made with *Clement*, kept *Modena*, *Reggio*, *Carpi*: and *Rodolphus* the Ild, created him Prince of the Empire. The Peace betwixt *Henry* the IVth, *Philip* King of *Spain*, and *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, was concluded and ratified at *Vervins* the 2d of *May*: and in the Month of *June*, the Exercise of the Protestant Religion was permitted.

*Anne* Queen of *Poland*, the Wife of *Sigismund* the IIIId. King of *Poland* and *Sueden*, the Daughter of *Charles* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, died the 10th of *February*, and *Philip* the Ild, King of *Spain*, on the 13th of *September*.

In 1599 *Robert Bellarmine*, of the Society of *Jesus*, was made Cardinal, and *Henry* the IVth, and *Margaret de Valois* being divorc'd by *Clement* the VIIIth, the King married *Mary de Medicis*, the Daughter of *Francis de Medicis*, the Great Duke of *Tuscany*, by *Jane* Archduchess of *Austria*.

*Lewis* *Henry* the IIIId's Widow died in 1601. The Earl of *Effex*, was Beheaded in *England*, the 7th of *May* by Queen *Elizabeth's* Order, who was passionately in love with him; and who foreseeing by the Haughtiness of that Earl, that their Good Understanding would not last long, had presented him with a Ring, assuring him that he should only be at the Pains to send it her; and that in such a Case she would faithfully and truly pardon him, when he should deserve to be under her highest Displeasure. When he was in the utmost Danger, he gave the Ring to *Walsingham's* Wife, whom he lov'd much, to carry it to the Queen: and *Walsingham* would not let her.

The Queen who waited for that Signal of his Repentance, not seeing it sent to her, turn'd her Love into Rage, and troubled not her self to preserve a Man who desir'd not to receive an Obligation from her.

\* *Tycho Brahe* died the 24th of *October* at *Prague*.

H h 4

*Anna*

\* *Vide Thuen. lib. 127. Historiar. in fine. Joh. Gerardi. Vossius de Scientiis Mathematic. c. 36, Sc. Natus est Knudstorpium prope Lundum Archiepiscopali sede regni decoratum oppidum. Illius vitam scripsit Petrus Gassendus.*

*Anna Maria Mauritia* Infanta of Spain, was born the 22d of September: and *Lewis* the XIIIth, firnamed the *Just*, the 27th of the same Month at *Fontaine-bleau*.

On the 8th of February, in 1602, *Philip Emanuel* Duke of *Mercœur*, died of a Fever at *Nuremberg*: *Austin Carache*, a famous Painter, on the 22d of March; and *Francis du John*, a Native of *Loudun* on the 13th of October.

In 1603, on the 24th of March, *Elizabeth* the Queen of England died, being 70 Years old, and in the 44th Year of her Reign. having first appointed for her Successor *James* the VIth, King of Scotland. There are in *Abbot Vittorio Siri's* Secret Memoirs, two things remarkable concerning the Death of that Queen. The first is, that she laid her Injunctions upon her Officers to take care that no one should touch her Corps; and that after her Death no Person whatsoever should see her naked, "For some Reasons, which they will apprehend who know the History of that Princess. The other that being upon the Bed all Dress'd, with her Eyes fix'd upon the Ground, and holding her Finger constantly in her Mouth, that she might expire in that Posture, she sent for her Musick, which she heard very sedately, dying as chearfully as she had liv'd. I very much question whether this second Remark be true: And in *Vittorio Siri's* History, some Passages are to be found, which plainly shew that the Memoirs given him were ridiculous.

*James* the VIth, King of Scotland, and the First of that Name in England, was crown'd at London, the 25th of July.

On the 3d of March, in 1604, *Faustus Socinus* died; and the same Year the Marquess *Ambrose Spinola* took *Ostend*, on the 21st of September. In three Years and three Months, which whole time the Siege continued, the Spaniards lost 70124 Men, and the besieged 72900, if the Accounts I have seen of it be not false.

In 1605, Upon the 11th of December, *Sigismund* King of Sweden and of Poland, married his Second Wife *Constance*, the Daughter of *Charles* Archduke of Austria: and *Clement* the VIII, who died the 4th of March, was the

the immediate Predecessor of Cardinal *Alexander de Medicis*, or *Leo* the XIth, who was Pope but 27 Days. *Paul* the Vth of the Family of *Borghese* succeeded him: and *Theodore Beza* born the 24th of June, in 1519, call'd the *Calif* of the *Calvinists*, by *Spondanus*, died at *Geneva* on the 25th of October.

\* *Justus Lipsius* died at *Louvain*, in 1600; the † Cardinal *Baronius*, in 1608; *John Riolan*, and *Andrew* of *Laurentum*, both of 'em fam'd for their Skill in *Physick*; *James Hyeman* known by the name of *Arminius*, Professor of *Divinity* at *Leyden*, in 1609, and he that has a mind to a sight of the *Arminian Tenets* will need only read the Judgment of the Synod of *Dort*.

*Philippe des Portes* Abbot of *Tiron*; *Annibal Carache* of *Bologna*, an *Austin Friar*: and *Michael Angelo Merigi de Caravaggio* a famous Painter, died the same Year; *Annibal* being 49, the other 40 Years old. *Michael Angelo Merigi* being forc'd to quit *Rome* for a Murther he had committed there, withdrew for some time to *Naples*, from *Naples* he went to *Maltba*, where he was very well received by the Grand Master *Vignacourt*. But that Painter being haughry, and quarrellsome, he had a Difference with a certain Cavalier; and having highly affronted him, he was arrested and put in Prison. He made his escape some time after, and took the direct Road to *Naples*. The Cavalier who pursu'd him, having overtaken him, gave him so many Wounds with his Sword on the Face, that it was a hard Matter enough to know him: and *Michael Angelo Merigi* not hoping that he should be able to revenge it, went into a *Felucca*, with the little he had to go to *Rome*, upon the promise of Cardinal *de Gonzaga*, who then sollicitated *Paul* the Vth for his pardon. He was scarce gone out of

---

\* *In Ifcarno municipio quod tertio lapide a Bruxellis, itemq; a Lovanio distat, extulit Brabantia Justum Lipsium; & quibus eum veri docti titulis decoraverint Vid. Joh. Andr. Quenstedt lib. de Patriis illustrium doctrina & scriptis Virorum. p. 115.*

† *De Baronio Joh. Hoornbeck in Miscellaneis Sacris, lib. 1. pag. 16. & seq. sed non ubiq; audiendus,*



of the Vessel, but they imprison'd him : and going abroad two days after, in the Heats of the Dogstar, to see whether he could have no Tidings of the Felucca, in which his necessary things were pack'd up, he went to Bed with a Violent Fever, of which he died, having not had the least help or Relief.

*Joseph Scaliger* being 69, died in *Holland* the same Year : and if he had been as modest as he was learned, no accomplishment had been wanting in him. The Wissest Men blush'd not to consult him, and all *Europe* lookt upon him as an Oracle. But if a Man took ever so little Freedom to contradict him, or if he were not also of his Opinion, it was impossible for him to be secure from his Reproaches, from his Contempt, or from his Rage. \* There was scarce a Man of his time, to whom he gave not the Epithet of Hog, of Ape, of Ass, of Fool, of Beast, of Half-witted, of Ridiculous, or of Pitiful : and as if he had been no Divine himself, he spoke ill of the greatest part of the Greek Divines ; and treated *Ruffinus* as a Wicked Varlet ; *Saint Jerome* as an Ignoramus, and *St. Chrysostome* as Proud and Sordid.

*Henry the Great*, having liv'd 37 Years, five Months, and a Day, riding in his Coach to the Arsenal was assassinated in the Street, *Ferronerie*, which was then narrow, with two Stabs of a Poniard, the 14th of May, in 1610, by *Francis Ravilliac* of the City of *Angouleme*. He had been King of *France* 20 Years, 10 Months, and 18 days ; and of *Navarre* 38 Years. After his Divorce from *Margaret* Dutcheß of *Valois*, on the 7th of December, in 1600, he was in the City *Lyons* more formally, and ceremoniously married to Princess *Mary*, the Daughter of *Francis de Medicis* Great Duke of *Tuscany*, and of *Jane* of *Austria*, born Queen of *Hungary*, and *Bobemia*, the Daughter, Sister, Aunt, and Niece of Emperors. By that Marriage the King had *Lewis the Just* ; the second † *Anonymus*, Duke of *Orleans*, born at *Fontainebleau*, the 16th of April, in 1607, who died at *St. Germain's* in  
Laye,

\* Vid. ejusdem Scaligeri epistol. Itemq; Scaligeriana.

† Voyez Hen. Le Grand de Mezeray, p. 390.

*Lays*, the 17th of November, in 1611: *Gaston*; *Elizabeth*; *Chrestienne*, and *Henrietta Maria*. *Gaston* (to whom was given the name of *John Baptist* at his Confirmation) Duke of *Orleans*, of *Chartres*, of *Valois* and of *Blois*, born at *St. Germain's* in *Lays*, the 25th of April, in 1608, married upon the 6th of August, in 1626, *Mary* of *Bourbon*, Dutchess of *Montpencier*, the only Daughter, and sole Heiress of *Henry* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Montpencier*, who married *Catharine* Dutchess of *Joyeuse*, after that a Wife to another Duke. *Mary* was not full two and twenty, when she died, on the 4th of June, in 1627, leaving one Daughter only, *Anna Maria Louisa* Sovereign Lady of *Dombes*, Princess *de la Roche-sur-yon*, Dutchess of *Montpencier*, of *Saint Fargeau*, and of *Chastelleraud*, Marchioness of *Mezieres*, Countess of *Mortan*, Vi-countess of *Auge*, and of *Damfront*. In 1632, *Gaston* of *France* married his second Wife, *Margaret* the Daughter of *Francis*, Duke of *Lorraine-Vaudemont*, and of *Chrestienne* of *Salm*, and had by her two Daughters. *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Henry* the Great, was born the 22d of November, in 1602; and the Ceremonies of her Marriage to *Philip* Prince of *Spain*, afterwards the Fourth King of that name, the eldest Son of *Philip* the III<sup>d</sup>, and of *Margaret* of *Austria*, were solemniz'd at *Burgos*, and *Bordeaux* in the same day being the 18th of October, in 1615. *Chrestienne* of *France* was born on the 10th of February, in 1606, and the Contract of her Marriage to *Victor Amedeus* Prince of *Piemont*, and after Duke of *Savoy*, was ratified at *Paris* the 11th, in 1619. *Henrietta Maria* was born on the 26th of November, in 1609; and the Contract of her Marriage to *Charles* Prince of *Great Britain*, was made up at *Paris* the 20th of November, in 1624.

*Henry* the Great, born at *Pau*, the Capital City of the Principality of *Bearn*, on the 13th of December, in 1553. was the Son of *Antony* of *Bourbon*, King of *Navarre*, who was wounded at the Siege of *Roan*, with a Musquet-bullet, of which wound he died at the Town of *Andely* in *Normandy*, the 17th of November, in 1562. in the seventh Year of his Reign, and the 45th of his Age. He was the Son of *Charles* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendome*,

*Vendome*, and of *Frances of Alencon*, Dutcheſs of *Beaumont*; and was Prince of *Bearn* and King of *Navarre* by *Jane* his Wife, the only Daughter and ſole Heireſs of *Henry of Albert*, King of *Navarre*, and of *Margaret of France*, who died at *Paris* the 9th day of *June*, in 1572. *Antony* had by her *Henry of Bourbon*, Duke of *Beaumont*, born in 1551, who died in the Caſtle of *La Fleche*, in 1553; *Henry the Great*; *Lewis Charles of Bourbon*, Earl of *Marle*, born in the Caſtle of *Gaillon* in *Normandy*, in 1554. the 19th of *February*, kill'd by the Careleſneſs of his Nurſe, who let him fall from a Window; *Magdalen of Navarre*, who died young; and *Catharine* born at *Paris* the 7th of *February*, in 1558. *Henry the III*d, at his return from *Poland*, would willingly have married her; but was diſſuaded from it by *Queen Catharine de Medicis*. She was courted to be the Wife of *Philip the II*d, King of *Spain*, of *Charles Emanuel of Savoy*, of *James the VI*th, King of *Scotland*, after that King of *England*, of *Chriſtiern Prince of Anhalt*, of *Henry of Bourbon*, Prince of *Conde*, of *Charles of Bourbon*, Earl of *Soiſſons*, and of *Henry of Bourbon*, Duke of *Montpencier*. She was married in 1599. to *Henry Duke of Bar*, and afterwards Duke of *Lorraine*, the Son of *Charles the II*d, the eight and twentieth Duke of *Lorraine*, and of *Claude of France*, the Daughter of *Henry the II*d, and of *Queen Catharine de Medicis*. *Catharine* who had been courted by ſo many Princes, and by three alſo of Royal Blood, died at *Nanci* the 13th of *February*, in 1604. When the Court had put on Mourning for her death, and when *Clement the VIII*th's Nuncio had conſidered what he had to do upon this occaſion, becauſe *Catharine* was of the Religion pretending to Reformation, and he thought himſelf no way obliged to Mourn for a Heretick, as he ſaid; at laſt however he followed the Mode, and Example of other Courtiers. Then he appeared in the King's Preſence in this Dreſs, and having addreſſed himſelf in theſe words to him, " They who look upon me muſt  
 " needs be amazed at what I do; but my Sorrow is  
 " much greater than that of other Mourners, who only  
 " lament a Princeſs; becauſe the Pope and I deplore the  
 " loſs of her Soul, The King replied bluntly enough,  
 " I

" I do not in the least question the Salvation of my Sister *Catharine*. *Henry Duke of Lorrain* after her death married *Margaret* the Daughter of *Vincent de Gonzaga*, the first Duke of *Mantua* so call'd, and had two Daughters by her. But I forgot to relate a thing here considerable enough, because it concerns *Francis* of *Valois* Count of *Enguien*, who got the famous Victory at *Cerizoles*, over *Marquess du Guast*, and who made himself Master of all *Montferrat*, *Casal* and *Albia* being excepted. That Prince being six and twenty Years old, the Brother of *Antony*, *Henry the Great's* Father, and being in the Castle of *de la Roche-sur-Yon*, where the Court was; some Persons of Quality to divert themselves, contrived a Sport, Match, or Exercise, in which they were some to defend, some to assault a House with Snow-balls; and as the Duke of *Enguien* sally'd out of the House, which he defended, they threw Things out of the Window upon him, and undesignedly, a small Trunk, with which he was so cruelly wounded, that he died by that Accident in 1545. He was born in the Castle of *la Fere* in *Picardy*, on the 23d of *September*, in 1519.

In 1610. *Philip* the III<sup>d</sup>, by one Edict only, banished all the Moors out of *Spain*, to the Number of nine hundred thousand, because they had dealt under-hand with the Moors of *Africa* and the Turks to bring War upon his Kingdom. I have already told you that *Ferdinand*, surnamed the *Catholick*, had in the Year 1404. driven out of it above six hundred whole Families of the Jews, and after all this there's little reason to wonder that *Spain* should be so far from being populous.

*Frederick Baroche*, of the City *Urbino*, a Painter, well enough known for his excellent Draughts, died in 1611. on the last day of *September*; and *James Bongars* a Man of prodigious Learning the 19th of *July*.

The next Year *Frederick* the Vth, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and afterwards King of *Bohemia*, married *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *James* the VIth of *Scotland*, and King of *England* the 24th of *January*.

On the 24th of *April*, in 1613. the Baron of *Vitry du Hallier* his Brother *Perray*, *Guichamont*, *Morsain* did by the King's Order kill, at his entry upon the Bridge of  
the



the *Louvre*, \* *Marechal d'Ancre*, the Grandson of a Notary of *Arezzo* in *Tuscany*; and *Leonor Gulligui*, that *Marthal's* Widow, was the 8th of *July*, by a Judgment of Parliament, beheaded.

In 1614. *Gabriel Bathori* was kill'd with a Musquet-shot by the Troops which the Emperor had sent him to *Waradin*, because he would not take them into the Garrison as the Officers of the Army had desired him; and after that time *Gabriel Bethleem* became Absolute in *Transylvania*.

*Jacobus Augustus* of *Thou*, *Seeb Calvisius*, a Chronologer, and a great Favourite of *Scaliger's*: *Christopher Helvicius*, Professor in Divinity and in Hebrew at *Gieffen*, died in 1617.

*In the Reign of Ferdinand the IId, of Ferdinand the IIIId, and Leopold Ignatius.*

*James Dauy du Perron*, Bishop of *Evrenx*, afterwards Archbishop of *Sens*, Grand Almoner of *France*, and Cardinal, died at *Paris* the 5th of *September*, in 1618. All Roman Catholicks and Protestants unanimously own that he was one of the most learned Men in the World; that he had a quick, sagacious, and solid Wit, and a wondrous Memory. They who have made a Collection of *Perron's* Works, might well have forbore to make him say, " That he had first discover'd the Cause of the " Ebbing and Flowing of the Sea; That when he was " young he leap'd twenty two Foot, after he had drunk " twenty Glasses of Wine; That as to the Purity of the " Latin Tongue, *Quintius Curtius* was one of the chief " Authors; That next to him *Lucius Florus* excell'd all " others in it; That *Tacitus* is the most worthless of the " Historians, and that none of 'em has a more paulty Stile " than his; That *Friar Paul* was no great Scholar, and " that

---

\* *Voyez la Relation exacte de tout ce qui cest passe a la mort de Marechal d'Ancre a la fin de l' Histoire des Favoris par Mr. du Puy.*

“ that he had nothing above the Level of a Monk in  
“ him.

*Robert Bellarmin*, Cardinal, born the 4th of October, in 1542. at *Montepulciano* in *Tuscany*, the Son of *Vincent Bellarmin*, and of *Cinthia Corovina*, Pope *Marcellus* the III<sup>d</sup>'s Sister, died at *Rome* on the 17th of September, in 1621.

The *Palatine* or *Heidelberg* Library, the choicest of all *Europe*, was carried away to *Rome*: And *Leo Allatius* of *Chio* was employ'd for that purpose by *Gregory* the XV<sup>th</sup>. The latter, who was Cardinal *Ludovisi* of *Bologna* being dead the same Year, *Maffeo Barberin* of *Florence* succeeded him by the Name of *Urban* the VIII<sup>th</sup>. *Philip Cluverius* of *Dantzick*, the best Geographer of his time, died at *Leydon*, being but three and forty Years old.

*Paul Sarpi* of *Venice*, a Monk of the Order of the *Servitæ*, or Servants of the Virgin, instituted at *Florence* about 1232. an excellent Divine, an excellent Lawyer, a great Mathematician, Linguist, Physician, and Philosopher, the Author of the History of a Council of *Trent*, under the Name of *Friar Paul*, died, being seventy one upon the 14th of January, in 1623.

*Francis de Sales*, Bishop of *Geneva*, being fifty six Years old, died the 28th of December, in 1622.

*St. Teresa* of *Avila* in Old *Castile*, who died on the 5th of October, Old Style, in 1582. was Canoniz'd in 1622. together with *Ignatius Loyola*, *Francis Xavier*, and *Philip de Neri*, a Florentine, and Founder of the Congregation of the Oratory. This latter died on the 25th of May, in 1595.

*Gaucher* or *Scevola de Sainte Marthe*, President and Treasurer of *France*, within the District of *Poitou*, fam'd for his Latin and French Poems, and for his *Elogies of eminent Men*, died at *Loudun* the 29th of March, in 1623. *Nicholas Coeffeteau*, a Dominican, who gave us the Roman History, with many other Works of Devotion and Controversy, died the same Year.

In 1624. *Marcus Antonius de Dominis*, Archbishop of *Spalatto* in *Dalmatia*, died a Prisoner at *Rome*: And it may upon good Grounds be believed that the Inquisition,

on, which is Cruelty it self, forgave him not his Apostacy, nor the Boldness he was guilty of in getting *Father Paul's History of Trent*, printed in *England*, dedicating it to *James the Ist*, to whom he readily gave the Stile of King of *France*. *Charles Archduke of Austria*, Grand Master of the Teutonick Order, the Brother of the Emperor *Ferdinand the IId*, died in *Villa-Monta* the very same Year, on the 26th of *December*; and *Francis Contarini*, a Doge of *Venice*, who died in *August*, made room for *John Cornaro* Procurator of *St. Mark*, being seventy Years old. The Count *Maurice of Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, an eminent Captain, died at the *Hague* in the Month of *April*, at the Age of eight and fifty; and *Daniel Heinsius* made his Funeral Oration.

In 1626. *Gabriel Bethleem*, or as some call him, *Bethleem Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, and King of *Hungary*, was married at *Cassovia* the 24th of *February* to *Catharine* the Daughter of *John Sigismond* Elector of *Brandenbourg*; and *Christina* the Daughter of *Gustavus Adolphus*, and of *Mary Eleoner* of *Brandenbourg*, was born at *Stockholm* on the 18th of *December*.

*Peter de Berulle*, General in *France* of the Congregation of the Oratory, made Cardinal the 19th of *January*, in 1626, died at *Paris* in the Month of *October*, in 1629.

*Gabriel de l'Aubespine*, Bishop of *Orleans*, a Man exceedingly well skill'd in the Fathers, died at *Grenoble* the 15th of *August*, in 1630. A Catalogue of his Discourses may be seen before his Notes upon *Optatus Milevitanus*. *Charles Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, died the very same Year of an Apoplexy, on the 27th of *July*.

*Gustavus Adolphus*, born in 1594; crowned at *Stockholm* on the 12th of *October*, in 1611. after the death of *Charles* his Father, who had taken away the Crown from *Sigismond* King of *Poland*, was kill'd when he was eight and thirty Years old, at *Lutzen* near *Leipsick*, on the 16th of *November*, in 1632. The Protestant Princes of *Germany*, had all of 'em form'd a powerful Confederacy against the Emperor, under pretence of a desire to maintain the Liberties of *Germany*; and *Christian* the IVth, King of *Denmark* was made Head of it. In 1626.

they

they were all sufficiently mall'd by Count Tilly in *Brunswick* near *Lutter*; in the Dukedom of *Saxony* by the Count of *Walstein*, in 1628; and the Dukedom of *Holstein* was taken from the Danes, which obliged them on both sides to come to an Agreement. In the mean time *Gustavus Adolphus* Countermines the Intrigues and Power of those who laboured to transfer the Crown of *Sweden* to *Sigismund*; he disengages himself honourably from the War of *Denmark*; he forces *Riga* in *Livonia* out of the Hands of the Poles, in 1621; he entered the *Regal Prussia*; in 1627. he gave Battle to *Ladislaus* the eldest Son of *Sigismund*, who was the General of the Polish Army, and was wounded in it. After many Advantages gained over *Denmark*, he sat down before *Copenhagen*, in 1629; and had certainly taken that City had it not been for *Lewis* the XIIIth, King of *France's* voluntary Mediation between those two Crowns. Thus a Peace was concluded with the Danes; and there was a Truce for six Years with *Poland*. When *Gustavus* was from all Quarters quiet, and enjoy'd an undisturb'd Tranquillity; he resolv'd to go speedily into *Germany*, pretending an Inclination, against the Emperor's Invasion, to guard and assert the Liberty of the City *Stralsund* in *Pomerania*. He cross'd the Baltick in 1630, and presently reduced *Pomerania* and *Mecklenburg*. All the Protestant Princes and Electors, but especially the Duke of *Saxony* received him as a Guardian Angel sent from Heaven; and the Emperor to make head against him, dispatched his Forces under the Conduct of Count Tilly, who pitched his Camp before *Magdeburg*, and he attack'd it and took it about the end of the Year 1631. upon the 9th of May; then he burnt it, having first given it up to be plundered by his Soldiers. From thence he went to encamp before *Leipsick*, where he defeated *John George* Duke of *Saxony*, by the Assistance which *Godfrey Henry* Count of *Papenheim* the Emperor's *Mareschal de Camp* General brought him; and became by this means Master of *Leipsick*. *Gustavus* provoked with that Loss, pursued him as far as near *Erfort*, where upon the 7th of *September* in the same Year he kill'd him ten thousand Men in a Battle; he recovered *Leipsick*, and gave it to



the Duke of Saxony to keep. After that time he subdued *Franconia*; he brought into subjection *Wirtzburg*, *Mayence*, *Francfort* upon the *Mein*; he over-ran *Schwaben*; he conquer'd *Alsatia*, and the Marquisate of *Burgaw*; he rescu'd the Duke of *Wirtemberg* from the Oppression of the Imperialists; he rov'd about *Bavaria*; and routed *Tilly*, who went to *Ingolstadt* to die on a Wound that he had receiv'd. Count *Walstein*, who had the Command of his Forces, look'd for the King at *Lutzen* near *Leipsick*; where, after several Skirmishes, *Gustavus* setting himself at the Head of the Regiment of *Steinbock*, supported by two other Regiments, spur'd his Horse; and went stooping to assault a Battalion of 24 Companies of *Curassiers*, who were the choicest Men of the whole Imperial Army. Upon the first On-set *Walstein's* Squadrons were already shaken, when the King was shot in his right Arm with a Pistol bullet, which broke his Bone; and since the Persons who were nearest him seeing his Blood, cry'd out, that the King was wounded; he cheer'd them up and encourag'd, and led them on himself to a fresh Charge. However, being in that condition, his Voice and his Strength fail'd him; and he begg'd *Bernard*, a Saxon Prince, the Duke of *Weimar*, his Lieutenant General, to convey him as well as he could out of the Fight. He had scarce made an end of speaking, and turn'd his Head, but a *Curassier* riding up towards him upon full speed, discharg'd a Carbine-shot in his Shoulder. The King fell off his Horse, and expir'd. He that wounded him, was pierc'd through the Body by the Swords of all that surrounded him; and the Imperialists, who endeavour'd to make their Advantage of the King's death, attack'd the *Suedes* with their utmost vigour. They who had alighted to assist him were forced to mount their Horses again, and he being stretch'd at full length, they could not hinder it, but his Head was shot too with a Pistol-bullet, and his Body cut a-cross with two Strokes of a Sword. Upon this Event, which gave Courage and Advantage to the Imperialists, the Duke of *Weimar* with his Troops came up and encourag'd them; he put them forward; he push'd them up to the place where the Battalion of

*Curassiers*

*Curassiers* was intrench'd; he drove them out of their Holds, and carried away the greatest part of their Standards. Though he was wounded in the left Arm, he broke through the Enemy's Army thrice; and being supported by the Prince of *Anhalt's* Regiment, and another of the Count of *Lewenstein's*, he compell'd them to leave their Posts; he put them into Confusion; and forced them to think only of a Retreat. The Principal Commanders of the Imperialists, *Galas*, *Merode*, *Holock*, *Isolani*, *Piccolomini* were mortally wounded, with many others; and *Papenheim* was cut off with a Cannon-ball Shot through the middle of his Body, close to the Saddle of his Horse. The *Suedes* were left in possession of the Imperialists Camp and Baggage; of one and twenty great Guns, most artificially wrought; to say nothing of others less valuable. On the *Suedes* side there were five or six Thousand slain; but of the Imperialists ten or twelve, and the rest of their Army was dispers'd. But that which is more surprizing, is, that by the Counsels of Chancellor *Axel Oxenstiern*, who afterwards govern'd the Kingdom, *Bernard* the Duke of *Weimar*, *Gustavus Horn*, and the other Generals perfectly render'd the Name of the *Suedes* immortal by their Victories, and Conquests, as if they had had the disposal of Events, and Fortune had been engag'd to attend their Arms only with Success.

*Frederick* the Vth, Elector Palatine of the *Rhine*, the Son of *Frederick* the IVth, born *August* the 26th at *Amberg*, married to *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *James* King of *Great Britain*, crown'd at *Prague* King of *Bohemia*, in 1619. defeated near *Prague* in 1620. pass'd from *Silesia* into *Holland* after his Over-throw; was banished by the Emperor *Ferdinand* the IIId, in the beginning of the Year 1621. he returned to the Palatinate in 1632. and died at *Mayence* on the 19th of *November*, the same Year.

In 1640. *Peter Paul Rubens*, a great Painter, a great Historian, a great Antiquary, and a great Statesman, died at the Age of sixty four, on the 30th Day of *May*. He was born at *Cologne*, in 1570. whither his Father *John Rubens* of *Antwerp*, a Doctor of the Civil and Ca-

non-Law, and a Counsellor to the Senate of the same City, had retir'd during the Wars. He died in 1587. and his Widow after that went back to *Antwerp*, where her Son, who had made considerable Progress already for his Age, proceeded in his Studies with much Reputation. He went from the College into the Service of the Countess of *Lalain*, who took him for one of her Pages: And forasmuch as his Mind was wholly bent upon Painting, he learn'd to design of *Adam Van Noort*, and to paint of *Octavio Venius*, Archduke *Albert's* Painter, so much fam'd at that time among the Flemings, that they knew no one beyond him. When he had stay'd four Years with him, he travell'd into *Italy*; from whence the Duke of *Mantua*, who had taken him into the Number of his Gentlemen, sent him into *Spain* to the King. His second Journey was to *Venice*, where he made it his whole Business to observe and imitate what was most excellent in the Pieces of *Titian*, of *Paul of Verona*, and of *Tintoret*: He went from *Venice* to *Rome*; from *Rome* to *Genoua*; and having signaliz'd himself there by his Pictures and Paintings, he went into *Flanders*, in 1609. Seeing his Fame was well spread and establish'd, and since the honourable Treatment and Salaries of the Archduke and Infanta sensibly affected him, he had regard for no other Place but his own Country; to which he firmly ty'd himself by taking a Wife there. However, he was almost at the same time sent for into *France* by *Mary de Medicis*, to paint there the Galleries of her Palace: And while he stay'd at *Paris*, he contracted so strict a Friendship with the Duke of *Buckingham*, that he scrupled not to communicate to him the secret Desire and Zeal he had to renew the interrupted Correspondence between *Spain* and *England*. As soon as he came back to *Flanders*, he imparted it to the Infanta *Izabella*, whose Husband was then dead; and that Princess and the Marquess of *Spinola*, in 1628. sent him into *Spain* to treat about the wish'd for Peace. After the King had given him his full Instructions; after he had honoured him with Knighthood, and made him Secretary of his Privy Council, he dismiss'd him; and he had no sooner given the Infanta an Account of the King  
her

her Nephew's Propositions, but he was dispatch'd away in the quality of an Embassador to *England*, where he concluded the Treaty of Peace.

King *Charles* to exprels his Acknowledgment and Esteem for him, Knighted him; he added to his Arms a Quarter fill'd with a Lyon; he in a full House of Parliament took his Sword from his side to give it him; he presented him with a very valuable Diamond-Ring, which he wore, and with a Diamond-Hatband worth Ten Thousand Crowns. He returned to *Spain*, where *Philip* the IVth bestow'd upon him the Office of his Lord Chamberlain, with a Key of Gold; and when he came back to *Flanders* (or four Years before) and had lost his first Wife, he married a young Maid of sixteen, who had yet more Beauty than she had Youth. *Albert Rubens* was his Son by that Wife; and it seems that Knowledge and Polite Learning were Hereditary to that Family; because *John Rubens* was an excellent Scholar; *Peter Paul* the Painter was no way behind him, and because his Brother \* *Philip* was generally esteem'd as a Poet and a Critick.

*Catalonia* revolted for the sake of *Lewis* the XIIIth, surnamed the *Just*: and the Portuguese took for their King *John* Duke of *Braganza*, the Son of *Theodosius* the IIId, who was the Son of *Edward* Duke of *Guimarens*, the Prince of *Portugal*, the Son of *Emanuel*, whose Life was written by *Feronymus Oforius*. This is a Passage in Story which deserves well to be cleared.

Now to give light to that Historical Point, 'tis necessary to let you know that Cardinal Don *Henry*, the Son of *Emanuel*, and Brother of *John* the IIIId, did in 1578, succeed Don *Sebastian*, who unfortunately fell the same Year, in the Battle of *Arzille*, or *Alcazar* in *Africk*.

I i 3

After

---

\* *Philippe Rubens a fait deux Livres qu' il nomme Electa; & Poemata. Albert Rubens a fait deux Livres de Re Vestitaria; Une Dissertation de Gemma Tiberiana, une autre de Gemma Augustaa. De Urbibus Neocores: De Nummo Augusti, ejus Epigraphe Asia Recepta; De Natali die Caesaris Augusti.*



After the Death of *Henry* who had no Children, and whose Reign was short, there was a sufficient Number of Competitours for the Succession to the Kingdom. *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy* laid claim to it, because he was the Son of *Emanuel*, whose Father *Charles* the III<sup>d</sup> married, *Beatrix* the Daughter of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*. *Alexander* the Son of *Octavius Farnese*, Duke of *Parma* and *Plaisance*, pleaded his right, because in 1565, he had married *Mary* the eldest Daughter of King *Edward*. The Grand Prior of *Crato*, the Son of Don *Lewis* the second Son of *Emanuel*, look'd upon his Succession to the Throne as an Inheritance, which could not be justly taken from him. *Catharine de Medicis* Queen of *France*, who descended from *Alphonfus* the III<sup>d</sup>, King of *Portugal*, and *Matilde* Countess of *Bologne* enter'd her Pretences amongst the Competitors. *Catharine* Dutchess of *Briganza*, the Daughter of the Infant, or first Son of *Portugal* *Edward*; and *Philip* the second Son of the Empress *Elizabeth*, who were the Children of *Emanuel*, urg'd their Pretensions to the best Title to the Crown, as being in Blood the nearest Heirs of it. *Philip* the II<sup>d</sup>, who referred himself in the matter neither to the Determinations of Lawyers, nor to the Opinions of his Neighbours, asserted his right by the Law of Arms; he took *Portugal*, and was Crown'd at *Lisbon*, in the Month of *April*, in 1581. After he had reigned there 18 Years, *Philip* the III<sup>d</sup> reigned 23; and *Philip* the IV<sup>th</sup> 19. 'Twas when he was King, in 1640, that *Portugal* revolted, and *Margaret* of *Savoy* resided there with the Title of a Vice-gerent Queen. But for all her Title and Character, she did not what she pleas'd there; *Michael Valconcellos* the Secretary of State, and the Creature of Count Duke of *Olivarez* the chief Minister of *Philip* the IV<sup>th</sup>, having the main Administration of Affairs in his Hand, which he manag'd according to the Instructions of the Count. Now *Catalonia* having rebelled, and *Spain* being in actual War with *France*, and unable to bear the Expence of it; *Valconcellos* drain'd *Portugal* of its Mony by his heavy and numerous Taxes. The Portuguese tired with the grievous Contributions which he exacted of them, and which

which they were of necessity oblig'd to pay, at last perfectly understood that there was no Yoke more Burthensome than that of *Spain*. They saw also that the Spaniards were possess'd of the best Offices; that the whole Trade of the *Indies* belonged to *Cadiz*; that the Natives of the Country were forcibly seized upon, either out of the Cities, Fields, or Villages, to be convey'd into *Catalonia*. Being under so great a Consternation, they heartily desired to exchange their Government for one less Oppressing and Tyrannical. But these were only secret and unknown Wishes, and if they bemoaned themselves, their Complaints seldom reach'd the Ears of their Governess; though *Vasconcellos* who was the Author of their Misery, could not be ignorant that they had an invincible Aversion for him. Such was the Temper of the Gentry, Nobility, and People; which Don *Fohn* Duke of *Braganza*, who was the lawful Heir of the Kingdom, awak'd; and *Pinto Ribeiro* the Comptroller of his House, who had a Prospect of his Master's Advancement, either in hopes to gain by it, or out of the pure Zeal and Kindness he had for him, did all he could to make him King of *Portugal*. When he had concerted his Design with the Archbishop of *Lisbon*, of the Family of *Acugna*, with Don *Michael* of *Almeyda*, with Don *Antony* of *Almada*, with Don *Lewis*, his Son, the Son in law to Don *Antony* of *Almada*, and the Archbishop's Nephew, with *Mello* the Great Ranger, with Don *George* his Brother, with *Peter Mendoza*, with Don *Rodrigo de Saa*, the Grand Chamberlain, and some others who minded nothing but Innovation, they by common Consent pitched upon a Day for the Attempt. There was not a Man of 'em but confidently depended upon some private Persons to assist in that great Work; and the Measures which they had taken, being approved of as proper, they thought of nothing more than to see the Duke of *Braganza* upon the Throne. The Order of the March and Assault of the Conspirators being appointed, they went to the House of Don *Michael* of *Almeyda* and of other Grandees, where being Armed, and seeing the time they had left them too precious to throw away, Don *Michael Almeyda* all of a sudden surprized the German Guard, and

easily destroyed them. *Mello* the great Ranger, and *Don Stephen* of *Alcugna*, who had been engag'd in the Undertaking, charg'd the Spanish Guard. *Pinto* forc'd open the Apartment of *Vasconcellos*, who being hid in a Cupboard, was killed by *Don Rodrigo de Saa*, the Grand Chamberlain, and torn in pieces by the Mob as soon as he was thrown out at the Windows. When *Pinto* made haste to joyn those who were to take possession of the Palace, he found that they had already seiz'd the Queen Regent; that they had Arrested the Marquess of *Baynet* her Master of the Horse, the Marquess of *Puebla* her Major Domo; *Don Didacus de Cordoue* her Campmaster General, *Don Fernand de Castro*, the Treasurer of her Navy. The Queen Regent also was fain to sign an Order to *Don Lewis Delcampo*, a Spaniard, to surrender the Cittadel: and that Governor who saw the Conspirators in Arms, attended with an incredible Multitude of the Populace, was base enough to obey it. After this, *Mendoza*, and the Grand Ranger were sent to the Duke of *Briganza*, to beg him to come and take the Title of King upon him, who left *Villa Vitiesa* to go with speed to *Lisbon*, where he was welcom'd on the 6th of *December*, by the grateful Sound of the publick Acclamations. This pompous turn of State at Court was seconded with a general Insurrection of the whole Kingdom; and within a Fortnight's time all the Spaniards fled out of *Portugal* in haste. *Don Ferdinand de la Cueva* Governor of the Citadel of *St. Joam*, at the Mouth of *Tagus*, or the *Tajo*, put himself into a posture to keep it for the King his Master; but when he saw that the Trench was open'd; and carryed on up to the Counterscarp, he made an Agreement with the Enemy upon some Assurance given him. At the same time the Duke of *Briganza* was Crown'd at *Lisbon* with the usual Ceremonies, and the Queen his Consort was received there with all the Splendor and Joy, which so great Success could require. *Don John*, after he had submitted his Pretences to the Crown to the Examination of an Assembly of the States of the Kingdom, was recogniz'd there to be the true and rightful King of *Portugal*, as descending by the Princess his Mother from the Infant *Edward*, the Son of King *Emanuel*,

nuel, to the utter Exclusion of the King of *Spain*, who came from his Loyns, by a Daughter married to a Foreign Prince, and who for that reason, according to the Fundamental Laws of the Kingdom, could not lay claim to it. When he had provided for the Security of his Kingdom, he communicated the News of his Restauration to Princes and Commonwealths; and the Portuguese in *America*, *Africa*, and in the *East-Indies* would own no Sovereign but him. In the mean time there was a dreadful Conspiracy form'd against him: and the Archbishop of *Brague*, devoted to the Queen Regent, and *Spain* drew in to it the Marquess *de Villa Real*, the Duke of *Aveira*, who were Princes of the Blood; the Grand Inquisitor his Friend; the Count of *Armamar* his Nephew; the Commissioner of the *Crusade*; the Count of *Ballera's*, Don *Augustine Emanuel*; *Pidez Caruabe*, the Treasurer, and some others of the Spanish Faction. But the Plot being detected, and the Conspirators having it prov'd against them, that they design'd to stab the King, and to fire the City of *Lisbonne* in several Parts of it; the Duke of *Camine*, and the Marquess of *Villa Real* were sentenc'd to be Beheaded, and the others to be Hang'd. The Grand Inquisitor and the Archbishop of *Brague* came off with their Lives, being doom'd to a perpetual Prison; and the latter died there soon after, being stark mad at the ill Success of his Undertaking. The Queen Regent was afterwards returned into the Hands of the Spaniards: and whatever *Spain* could attempt, it made no Advantage either by its Intrigues, or Armies. §

Don *John* reign'd 17 Years, and after his Death the new Queen Sister to the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, and the Governor of *Andalusia*, had the Regency, which she maintained with as much State as Constancy. Don *Alphonfus* her Son being at Age to govern, took the Throne; and when he was deposed, Don *Pedro*, his Brother fill'd up his place. 'Tis He who is the present King there, and who by a solemn Treaty at *Madrid*, is own'd for the lawful Sovereign of *Portugal*, and whose Crown is absolutely independent upon that of *Spain*.

*Antony Vandyck*, who was the Scholar of *Paul Rubens*, who surpass'd him in the Nicety of Carnations, or the Flesh-colours of his Pictures, died in 1641. Fer-



*Ferdinand* Archbishop of *Toledo*, and Cardinal, the Son of *Philip* the III<sup>d</sup>, died in his Government of the Low-Countries; and *Francis de Melo* Count of *Astimari*, and *Andrew Cantelme* executed the Office of Under-Governors, till the arrival of *Leopold-William*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, the Son of the Emperor *Ferdinand* the II<sup>d</sup>.

On the 6<sup>th</sup> of *July*, in 1641, *Lewis* of *Bourbon* Count of *Soissons*, a Prince of the Blood of *France*, was killed with a Pistol-shot under the Eye, at the Battle of *Thournoy* near *Sedan*, which the Men of his side won against the King's Army commanded by Marshal *Chatillon*.

In 1642, died Queen *Mary de Medicis* at *Cologne*, and *John Armand du Plessis* Cardinal, Duke of *Richelieu*, the most Provident, Wise and Fortunate Minister of State that ever was. *Galileo Galilei* a great Philosopher and Astronomer, who was detained five Years a Prisoner in the Inquisition, and who got not out thence till he had renounc'd his System for the motion of the Earth ( which at this time is not taken for such a Wonder and Mystery ) died the same Year. *Mary Stewart* the Daughter of *Charles* the I<sup>st</sup>, King of *England*, and of the Lady *Henrietta Maria*, was married this Year on the 2<sup>d</sup> of *May* to *William Maurice* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, and conducted by the Queen her Mother into *Holland*, in *February*.

*Lewis*, surnamed the *Just*, born in the King's Palace at *Fontaine-bleau*, the 27<sup>th</sup> of *September*, in 1601, died at *St. Germain's* in *Laye*, the 14<sup>th</sup> Day of *May*, in 1643, lived 41 Years, four Months, and eighteen Days, and was King full 32. By Queen *Anne* the eldest Daughter of *Philip* the IV<sup>th</sup> King of *Spain*, and of *Margaret* of *Austria*, he had *Lewis* surnamed the *Great*, who reigns at this Day, and Monsieur, *Philip* Duke of *Orleans*.

The Lady *Isabella* of *France*, Queen of *Spain*, died in 1644, and *Innocent* the X<sup>th</sup> succeeded *Urban* the VIII<sup>th</sup>.

The Dutch *East-India* Company sent *Brower* with a Fleet to make a League against the Spaniards, with the People of *Chili*, who inhabit a Country of Southern *America*, and to endeavour to seize upon *Peru* and the Mountain of *Potosi*. But the People of *Chili* having discovered

covered the same Passionate Thirst for Gold in the Hollanders, which was in the Spaniards, did not at all Answer their Expectations; and *Brewer* was forc'd to return thence, without doing the least Service to his Masters.

*Hugo Grotius*, born in 1583, on the 10th of *April*, died the 28th of *August*, in 1645. *Holland* never did, nor, perhaps, ever will produce so judicious a Man.

*Ferdinand* the IVth, King of *Hungary*; *Henry Frederick* Prince of *Orange*; *John Lanfrank* of *Parma*, an eminent Painter, died in the Year 1647.

*Naples* revolted in that very Year, induc'd by the Seditious and Daring Attempts of a mean Fisher, call'd *Massaniello*, or *Thomas Aniello*, a Native of the Town of *Melfi*, in a Province of that Kingdom, by the Romans, of old, named *Laboriæ*, or *Campi Laborini*. He dispos'd of the whole City, he gave Law to two Hundred Thousand Men, and at the end of eighteen Days was Brain'd and Murthered. The Beginnings and Consequences of that Revolt, are Prodigies considered in their Circumstances; and a Man need only read *Feronymo Brusoni's* tenth Volume of his Histories of *Europe*, Count *Majolin Bisaccioni* in his History of the Civil Wars of that Age, the Count of *Modena*, and the Duke of *Guise*, to be fully inform'd in that matter.

The Year 1648, was a Year of Joy and Satisfaction to *Spain*, *Germany*, and *Holland*, by reason of the Treaty of *Munster*; but it was a time of Mourning for *Denmark*, which lost *Christierne* the IVth, and for *Poland* which bewailed the Death of *Uladislaus Sigismond*. The latter, who had married *Cecilia Renea*, the Daughter of the Emperor *Ferdinand* the II, and of *Mary-Anne*, the Daughter of *William* Duke of *Bavaria*, took for his second Wife *Louisa Maria de Gonzaga*, Dutchess of *Nevers*, who was the Daughter of *Charles de Gonzaga*, and of *Catharine* of *Lorraine*.

In 1648, *Charles* the Ist, King of *England*, was sentenc'd to Death by his Subjects, and the Executioner Beheaded him, But 'tis convenient to say something here of his Life,

That

That King, who was the Third Son of *James* the VIth of *Scotland*, and of *Anne* the Daughter of *Frederick* the IIId, and Sister of *Christiern* the IVth, King of *Denmark*, was born in 1600, at *Dumferlin* in *Scotland*, on the 19th Day of *November*. He was but two Years old when he was Duke of *Albany*, Marquess of *Ormond*, Earl of *Rosse*, and Baron of *Ardmonack*. The two former, and the last of those four Titles were absolutely in the King's Disposal. But as for the Earldom of *Rosse*, which was added to the Crown in *James* the IIIId's time, who was married to *Margaret* Princess of *Denmark*, it was so strictly united to it, that it could neither be alienated nor sold; and 'tis only for the sake of the second Son of *Scotland*, that it is in the Power of the King to dispose of it. After the death of *Queen Elizabeth*, *James* the VIth succeeded her in *England*; and his Succession was disputable neither by the Regulation that Princess had made of it, nor by the Right of *William* the Conqueror Duke of *Normandy*, of which he was able to make good use. He could also lay claim to it by his Birth, since by a long and successive Order of Kings, he descended from *Malcolm Connor*, or *Comnoir* King of *Scotland*, who married *Margaret*, the Sister and only Heiress of *Edger Etheling*, the last Prince of the English Saxons, who died about the Year 1097.

*Charles* by the death of his eldest Brother, who liv'd till 1612, succeeded him on the 6th of *November*, as Duke of *Cornwal* having been made Knight of the Order of the Garter the Year before; and the Princess *Elizabeth* his eldest Sister, was married to the Prince Elector Palatine, *Frederick* the VIth. In 1616, *Charles* was created Prince of *Wales*, Earl of *Chester*, and of *Flint*; and the *Queen Anne* his Mother, died the 2d of *March* in 1619. The very same Year the States of *Bohemia* being met together with the Deputies of *Moravia*, of *Silesia*, and of *Lusatia*, chose *Frederick* the VIth, and solemnly protested that they would never own for their King the Emperor *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, newly crown'd King of the Romans. *Frederick* incited by the Ambition of *Elizabeth*, accepted the offer'd Kingdom against the Opinion of his Father-in-Law King *James*, which

was

was his utter Ruin; because the Emperor stript him of his Government, and because he bestow'd the Electoral Dignity, with the Upper Palatinate, upon the Duke of *Bavaria*; giving the Lower Palatinate to the King of *Spain*, who by his Generals took it all into his possession except *Heidelberg*, *Frankendal*, and *Manheim*, where the English had strong Garrisons. After many Embassies and Conferences, there was no Expedient in *England* look'd upon as more likely to restore *Frederick* to his Dominions, than the Marriage of Prince *Charles* to the Infanta *Mary*, the Sister of the King of *Spain*. That Project having been resolv'd upon in haste, and without the Precaution requir'd, Prince *Charles* made Preparations to go to see the Infanta in 1623. being attended by the Duke of *Buckingham*, his Master of the Horse, by *Endimion Porter*, and *Francis Cottington*. He embark'd at *Dover*, landed at *Bologne*, and rode Post to *Paris*; where being *Incognito* he saw the Princess whom he married some time after, and went away for *Spain*. He was very well received there, and the Articles of Marriage were to be sign'd by the two Kings, as soon as they could be sure of the Pope's Dispensation, without which they could proceed no farther.

But since the Spaniards are naturally slow enough in the Resolutions which are necessary, since Prince *Charles* was not pleas'd with that their tardy Humour; since they defer'd the Decision of the Business of the Palatinate till after the Wedding, and since *Buckingham* grasp'd at the whole Glory of that Negotiation, by which Count *d'Olivarez* purpos'd to gain himself Honour, the Prince took care to get out of *Spain*, and upon the 5th of *October* in the same Year, 1623. he arrived at *Portsmouth* in *England*. King *James* being informed concerning the Circumstances of that Affair (in which *Buckingham* always acted unfaithfully through the Aversion he had for Count *d'Olivarez*) and seeing that there was no likelihood that the Palatinate would be restored, sent an Order to my Lord *Digby*, before Earl of *Bristol*, and Ambassador at *Madrid*, by no means to deliver the Warrant or Letter of Attorney which Prince *Charles* had left with him, by which the Catholick King, and Don *Charles*  
his



his Brother were empower'd in his Name to marry the Infanta. In 1624. there was an open Breach betwixt England and Spain, and a Match was propos'd betwixt Prince Charles and Madam Henrietta Maria the Daughter of Henry the Great.

James the 1st died the next Year, and Prince Charles was proclaimed King. He had no great Satisfaction in the two first Parliaments he summon'd together; and seeing there were some Merchant-men which belonged to his Subjects stopped and detained in the River near Bourdeaux, he was fain to make use of that Fleet against France, which he had armed and rigged out against Spain. It set out so late that it was shattered with Tempests, so that it could bring no Relief to the Rochellers, who begged the King's Protection in a most pressing Manner; and in 1627. Buckingham who had more Forces than were necessary to make himself Master of the Isle of Ree, thought it enough by all sorts of Civilities to gain upon and reconcile them whom he had Orders to fight with, and whom it was in his power to subdue. This was a Court-Intrigue, and that is all I am allowed to say here of it. The same Year Buckingham being sensible of his failure, resumed his Design with greater Vigour, and was murdered at Portsmouth by John Felton, who had served him in his Fleet, who had took pet at him upon some just Occasion; and who, to vindicate what he had done, alledged that Buckingham had been declared by the Commons to be an Enemy of the Kingdom. The King who had a great value and friendship for the Duke, suffered that Loss with much Constancy of Mind; and did nevertheless permit his Fleet to sail under the Command of the Earl of Lindsey, who found the Harbour of Rochelle shut up by a Bank, and seeing no probability of breaking through it, could not relieve the Rochellers, who in the Year 1628. were therefore necessitated to surrender to the King.

In the mean time when the Princes of Germany were deprived of their Governments by the Emperor's Armies, and when the King of Denmark, the Head of the League, had been routed by Tilly, the King of England, who had his Designs, sent a George and Garter to Gustavus Adolphus

*phus* King of *Sueden*, who at that time besieged *Dreslaw* in *Pomerania*. This Alliance was seconded and strengthened by one with *France*, by the United Provinces, and by the Unfortunate Princes of the Empire ; and if *Gustavus Adolphus* had not been kill'd in the Battle of *Lutzen*, the Elector Palatine had probably been restor'd to his Principality. The King of *England* had other Things to wind himself out of ; and of all the Parliaments he call'd together, there was none which absolutely granted him what he ask'd, tho' he ask'd nothing but what was just ; and which gave him not manifest Instances of their Hatred or Contempt. He being willing to perfect what King *James* his Father had begun, I mean to make the Liturgies of *England* and *Scotland* alike ; the Presbyterians rebell'd, seiz'd the Cities and Fortresses, and forced him by Act of Parliament to give up the Power he had to raise Men. The English and Scots already acting only upon concerted Measures, the House of Commons demanded of him for their security, that he would put into their Hands the Tower of *London*, the command of his Fleet, his Castles, and the Militia of the Kingdom ; and he saw by those Demands that he had nothing left to do but to guard himself against their Tyranny. So the Fire broke out on all sides, and there was nothing to be seen but Men in Arms. Fortune which was on the right Side in some Encounters, left it in others ; and the King had conquer'd his rebellious Subjects, if his Loyal Ones had made use of their Advantages and their Understandings. But after many Proposals for an Accommodation, which the Rebels gave no Ear to ; after the surrender of some Cities by agreement, or after forcing others, after Battles won and lost ; the King who in 1645. was worsted in the Plain of *Naseby* in the County of *Northampton*, by *Brown*, *Fairfax* and *Cromwel*, was forced to fly to *Leicester*. He was received at *Newcastle* by the Scots, who sold him for two hundred thousand Pound to the English : And the Question being put to him, whether he had rather be with these or those ; he answer'd, *That he still made it his Option, rather to be with those that paid a great deal of Money for him, than with those that basely sold him.*

After

After that he was brought to *Holmbly* Castle in the County of *Northampton*; from *Holmbly* to *Newmarket*, to *Hampton-Court*, from whence he escap'd into the little Isle of *Wight*, which is separated from the great one but by a very narrow Channel. In 1648. having been forcibly carried away, by a Company of Horse, and another of Foot, he was brought to *Hurst* Castle.

*William* Prince of *Orange* died in 1649. The Cardinal *John Casimir*, who was elected King of *Poland*, after the death of *Ladislaus Sigismund*, his Brother, married Queen *Louisa* of *Gonsaga* his Sister-in-Law: And *Philip* the IV<sup>th</sup> took for his second Wife *Mary Anne* the Daughter of the Emperor *Ferdinand* the III<sup>d</sup>, and of *Mary* the Daughter of *Philip* the III<sup>d</sup>.

*Claude Fevre de Vaugelas*, to whom we are oblig'd for some Remarks upon our Tongue, died that Year: And the incomparable *Renatus Descartes*, born in *Touraine* in 1587. died in *Sueden* on the 1<sup>st</sup> of *February*, in 1650. Never did Philosophy appear more lovely than in his Works; and those that disallow his Principles, must at least grant that his Geometry is the highest Effort of Human Wit. I ought not however to omit here that *Wallis* in his Algebraical Institution, is positive that *Descartes*, as for his Algebra, has taken it wholly from *Harmottus*; and that *Roberval* was of that Opinion too. As for his Doctrin, That a Brute is but an Engine; it is true too that the Physician *Gomez* of *Pereyra*, in 1554. maintained the same, and published it in Print at *Medina del Campo* in the Kingdom of *Leon*. I know not indeed whether he ever saw that Book. But since it is an establish'd Principle of *Descartes*, that Matter however modify'd is incapable of thinking, because its Essence consists in extent or quantity; and that on the contrary, the Soul or the Mind is a Substance that thinks, he could not so well prove the Immortality of Man, but by taking away Thought from Beasts.

*Charles* the II<sup>d</sup>, the Son of *Charles* the I<sup>st</sup>, King of *England*, was crown'd King of *Scotland* at *Edenborough* on the 9<sup>th</sup> of *January*, in 1651; and defeated the 3<sup>d</sup> of *September*, in 52. As brave as he was, he was fain to retreat, and his Escape was little less than miraculous.

Father

Father *James Sirmond*, a Jesuit, a Man skilful in all ancient Learning, died at *Paris*, being 92, in 1652; and *Claudius Salmasius* at *Spa*, whither he went to drink the Waters. 'Twould be to no purpose to speak of *Sirmond*, because his very Name is his Encomium; because he has been the wonder of all *Europe*, and the *Casaubons* and the *Scaligers*, who were the Teachers of others, consulted him as their Oracle, even when he was very young.

In 1654. *John Selden*, noted for the learned Books which he publish'd to the World, died at *London* the 30th of November. *England* which was turn'd into a Republick, in *Cromwel's* Time, became visibly his Slave. *Lewis* the Great was crown'd at *Reims*, and the Spaniards, who bore hard upon and straiten'd *Arras*, were forced to raise the Siege. They stop't *Charles* Duke of *Lorraine*, who was after carried away into the Spanish Dominions. Queen *Christina* resign'd the Crown of *Sueden* for the sake of *Charles Gustavus*. *Alexis Michalowitz*, or the Son of *Michael* the Grand Duke of *Moscovy*, being gone into *Lithuania* with an Army of forty thousand Men, took upon Capitulation *Smolensko* the Metropolis of the Province of the same Name, situated upon the *Boristhenes* or the *Neiper*, the Head of which is in the Province of *Raschovy*, near a Village call'd *Niepersko*, within ten Leagues of the Lake of *Wronow*. But I must say something of the *Moscovites*, and of the Great Dukes that were Predecessors to those two last.

*John Basilowitz* was very young, when he was crown'd Great Duke, in 1540; and Historians speak much of his Cruelties and his Wars. He had seven lawful Wives. By the first he had *Iwan*, and *Fedor*, that is to say *John* and *Theodor*, and *Demetrius* by the last. Being violently angry with the eldest, he struck him with a Stick upon his Head; and by that fatal stroke the young Prince within five days lost his Life. The Father died on the 28th of *March*, in 1584; and *Fedor Iwanowitz*, or the Son of *John* was crown'd upon the last of *July* the same Year. He being incapable of Business, and finding no Employment so pleasant and delightful to him as to ring Bells in the time of Divine Service, the Administration



and Regency was committed to *Boris Gudenow*, the Duke's Brother-in-Law, and Master of his Horse. *Boris* who was belov'd, and who manag'd that vast Empire very well, that he might be uncontrollably Master of it, made away *Demetrius*, being nine Years old, by the Hand of one of his Gentlemen, whom with his Accomplices he order'd to be murder'd for fear of being discover'd. *Fedor* dying by a Distemper in 1587, *Boris* was chosen Great Duke: And when he reign'd, a Monk whose Name was *Griska Utropoja*, who for his Lewdness had been put into a Monastery, found out an Expedient to get off from it by the persuation of another Monk, and withdrew into *Pomerania*, where he entered the Service of a Man of Quality, whose Name was *Adam Wesnewiski*. *Griska Utropoja* had so wrought himself into the good Opinion of his Master, that he made him believe he was the Son of the Great Duke *John Basilowitz*; and that *Boris Gudenow* having design'd him for slaughter, his Friends had preserv'd him, by substituting in his room the Son of a Priest that was very like him. 'Twas no very long time before this Account was publickly known: And his Master, who by no means thought him safe in his House, sent him secretly into *Poland*, where he was kindly entertained by the *Vayvode* of *Sandomer*. This Prince firmly believing his Case as he reported it, and being a zealous Catholick presently undertook to serve him with his Money, with his Friends, and with his Interest, provided he would grant a Toleration to the Romish Religion in *Moscow*, and that he would himself make open profession of it. He learns his new Catechism, changes his Religion, promises to marry the *Vayvod's* Daughter, when he shall be restor'd to his Kingdoms; and by the help of his pretended Father-in-Law he raises an Army, marches into *Moscow*, and declares War there against the Great Duke. He took a great many Cities; he drew the greatest part of the Officers to his side; and he got so many Advantages of *Boris*, that he died with Grief for 'em, on the 3d of April in 1605. After his death, the Lords who were at *Moscow*, crown'd *Fedor Borissowitz*, though very young; but when *Demetrius* made considerable

nable Advances, they repented of what they had done, and persuaded every Body that *Demetrius* was the true Heir of the Crown. They sent their Request to him that he would come and take it; and when they had offered to give up to him the whole Family of *Gudenow*, he sent a Secretary with his Order to strangle the Mother, and the Son which was accordingly put in Execution. *Demetrius* went to *Moskow* with an Army, and after his Coronation there, upon the 21st of July, he sent to fetch out of her Cloyster the Mother of the true *Demetrius*, who at first sight discover'd the Imposture, but however, conceal'd it for her own Advantage. But the *Moscovites* open'd their Eyes, when they understood that *Demetrius* was to Marry the Vayvode of *Sandomer's* Daughter, a Woman of the Church of *Rome*, and when they saw, that to give her Attire and Furniture suitable to her Character, he laid Hands upon all that was most valuable in the Kingdom.

The Vayvode's Daughter being arriv'd with a great number of *Polanders*; *Basilowitz Zuski* (who had already been disappointed in a former Attempt) and those that conspir'd with him perceiving that the great Duke and his Courtiers were drunk and fast asleep, rung the Bells at Midnight; they went out of their Houses armed, they broke through the Castle-Gates, killing the *Polish* Guards that were plac'd before them; and press'd into the Chamber of the Great Duke, on the 9th day after he was married. Which when he saw, he leap'd in haste through the Window, thinking to escape. but he was taken: and when they had brought the Mother who before had own'd him for her Son, and she had sworn upon a Cross which was tender'd to her, that he was not her Son, they shot him through the Head with a Pistol. His Body was dragg'd quite up to the Town-Hall, where it was expos'd three whole days to the View of every Eye: and after that it was put in the Grave, from whence it was taken out to be burnt.

*Zuski* the Contriver of the Conspiracy, was chosen Great Duke, and crown'd the 1st of June, in 1606. He was scarce acknowledged for their Sovereign but

there started up another Impostor, by Name *Gregory Schacopski*, who in the Plunder of the Castle had found the Seals of the Kingdom; and who having taken the Name of *Demetrius*, betook himself to *Poland* for Protection, publishing in all places through which he passed, that by the Covert of the Night he had at least escaped Murther, and that there was another Man taken in his stead. At the same time a Deputy to a Secretary of State had a mind likewise to be *Demetrius*; and he play'd his part so well, that he met with Men who supported him, and who enabled him to become Master of many Cities.

*Sigismond* the III<sup>d</sup>, making an Advantage of the scandalous Confusion of his Enemies, and not easily forgetting that *Basile* the Son of *John* had taken *Smolensko* from *Poland*, block'd up that City about the end of the Year 1609, and was in Possession of it upon Terms of Agreement and Capitulation, the 2<sup>d</sup> of *June*, in 1611. The Governor of the Fortrefs, and the Archbishop were presented to the King, and confess'd to him that from the time he sat down before, till the time he took *Smolensko*, there were a Hundred thousand Persons died in it. *Zuski* had not always been idle amidst those great Disorders. He offer'd also Battle to the King; but *Suffolski* the Polish Lieutenant General, cut in pieces the greatest part of the Troops designed for the relief of the Besieged, and took some very considerable Cities. The Moscovites were laid waste by so many Losses; and having from the Misfortunes that besel them, drawn a necessary Consequence that the unjust Government of *Zuski* was the Cause of them, they dispossest him of the Dignity of *Great Duke*, and shut him up in a Monastery, where he was Shaved. They chose too for their Sovereign *Ladislaus* the Son of *Sigismond*: And the Poles were for one whole Year Masters of *Moscow*, and the Castle. But forasmuch as they did behave themselves immodestly towards the Ladies, and did use the Citizens and Noblemen ill, the Moscovites took Arms, and forc'd them at last to leave the Town. The Poles in their Rage fired the City in three or four places, they kill'd in two days time by Fire and Sword, above two hundred

dred thousand Persons, they plunder'd the Treasury, the Monasteries, and the Churches; and got such considerable Booty in the Slaughter, that the Soldiers for want of Lead charged their Pistols with large Pearls.

The Polanders, and the famous *Demetrius* appearing no more, the Moscovites in 1613, chose *Michael Federowicz*, the Son of *Nekitis*, a very remote Kinsman of *John Basile*. He made peace with his Neighbours; he was universally valued for his sweet Temper; he liv'd forty nine Years, reign'd thirty three, and died on the 12th of July, in 1645. *Alexis Federowicz*, was crown'd the 13th of July the same Year, though he was not then sixteen Years old, because born the 17th of March, in 1630. This is the very Man who enter'd *Pomerania* with an Army of forty Thousand, and, as some say, sixty; who took *Smolensko* very luckily, because *Kodewicz* perceiving that he was too weak to Cope with him, withdrew farther into *Pomerania*; because the Heidukes and Cosaques, whom he had left in that City, fled upon the Report of the Arrival of the Moscovites; and because the three hundred Germans, who with some Polanders were in it, were taken by Force, and hewed in pieces.

These Great Dukes have the Title of *Czar*, *Tzar*, or *Zzar*, which signifies King: and the Moscovites will have it that *Czar* is nothing else but *Cesar*. 'Tis from one of the Provinces of this Great Duke call'd *Siberia*, that most part of the Sables are fetched, which by corruption are called *Sublines*, *Lebelines*, or *Zibelines*, \* which ought to be called *Siberines*; and the chief City of the Province is *Novogrod Siberiesky*, that is, the new City of *Siberia*, to distinguish it from other Cities of the same name. But I must return to my Chronological Observations.

*Lewis Guez de Balzac*, who was the Prodigy of his time for Eloquence, had not the Mortification to see, that the Court which spoke only of the fineness of his Works, should engage him in another Interest after his

K k 3

Death.

---

\* *Voyez sur le Voyage des Argonautes.*



Death. *Voiture* was the Man they then admired for his turn of Wit, for the delicacy of his Thoughts, for his Gracefulness, and for a certain frank and natural manner of Expression, which he uses in all his Letters. They found that *Balzack* was too Sublime and Loftry, that he spoke of little Things in pompous Words, that his Head was always high and soaring, and not able to stoop or fly down. However, 'tis true, that of all the good Writers there are none that can deny, but they have from him the art of Writing well, and of giving to a Period its just Measure: and if *Voiture* for his gentle Air is to be preferred before him, one may pronounce without the least Hazard of Reputation, that he falls infinitely short of him in the Purity of Style. *Balzac* died in 1654.

In 1655, *Innocent* the Xth, of the Family of *Pamphilio*, died upon the 8th of *January*: and on the 7th of *April*, Cardinal *Fabio Chigi* was elected Pope. He assum'd the Name of *Alexander*, and was the seventh so called.

The Queen *Christina* made Profession of the Romish Religion at *Inspruck*: and *Peter Gassendus*, a celebrated Mathematician and Philosopher, died at *Paris* the 24th of *October*, being Sixty four Years, Nine Months, and Four days old.

In 1656, *John* the IVth King of *Portugal*, died at *Lisbon*, *November* the 6th, and the 15th of the same Month, his Son *Alphonfus* was crowned. In 1657, the *Jesuites* who had been banished from *Venice*, were restored thither with Honor, and in Splendor.

In 1658, on the 13th of *September*, *Oliver Cromwel*, who should never have been born, died of a Fever. The next Year a Peace was concluded betwixt *France* and *Spain*, in the Isle of *Conference*. In 1660, *Monfieur Gaston* of *France*, Duke of *Orleans*, died at *Blon*, the 2d of *February*: and *Charles Gustavus* King of *Suedeland*, on the 22d of the same Month, at *Gotemburg*.

*Lewis* the Great gave Peace to above half *Europe*, by marrying the Infanta *Maria Theresa*, the Daughter of *Philip* the IVth, King of *Spain*, and of *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Henry* the Great, and of *Mary de Medicis*.

*Charles*

*Charles the II<sup>d</sup>*, the Son of *Charles the I<sup>st</sup>*, was this Year restor'd to *England*.

In 1661, *Mary Stuart*, the Widow of *William Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, died of the Distemper which is such an Enemy to the Beauty of the Fair Sex. The Cardinal *Mazarine*, died the 29<sup>th</sup> of *March*: and my Lord the *Dauphin* was born the 1<sup>st</sup> day of *November*.

*Frederick* Archbishop of *Bremen*, who had been appointed King of *Denmark*, after the Death of *Christiern* the IV<sup>th</sup>, made the Kingdom Hereditary. By that means all the Privileges of the Senate, and of the Nobility were abolished; and among the rest, those which had been enlarged at the Election of *Frederick* the II<sup>d</sup>, Duke of *Holstein*, which allowed not the King to Sentence to death, nor to banish so much as a Gentleman; which took from him the Liberty of advancing to Offices or Dignities a private Man, or a Stranger; which left to the Gentry the Power of Life and Death over their Dependents.

In 1662, *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *James*, King of *Great Britain*, the Widow of *Frederick* the V<sup>th</sup>, Elector Palatine, and King of *Bohemia*, died at *London* the 23<sup>d</sup> of *February*, being threescore and Eight. *Charles* the II<sup>d</sup> King of *England* marryed the Infanta *Catharine* of *Portugal*, on the 21<sup>st</sup> of *May*, the same Year. In 1663, *Emanuel* the II<sup>d</sup>, Duke of *Savoy*, born the 20<sup>th</sup> of *June*, in 1634, Married the Princess *Francis de Valois*, the Daughter of *Monfieur Gaston* of *France*, Duke of *Orleans*, and of *Margaret* of *Lorraine*. Since he lived not a whole Year with her, he took for his second Wife *Maria Joanna Baptista* of *Savoy*, the Daughter of *Charles Amedeus*, Duke of *Nemours*, and of *Isabella*, Daughter to *Cesar* Duke of *Vendome*. *Madam Christina* of *France*, *Duchess Dowager* of *Savoy*, the Mother of *Charles Emanuel*, died on the 27<sup>th</sup> of *September*.

*England* having fallen out with *Holland*, about the end of the Year 1664, made all possible Preparation for War, and on the 4<sup>th</sup> of *March*, in 1665, set out a Fleet to Sea of a Hundred and Thirty Sail, under the command of *James* Duke of *York*. That Great Prince was himself Admiral of the Squadron belonging to the Red Flag;

Prince *Robert* Palatine of the *Rhine*, was Admiral of the White Squadron; and the Earl of *Sandwich* of the Blue. The Dutch Fleet consisting of a Hundred and Thirty Men of War, divided into seven Squadrons, under the High-Admiral of *Holland*, and *West-Friezeland*, *Wassenaer d'Obdam*, sailed out of the *Texel*, at the end of *May*: and the 13th of *June*, the two Fleets meeting fought from three a Clock in the Morning till nine at Nine at Night. Admiral *Obdam* set upon the *Royal Charles*, in which the Duke of *York* was, and omitted nothing to distinguish and signalize his Valour in that attack. The Duke both bore and returned it with inconceivable Resolution: and though he saw the Earl of *Falmouth*, with many others fall as it were at his Feet; though the Brains of one of his menial Servants were dash'd upon his Cloaths and Face; though he had receiv'd a Wound on his Skull, and Hand, his Courage never appear'd greater in all Respects than in that Engagement. They had interchangeably play'd their great Guns upon one another almost two Hours together; when the Powder took Fire in the Dutch Admiral's Ship, who for two days before had been strangely afflicted with the Gout, and who not being able yet to stand, got himself fast-bound to the main Mast, that he might dispense his Commands, and Orders. The Fire presently blew up the Vessel: and there is no over and above satisfactory Account whether it were purely the effect of Chance, whether it happen'd by the carelessness of the Mate who gave out the Cartridges, or through the Despair of the Dutchman, who being not able to stand before the Duke, chose rather to destroy himself than to be taken by his Enemy. Three Dutch Ships some time after, being fix'd with Grappling-Hooks, and not able to get off; Prince *Robert* detach'd from his Squadron a Fire-ship, which burnt them one after another: and the English after a loss of several Vessels, and of nine Hundred Men (among whom there was a considerable number of Officers, and of Persons of Quality) apparently got the Victory. There were above four Thousand *Hollanders* killed and wounded; there were nine of their Ships sunk, eight or nine Triumphantly convey'd

vey'd into the *Thames*: and if the written Relation which I have seen be true, there were on that day more than Five Thousand Canon-Bullets discharged by both the Fleets.

The very same Year *Philip* the IVth, King of *Spain*, being Sixty Years old, died of the Stone. He was the Son of *Philip* the IIIrd, who left the World on the last day of *March*, in 1621, in the King's Palace at *Madrid*. *Charles* the IIrd when he was four Years old, succeeded *Philip* the IVth, being left as a Ward to the Queen *Mary-Anne* his Mother, and to six of his Father's Ministers, 1665.

*Nicholas Poussin* of *Audeli* in *Normandy*, a Great Designer, skill'd in the Statues and Paintings of Antiquity, in the Character of Passions, and in disposing Colours and Lights, died at *Rome*, being sixty Years Old, on the 19th day of *November*.

In 1666 *Anne* of *Austria* Queen of *France*, died upon the 20th of *January*: and the same Year *Mary Frances Elizabeth* of *Savoy*, the Daughter of *Charles Amedeus*, Duke of *Nemours*; and of *Isabella* the Daughter of *Cesar* Duke of *Vendome*, was married to Don *Alphonfus* King of *Portugal*.

In 1667, *Alexander* the VIIth died on the 21st of *May*; he was Pope 12 Years, one Month, and 15 Days: and the 20th of *June* the Cardinal *Rospigliosi*, who assumed the Name of *Clement* the IXth, succeeded him.

In the same Year the *Dutch* having notice that the *English* were not like to set their Fleet to Sea, put out their own, consisting of eighty Men of War, and twenty Fireships. *Ruyter* who commanded it, having in vain made some Attempts in *Scotland*, on the 13th of *June*, hoisted Sail to turn back towards the *Thames*. The 17th he cast Anchor at the Mouth of that River, and was informed that 19 Miles higher near *Gravesend*, there rode at Anchor Twelve Frigats, with twenty English Merchant-Men fraught for *Barbadoes*. He gave to his Vice-Admiral *de Guent* a Squadron of 17 Vessels to attack that Convoy: and the Vice-Admiral, on the 19th of *June*, enter'd the *Thames*. But since the Wind was against him, and since he was oblig'd to stop at *Boydhoppe*,



pe, within two Miles of *Gravesend*, and of the place where the *Frigats* lay at Anchor; he got up higher towards *London*, where they were thrown into a Panick Fear by this Attempt. The English were more allarm'd the next day, when they understood that their Enemies had sailed into the River of *Medway*, of *Rocheſter*, and of *Chattam*; and that they apparently had a deſign to Fire the 17 *Frigats*, and to plunder a Magazine the beſt ſurround'd of any in the Kingdom, with *Cords*, and *Anchors*. *Monk* upon theſe Tidings was ſent away with all the Forces he could get together: and that General when he ſaw that the Inhabitants had with a Chain faſten'd to Beams acroſs the Wood, ſhut up the River of *Medway*, which may be half a Mile broad, thought it convenient however, to ſink ſome Veſſels to ſecure the reſt, and to place behind them three or four *Frigats*, well armed, and fill'd with Men. This Barriere was not ſufficient to balk the Courage of the Dutch, who puſh'd in with full Sails: and the ſtrong Chain broke upon the ſecond Bruſh given it by the Veſſel in which the Flag of the Republick was ſet up. The *Frigats* which were plac'd to make head againſt them, could not ſtand the Fire of the Enemies, who did not only ſink them together with their Seamen in them, but did as much to eight or nine conſiderable Veſſels beſides. Though the Cables of other Ships had been cut to preſerve them, and to get them higher up in the River, the Dutch took three of 'em; and among the reſt the *Royal Charles* mounted with a Hundred and Twenty Braſs-Guns, the fineſt ſhip in *Europe*. They afterwards landed at *Sheerneſſe*, or in the Iſle of *Shepey*, which is at the Mouth of the River *Medway*, which is very fruitful, and is in Circuit 21 Miles; they plunder'd it, they burnt its Houſes and its ſtore of Cables, they aſſaulted and won its Fortreſs. After all that proſperous Execution, which the *Hollanders* did in but three Days, and which cannot but make their Renown immortal, the Vice-Admiral *de Guent* on the 23d of *June* return'd down the *Thames*: And the Lieutenant Admiral *Bankert* had Order to go and block up the City of *London*. But upon a falſe Report which was then ſent about that the Duke of *York*, Prince *Rupert*,

*pert*, and General *Monk* were coming towards them; the Squadron which durst not go up higher than *Boyd-hoppe*, went to join again the Body of the Fleet, which was already in the River. But *Ruyter* thinking that Things were not to be carry'd too far, gave the signal to make ready to go away with the Tide; and the Dutch who had just made their way through visible Danger, lost their Courage by a mere Chimera, and made no improvement of the Advantages they had in their Hands.

*Lewis* the Great took *Douay*, *Tournay*, *Ypres*, and *Lisle*; and in 1668. in the Winter-time he reduced *Franche Comte* within the Compass of 16 Days. *Alphonfus* the Vith, King of Portugal was under Guard for some Months in the Palace, and convey'd thence into the *Isle Tercera*, one of the *Azores*. *Don Pedro*, who had married *Mary Frances Elizabeth* of Savoy, his Sister-in-Law, is the present King.

In the same Year *John Casimir* King of Poland being out of Conceit with Government, resign'd his Crown; he went to France, and was entertain'd there to his satisfaction by the King, who to make him up an honorable Support, bestow'd upon him the Benefices and Abby of *St. Germain des Prez*, where he died in 1672. being sixty four Years old.

*Clement* the IXth dying in 1669. upon the 9th of December, *Clement* the Xth, of the Family of the *Altieri* was elected the 29th of April, in 1670. and succeeded him. *Frederick* the IIIrd, King of Denmark, died the same Year: And Monsieur *Philip* of France, Duke of *Orleans*, lost by the Strok of Death, *Madam Henrietta*, the Daughter of *Charles* the Ist, King of England. The Dutchess of *York* died the 10th of April, in the Year following; and *Wilhelmine Ernestine*, the Princess Royal of Denmark, was married the 29th of September to the Electoral Prince *Charles* Palatine. The Marriage of the Princess *Elizabeth Charlotte*, the Sister of that Prince, was propos'd at that very time; and the Articles of it were sign'd at *Strasburg* the 9th of November by *Charles Lewis* Count Palatine of the Rhine, and Prince Elector of the Holy Empire, by the Princess *Elizabeth Charlotte* his Daughter, and by the Marquess of *Bethune*, the King's

King's Envoy. Upon the 11th the Princess *Elizabeth Charlotte* went from *Strasburg* with the Princess Palatine Dowager *Anne de Gonzague* her Aunt ; she was married the 16th at *Metz* in Monsieur's Name, by the Marshal Duke du *Plessis-Pralin* ; and on the 21st of *November* the Marriage was consummated at *Chalons*.

Madam *Margaret* of *Lorraine*, Dutchess Dowager of *Orleans*, died in 1672. on the 13th of *April* ; and the 7th a Declaration of War with *Holland* was publish'd in *Paris* by sound of Trumpet. *Lewis* the Great began this War the 1st of *June*, and took from the Dutch above forty important Places.

In 1673. *Mastrick* was surrendered to the King upon Articles of Agreement, twelve or thirteen Days after the opening of the Trench before it ; and the Empress *Margarita Maria Theresia* of *Austria*, Infanta of *Spain*, died the 12th of *March* at *Vienna*.

*Henry de la Tour d' Auvergne*, Vicount of *Turenne*, Marshal of the King's Camps and Armies, taking a View of some advantageous Posts towards *Saltzbach*, was kill'd there by a Cannon-shot at the Age of sixty four. Duke *Charles* of *Lorraine* being seventy five died at *Birkenfeld* in the Lower Palatinate, on the 10th of *September*.

*Clement* the Xth being about eighty eight Years old, died of an Apoplexy on the 22d of *July*, 1676. in the seventh Year of his Popedom ; and Cardinal *Benet Odescalchi* of *Como* in the Dutchy of *Milan* being chosen the 21st of *September*, assum'd the Name of *Innocent* the XIth.

In 1677. Monsieur the Duke of *Orleans* who had on the 29th of *March* besieged *St. Omer*, went to meet the Prince of *Orange*, who march'd up with twenty five or thirty thousand Men to force him to raise the Siege : He gave him Battle on the 11th of *April*, being *Palm-Sunday*, he defeated him ; and six days after made himself Master of the Place.

In 1679. the Ceremonies of the Marriage of the Princess *Maria Louisa* the Daughter of Monsieur, and of the Princess *Henrietta* of *England* to *Charles* the III<sup>d</sup>, King of *Spain*, were solemnly observed the last day of *August* at *Fontainbleau*. The Marriage-Solemnities of *Monseigneur*

*neur* the *Dauphin*, with the Princess *Christiana Maria Anna Victoria*, were celebrated at *Chalons in Champagne*, upon the 7th of *March*, in 1680. The very same Year the King of *Sueden* married the Princess *Ulrique Eleoner*, the King of *Denmark's* Sister, to establish the Peace betwixt those two Crowns. In 1681. the City of *Straßburg* open'd her Gates at the first Summons made in the Name of *Lewis the Great*, whom she had twice disappointed before; and the Exercise of the Romish Religion, together with her Bishop, was restor'd there. In 1683. *Maria Theresa* of *Austria*, Infanta of *Spain*, Queen of *France*, died on the 30th of *July*; and the Queen of *Portugal* the 27th of *December*, after eight Months sickness. The Night before the 18th of *May* in 1684. the Trench was open'd before the City of *Luxemburg*, which was besieg'd by Marshal *de Crequi*; and the 7th of *June* the Prince of *Chimay*, the Governor of that Place, went out of it with his Garrison, having first made an honorable Capitulation.

---

I AP 64

---

Books



BOOKS printed for J. Walthoe at his Shop  
in the Middle-Temple-Cloysters.

1. **T**HE Law of Commons and Commoners: Or, a Treatise shewing the Original and Nature of Commons, and the several Kinds thereof; viz. Commons Appendants, Appurtenants, Estovers, Turbary, Pischary, and *Pur cause de Vicenage*; of Commons in Gross, and *Sans Numbre*; with the Pleadings in reference to every of them As also the Powers and Privileges of Commoners in reference to the Soil, the Lord, Stranger; and of the Remedies and Actions they may have of Declaratory Pleadings in and to Actions brought by and against Commoners: Approvements, Apportionments, Suspension, and Extinguishment of Common: Of Grants of Common, and by what Words Common shall pass. Together with the Learning of Prescriptions in general; the Form and Manner of Pleading Permission in reference to Common, in several Rules. Of Prescription and Pleading by a Copyholder in reference to Common. Of Evidence to prove Prescription for Common: The several Customs of Commons, and of Inclosures. With several Forms of Pleadings, adapted to every sort of Commoner. In 8vo. Price 3 s. 6 d.

2. A View of the Penal Laws concerning Trade and Traffick, Alphabetically disposed under proper Heads: Wherein for that purpose are collected all the Statutes to the end of the last Session, 1697. (viz.) relating to Brewers, Brokers, Carriers, Curriers, Cordwainers, Clothiers, &c. Distillers, Fishers, Fowlers, Glass-makers, Goldsmiths, Silversmiths, Leatherfellers, Tanners, &c. Malsters, Minters, Merchants, and Mariners, Pipemakers, Prisoners and Debtors, Pedlars and Hawkers, Paper and Parchment-makers, &c. Saltmakers and Salters,

## *Books Printed for J. Walthoe.*

**Salts, Silktrowsters, Stock-jobbers, &c. Wine-coopers, Woolmongers, and Exporters of Wool; with many others: Also some necessary Additions of Penalties and Forfeitures, Collected and Published by way of Monition, as well to Offenders as Informers. To which is added a Table of such Offences, &c. as are punishable in the Crown-Office: Useful for all Merchants, Tradesmen, Artificers, &c. In 120. Price 3 s.**

**3. *Lex Custumaria*: Or, A Treatise of Copyhold Estates, in respect of the Lord and Copyholder; wherein the Nature of Customs in general, and of particular Customs, Grants and Surrenders, and their Constructions and Expositions in reference to the thing granted or surrendered, and the Uses or Limitations of Estates are clearly illustrated; together with the manner of Declaring and Pleading, either generally, or as to particular Customs, with Tryal and Evidence of Custom, and of Special Verdicts, &c. In large 8vo. Price 5 s.**

**4. *Tryals per Pais*: Or the Law of England, concerning Juries by *Nisi prius*, &c. Newly revived, and much enlarged, with an Addition of Presidents, and Forms of Challenges, Demurrers upon Evidences, Bills of Exceptions, Pleas *Puis le Darrein Continuance*, &c. The Third Edition corrected and amended: To which is now added a farther Treatise of Evidence, &c. In large 8vo. Price 5 s.**

**5. The Practick Part of the Law, shewing the Office of an Attorney, and a Guide for Solicitors in all the Courts of *Westminster*, with the true manner of their Proceedings in Actions Real, Personal, or Mixt, from the Original to the Execution; now newly set forth by the ablest Practisers of the several Courts; with an exact Table of the principal Matters. In 8vo.**

**6. The Modern Conveyancer: Or, Conveyancing improved; being a choice Collection of Presidents on most Occasions, drawn after the manner of Conveyancing now in use, by the greatest Hands of this present Age; of which some are still living, consisting of Settlements of Estates upon Marriages, &c. With an Introduction concerning Conveyancing in general. The Second Edition, with Additions. In 8vo. Price 5 s.**

6. The

## Books Printed for J. Walthoe.

7. The Roman History, from the Building of the City, to the perfect Settlement of the Empire by *Augustus Caesar*, containing the space of 727 Years: Designed as well for the understanding of the Roman Authors as the Roman Affairs. The Third Edition, carefully Revised, and much improved. By *Lawrence Echard*, A. M. of *Christ College* in *Cambridge*. Vol. the First. In 8vo. Price 5 s.

8. The Roman History, from the Settlement of the Empire by *Augustus Caesar*, to the Removal of the Imperial Seat by *Constantine the Great*; containing the space of 355 Years. Vol. the Second. For the use of his Highness the Duke of Gloucester. By *Lawrence Echard*, A. M. Prebendary of *Lincoln*, and Chaplain to the Right Reverend *James*, Lord Bishop of that Diocese, In 8vo. Price 6 s.

9. The Art of Prudence, Or, A Companion for a Man of Sense: Written Originally in Spanish, by that celebrated Author *Balthazar Gracian*: now made English from the best Edition of the Original, and illustrated with the *Sieur Amelet de la Haiffaie's* Notes. By Mr. *Savage*. In 8vo. Price 3 s. 6 d.

10. A New Edition of the Latin Common-Prayer, to which is now added the Nine and Thirty Articles; with the new Alteration for the Queen, &c. 12o. Price 3 s. 6 d.

## I AP 64

## F I N I S.

